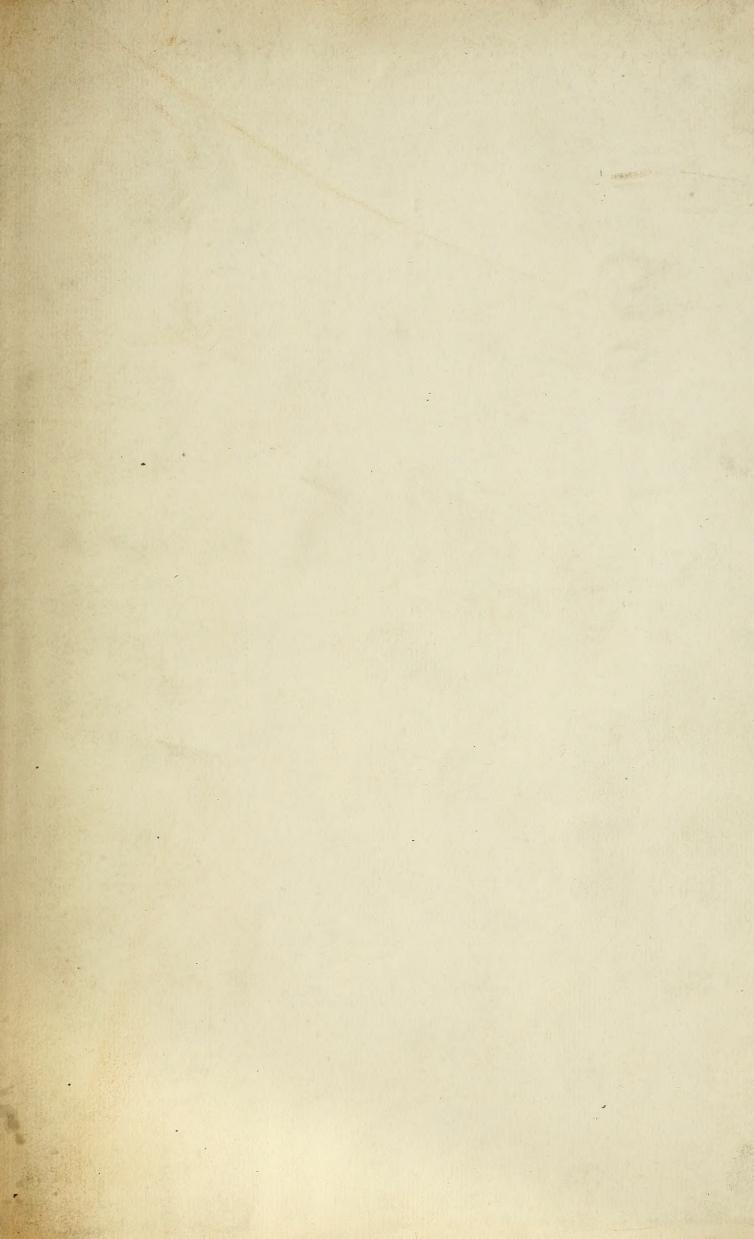
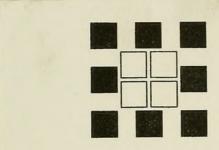




1936 Whit shelf 197



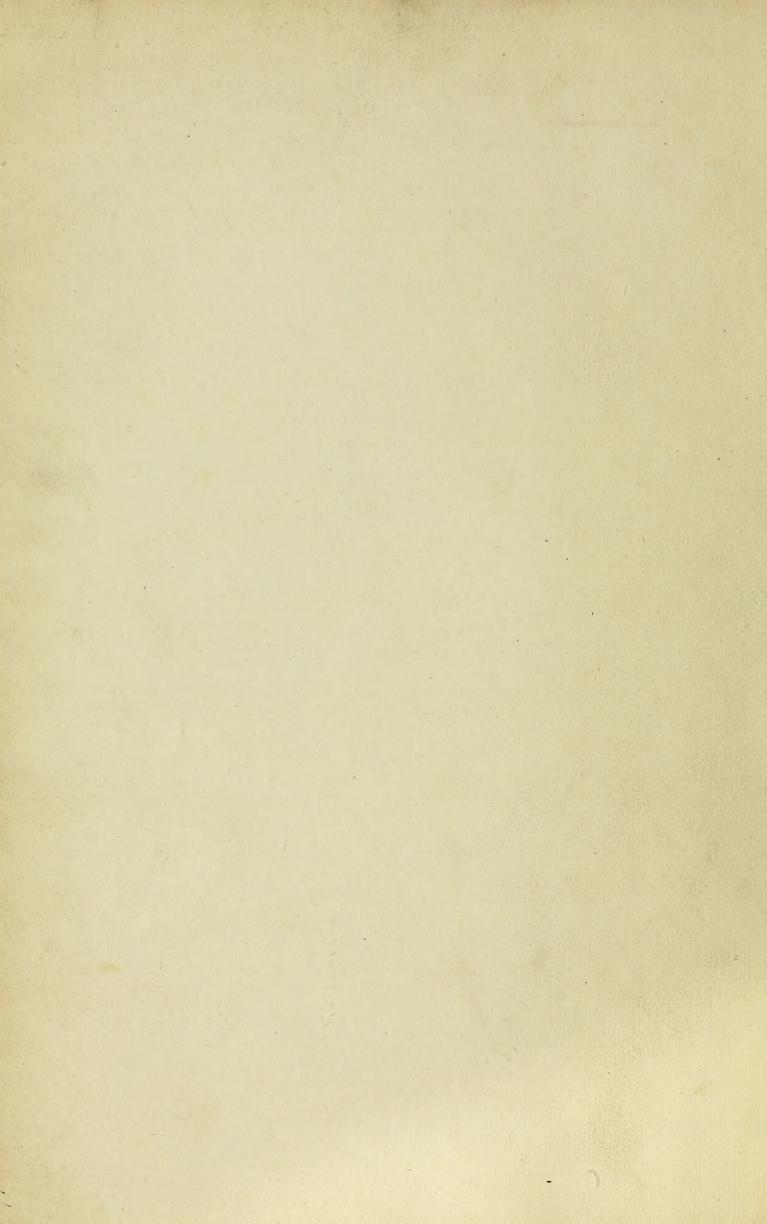


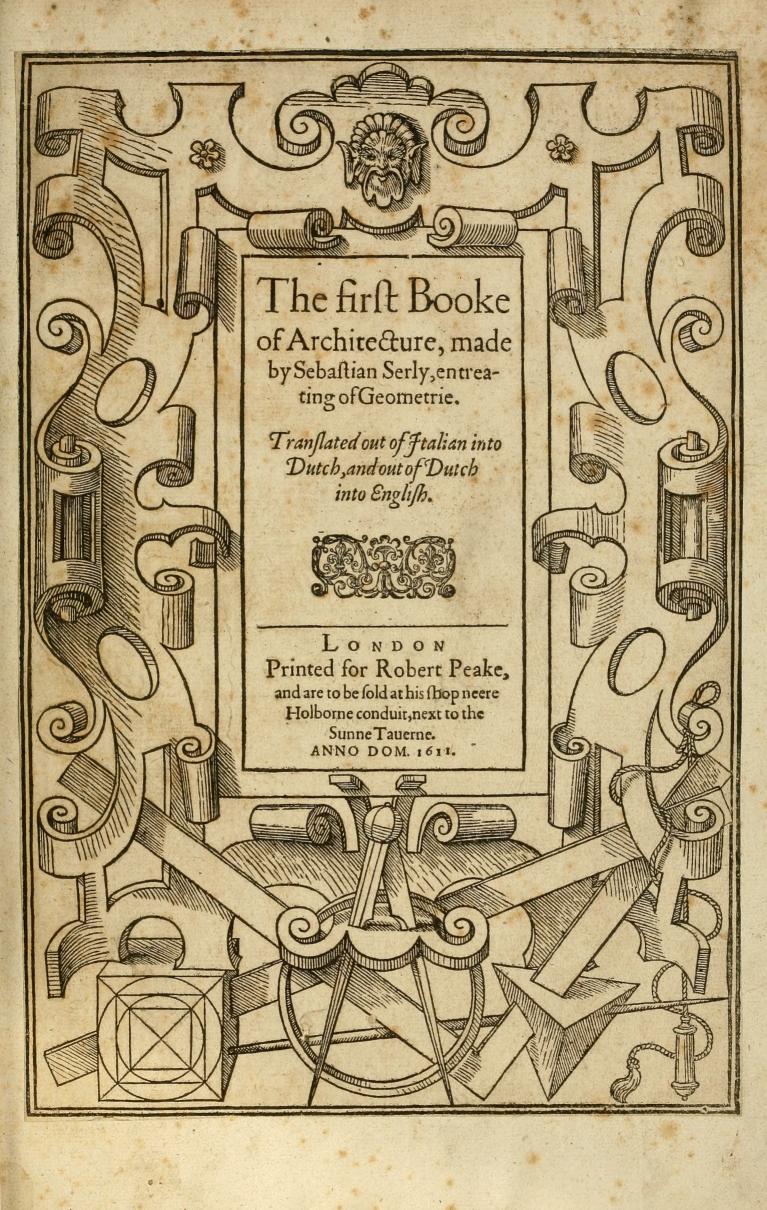


Glasgow School of Art Library

Book Number	1936
Subject Number	12.034(45)5568
Author/ Heading	SERLIO

Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2011 with funding from Glasgow School of Art Library









TOTHE HIGHAND MIGHTIE PRINCE.

HENRY,

Prince of VVales.

SIR,



O vaine ambition of mine owne Desire, much lesse presumption of my none Desert, incited me to present this Volume to your Princely view; but rather, the gracious Countenance, which (even from your Childehood) you have ever daigned to all good endeavours, invited Mee also (after so many others) to offer at the high-Altar of your Highnesse favour, this new-Naturalized VVorke of a learned Stranger: Not with pretence of Prosit to your Highnesse (who want not

more exquisite Tutors in all excellent Sciences) but, vnder the Patronage of your power-full Name, to benefite the Publicke; and conuay vnto my Countrymen (especially Architects and Artificers of all forts) these Necessary, Certaine, and most ready Helps of Geometrie: The ignorance and want whereof, in times past (in most parts of this Kingdome) hath left vs many lame VVorkes, with shame of many VVorkemen; which, for the future, the Knowledge and vse of these Instructions shall happily preuent, if the euent but answere (in any measure) to that Hope of mine, which alone both induced this Desire and produced this Designe: VVherein I must confesse my part but small, sauing my great aduenture in the Charge, and my great Good-will to doe Good. All which, together with my best Seruices, I humbly prostrate at your Princely feete, as beseemes

Your Highnesse

most humble Seruant

Robert Peake.





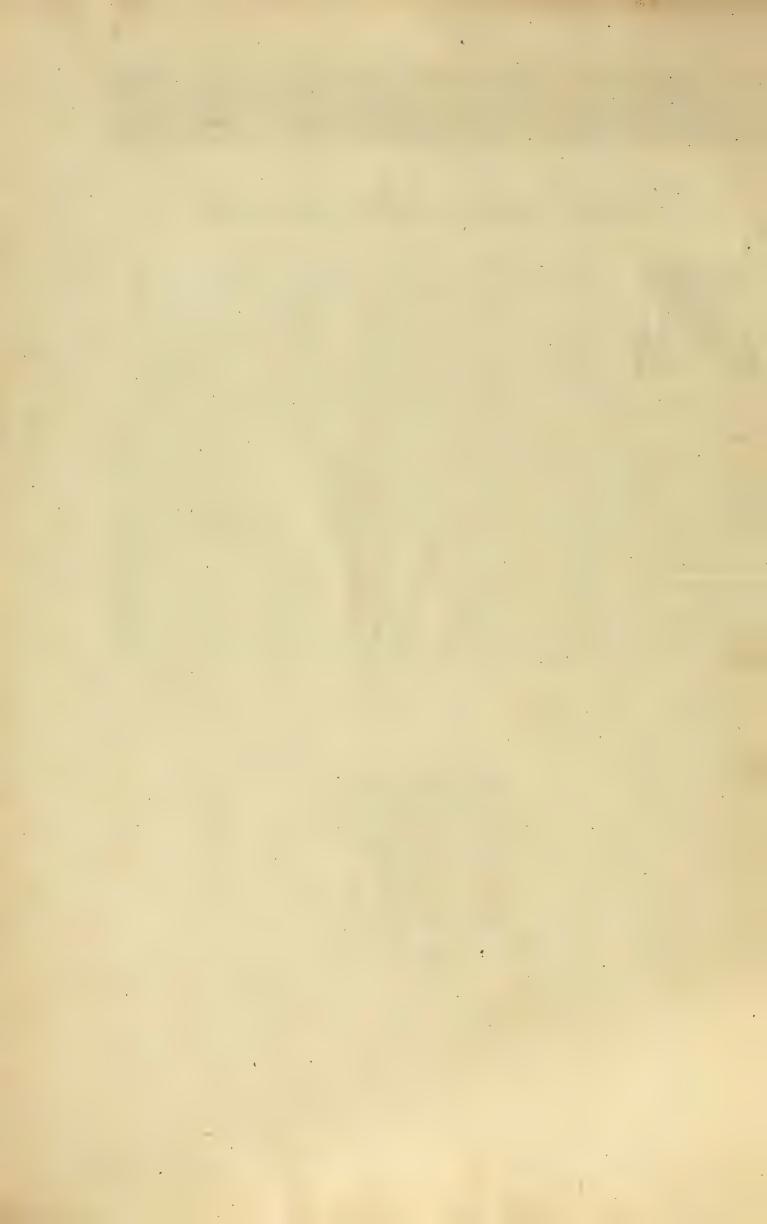
To the Louers of Architecture.



Vr learned Author Schastian Scrly, having great foresight to shew and explaine the common rules of Architecture, did first publish his Fourth Booke, entreating of Architecture, and after his Third Booke, declaring excellent Antiquities. Fearing that if hee had begunne with Geometric and Perspective, common workmen would have thought (that the two former although small) had not beene so needefull to studie and practise as the other: Which friendly

Reader, considered, hindered mee long either from Translating or Publishing the two former, being perswaded by sundry friends and workemen, to have desisted my purpose, both from translating or publishing. The which I had surely effected, if I had beene over-ruled by their requests and perswasions; alleadzing strong reasons, that the common Workemen of our time little regarded or esteemed to Worke with right Simmetrie: the which is consused and erronious, in the indepenent of the Learned Architect, if they will follow the Order of Antiquities hereafter ensuing. Wherefore least my good meaning, together with my Labour in Translating and Publishing, should not be regarded and esteemed (as worthie) considering it not onely tendeth to the great profit of the Architect or Workeman, but also generally to all other Artificers of our Nation: I aduise all generally, not to deceive themselves, nor to be selfe-conceited in their owne workes, but well understand this my labour (tending to common good) and be perswaded that who so shall follow these rules hereafter set downe, shall not onely have his Worke well esteemed of the common people, but also generally commended and applauded of all workemen, and men of indgement. Vale.







The first Booke of Architecture,

made by Sebastian Serly, entreating of Geometrie.

The first Chapter.



Owneedfull and necessary the most server Art of Geometric is for every Artificer and Workeman, as these that for a long time have studied and wrought without the same can sufficiently witnesse, who since that time have attained but o any knowledge of the said Arte, doe not onely laugh and simile at their owne former simplicities, but in truely may very well acknowledge that all whatsoever had bene formerly done by them, was not worth the looking on.

Seeing then the learning of Architecture comprehendeth in it many notable Arres, it is necessary that the Architecture 202 Workeman, should first, or at the least (if he can-

not attaine buto any more) know so much thereof, as that he may buder and the principles of Geometrie, that he may not be accompted amongs the number of some spoilers, who beare the name of workmen, and scarce know how to make an answers what a Point, Line, Plaine, or 250dy is, and much lesse can tell what harmonie or torrespondencie meaneth, but following after their owns minde, or other blinde combuctors that have been to worke without rule or reason, they make bad worke, which is the cause of much bucut or busine morkemanthin which is found in many places.

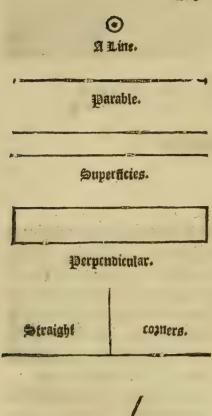
Therfore freing that Geometrie is the first degree of all good Art, to the end I may thew the Architector so much thereof, as that he may thereby be able with good skill, to give some reason of his worker. Louching the speculations of Euclides and other Authors, that have written of Geometrie, I will knue them, and onely take some flowers out of their Garden, that there with by the shortest way that I can, I may entreat of divers cutting through of Lines, with some demonstrations, meaning so plainely and openly to set down and declare the same, both in writing and in sigures,

that every man may both conceine and understand them, advertising the Reader not to proceed to know the second sigure, before he hath well understood and found out the sirst, and so still proceeding, her shall at last attains unto his desire.

£ * * * 3

First

A Poynt.

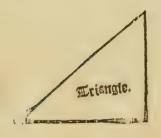




Dbfulus.

Acutus.





Of Geometrie

IRS T, you must bender stand that a point is a pricke made with a Pen or Compasse, which can not bee decided into any parts, because it conteineth neither length nor breath init.

A Line is a right confecutive imagination in length, beginning at a popnt, and endeth also at a point, but it hath no breath.

When two Lines are let or placed of a little wydenelle one from the other, those two lines, according to the Latine phrase, are called Parable, and by some menthey are named Equidiffances.

When those two Equividances aforelayd are at each end closed together by another Line, it is then called a Superficies: and in like fort all spaces in what manner socuer they are closed, and thut bp, are called Superficies or plainnes.

Then there is a Craight byzight Line placed in the middle of a cross straight line, then it is called a Perpendicular of Catheta Line: and the ends of the cross of the cross of the Derpendicular, are called Straight corners.

Without Compale or equalitie, as much as the same Line bendeth, so much thall the corner of the Araight Line be narrower below, and the other so much broader then a right or even corner; and the Araight Corner in Latine is called Acutus, which signifieth Harpe, and the wider corner Dbtus, which signifieth dull.

A corner or point called Piramidal, and also Acutus in Latine, is, when two even long Craight lines meet or ione together at the opper end, as the figure right against this declareth.

And when such a figure is closed together at the foote thereof, with a long traight line, it is then called a Triangle, because it hath three tharpe corners.

When a Triangle with two even Araight lines, is closed together with a longer line then these two are, it shall have such a forme as here you see.

The first Booke.

The first Chapter. Fol.2.

But a Triangle which is made of three unlike lines, it wall also have three unlike corners.

When two long and two direct downe right lines are iopned toges ther at the foure corners, it is called Auadrangle with even sides or corners, but when the foure lines are all of bulike or contrary lengths, then it is a Auadrangle of vneuen sides, as this figure she weth.

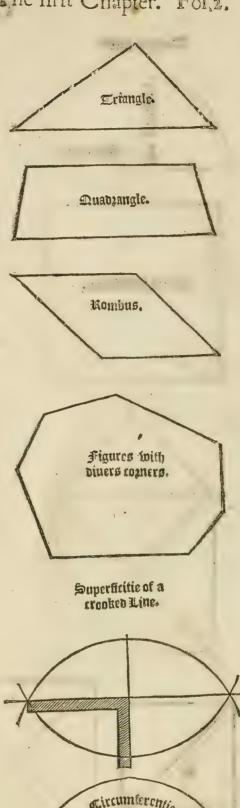
You must note that although all source cornered figures may be called Quadrangles: nevertheles, for that the direct source cornered figures are called Quadratus: for difference from them, I will name all singures which are like vnto at a ble, (that is longer then broad) Quadrangles.

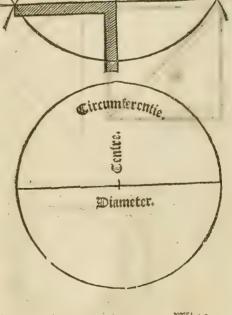
Den foure enen long Craight lines are iouned together at the corners, they are called Duadratus, which are foure cornerd: when you make the two corners thereof tharpe, and the other two corners somewhat blunter, then it is called a kombus.

Athough you may turne and make all the figures aforefato right foure square: Pet the workeman may finde other figures with diners corners. The which (as I will hereafter thew) here may make foure square.

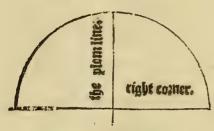
When a man with his Compasse dealwesh a volve, and after that dealwesh an other volve right against it, that is called a Superfitie of crooked Lines, with two like corners: and then dealwesh a straight Line from the one corner to the other, and from one poynt or center where the Compasse shood to the other, another straight Line. There by you shall since the right source parts thereof.

BAT if a man draive a whole round Line with his Compate, that is called a full Circle, or round Superficities, and the point in the middle is called the Centre. The bimost line is called Circumsterentie: and if you draw a straight line through the Center, it is called a Diameter: because it devident the Circle in two even parts.





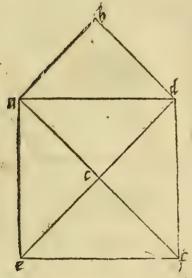
The halfe Circle.



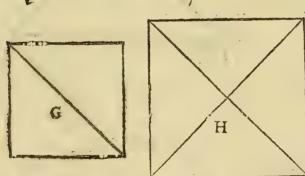
Den the halfe Circumference is cat through the Center of the Diameter, then it is called halfe a Circle: and if you make a Araight line bright in the halfe Circle, then that line maketh two even quarters of a Circle, and beutoeth the Diameter also into two halfe Diameters.



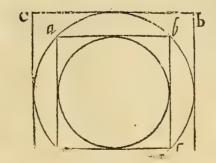
When a man dealweth four even long lines, and topneth them together, they make a perfect cornerd Anadeatus: then if you dealw a firstight line from the one corner to the other, it is called Diagonus: because it deutoeth the four ecorners into two even parts.



Die when a workeman hath seene a forme of some of the most necessary Superficies, hee must proceed further, and learne to augment or staninish the same, and to turns them into other somes: but yet in such sort, that they may have even party in them.



A P D first, if out of the length of the Dias gonus afozelayd, by the adding of three other even long lines, hee maketh nother foure square: that foure square shal be once as great againe as the first, which is to bee bnderffood in this lost : That & foure fquare of A. B. C. D. by the Wingonus is denis ded into two Triangles, and the greater foure square A.D.F. E. containeth foure fuch Triangles: but for that the two first foure squares hang one within the other, therefore for the better the wing thereof, they are here once againe fet downe fenerally: whereby you may lie that the Quadrate G. (as I faid befoze) cotaineth the Triangles. and the Quadzate H. containeth foure such Triangles, so that the proofe thereof is tlearely to be feene.



I f within a foure square you make a Circle which toucheth the foure stocs of the said soure square, and without the said soure square an other Circle which toucheth the corners marked A.B. C.D. Then the outmost Circle must be once as great agains as the innermost: and then if about the greatest Circle you make another soure square as C.D. E. F. then the two source squares must in like soft be once as great againe as the other. The profes where standard with the letters K.L. soft clearer by the said and the said with the letters K.L.

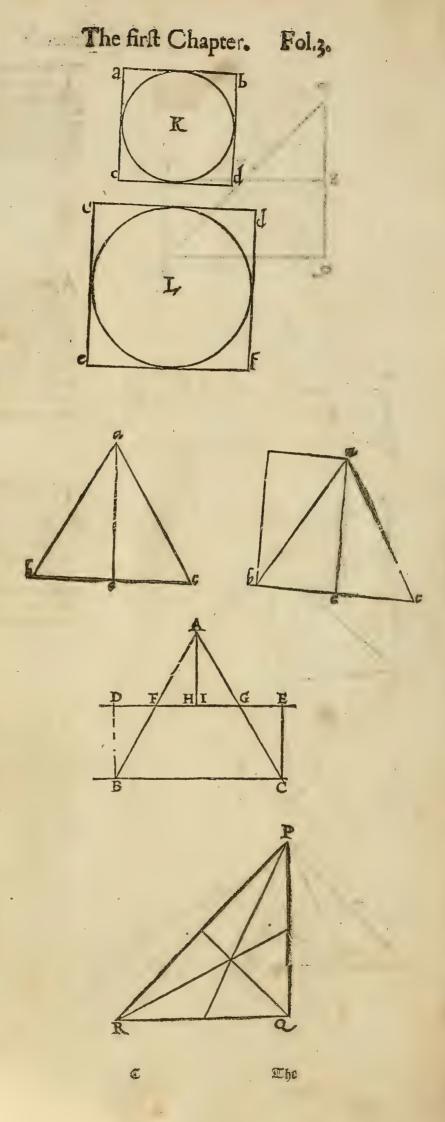
The first Booke.

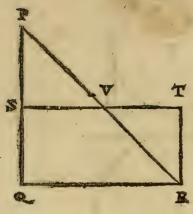
D b this also, the protecture or the foote of the Bales of the Shulcane Columnes or Pillars, and also the breath of the fundation of them under neath by Aertrumus declared, is let foorth.

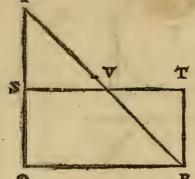
The workeman must yet proces forther, and learne to know how to change a Triangle into a Nuadrangle, and also at last bring it to a right Quadrangle, and also at last bring it to a right Quadrate, to the which I will set downe divers formes. First, take a Triangle with even corners, as A.B.C. and devide the Base (which is the name of all lower lines) B.C. in two even parts, and there place the letter E. Then from the point E. to A. drawe a line, which will devide the Triangle into two even parts. Then if you take that part which is marked A.E.C. and toying it to the other part, marked A.E.B. it will piake a Quadrangle, as A.D.B. E. mades of a Triangle.

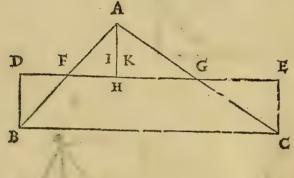
Y Du may also change this Triangle in other manner, deciding the lines A.B. and A.C. each in two like parts as F. and G. When drawe a line through D. E. as long as the Base B.C. Then thut by the two Equiditances, comer wises and then the Duadrangle B.C. D. E. containeth so much in it as the Triangle A.B. C. and the proofe thereof is, that the two Triangles B.C. F. and G.E.C. contains so much in them, as the two other Triangles A.F. H. and A.J. G.

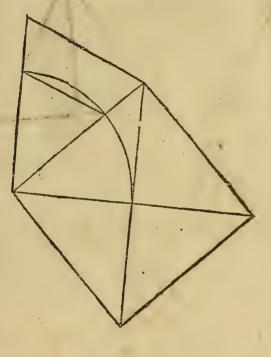
A Triangle with even points, may be devided their into two equall parts, deviding each fide in two parts, as in the figure P.Q. R it is feene through the three lines, which on either fide make two great Triangles.

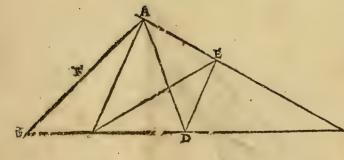












B Clame Triangle P.Q.R. map thus be thenged into a Quadrangle: devide the fide P. Q. and the fide P.R. each in two es quall parts, then draw a line S.T. as long as Q. and R. and then Deale a line direct bowneward from T.R. toclose it bp: and then that Anadrangle container as much space within it as the Ariangle alozelayo, because that the Triangle which is cut off P.S. V. is of the like greatnesse with the other Eriangle marked V.R.T.

A Poalthough there is a Triangle of bnequall fides. vet a man may make it a Duadzangle, in such fort as I sapa before of the right Triangle: for although the two Triangles that are cut off, and thole two that are added butoit, are not of one greatnelle, pet the Ariangles A.F.I. and B.D.F. are one as great as the other, and againe, the Triangles A.G.K. & G.C.E. are also of one greatnes: so that those that are cutoff, and those that are added thereunto, are of one quantitie. By these alterations aforesavo, a man may easily measure how many fate, elles of rodes sourcequare, are contained in a three cornerd Superficies.

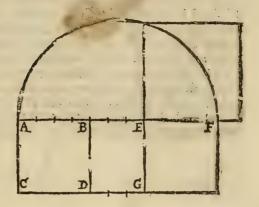
Bas it falleth out, that a Triangle (which is thateomero) for perficie og plaine, mult be parted croffe wife in two equal parts: then out of one of the fides that you will cut through, you must make a right foure square, as from the live A. B. and praw therin two Die agonus from corner to corner, which will thew you the Center C. and draw one Circle through that three cornerd part which you will benide, and to you thall find the two points, where you thall drawe your deutoing line. He that defireth any proofe hereof, may take each piece and alter it into a Quadzangle, and after into a Quadzate, as heereafter hall be theined, and he hall find it true.

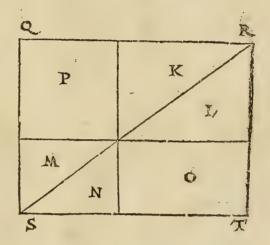
A P Architector mult alle bedergoe other burthens, for that hee must know how to denide a piece of ground, that no man may be hindred thereby. As for example, if there were a piece of ground that lay their cornerd wife, with brequall parts, having on the one fide thereof a Well, but not in the middle: and this ground, 02 that comerd piece of Land is to bee devided into two equal parts, in such lost, that each of them may have the vie of the Wiell: it must bee done in this manner. I make a Artangle marked A.B.C. and the Well is marked with G. Pow devide the line B. C. with a darke line in the two equall parts as the letter D. Cheweth, and then draws ing a line from D. to A. then the Ariangle is devided into two equal parts: but both of them can not per come to the Well: then drawe another line from the Weil G. to A. and from the pount D. you muft fet an Equidiffancic against G. A. marked with E. & dratwing frem G. which is the Well: the blacke line to the letter E. it will devide the ground in two enentenerall parts, and each of them thall have the Wiellaf the end of his ground, for that part A.B. G. E. centais nethinitius as many fiete or roos, as that part which is marked G. E. C.

The first Booke,

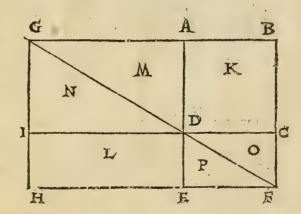
The first Chapter. Fol.4.

Theise obefore, how a man mould make a four square Superficies once as great again as it is, but it may fall out, that a man is to make it but halfe as great again, or more or lesse, as he thinketh good, or as occasion serveth, which the Architector is also to learne of necessitie. Which to shew, I set down a right four square thing: marked A. B. C. D. in hich I will have three quarters greater the same three quarters I set by the side thereof, so that the same with the Auadrate together make a Auadrangle A. E. C. G. Wo bring this Auadrate into a right Auadrate, you must lengthen the line A. E. yet a quarter longer, or from the side of the Auadrangle E. G. and place F. there: then by on the side of the Auadrate which you seeke for: which Auadrate being made, will containe as much in it, as the Auadrangle already made. And in this maner you may change all Auadrangles which are long source cornerd pieces of worke, into a instant true Auadrate.



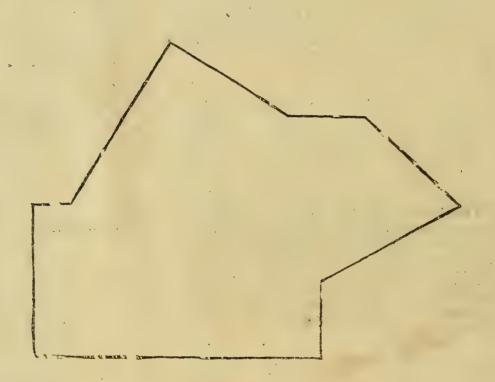


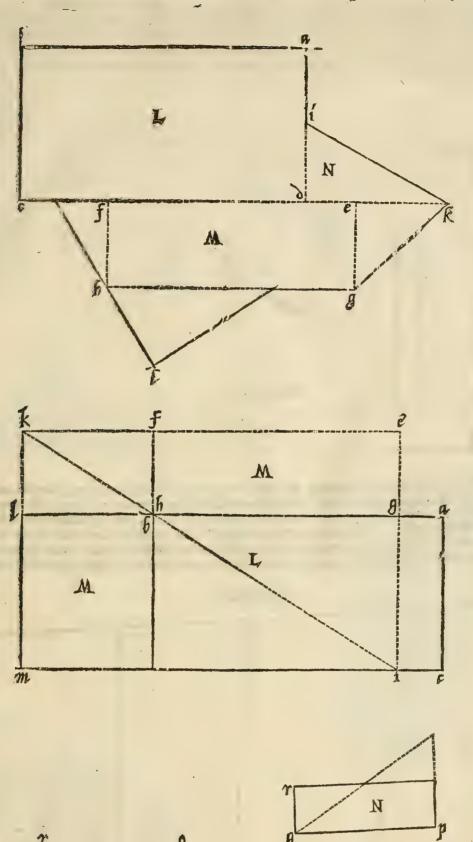
Div to prome that, which I sayo before, you must somethe Anadrangle with the Duadrate together, in one soure square superficie as Q.R.S. T. and from the corner R. to the corner S. draw a Diagonus, and it is certaine that that Diagonus will make two onen parts. How Euclides saith, that when a man taketh any even parts from even parts, the rest of the parts also remaine alike then take the Triangle K.L. and the Triangle M.N. which are both alike the right source corners superficie P. is of the same greatnesse, that the longer superficie O is.



Maine, you may easily change a Duadrate into a Duadrangle, as long ar as narrow as non desire to have it, do ing thus: Pake your Duadrate A.B. C.D. and lengthen your line A.B. and the time B.C. Which wore then tet the length of the Duadrangle, which you desire to have boon the line A.G. Then from the poput G. draw a line as long by the corner of the Duadrate D. to the line C.F. and there you sind the shortest line of the Duadrangle; and so to the contrary you hall by the least so of the Duadrangle and the longest also, as you may also prome by the forestago Figure: for when you take away the Driangles M. N. and O.P. which are both altae, then the two parts which are K.L. are also alike.

As Architector may by chance have a piece of works of divers inequall fives come to his hands, which he is to put into a Duadranguler or Duadrate forme, to know what it containeth, and specially when it belongeth to more then one man, whether where Land or any other thing. For although the Architector or Surveyor of Land could not shill of Arithmaticke or Ciphering: yet this rule cannot faile him, nor any other man that defire the find out the deceite of a Taylor. Thus, I say then, let it bee what forme sower it will, I set downe this hereafter following. First then, seeke the greatest Duadrate or Duadrangle, that you can take out of it: that done, seeke yet another Duadrate or Duadrangle, as big as you can take out of it, out of the rest of the said worke: and if you can after that make more Duadrangle, as big as you can find more in it, then make Triangles also as big as you can, of which Triangles (as you are taught before) you may make Duadrangles, and let every piece severally be marked with Carecters, as in the figure following may be seene.



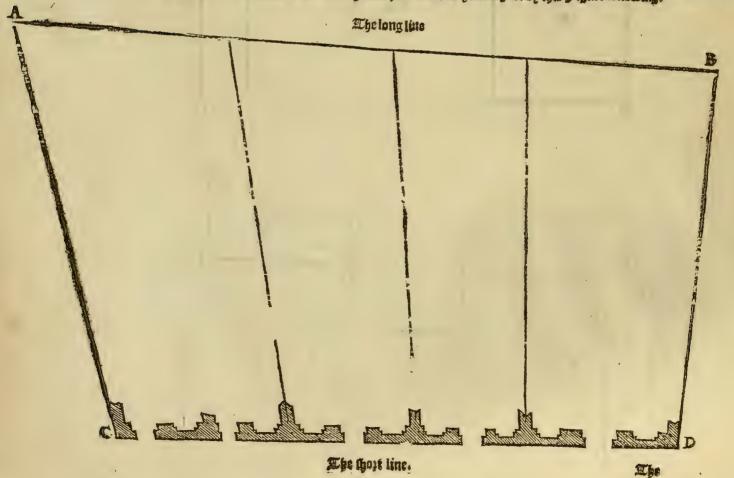


Wifen a man hath a line or other things of vnequall parts, and there is also another longer line, or some other thing, which a man would also decide into vnequall parts, according to the proportion of the Morter line, then let the Corter line be A.B. and the greatest line A.C. now it is necessary that from the oppermost pount A. you should make a corner as A.B. and A. A. Then take your longer line, and let it with the end C. upon B. and let the other and rest at the hanging line A.A. then from every pount of the oppermost line A.B. let a hanging line fall by on the line A.C. so that thep

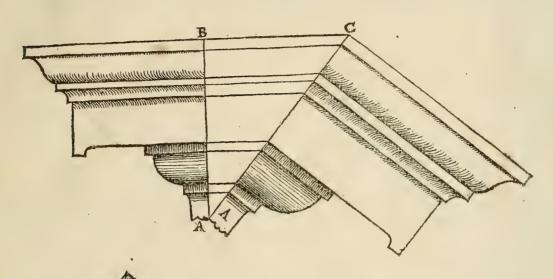
may be equidifiant with the line A.A. & where

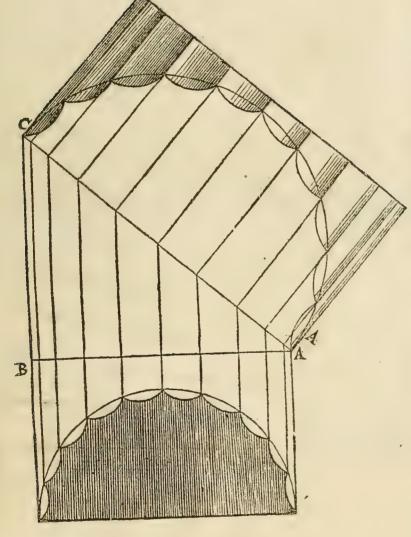
flaid lines cut through each other, there is the right devision proportion ned, according to the smaller. This ruleshal Most line. not only ferue the Architector for many things, as I will partly thewe: but will also ferue mas ny Artificers to reduce their small works into greater. long line, thoat line. B long line.

De example of the figure aforefaid, A suppose, Houses or pieces of Land to be of diners widenesse, which thouse be narrower before then behinde. Which Houses, by fire by warre are so decayed, that in the sorepart betweene C.D. there were but some figures of division to bee seene of the houses, and behind the houses betweene A. and B. no signes at all to be seene. Pow as the missory was past, and that enery man desired to have his part of his inheritance, then the Architector, as an unipire, according to the rule aforefaid, should be use the langest line according to the proposition of the shortest, to give every man his owne; as you may see by this Figure following.

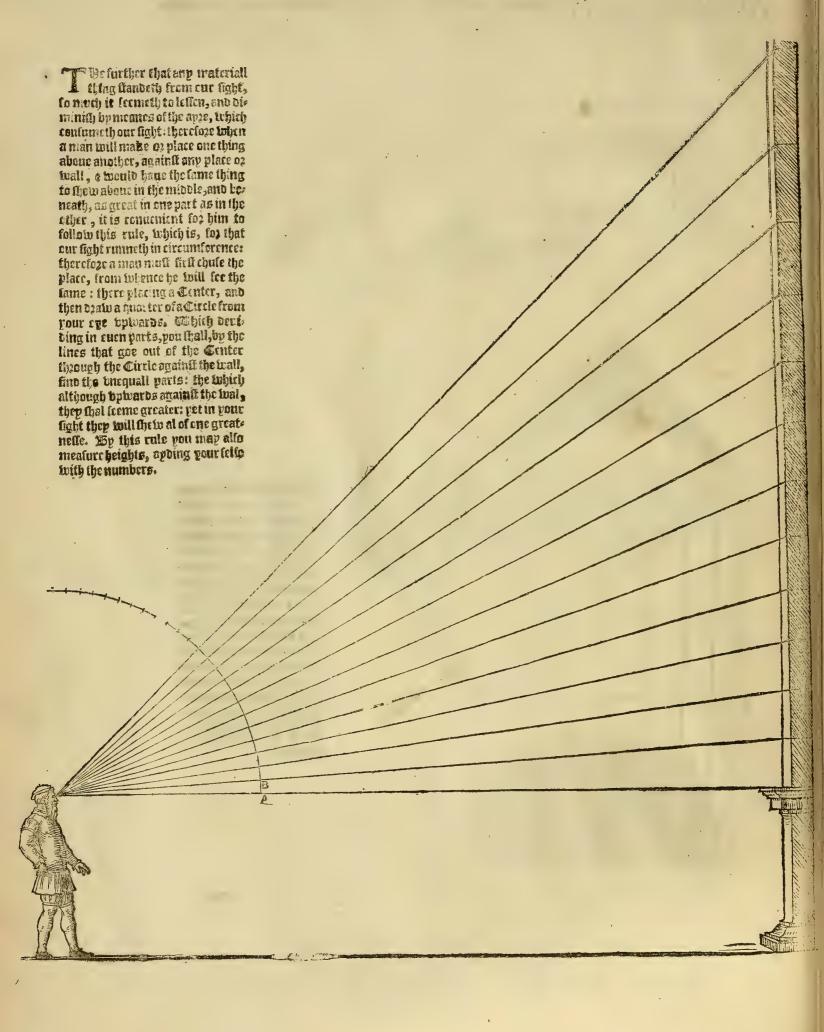


portion, hee may doe it as he is somerly taught, as in this Figure following is the wes by the short line marked A.B. and the longer line marked A.C.





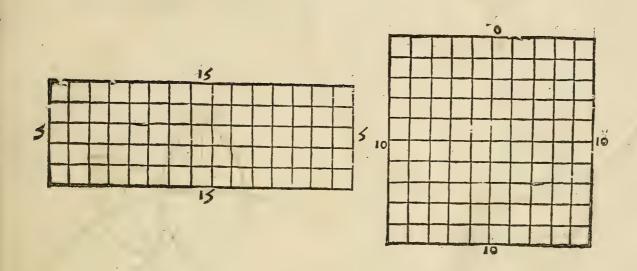
A Anchitector or works man, must likewise learne to augment a make greater a holowed colune, which hee may also doe by the two lines aforelayde, and although the Columns thould be a Dorica (yet it is to bee biderstood of all kinds of Columnes. This rule wil also serve (not one ly so, the three figures set downe) but also so, as many, as if I hould thewe them, it would containe a whole bake of them alone, and therefore this sime so, the workeman.



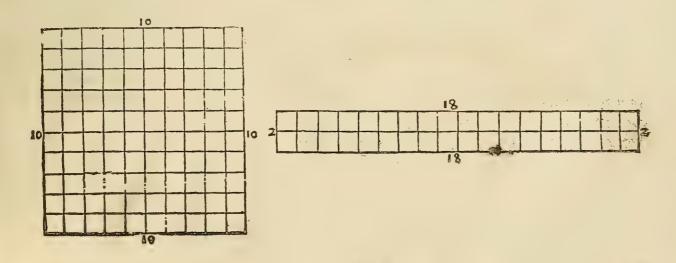
The first Booke.

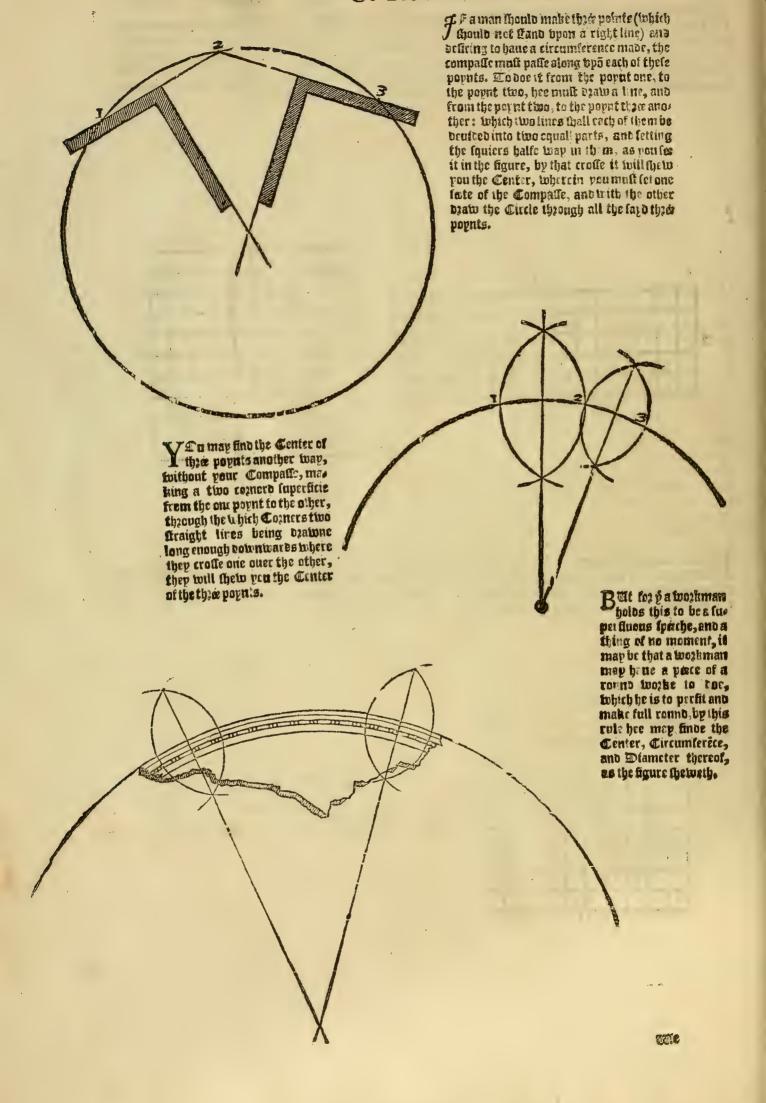
The first Chapter. Fol. 7.

Many men are of opinion, that Araight lines, in what maner focuer they are closed, contagne as many spaces one way as another, (that is to say) if a man had a co2d of forty sweeteng, and should lav it diversly in a round, long, three cornerd, source square, or time cornerd forms: but the suncricies are not of one selfc same space, which may be some by these source square figures following; for the first line holds thou either side ten, which is forty: and the space contagnes ten times ten, which is an hundred. The other line by on the two longest sides contagnes sisteme spaces, and on the shortest sides sine, making sorty also: but suc times officene make but seventic and suc.

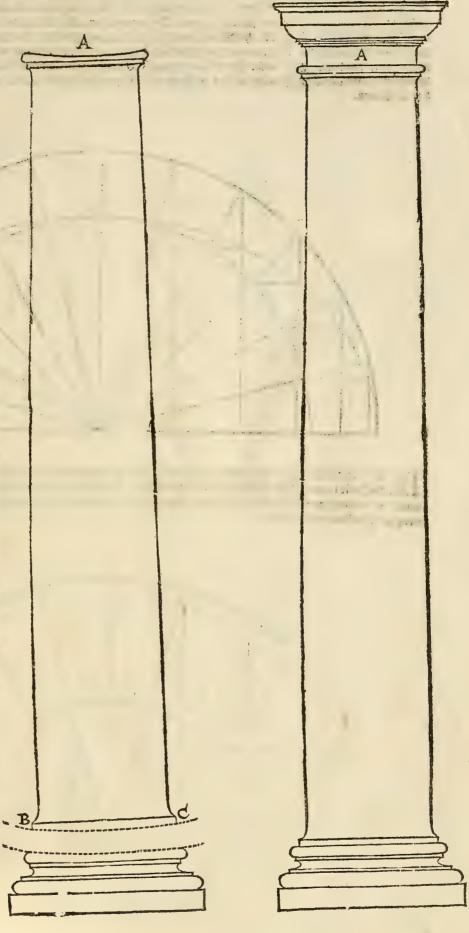


If the Quadrate Arctcheth further out, to that the fire longer floes were epythiene a piece, then the Mortest floes must each have two to have forty bron the une, but the space frouls contagne but fire and thirty. And hereby you se what a perfect forme may doe against an imperfect. And this rule the workenian shall ble, that he may not be decely used when he will change one forme into another.



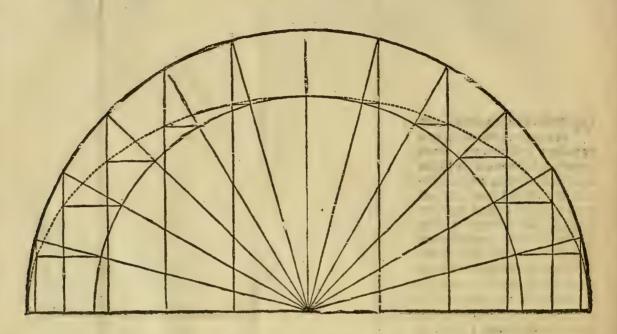


170 find in Antiquities, and al'o in moberne works, mis ny Billars or Columnes, which beneath in the lognts at the Bales are broken alunder, which is, bes esple their Bales were not well made according to their corners: oz eile, because thep are not right. ly placed: fo that they have moze weights bpon them on the ons five, then on the other, whereby the Cantons breake, which the workeman by knowledge of the lines, and helpe of Geometry, may preuentin this maner : That is. Peeniuf mabe the Pillar round buderneath, and his Balehollow inward: to that when you place the Pillar by the Lead, it may presently settle it felfe without as ny hurt. To finde this roundnes, you mult let the one populat the Compale beon the highest part of the Billar that is bnocr the A. and the other point thereof bpon B. and then drawe, or winds it as bout to Cland that thall bee the rount nelle, making the hollowing of the Bale, according to the lame measure: you may doe the like with the Capitall, as you fein the Pillar by it.

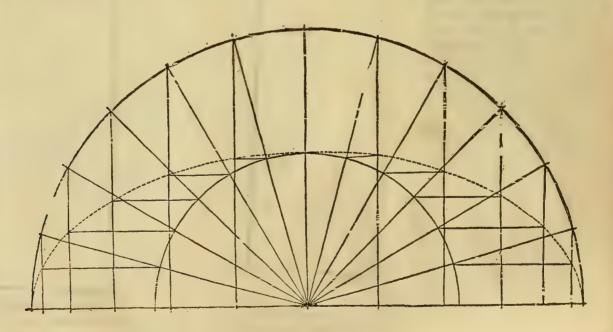


. Radi . reguli dul Of Geometrie de d dui ed.

I a workeman will make a Brioge, Bowe, or any other round Arched piece of worke, which is wyder then a halfe Circle, although Palons practile this with their lines, whereby they make such kinds of workes, which thew well to mens light, yet if the workeman will follow the right Theoricke and reason thereof, hee must observe the order heretofore shewed. When he hath the wydeness of the height, then he must make halfe a Circle out of the middle: after that, down the same Centre, hee must make another lesser Circle, which must be no greater then he will make the height of the Bowo, Arche: then he must devide the greatest Circle in equal parts, which must al be drawen with lines to the Centre: then you must hang out other Perpendiculars by on your Lead: and where the lines that go to the Centre cut through the lesser Circle, from thence you must draw the crosse lines toward the Perpendicular, and where they close together, there the Bows or Arche which is made, shall be closed: as by the points or prickes hereunder is shewed.



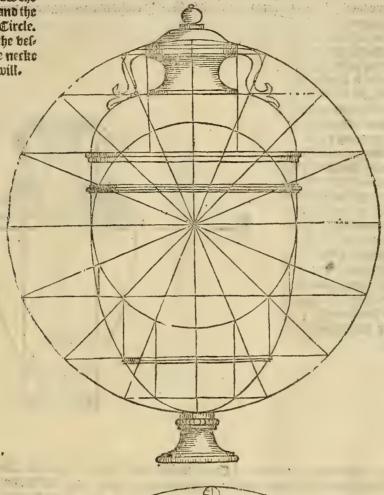
But if you defire to make the Bow of Archelower, then you must follow the rule aforelayd, and make the innermost Circle to much less, which is to bee understood, that the more parts that you make of the greater Circle, so much the eastier you shall drawe the crooked lines which you would have: from this rule there are many others obsermed, as hereafter you shall see.



The first Booke. The first Chapter.

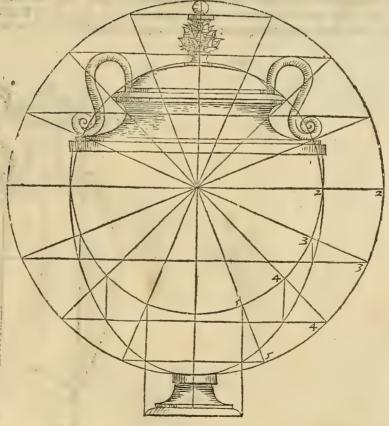
Alling the former rule to minde, I deviced the manner how to forme and fashion divers kindes of bestels by the same, and I thinke it not amile to fet downe some of them : This onely is to bee marked, that as wide as pour will make the bellets within, to great you mult make the innermol Tircle. The reft, the fkilfull workeman may

marke by the figures, that is, how the lines are drawne to the Center, and the Parables, and out of the small Circle. The Perpendiculars hanging, the belfels are formed: the foote and the necke may be made as the workeman will.



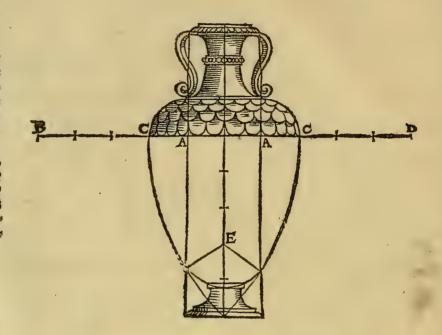
Busif you will make the body of the belief thicker, then you must make the halfe Circle to much the greater, and make the belly hanging downe binder it, to touch the great Cirs cle, by the falling of the Perpendiculars bpo the croffe line, as by these Figures 3.4.5. it is Mewed: whereby a man by this meanes may make biners beffels, differing from mine. Thenceks and covers of these vessels are within the small Circles: the other members and Dunaments are alwayes to bee made, according to the wil of the ingenious workman.

ALC: MARKET

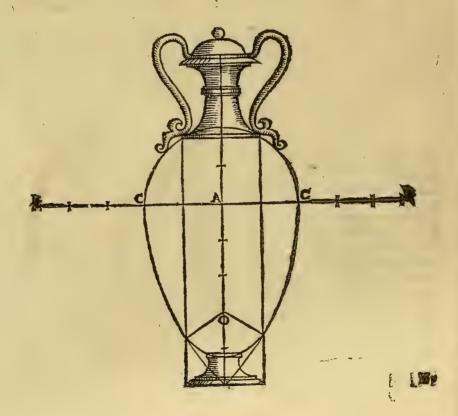


Tis an excellent thing for a man to Audy or practife to do any thing with the Compate, whereby in time menning find out that which they never imagined: as this night it happened but one, for that feeking to find a never rule, to make h forme of an Egge, then Albertus Durens hathfet downe: I found this way to make an Anticke bellell, placing the fort beneath at the foot of an Egge, and the necke with the handles about byon the thickest part of the Egge. But first, you must frame the Eggs in this manner: Pake a straight cross of two lines, and devide your cross line in ten

equall parts: that is, on each fice five. When, let the Compalle vpon the Center A. and with the other fots thereof, draw in two parts, that is, to C. making halfe a Circle bp. wards. That done, let one foote of the Compasse spon & point marked B.and with the other Draw in the bte termost poynt C. dawing apiece of a Circle down wards toward & Herpendicular, and boing the like on the other five, you must make a point bes low. Then take the halfe of the halfe Circle abone that two parts, and place it at the undermold point of the Derpendicular vpwards about O. where the Centre to close the Egge, thal Cand: the reft bnder C, "ibe for & fote: the necke, without boubt, may be made two parts high, and the reft according to the workemans pleas fure, va according to the figure hers: Ander fet downe.



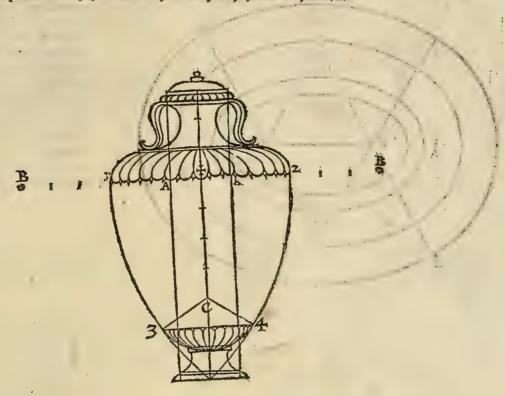
Du may allo make another forme of a Cup or veffell, after the rule aforelayd. But from the popul A. (which booth the bredth of the fact, and the widenette of the mouth) you mult make your Circle tywards, from C. into the time Perpendiculars, where the body that be closed by. The necke Canding abone it, that be two parts high; but the rect of the workemanthip that be made according to the will and denice of the workemant.



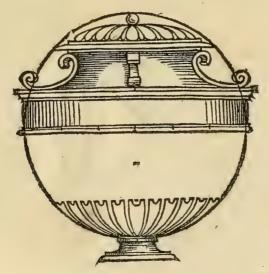
The first Booke,

The first Chapter. Fol.10.

District you may make other different kindes of Caps or bestels: but these that follow, you must make in this lost: you must denied your cross line in twelve parts through the point A. making two Perpendiculars to hew the socteand the necke: then setting one socte of the Compasse open B. and the other socte open I. drawing a piece of a Circle downer wards, towards the Perpendicular: and the like being done on the other socte the Figure of 2. then place your Compasse open the point C. and touching the sides 3. and 4. then the bottom of the bestell will be closed by: then place the Compasse open the point betweens I. and A. and it will be the roundnesse of the vestell about: the other source parts serve so, the necke of the bestell, with the rest of the worke.

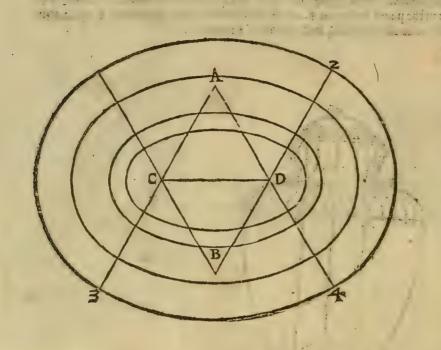


A Pan may make a bestell onely by a Circuler forme, making therein a Circuler crosse, and besiding energine in to sire parts: the halfe circle shall be the belly of the vestell, and a sirt part vested for a Frese, that there may be smore place to beautise it: an other part shall be the height of the necke, and another part the coner; and so, the soote, although it be but a halfe part high, it may well goe a sirt part without the round: and although I have set downe but sire maner of cups or bestels, per according to the rule asoresayd, a man may make an infinite number of vestels, and a man may alter them by their Priaments, whereof I say nothing, that you may say the line the better.

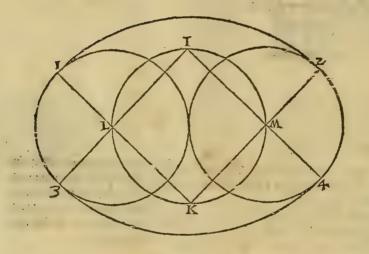


orded and of Geometrie stook Anded

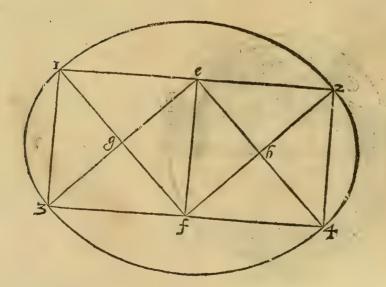
Pan may make Duale formes in divers fashions, but I will onely set volume foure. To make this first kinner, you must set two perfect Triangles one above the other, like a Rombus, and at the toyning of them together; you must draw the lines through to 1.2.3.4 and the corners A. B. C. D. Hall be the foure Tenfers, then set one fote of the Compasse byon B. and the other byon I. and draw a line from thence to the figure 2. After that, from the



poput A. and 3: to 4, you mult allo ; min and ma drawa line: which being done, fet the one ende of the Compasse in the poput C, and then braw a piece of a Circle from 1. to 3. and againe, the Compasse being in the Center D. draw a piece of a Circle from 2. to 4. and then the forme is made. Bou muff also buder Hand, that the nærer that the figures come to their Tenters, fo much the longer they are: and to the contrary, the further that they are from their Centers, the rounder thep are: pet they are no perfect Cir: cles, because they have more then one Center.



Dis the making of the second Duale, you must first make three Circles, so you se here draight lines stand: the source Centers shalbe I.K.L.M. Then placing one point of the Compasse in K. you must draive a line with the other point from the sigure of 1. to 2. Againe, without altering the Compasse, you shal set the one source of a Circle from the sigure 3. to the sigure 4. and that maketh the Compasse of the Circle. This Figure is very like the some of an Egge.



The third forme is made by thro foure cornerd squares, drawing Diagonen lines in them, which that thew the two Centers G. H. and the other two the corners E. & F. Then draw a piece of a Circle frof, to the figure 1. and so to 2. Do the like from E. to 3. and 4. which done, from the points G. and H. make the time sides from 1. so 3. and from 2. to 4. and so that by the Duale.

The first Booke,

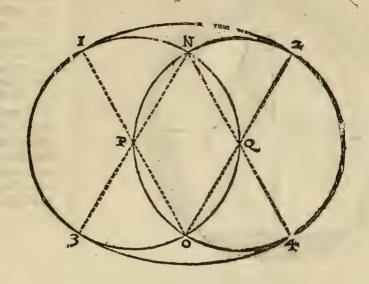
The first Chapter. Fol.11.

I from will make this fourth Duale, then make two Circles that may cut through each others Center, e the other two Centers for the closing of the Circle be N.O. after that, whether you draw the right lines or not from the poynts O. N. you thall thut by the sides from 1. and 2. and from 3 to 4.

And although our Authour sayth, there are

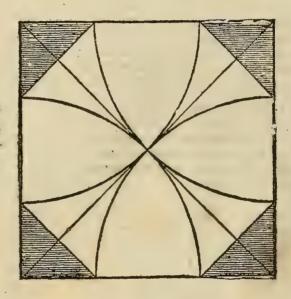
And although our Authour layth, there are foure formes of Duales: yet this last figure is of the lame forms as the first, onely this is ear

Ger to make.



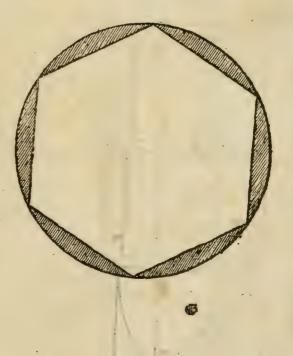
Duching the Circles, there are many figures which are round, and get some have 5.6.7.8.9 and 10. corners, et. But at this time, I will speake enely of these this principally: because they are most common.

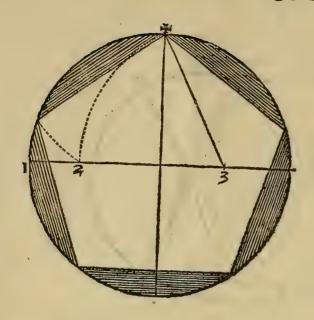
This Detogonus, or eight paints, is drawn en out of a right four comerd square, drawing the Diagonus which will shewe you the Center: then set one sote of your Compass byon the comers of the Duadrale, and leading the other sote through the Center, directing your Circle toward the side of the Duadrate, there your right poynts shall sland to make it eyght corners; and although a man might only doe it by the Circle, making a crossetherein, and devicing each quarter in two, yet it will not be so well, and therefore this is a surer and more perfect way.



The Heragonus, that is, the list cornerd Circle, is easiest made in a Circle: for some the Circle is made, you may devide the Circumference in sire parts equally, without strring the Compasse, and deading the line from one popul to another, the sire corners are made.

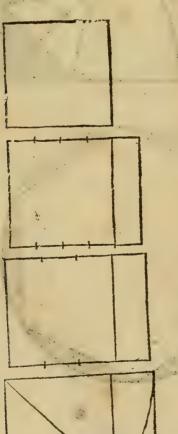
white a group of

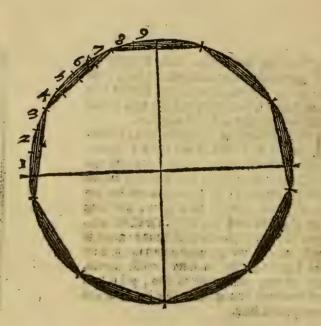




Bax the Pentagonus that is que cornerd, is not fo earally to be made as the others are, because it is of an bur euen number of corners, notwithstanding you may make it in this manner: when the Circle is made, then make a Araight croffe therin: then devide the one balfe of the croffe line in two parts, which is marked with the figure 3. then place the one foote of the Compate byon 3 and with the other, placing it under the croffe, draive bolune-ward to the croffe line marked 2. from thence also from bover the croffe, you thall finde the length of enery ade of the Wentagonus. In this figure allo you thall finde the Decagonus, that is, ten comers: for, from the Center to the flaure 2. that thall be one five thereof, you may also make a firtene cornerd figure out of this widenesse I. 2. and place a Particular line boon the poput 3. And Albertus Durens laith, that the same also will serve to make a seven cornerd fis gure.

This figure will ferve such men as are to part a Circumference into bnequall parts, how many some they be: but not to bring the Reader into considerness, with making of many somes. I will onely set downe this devided into nine corners, which shall serve so, an example of all the rest, which is thus: Take the quarter of the Tircle, and devide it into nine parts, and sourcest these parts will bee the ninth part of the whole Tircumference: you must also bnoerstand the same so, if you devide a Duadrate into eleven, twelve, or thirteen parts, so, so, that alwayes source of these parts bee the instances.





There are many Anadzangle propositions, but I will here fet down but feuen of the principallest of them, which hal best ferne for the vice of the workeman.

Fara, this forme is called a right fours

1:20

Pelecond forme or figure in Latins, is called Sergulquarta, that is, which is made of a foure cornerd Duadrate, and all eught part thereof iopned buto it.

The third figure in Latine, is called a Serquitertia, that is, made of a foure fquared Duadzate, and a third part therof ionned buto it.

The fourth, is called Diagonea, of the line Diagonus: which line dentbeththe foure square Duadrate cross through the middle, which Diagonall line being toucht from voder to the end thereof opivards with the Compasse, and to drewen, will their pour the length of the Diagonall Duadrangle: but from this proportion there can been or rule in number well set downe.

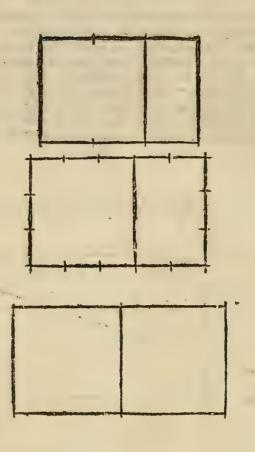
The first Booke.

The first Chapter. Fol. 12.

tera, that is, a foure square, and halfe of one of the soure squares added by, to it.

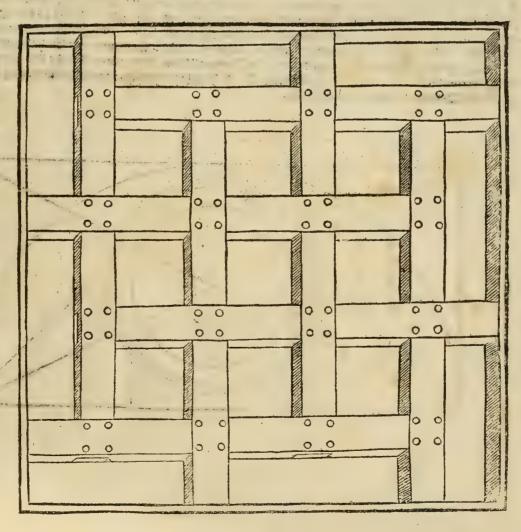
that is, a four e square, and two third parts of one of the source squares added thereunto.

Defenenth and last figure, is called Dupla, that is, double: for it is made of two foure square formes in index together: and we finde not in any Antiquaties, any forme that passent the two foure squares, but set it bee in Galleries, Ontries and other to walke in: and some gates, dozes, and windelves haus food in their heights: but such as are wifewill not passe such lengths in Chambers of Palles.



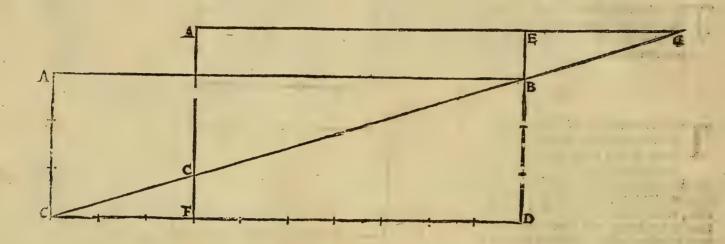
Many accidents like buto this, may fall into & works mans hand, which is, that a man should lay a fieling of a house in a place which is fiftene fote long, and as many foote bacad, the rafters thould be but fouretone foote long, and no more woo to be had: then in such case, the binding thereof must be mabe in such fort as you le it here let downe, that the raf-ters may ferne, and this will also bee Arong enough.

to the spiritual of the

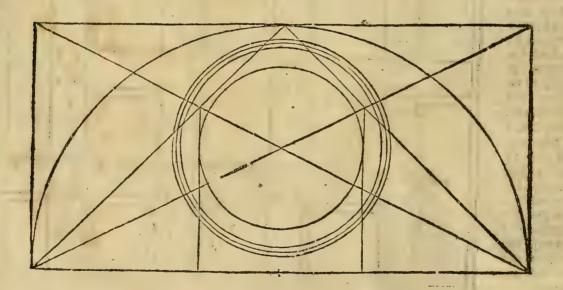


Of Geometrie

I may also fall out, that a man frould finde a Table of ten foote long, and the foote broade: with this Table a man insuld make a dooze of leven foote high, and foure foote wyde. Pow to doe it, a man would law the Table long wife in two parts, and letting them one under another, and so they would be but fire foote high, and it thould bee feven: and againe, if they would cut if the foote florter, and so make it foure foote broade, then the one five that be two much pieced. Therefore he must doe it in this fort: Take the Table of ten sote long, and the foot broad, a make it with A. B. C. D. then sawe it Diagonall wise, that is, from the corner C. to B. with two equall parts, then draw the one piece thereof the foote broad so towards the corner B. then the line A. F. thall before foote broad, and so that the line E.D. also hold foure foote broad: by this meanes you shall have your doore A. E. F. D. seven foote long, and so other ble.

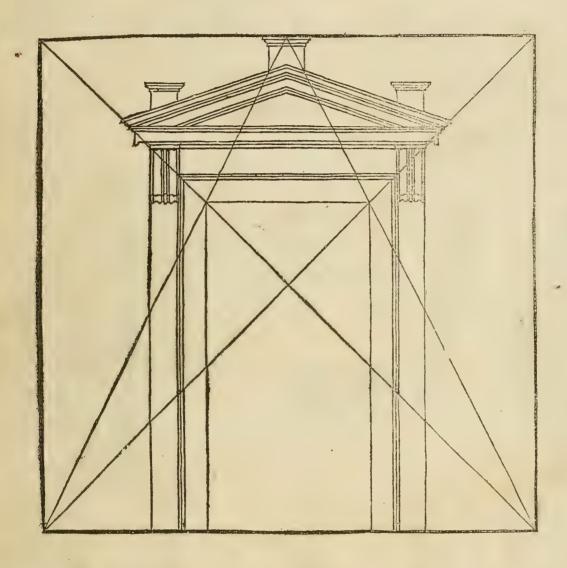


Hep bled to make them, and he doubted of the greatnesse thereof, which it be will make after the rules of Geometry, her must first meessure the breath of the place where he will set it, and there in he must make a halfe Circle: which halfo Circle being inclosed in a Auadrangle, then he shall since the Center by the Diagonall lines: then he must draw two lines more, which shall reach from the swo lowermost corners about the Center, and touch the inst halfe of the Circle about: and where the sard lines cut through the Diagonall lines, there pour most make two Perpendicular lines, which Perpendicular lines shall shew the widenesse of the descent window: the list about it, may be made the sixt part of the Diagonater, being round in breath.



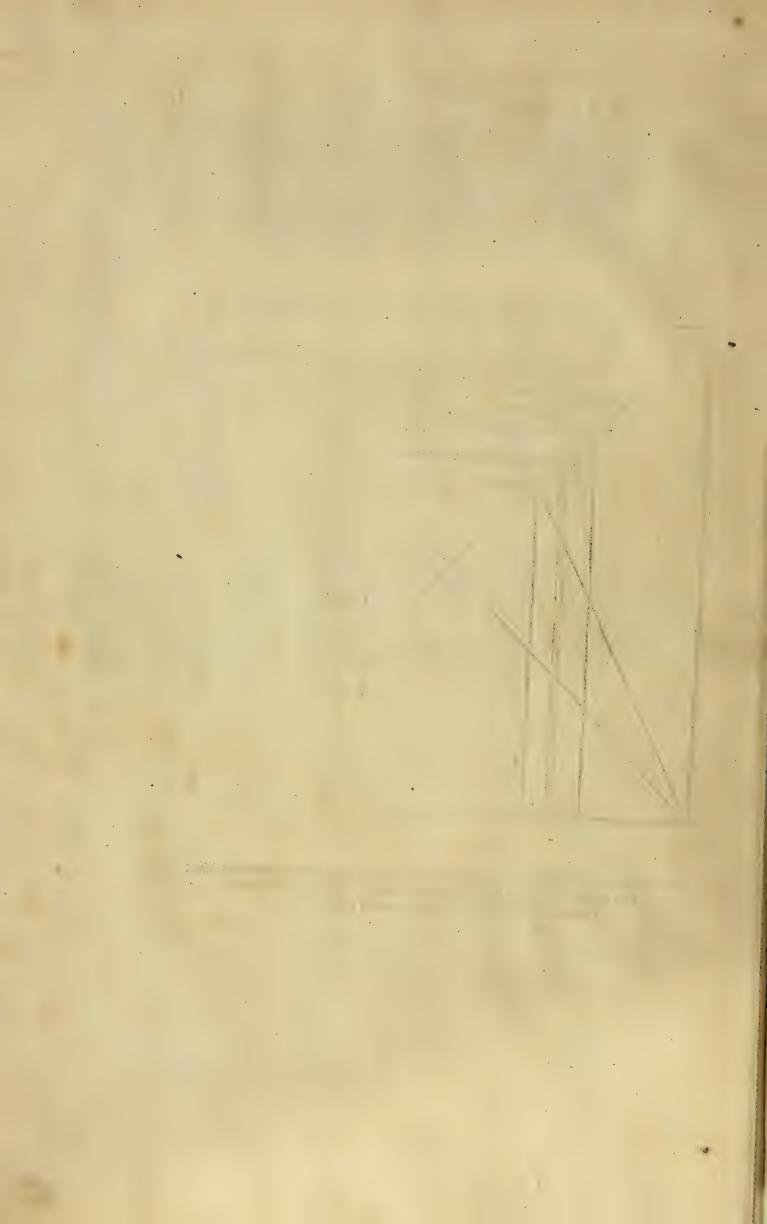
The first Booke. The first Chapter. Fol. 13.

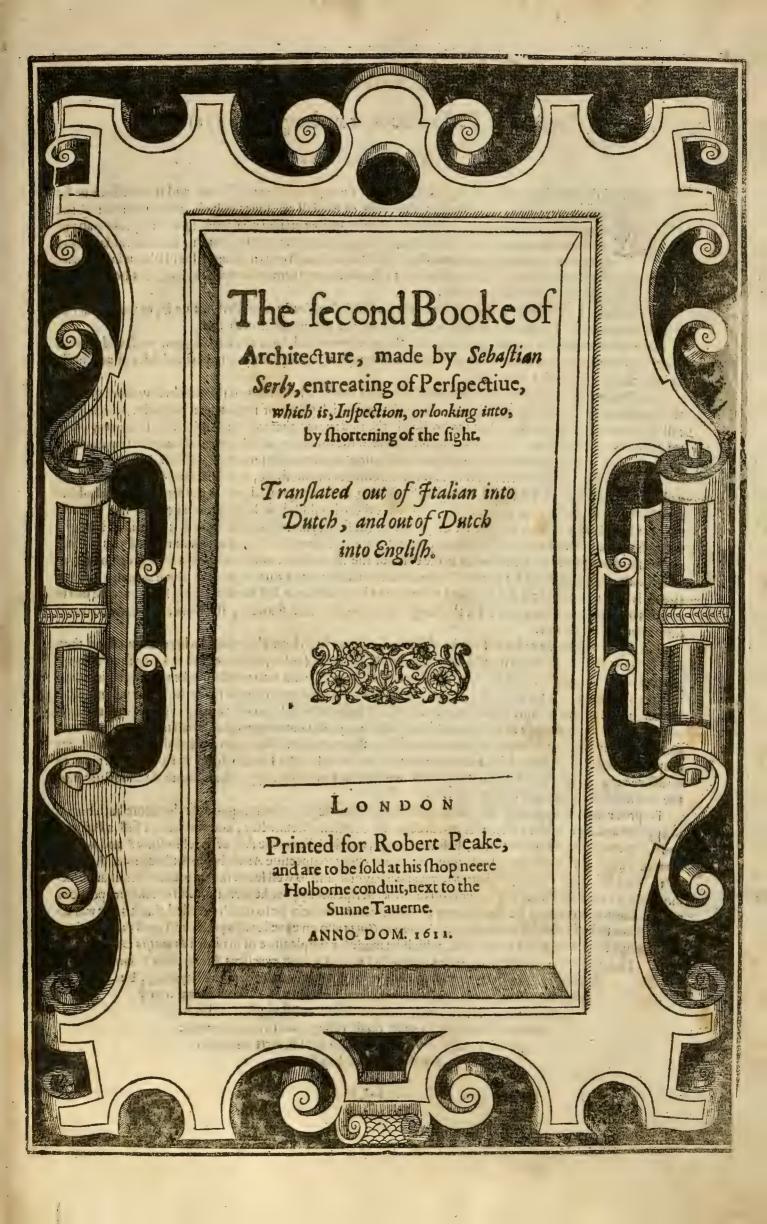
If a workeman will make a Sate or a Doze in a Dempic or a Thurch, which is to be proportioned according to the place, then he must take the widenesse within the Church, or else the bredth of the wall without: if the Church bee small, and have Pstakes or Pillars within it: then he may take the widenesse between them, a set the same bredth in a source square, that is, as high as broad, in which source square, the Diagonall lines, and the other two crosse cutting lines will not onely shew you the wideness of the doze, but also the places and populs of the ornaments of the same Doze, as you see here in this Figure. And although it should fall out, that you have their dozes to make in a Church, and to that ende cut three holes, yet you may observe this proportion for the smalless of them. And although (gentle Reader) the crosse cutting thorow or deciding is innumerable, yet sor this time, less 3 should be tw tedious, 3 shere end my Geometry.



Here endeth the first Boke of Architecture, treating of Geometry, translated out of Italian into Dutch: And now out of Dutch, into English, for the benefit of our English Pation, at the charges of Robert Peake. 1611.

562





The second Booke.

A Treatise of Perspectives, touching the Superficies.

The Second Chapter.



Lthough the subtill and ingenious Arte of Perspective is very difficult and troublesome to set downein writing, and specially the body, or modell of things, which are drawen out of the ground: for it is an Arte which cannot be lo well expressed by figures or writings, as by an vndershewing, which is done severally: Notwithstanding, seeing that in my first Booke I have spoken of Geometry, without the which Perspective Arte is nothing : I will labour in the briefest manner that I can in this my second Booke, to shewe the workeman so much thereof, that hee shall bee

able to aide and helpe himselfe therewith.

In this worke I will not trouble my selfe to dispute Philosophically what Perspective is, or from whence

it hath the originall: for learned Euclides writeth darkely of the speculation thereof.

But to proceede to the matter, touching that the workeman shall have cause to vie, you must vinderstand, that Perspective is that, willeh Virrunius calleth Seenographie, that is, the voright part and sides of any buil-

ding or of any Superficies or bodies.

This Perspective then, consistern principally in three lines . The first line is the Base below, from whence all things have their beginning. The second line is that, which goeth or reacheth to the point, which some call fight, others, the horison: But the horison is the right name thereof, for the horison is in every place wherefocuer fight endeth. The third line, is the line of the distances, which ought alwayes to stand so high

as the hotiton is farre or neere, according to the situation, as when time serueth, I will declare.

This Horison is to be understood to stand at the corners of our fight, as it the workeman would shew a piece of worke against a stat wall, taking his beginning from the ground, where the feete of the beholders should stand. In such case it is requisite, that the Horison should bee as high as our eye, and the distance to see or behold that worke, shall be set or placed in the fittel place thereabouts, as if it were in a Hall, ot a Chamber, then the distance shall be taken at the entry thereof: but if it bee within, on at the end of a Gallety or Court, then the distance shall be set at the entry of the same place, and if it bee in a Streete against a wall or an house, then you must set your distance on the other side, right ouer against it. Butil in such a case the Areete is very narrow, then it were good to imagine a broad distance, lest the shortening fall out to be ouerredious or unpleasant unto you: for the longer or the wyder the distance is, the worke will shew so much the better and pleafanter.

But it you will begin a piece of worke of fine or fixe foote high from the ground whereon you fland, then it is requifite that the Horison should stand even with your eyes (as I sayd before) but if a man should see no ground of the worke, whereon the vppermost part doeth stand (and a man would worke very high) it would not be correspondent with the eyes. In such a case a man must take vpon him to place the Horison somewhat higher, by the aduice of some skilfull workman, which maketh histories or other things voon Houses, thirtie or fortie foote high aboue a mans fight, which is vnfittingly. But cunning workmen fall into no fuch errors; for where they have made any thing aboue our fight, there you could fee no ground of the fame worke, for that the notable Perspective Art hath bridled them : and therefore (as I sayd before) Perspective Art is very necessary for a workeman : And no Perspective workeman can make any worke without Architecture, nor

the Architecture without Perspectiuc.

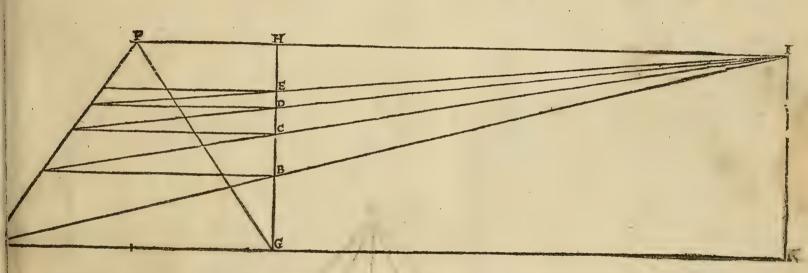
To prove this, it appeareth by the Architectures in our dayes, wherein good Architecture hath begun to appeare and thew it selse: For, was not Bramant an excellent Architector, and was he not first a Painter. and had great skill in Perspective Art , before he applyed himselse to the Art of Architecture? and Rephael Durbin, was not be a most cunning Paynter, and an excellent Perspective Artist, before he became an Architecher And Balthazar Perruz le of Sienna, was allo a Paynter, and fowell feene in Peripective Art, that he feeking to place certaine Pillars and other Antike works perspectively, tocke such a pleasure in the proportions and measures thereof, that he also became an Architector wherein he so much excelled, that his like was almost not to be found. Was not learned Ieronimus Genga also an excellent Paynter, and most cunning in

Perspective Arre, as the faire works, which he made for the pleasure of his Lord Francisco Maria Duke of Vrbin, can testifie; vnder whom he became a most excellent Architector? Inline Romanus, a scholler of Raphael Durbin; who, by Perspective Arreand Paynting, be. came an excellent Architector, witheffeth the lame. Then to come to my purpole; Hay, that a man must be diligent and vigilant in this Arie, wherein I will begin with small things, and then proceed to

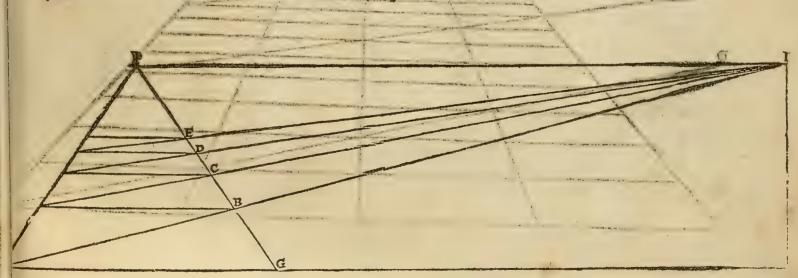
greater; vntill I have shewed you the full Acte and man. ner thereof, as I desire.

The fecond Booke, The fecond Chapter,

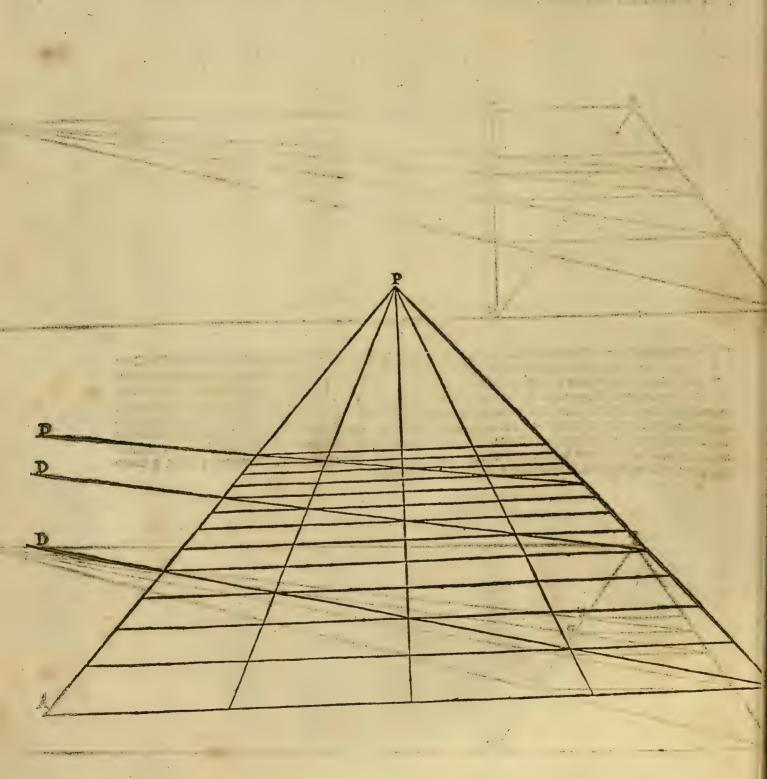
Dthe ende that men by fmall matters may attaine to greater, therefore I will begin to thew hole to Sporten & foure cornerd thing, from whence all the reft shall bee derived. Then the Bale of this soure square thing, shall be A. G. and the height of the Position (as I land befoze) thall bee imagined according to the light, and that hall be P. whereunto all the lines boe runne, as the lines of the floes A. P. and G. P. then at the one ende of the Digabanite rou mult fet a Berpenoicular line, which is G.H. which done, then oralie the Bale A. G.K. long inough, and then out of the Bogifon dain a Paralell og an Equidiffant linefrem the Bale, as far as you will that the eye og fight Mall Cand from that which you will looke on; for how much five more you will have the foure fquare thing to feeme Charter, fo much further you multgoe with your fight I. from H. to behold the four fquave thing. And then, taking H. I. for the villance from the point I. to the corner A. draw a line, and where the line cuttell through the Perpendicular line H. G. that is on B. there the termination of the Hartening of the foure square thing shall be e, as you may so in the figure following. But if you will make more source squares one above the other, byou the same Porison or point : then you muft vam another line from the fortening point of the foure fquare of Duabeant, to the letter 1. and where it cutteth through the Perpendicular line aforefaio, that is at C, there the fecond Duadrant fualbe cut off, and in like fort you muse draw another line to the pount of the diffrance: and where it toucheth the Lead, or Perpens dicular line that is on D. you thall make the third Augogante, the lame may be done with E. and lo you must goe, one till von come intibnder the Popilon.



He rule afozesaid is the perfectele, and you may proone it by the line G. H. which is called the line of the Quabrante: but because it is cumbred with agreater number of lines, and so more tedious : therefore the rule ens faing hall be fhatter, and eafilger to be done then the other: for when the Bale A. G. is drawne, and the two five lines make a Triangle A. P. G. then pon mult brain the paralels of the Bale & of the Boxilon long inough; and asfarre as you will ftand from the worke to fe it, fofarre you mult fet the Berpendiculars I. K. from the poput G. then you must draw a line from the poput 1. to the poput A. and where it cutteth through the line G. P. there thall be the termination of the first Mortened Duadrant: and if you will place more Duadrants bywards from that Dua deant, rou mult doe as I layd before: and although there are other wayes to thorten a Duadrant, yet will I follow this order, as being the mostell and ealielt to be let course in miting.



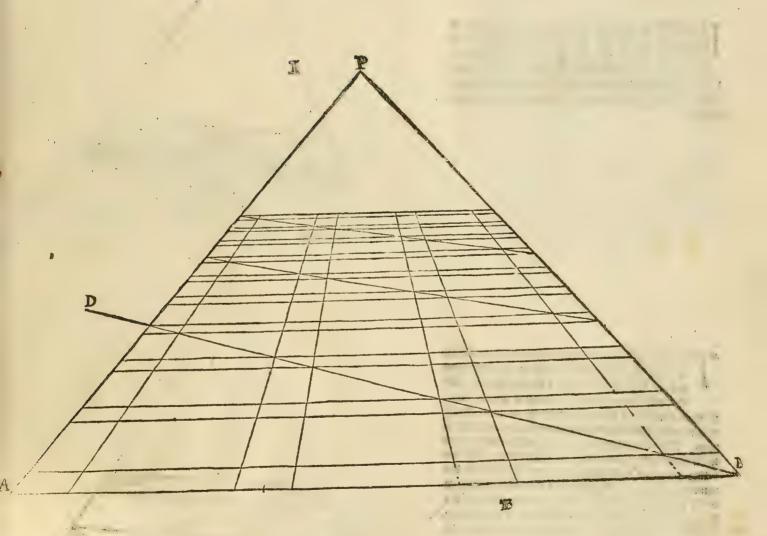
Pan must also ble himselse unto divers distances and grounds, and therefore you must make the ground sollowing, which is of this Quadrantes high, in this manner. First, you must draw the line A.B. as long as the bredth of the worke shall be: which line or Bale, must be devided into so many equall parts as are needfull, which being all drawe to the Porison or point, then you must place the distances as farre as you desire, according to the rule asoresayd, for here is no placeto set it in, although it is a length and a halfe from the Bale, as you see it marked with 1½. Which Bale, because it is of source parts, therefore the first Quadrant containeth streems small Quadrantes, which are sound by the line B.D. sor where that time cutterth through the source lines, which goe to the poynt; there you must drawe the Parales over, that thereby the streem Quadrantes may be somed: But if you will set other Quadrantes by on it, then (as asociated) you must draw another line to the distance D. and where that cutteth through the other lines that reach to the popul, that shall bee the termination of the second Quadrant, containing init also source Quadrantes: The like must bee understood of the third Quadrant, (and more besides if need bee.) But you must also understand, that the lines marked D. runne all the distances, as it is taught besore.



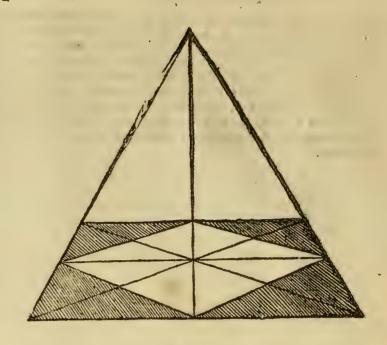
The second Booke.

The second Chapter. Fol.2.

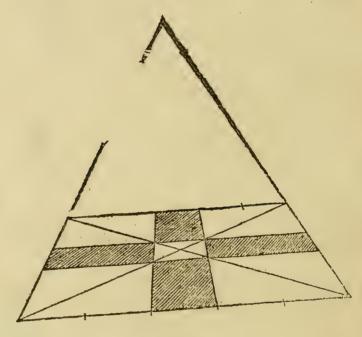
from them, then boon A.B. you must devide the falen or Dundrantes, and draw them all to the Porison; then you will must imagine the distances as you are taught before; and the line D.B. being drawn from the popul B. to the point of the distances; then by enting through of the Porisontall lines, it will sketch the terminations of the Quadrants, you must draw another line to the distances; and where it toucheth the Porisontall lines, there also now must draw another line to the distances; and where it toucheth the Porisontall or Radial lines, there also you must distances of these distances of these stands are from A. as the line or Wase A.B. is long: If you will make divers some in these Andrants, as knotes, in as Imag.



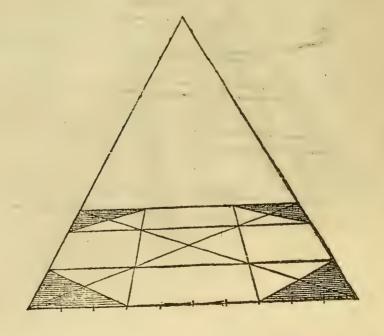
Wie sigure is a Auedrant, consaining in it a Rute or an other Auadrant, which with the popula thereof toucheth the sides of the biter most Auadrant; whereby it is but halfe so great as the ditermost Auadrant, as I have taught pour in the first Buke of Beometrie, and the maner to make this, is thus. First, you must make a Auadrant (as you are taught before) with his disances; and in this Auadrant you must draw thro Diagonall lines, and also the right crosse lines, whereby you may raskly finde the Kote, as you set in the figure directly against this. In this soft you may make the Rotes in the other Auadrantes before set downe, that is, to draw Diagonall and crosse lines in them without seking other disances.

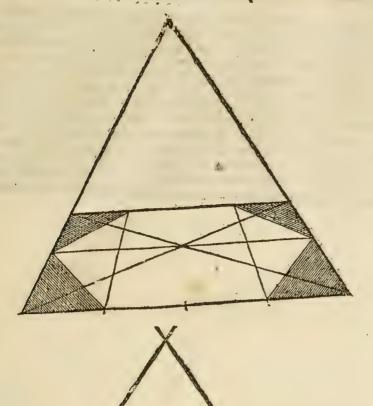


Is this figure there is a crosse theired (to make it)
you must benive the lowest line or Bale of the
Auadrant in suspents; of the which suspents,
one parte is the breath of the crosse: in hich breath
being drawen to the points, the Diegenall lines will
shaw you the Paralol lines of the crosse, to be inhere
were is.



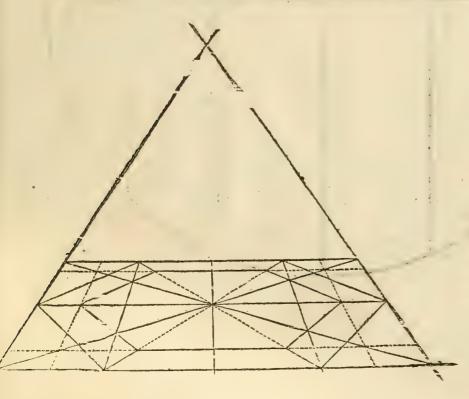
special in divers formers, which formers are all eisticult inough: but that 3 may lake the easiest way so naive as 3 can in this my waiting: Therefore 3 have let down the manner there of hercunto annexed, which is very easily; and that is thus. The Duadrent being mede in shortening, you mult devide the Base into ten equall parts, and in the middle source parts, then the two lines being drawen to the Porton, you shall find the terminations of the Parelellines, by the Diagonall lines, whereby you may close by the eyght corners, as you may se it in the Figure.





DE thortest way to place this fire cornerd Duadrant, in Perspective workes, is thus; When the Duadrant according to the rule asorciaid, is placed in thortening, then you must make source equall parts of the Wales, whereof two thalf be in the middle, and on each side you must leave one, and then draw the lines before to the Porison or poynts: then you must draw the Diagonall lines, and in the middle where they meet together, you must draw a Paralel line cleane through, by the which you shall since all the points to make this sire cornerd Figure.

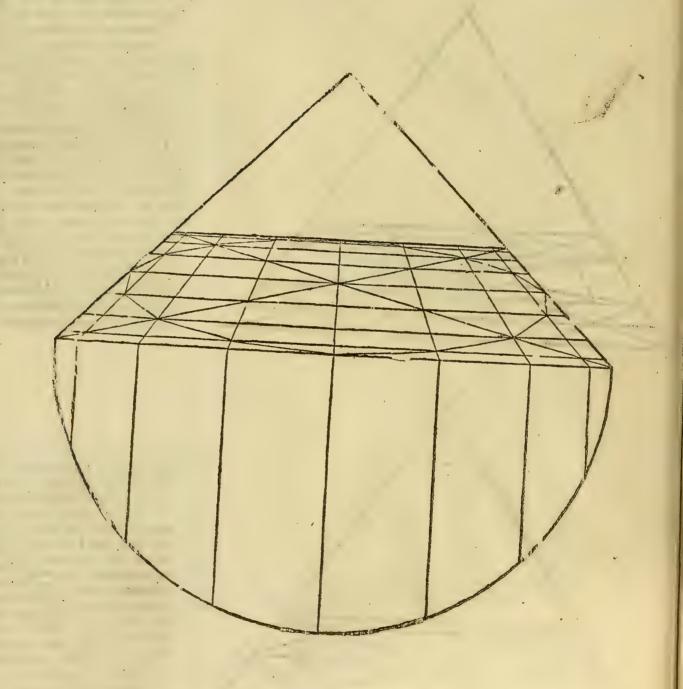
Div I have thelied tidly you thall make limple og plaine Perspectine workes of four corners, of fire cor ners, and epabtiquare comers: Pob I will them, how you thall make them down ble, that is, that every Ample Ligure thal have his band. Withen you have made a plaine Superficies of tire populs, according to the rule afozesayo; them as much as you will have the band orfale to be in bredth, that you mult draw bpoit the Bale, and draw that allo bp to the Posison: and where the Diagonall lines cut through it, there you must vrate Paralel lines both binder and about and then dealy two Diagonal lines more, out of the foure innermalt points or corners of the fire cornerd Superficies; and so poutfall finde your terminations to flut or close by your imaleft fice poputs og comerd Superficies. Which (econo Diagonal, Paralel, and Hos risontall lines are all quawen with paickes, for a difference from the first times; that you may know them one from another:



He like mult bee done with the englit cornerd Superficies or Derfpettine work, for when the fame is made with in a fouresquare, making the Compas of what breath you will, according to the rule afozefayo: their out of enery pount of comer of the erght squre, a small line being Drawen to the Center, vou Hall fin ac the termination to that by the innermos cyght squares and then, when seem popul to popul the lines are oraly in, then one square of Compalle is full made. This eight lqua e forme may bee changed into a round, tout ug the middle on either five, or elfe without, over the points of coiners; a good workeman may easily death a Circuler Mostening round line with his band.

Of Perspective de de la seconda de

Listough I have said before that a man may make a rorno Tircle about an erght square, yet so more scensified from may by this way attaine to a more perfection therein; so, that the more points or sides the Circular some hath, the round Compasse or Circle will be the suller. But to make this Figure, it is necessary to make halfe a Circle before the Bases, and to devide the Circumserence into as many parts as you will, so that they be even; in this some the halfe Circle is devided into erght parts, so that the whole Circle must be sirecen parts; which being done, you must set Perpendicular lines in all the parts of the Circumserence, as farre as to the Bases of the short send Duadrant, these parts being clevated to the Horison, and two Diagonall lines drawen in the Duadrante, they by cutting through the Horisontall or Radiall lines, will she wou the Paralel lines. Then if you will draw a little Plagenall line, beginning at the middle poynt of the Base, from the one side but the other, and so from the one poynt but other typicalds going ever the points; then the somes will be closed, as you see them heere; whereby it will be easte so you to draw around some with your hand, so it is bupossible to bee done with the Compasse to make it shorten well. This signice you must be expect in, and you must also buderstand it well, and so you must those that I have before set downe, before you preceed surface: so, they will serve you so, many pieces of worke hereaster ensuing, as you shall both see and sind to be true.



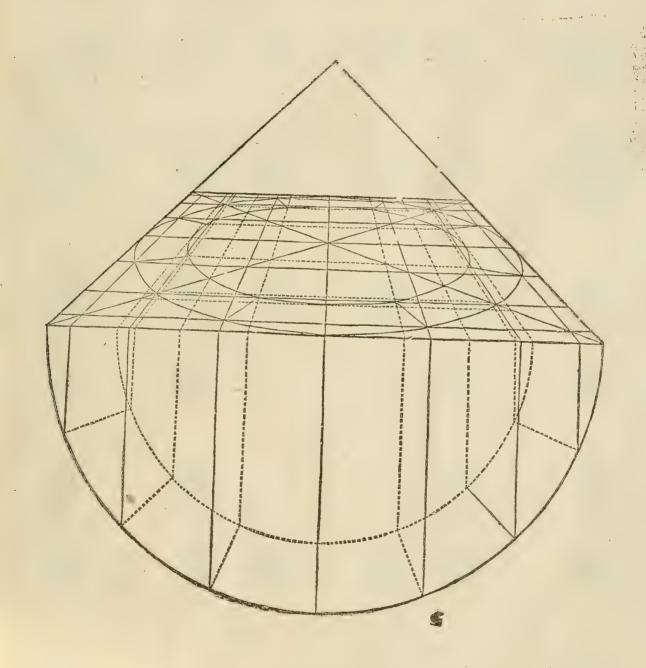
The second Booke.

The second Chapter. Fol.4.

Deu pou boderkand the Figure aforelayd perfectly, then you must proceed further, and that the round Circle also with an edge or border, according to the breath that you will have; you must also make the otternost halfe Circle, and the aforelayd parts of the great Circle drawen towards the Center, will come into the small Circle: the which parts of the small Circle being also set downe in Perpendicular lines with prickes not todarken the other lines, and those like wife that are drawen to the Porison. Then by cutting through of the Diagonall lines, you half sinde the Paralel lines. To make the innermost shortening a round or Circle, according to the first example set downe, as you may see; the first round with perfect lines, and the second with prickes, as you see in this Figure.

But, friendly Reader, you must not be weary to bee long in learning this Figure, or in making it often times, one till you can doe it perfectly and understand it well: for I am income certains, that it will bee very hard unto many men, yet without this, you cannot doe much; and he that can doe it well, shall easily understand and make all the things

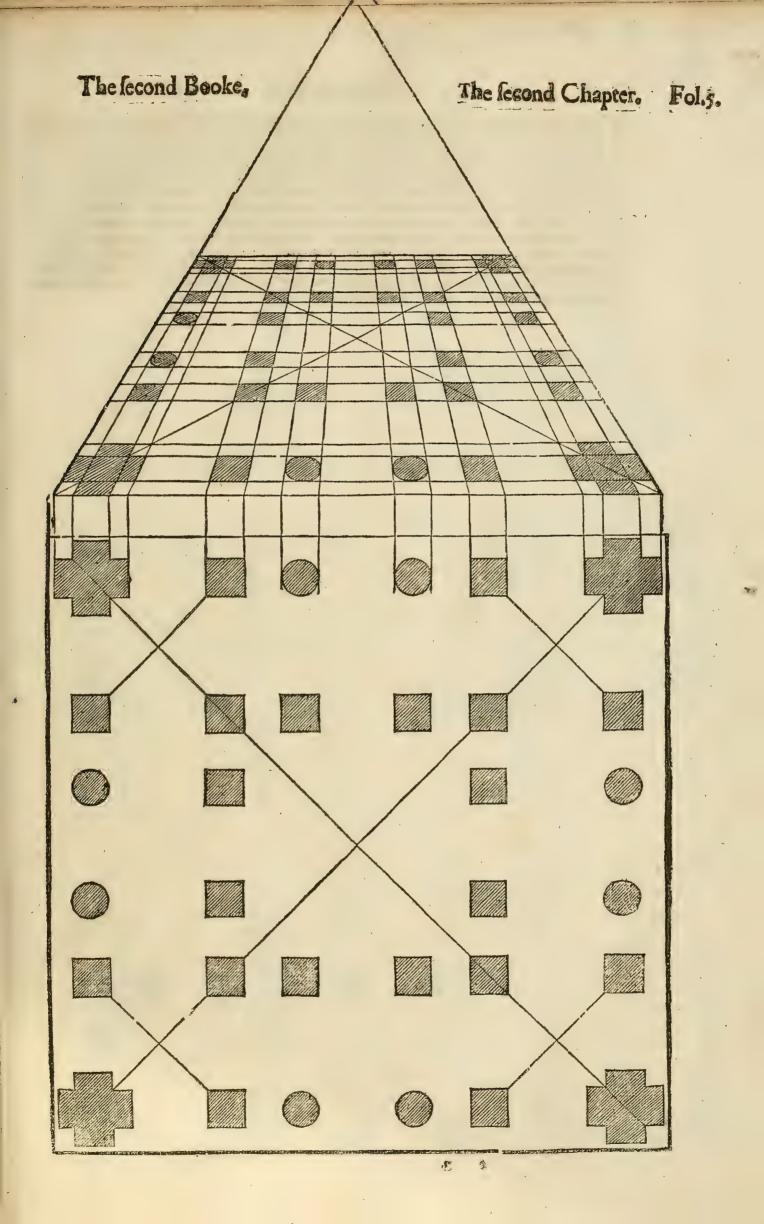
hereafter enfuing.



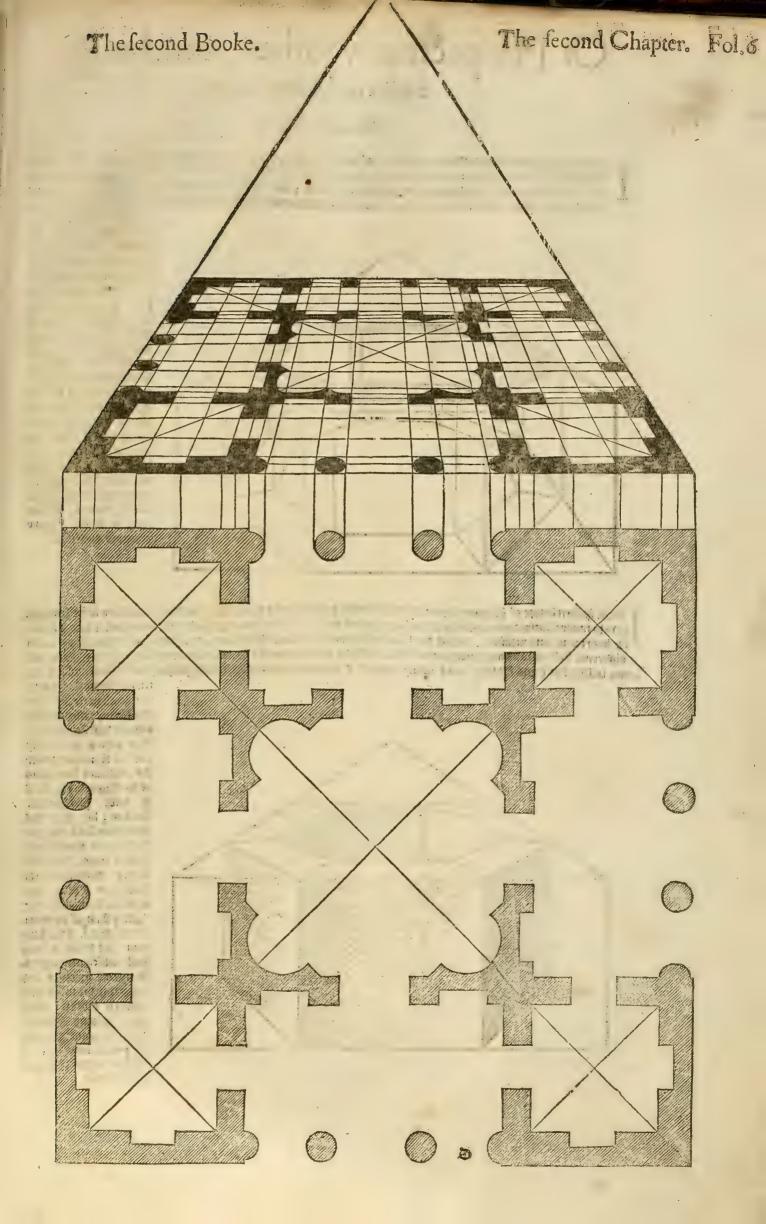
T E fallethout many times that a workeman will thew a House both without and within which to doe, he must place the ground in Perspective some, that he may the surer and better draw that by which hee will have some, and to leave the rest on the ground; if then you will place a soundation in Perspective manner, to make it well, you must

fir a fet it on a flat forme, that out of that you may draw it into a Perspective forme.

To doe this, I have let downe a kinde of open Building, that a man may the eafelier conceine it for a beginning, for when a man can doe this well, he may after that place many other and harder things in Perspective forme. I ned not to take any great paines to write or show how this shortening should be done, because it is so casily and so openly placed in a knure that a man may presently conceause it; for that leading all the lines that goe from the corners and cuts slose of the flat ground to the Bale, which you will make in the shortening; and the same being drawne by to the Portion, tegether with the imagination of the distances: then you may that or close by the shortening source square. Then you must draw the Diagonall lines therein, through drawing the Paralel lines, presently you shall find the way how to some the Columnes and pilasters, so that it is unpossible to saile therein; and especially sorthole that doe well conceaus and understand that, which I have set downe before.



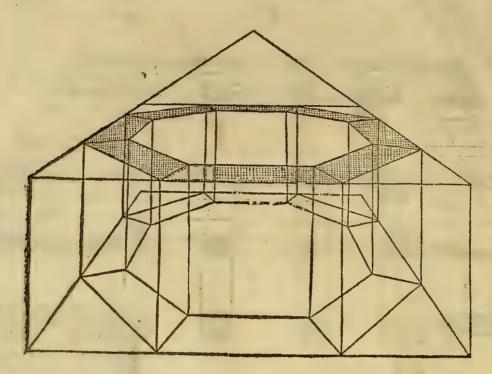
Dis Figure following is somewhat harder then that befoze, but when you goe from the smalest to the greatest, you conceaue things the easier, and specially he that will learne this Arte; he must not leave not resule to exercise any of the Figures befoze set downe, but must vie all the diligence he can to be perfect in them all, and hee must allo take a pleasure to doe them all, otherwise he that will omit now one, and then another, because he can hardly but than do conceaue them (although Jlabour and strine at all times in setting downe these rules to shew all distinctlics) shall little prosit himselfe in this Arte. The manner how to place this ground in Perspective source, is casily conceaued, without any other demonstration: sor you must follow the manner or opperation of the sigure befoze set downe, with this adnertisement; that the two Diagonal lines enermore direct the worke, together with the Porison fall lines: and although a man may their many somes of grounds that are to be placed in shortening, yet these two shall suffice sor this time, because I have other things to entreat off: sor a skilfull workeman, by the helpe of these, may some others for his purpose, and such as he shall have occasion to ble. And if he will exect any piece of worke for a show, he must necessarily sires measure the Ditographic with the same measure that he measures the ground withal, and then place it in a shortening manner, as when time serveth, shall be shewed.



Of Perspectiue vvorkes, touching Bodies or Massive things.

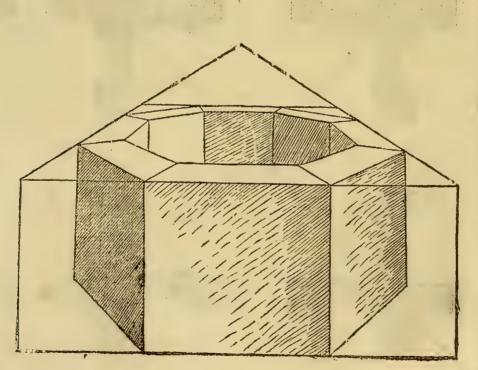
The third Chapter.

Duching the grounds and other Superficies of divers formes, I thinke I have lufficiently spoken. Pow I will speake of Bodies which are drawne by out of the ground: and first, you know that I have taught before, how you thould frame an eyght square forms plainely in it selfe; and then, I have shewed how you should compasse this Figure about, with a border or edge: but if a workeman will shew an eyght square Figure in Perspective



wife, as a Well; then he must first make the ground, as he is taught befoze, as high as hee will, that the fayd Wiell thall than cleuated as bone the ground of fote thereof: there hee mut make the same forms once againe, drawing it to the same Bozison; then from all the opper-Bioff comers of points to the lowest; you must drawe Perpendicular lines as well from the innermoft figures , as from the ottermoff. wherby the through cutting egght square bodies will be formed, as you may lie in the Figure bereunto annered.

Dane spoken beseze of the open frame of a Wiell with eyght porms or corners, which is necessary to be learned, how to make it, before you make the solide body thereof, as this sigure sheweth, which is the same that is before shewed, both some and measure, but all the lines which cannot ontwardly be sine, are hidden; and there is as much difference between an open body and a solide, as there is between the model of a mans body, that is nothing but bones without slesh and summe: and a lighing body of a man covered over with slesh (although it is hidden buter it.)



And as those Paynters are much perfecter that have fone, and perfectly beheld right Anatomies, then others that onely content themselves with the outward bare help of the Superficies, so it workes; for they that wel understand and pers feetly beare in minde the hidden lines, they thall better biderstand the Arte then others, that content themselves only with of the wof outward Superficies. It is berp true that tohen a man hath sufficiently experts mented, practifed and brareth in his mind thefe inward hidden lines, then helping himselfe with the principall, hee map make many perfect things, without bling all this labour.

The second Booke,

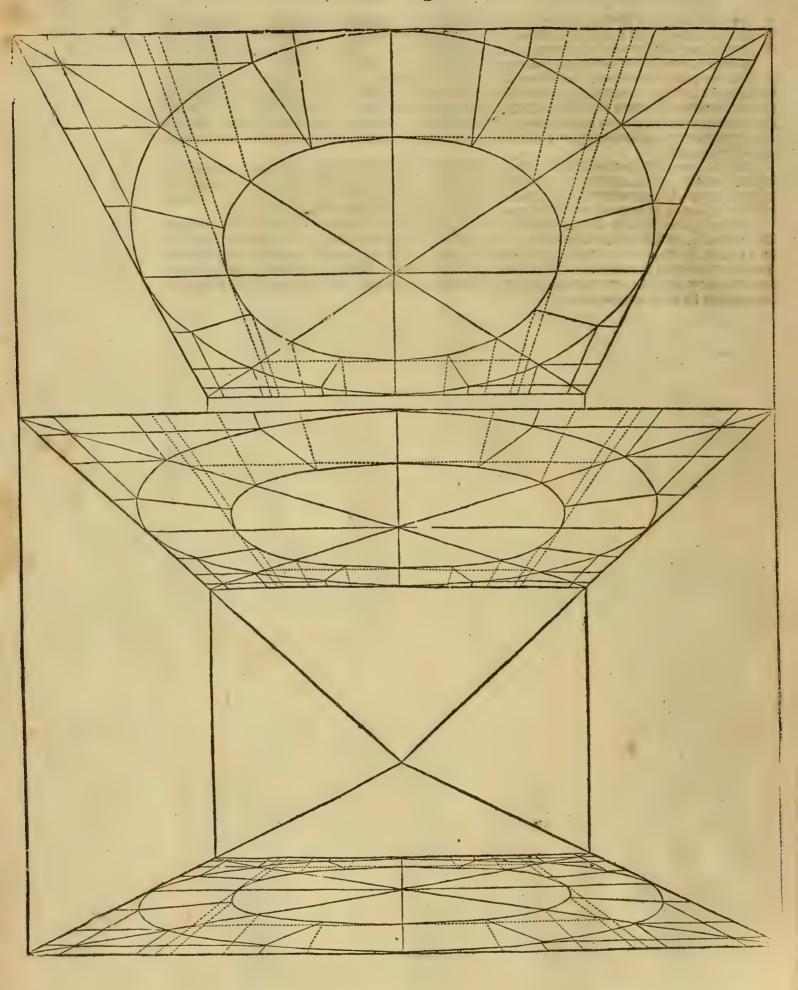
The third Chapter,

Fol. 7.

De these three figures sollowing, every ene is dralone out of the fouresquare, insuch manner as I have taught before and they goe all three to ene Portson or point as they should be, or as need equireth; by the which squires any man may helpe himselse in many things, as I have surther vectored: and he that is perfect in these, may make all kinde of round sornes, and without knowing of these, hee can doe little in round sornes. For out of these significantly make all kinde of round sornes solude or Petramidall Building with Pillars, or without Pillars; and also around winding pairs of Stayers: sorthis Figure will shew you how to make the Stayers round, with other things more, and yet not without your owne industry: sorthethings that by these may be made are wonderfull and infinite, so that you ware not weary, and spare no paynes till you are perfect in them, because that the bowing or Arches of gates and other things will seem hard but o you, as I will bereaster shew you; notive that and in that they take their beginning altogether from these.

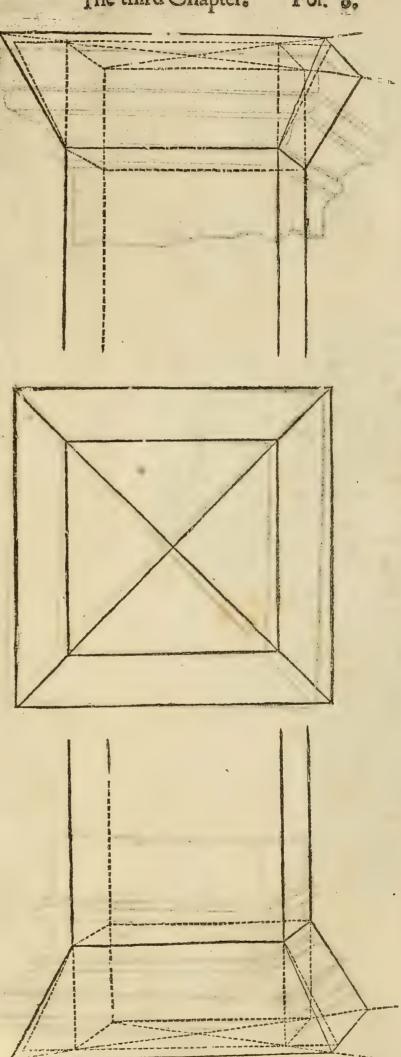
But if any man that descreth to learne this Arte, will at the first understand these figures, as some blantly will take boon him to doe it. I believe certainely, he will be eput to an non plus, and decease himselse; but if by learning all the sommer things, he procedeth unto these as well in Geometrie as in Perspective Arte: Ahen, I say, he is of a very grasse understanding, if he cannot understand or concease these sigures, not the figures that hereafter follow.

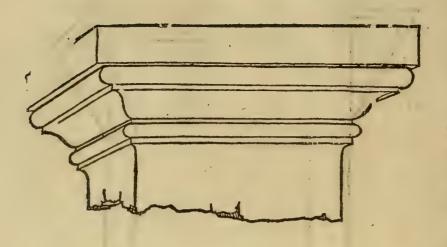
Thele three figures, to freake trueth, are but Superficies; neverthelette, if you draw Perpendicular lines from all the terminations, as well within as without: then you half have a through culting or open body, and the innermost lines covered, then they will be a Hally body: And wonder not, gentle Reader, nor let it be trange but o pouthough Hooc sometimes make along discourse of some things, for (as I say before) they are not only learned by many words and great paines, but it is also necessary that they were showed unto some men playnely by drawing them before them; that they may the better conseque them.

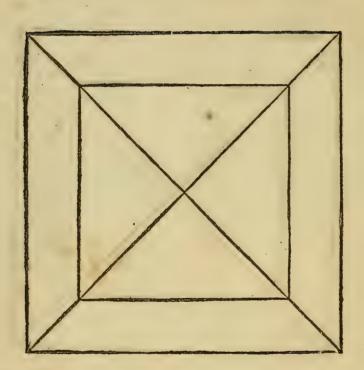


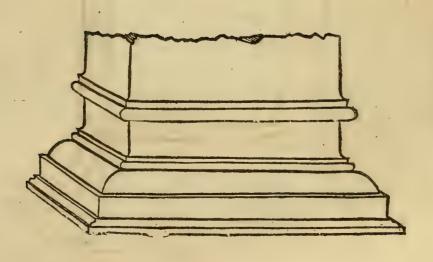
fer-failes that fall downe from high Pils or Hountains, by meanes of tempels with great force and power, when they enter into a Halley, then founctimes they run out of their Channel, and to much groud as they then blurpe boon on the ene fide, fo much they loke agains on the other fide; and to week plerspective works in corner things, for that as much as a man loketh of the poynt or corner twhereon he looketh, to much greater the other point or corner they eth that Handethout, which is showed in the Figures hereunto ancred.

The Reader mult then marke that the square in the middle significth the thickenesse of a fourefquare Columne or Piller, and the bower that is without and goeth about it, fignifieth the thicknesse or bearing cut of the Bales and the Capital. The Figure bnder this platforme is the Balc, and the uppermost Figure is the Capitall; the manner how to thorten them I will thew you: Don mult make the Pillar dat before without thicknes, and tpm it von thall forme the Bales and Capital, making the Paoiceture of bearing out thereofon either ude alike, but you mult draw then lightly as the prickes herein let rowne soe thew row: then draw the fide of the Willar which you will have fine towards the Posison; and having sound how thicke the decreating of thostening fide multbee, by the rules that are flielved in the first part of Aber spectice hook, so you shal have the shootes ning ground of the Pillar, wherein you me & lightly exame the two Diagonall lines long inough through, and from the Bales below, which is sens in the Moztening; you must dialo aline towards the Pozison, which you Mall allo let goe bowne or fincke lofarre, till it reacheth beneath the Diagonall lines, and there thall be the terminations of the shorted ning Bales: and thus you le that the Pers spectivenes taketh somewhatoff from them, that is, the space betweene the pornts and the full blackeline; then from the terminations to the other bitermost point of the Bales, you must draine a Paralel line buder the ground of the Pillars, so long that it may touch the Diagonal lines, and there you thall ande that which is taken of from the Bales on the one live, and given to them on the of ther five, and the Protecture of the Bales themeth, that the one point is drowne inwards, and the other commeth further out, then the oppermost line of the Bases being also to the Worlson: then opon the shortening five by a line you finde the third parte of the Bales below, and that which is here spoken of the Bales, you must bnderstand the same also of the Capitals.



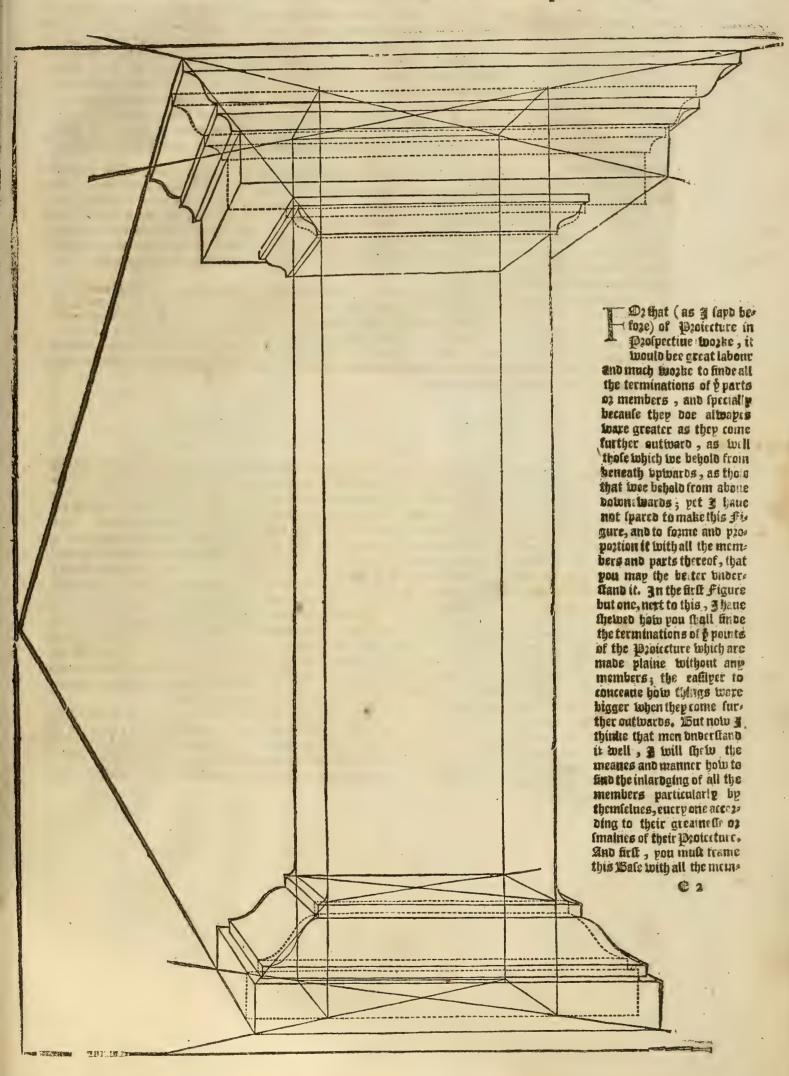






DE other theé Figures are the fame which are thewed before; the first were hollow, but these are perfect and folioe with all their members, and although that in the Figures before I have not the wed how you thould forme and frame thefe members, which in trueth would be a very confused and trons blesomething to set downe in writings therefoze I have only the wed the first terminations, that a man may keepe them well in his memory, and in thefe prefent Figures I have thewed how they thow in a mans light, that you map lee the effect that they worke: but from benceforward because (as I said before) it is a troubled fome thing, I will make another forme of them with all their members by darke lmes: and then (according to my abilitie) A will fet downe the manner bow to finde the terminations of the members one after another, fo; all of them grow a little one over, or more then the other.

Wint you must consider that these Bales and Capitals on the one lide give inward, and on the other side beareth out, which pou must well remember, that you may first bee well instructed herein touching that which you will make. Fozitistrus that the Theoricks confideth in the buder-Chanding; but experience is gotten by practice and right ble or handling: Therefore the most notable Paynter Leonardus Vinci, was never pleased not satisfied with any thing that he made, bringing but little worke to perfection, laying, the cause thereof was that his hand could not effect the buder Canding of his mind: And for my part, if I thould bo as he die, I thould not, neither would I luffer any of my morks to come forth: for (to lay the truth) whatforner I make of whote, it pleafeth menot: but (as I sayd in the beginning of my worke) that I had rather exercise in worke that small talent, which it hath pleased God to bestow bpo me, then suffer it to lye and rot buder the earth without any fruit; and although 3 thall not pleafe thereby lach as are curious, to let downe the ground and perfection of al things, yet at leaft I thall helps youg beginners that know little or nothing thereof, which hath alwayes beene my mtent.



bers, and with the right protecture there of, to be without any those ing before, yet pourmed draw it lightly with a piece of Lead, or some other thing, as it is thewed but you here with pricks; then in the ground or foot of the Pillar you must draw the two Diagonall lines long insuch out, and thereby (as I sape before) you chall see the diminishing and the increasing of the particular parts of the crease of the late Base, whereas the workers then at each the crease of the Base, beare much more broader and langer then those that are marked with the prickes; then at each comer of the Trease of the Base you must draw an upright line almost as highes the first crease of the Base (although I have done it) but open the bettermost popul not to comber the worke within: then you must draw the opportunit comers of the first Crease it ith prickes also, toward the Porison, which downs words will couch against the time opportunity and there shall be the terminations to close or shut up the second great Crease with a full blacke line: then draw another blacke line from the inacrease popul of the Crease opwards to the Porison, and there the shortening Crease shall be closed.

And as this Creak or Plinthus is closed and drawen on all tides with blacke lines, to you multices with all the content in the first marked. Bate you draw a helding time to the insert of the Bate, for when from the upperment corner of the first marked. Bate you draw a helding time to the insert of the greates. Creak trith the blacke lines, by it you shall lightly find the terminations of all the parts or members, drawing the corners of the first Bate towards the Horison. And when you have formed all the inners most corners of the Bates, by the Horisonfall line you may easily doe the second, and by the Paralel lines the ottermost of all; although by the lines of the distances, you may bring the fail corners somewhat never as you map see by the Diagonall lines. But at his time I will not speake of that distinct or hard worke, so he that hat have invertigate

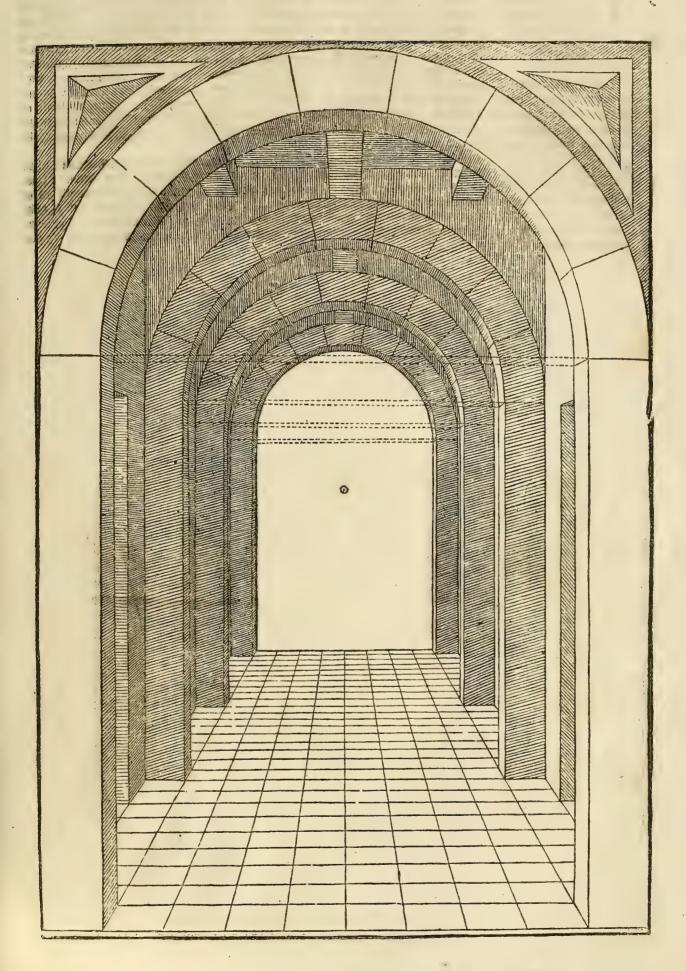
ding berein, may herewith helpe himselfe.

That which is here layd of the Beles, you must also knowns and of the Coinices, oncly thet energy thing is contrary, and where you let Perpendicular lines below, which cut through the Positentall or Radiall lines, so you must also fall about the Lead lines or Catheten by on the Positentall lines, as you may better seit and learne it in the Figure, then it can be expressed by words: and you must not be afraid or abafted, although at sirst you cannot conceauc it, for that by practising you shall in time sinde it, for it is not sayd that a man shall or can learne all things at once in one day; by this Cornice you may make all Cornices, bee they higher or lower, harder or easier, alwayes drawing every member and part towards the Porison as it should be done.

Athough there are divers marners a mayes to place Columnes one behind the other, Canding busines ground in Perspective wise, thereby to make Postals, Balleries and other things, get this hereunto annexed is the each First, you must make a Paurment with a quantitie of foure corners Quadrants, as it is also showed in the beginning of this Nome; which may be of fach bredth, as you will : Sony that thefe foure foure Cones are two forte broad, which thall be the thickenesse of a Dillar : betweene the tive first Dillars beneath in the breath, there thall be erght fquare flones, and the height of the Willars made of lobat quantitie you will; and they being raised toward the Position, then you must draw two tenerall lines over both the Pillars, and then out of the middle of the first line you must make two haife Circles about boon the flat five before, and devide them in as many parts as you will; inhich parts thall be exalme to the Center of the halfe Circle, flanding in the oppermont line: then out of the middle of the two fenerall lines you must draw the leffe halfe Circle, and all terminations of the flat Arch being drawne to the Positon, then the fird Arch or Gate is made: the other two Dillars uploards drawne to the Boxilon, then the fird Arch of Gate is made: the other two Pillars opwards thall also Cand egapt Quadrants dillant from the first Pillars, which will make a foure comed place on all fives: containing 64. fquare flones: and you must doe with this gate as you did with the first, enely (when they are all of one wydenesic as these are) you need not denide the Arches againe, for the Posifentall lines of the Cones of the Circl Arch will thew you the terminations of all the other Arches, and also how long the Ballery mult be, and how many Arches it mult containe. I have placed no Arches here in the floce, because I would not cumber you to much at this time; but I will speake thereofhereafter perticularly.

The two Dezes on each five are both partly covered with the Pillars, but the topoencies of them is of foure Duas dientes, believe that from the corner of the dozes to the Pillars on each five there is two Duadrantes, as you to the halfe thereof; and the other halfe you mult suppose to bee behind the Pillars. The beames above the Arches which beare up the Chamber above, you may well guelle, although I write not particularly thereof: I have not like wife let the Bales nor the Capitals upon these Pillars, because they hould not darken them to much; but in another place I

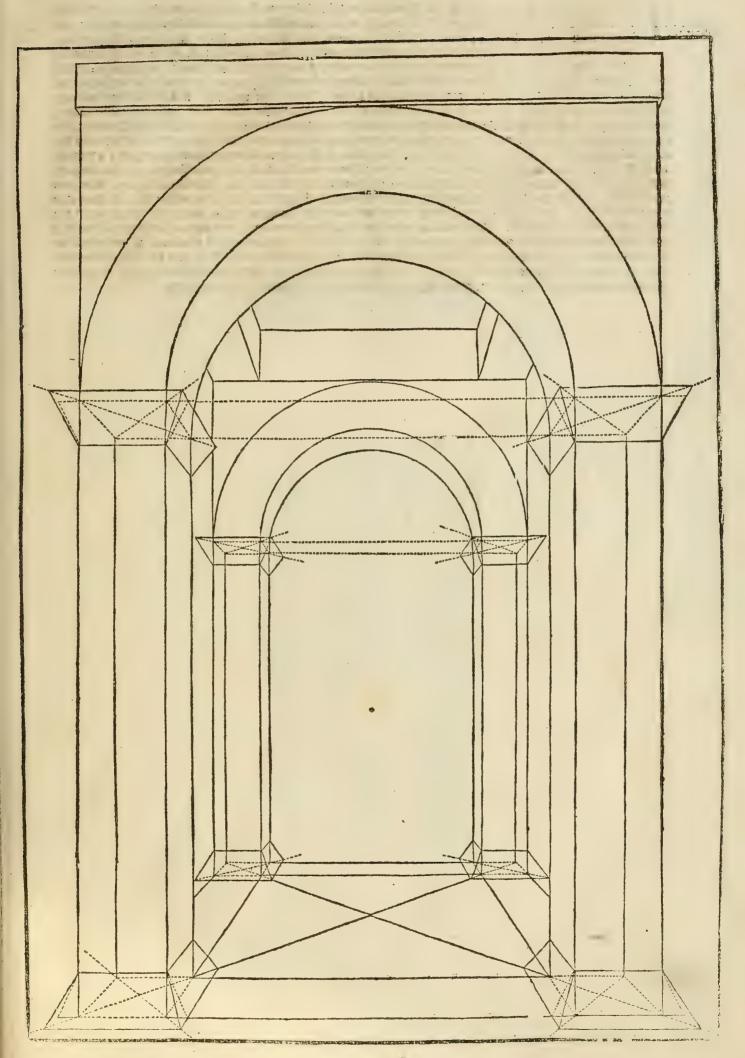
will also entreat thereof.



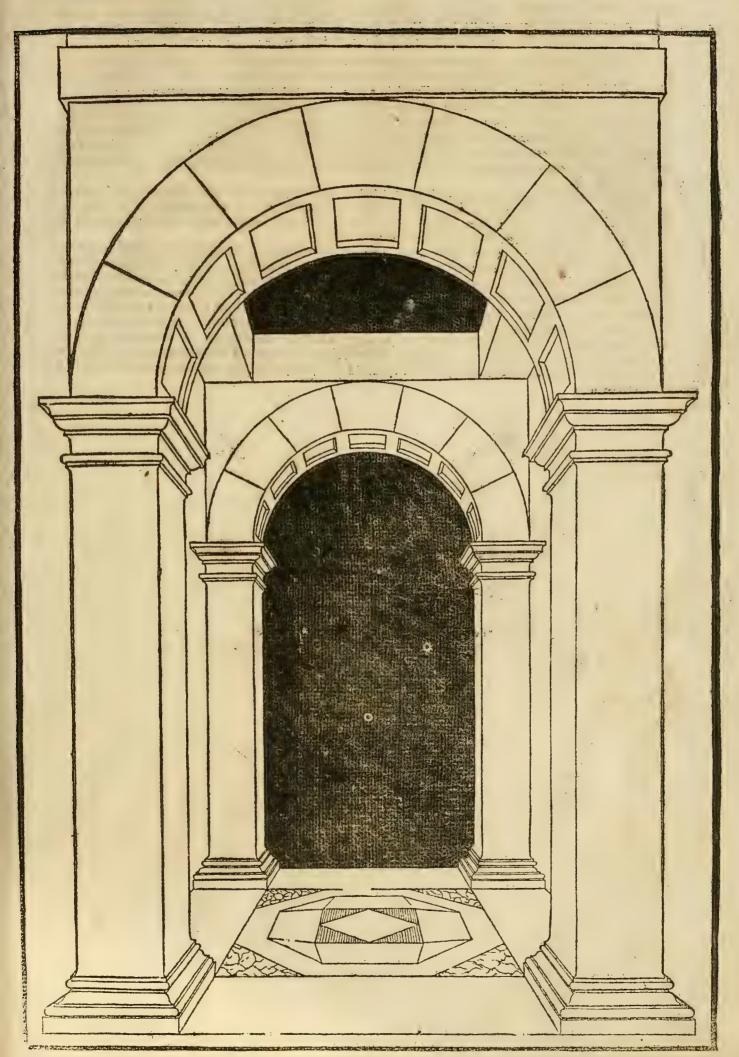
These two Bowes da Arches are enely made to know how to isyne their Bases and Capitals to them, whereofin two several places I have spoken before, and thewed how they rise on the one side, and sall or decrease in sight on the other side; that a man may the better learne how to too them: so in trueth, if a man could show it but o pour in effect, you would the easilyer buderstand it; but to let it downs in writing or Figures as I doe, that men hecreafter might know and learne them: it is requisite to entreat of them more at large, and that you may the better discorne and perceive the populs of the find lines from the other populs or corners of the blacke lines; therefore here I have placed the popul of the distances and the Porison downsward; and have placed the Pillars in other manner by on this ground without Duadrant stenes: In this manner set the breath of the two sirst Pillars doon the Bale of such thickenesse as you will, and draw them inwards, towards the Borison, then you must imagine the distances, as I have already taught you: and these distances are set on both sides, and on exther point of the distances you must draw a line both toward the right and elect populs corner of each Pillar.

These Diagonal lines will not energ their you the thickenette of the first or formost Pillars when they shorten, but also the thickenesse of the two other Pillars which sand inward, which are all marked with prickes (and as I have likewise said before) that which is here sayd of the Bales of the Pillars, the same also must be boderstood by ward of the Capitals: touching the thickenesse of the bowes or Arches boderneath, I have shelved in the Pigure before, how you must place the Center in the middle of the source crosse point lines, to draw the halfe Circumserence: The source square or Anadrent above, is as great as that below on the ground; Aused not shew how you shall make it, so you

feit plaine enough in the Figure.



Dis Figure is like the former, onely that the members of the Bales and Capitals are added thereunto; thereby to make it more perfect buto you, and to the woon gow a thing will fland when it is full made and finished, als though I have thewed it before a neverthelette, when a man is perfect herein, then he may by practife belpe himfelfe well inough without all this labour, bling discretion and bearing in memorie that, which he hath imprinted in his mind: Foz in trueth, by this meanes (I meane the ground) a man may by practile make many things; which if they be made with discretion, and by a workeman, will alwayes beautifie the worke, as these bowes or Arches do, which binder are denided with Duadzantes, as you may let them. There are, as you know, fir two Centers to forme the Arche buderneath; now a wife workeman mult not alwayes feke for the perfection of the edge of thefe Quadrants; but for crample, Say that the Arche underneath is decided into enght parts, whereof fire fiall be for the Duadrant, and tipo parts for the edge or border that runneth about it: now you mult begine the space betweene the one Center and the other, also in epght parts, but they mult thosten og leden a little, that is, the neather part against the opper; & then the compate being let some what lower, and made narrower : then you must deal the bypermost booder, and then the compaste being fet a little below the neathermost Center; you must in like fort drawe the other edge or border: after, you mult fquare or denide the Duadrants, leaving the space betweene both, once to broad againe as the other, which mult be drawen by fowards the Porison; and as much as you will make the Quadrant linke: you mult also draw out of the last Center with the Compasse. And in this manner a man may make divers formes and compartements (but as I have (atd) you must make them all with judgement, and therefore it is very convenient that a man speak be well in-Aructed therein; for that bling onely the princical terminations, you mult make the rell by practife: But Jam of opio nion, that some rigozous Perspective men will take hold of these my words, (to whom I answere) that if they meane I have failed or done amile, let them prome what difference there is betweene faying and boing.



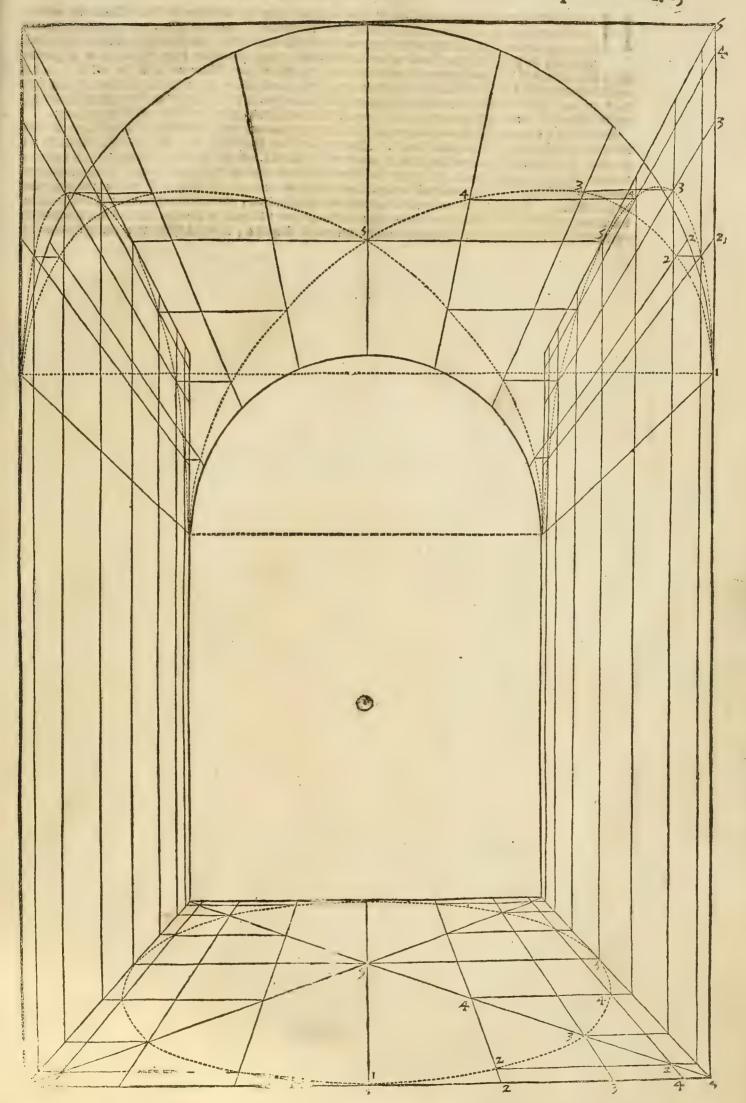
De manner how to make a croffe rose of a Ballery of House in Perspective works, is alwayed very translet some to thew it but any man; and therefore also, it is much more troublesome to declare it in writing sermen hereafter to understand it. Penerthelesse, because it is very necessary to be knowne, I will doe the vell I can to the wit.

First, von must chuse the broth and height of the greatest Arch or Bow that you desire to make, and then by the distances you must make a perfect horisoning Dandrand, and also a less Bow or Arch. The greatest Arch before halbe devided into egypt equall parts, and those parts must be drawns towards the Porison to the smale Arch, which being done, then you must set those parts of the greatest Arch, below upon the Base; and with the helpe of the Porisontall and Diagonall lines, you may make a societing Tircle suithin the Quadrint, as in the other places before you have bone raught. The terminations hereof thall be 1.2.3.4.5, which shall be set opwards beside the great Arche, as you say that there also marked with 1.2.3.4.5. Without this round below I have drawne the Paralels with prickes to the wall, and where they end, there you must set all your Perpendicular lines opright, which are come out of the Paralel lines of this Circle.

Then you must draw the ferminations aforesayd, which are placed about, along by the Perpendicular lines with lines to the Porifon; and where the sayd Porifon all lines out through the Perpendicular lines, which ere drawne by from velow; there you must make halfe a shortening Circle: and that which is marked on this side with Ciphers, must

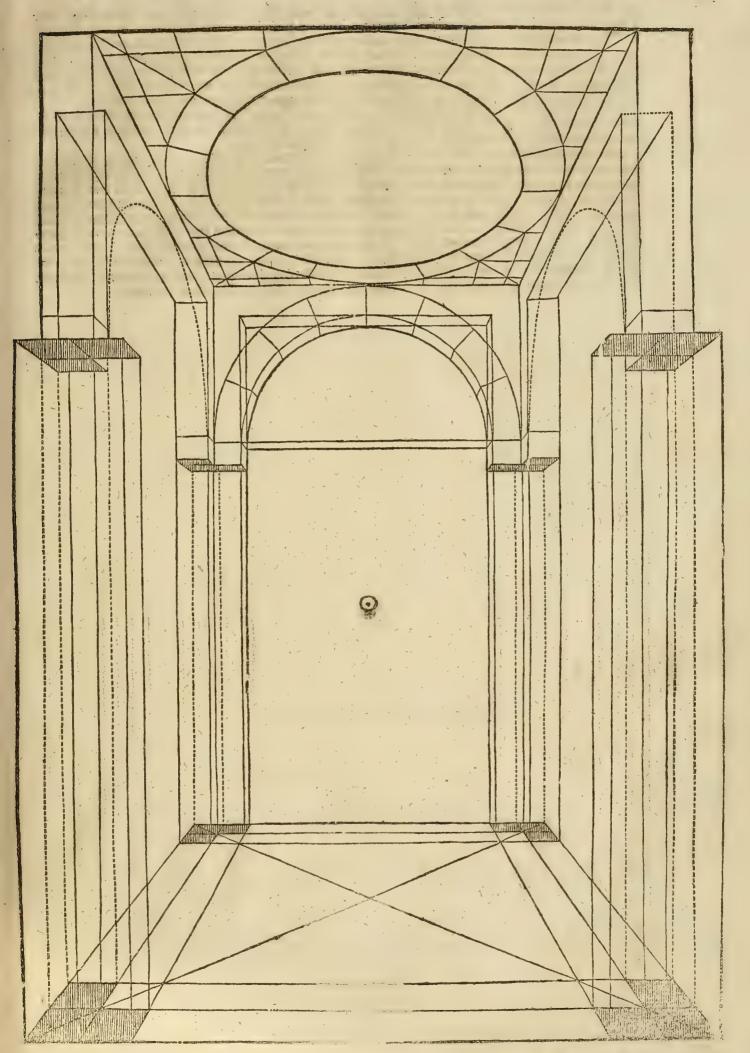
also be bnoreffeed to state on the other, as you like it in the Figure.

These tind halfe short ring Eureles being made, then you must draw a right blacke line above out of each of the middles, which are marked 5, and where that custoff through the middlemost line, which goeth from the greatest Arch to the Popison, thereshalve the terminations a also the middle of the cross works; and then out of all the ferminations of the two halfe Circles, you must draw crosselines on the sides, and where every one of them following an Popis sential, touched the Arch marked with 2.3.4. there the ferminations shall kand to forme the halfe Circles in the crosse, through the which a man with a stedfast hand from termination to termination shall make a shortening halfe rounde crosse with prickes, as both on the right and lest hand you map plainely se in the Figure. In this manner the worke thould goe, although it stood somewhat out at the sides; but it is better first to print it well in your memory, before you seeke an other forme where the Popison Candeth on the one side, that then you may the casilyer make that which is time on that side.



Aning shewed in crosschoolse on both sides, how you should place the Arches on the sides in shortening manner and drawne them up out of the ground, although that they be single: now will I shew you a hollow Arche, and the maner how to shorten it: But before I proceed thereunto (for it is very combersome and distinct) sirst I will she you the Pilaisers that should corrie the sayd Arches: which Pilaisers kand so plainely in the Figure that I shall not need to take much paines to sayte of them. In this Figure I have not made the sirst Arch, that I might not darken the sight of the Arches on the sides, which Arches on the sides, I have also but marked how they shall stand, and are alwayes drawne out of the fouresquare Quadrant, as you so by the order of the soure square Quadrant, but the hindermost Arch which standeth not in the way, I have drawned placed it also in his soure square.

Aboue in the top orrote, I be we made the round forme, whereof you may make a kettel or Aribunall; and you may also make it thus, when it is somewhat soncke. Houching the source Pilatisters, they (as I have taught before) are sound by the Diagonall lines comming from the poynt of the distances, and also that each Pilatister is three cornerd: standing like a three cornerd hooke, and on each end (the Arch resteth whereof there shall be source) two Arches before, and two on the sides, so that the roose will be right source quare, wherein you may make cross worke or other manner stados works. And if you will make other kindes of works by the same; you must alwayes follow this rule: I tem, where you can not well understand my writing, you must believe your selfe with the sigures, which sigure also standeth open, so that with a little labour; a man may easily conceauc it altogether, although there were nothing spaken of it.

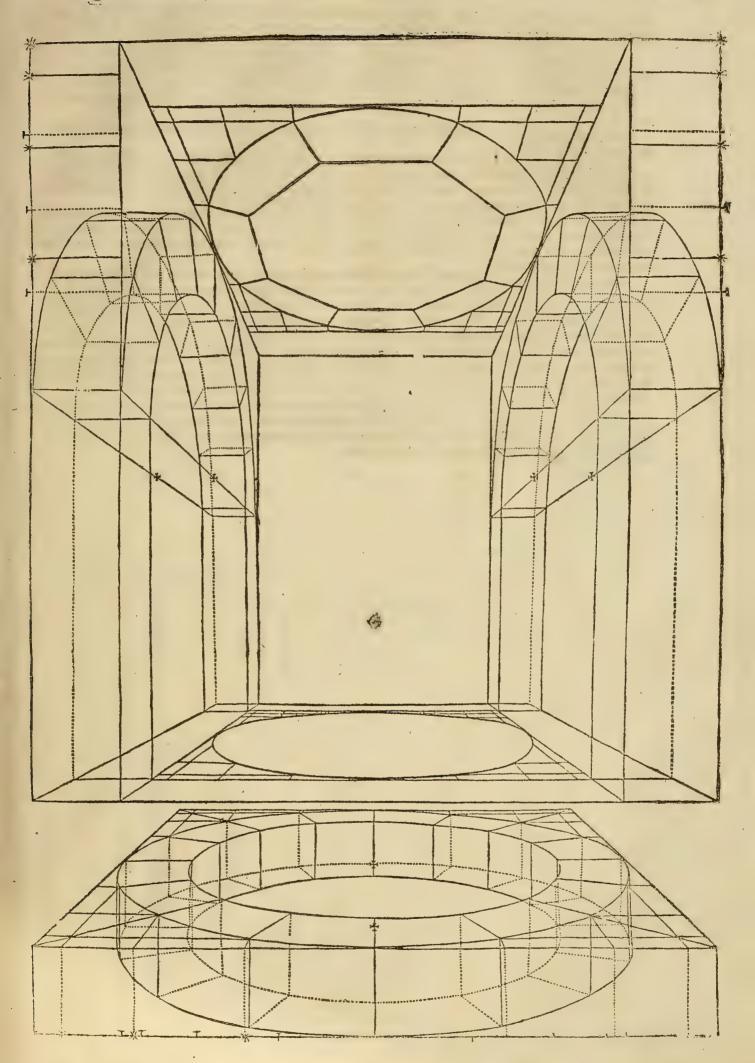


Thinks byon the third former manner Superficies, wherein I have sufficiently thewed you the manner how to frame a round body; but in this Figure I will she wit more perfectly. Therefore a man must imagine that the round Body lying below in his fouresquare is made, and shall serve for the two Bowes on the sides. This Body then being made (as I have shewed before) and as you see it better now, you must first set it, where the Arches begin about the Porison. And the same Perpendicular lines which sand corner wise from the middle of the source cornerd body, must be set like Paralel lines on the right selfs so wards from the two Arches, there (at it is a sozelsia) to direct the Porisonall lines, as you may set it plainely in the Figure. But you must understand, that the two crosses below in this Body, are the two Centers to draw the sones of the Arches both above and below, they also so nific the Centers of the Bowes boon the Porisonall lines within the Arches.

Pon mult also know that the blacke lines doe forme the Treamference without, and the prickes of this betoken the forme within, which is covered in the Arches: so that the Arches do shew through to be made of pieces, of the which pieces a man may learne so make divers. Compartements underneath in the Arch. Pow when a man can make this Arch well, then hee shall not neede kill to take all this labour, but by two principal lines helping himselfe with pricks, he may frame the Arch; and specially, because that the Arch which should come before, covereth or hidest part of the Arches on both Ades: which Arch Thave not made here, that I might not darken or shadow the other shortening Arch. Peither need I write any thing of the Circumferences above in the top or Roofe, (nor the eyght corners within) so that in the next Figure you shall see them; neither will I speake any thing of the Circumferences in the ground, so they are made (as I have taught you herefolore of all others) and of the round body below (of the which

there has beene more lago) a man may make many other things which are not here to be spoken of.

The fecond Booke.



place Pillars with their Arches open grounds of platformes, I thinke there is sufficient spoken before; and what some I have spoken of source square Pillars, is also to bee onderstood of round Columnes, sor that a man much take all round things, out of source square things as well the Spira of the Base, as the round of the Capital. We that can make all the Figures asociard perfectly, and particularly this last body, shall beloe himselse well, and not oncly to doe the like things, but also to do many more. If I should in this small Treatise shewall that I could set downe, it would make a most great Tolumne; and peraduenture I should want time to set sooth the rest of my Booke, which I have already promised; sor there are many things that belong to Building, which need not to bee set downe in Perspective worke.

Let be now begin to rayle the Building berelet downe out of the ground, which before, and at the one five is lane,

as I promifed before to thew you.

The Mortest and surest way is to mak a ground with many Auadrants; and imagine that it is mete with the Fot, with the Elle, or other measure: But between with the enery Auadrant for two foot, and as before there are four Auadrants from one Pillar to the other; and the Pillar also containe tha Auadran, there Hall also be four Auadrants by ward in the lengthfrom one Pillar to the other, as you map for it also gether in the Figure.

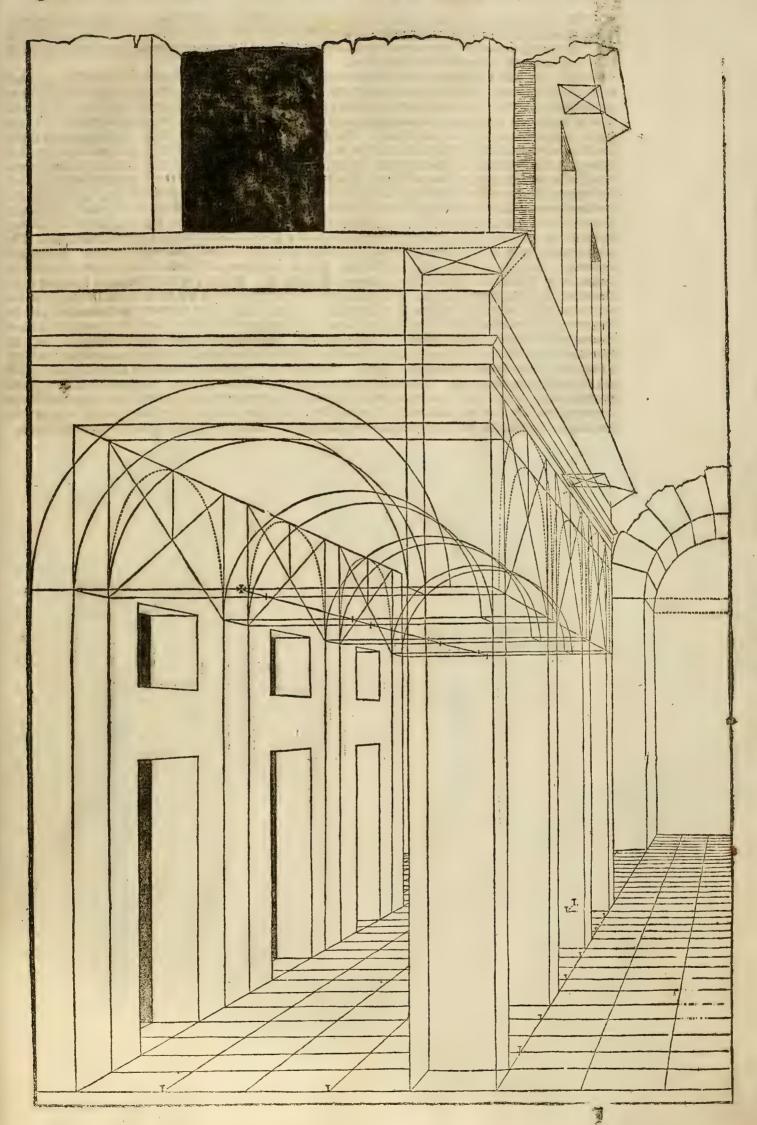
The Pillars then being let of such height as you desire, then the Arches pointhem must be made; and the manner how to make them, you may expressly se in the Figure. And although you cannot see the Arches that are behind them, yet I have made them here that you may see their terminations, they are in some places drawne with full blacke lines,

and in fome places with prickes.

About the Arches fou multmake the Architrane, Frile and Cornice; the Projecture whereof, you must make as I have favo and taught heretofore, that is, how they make their corners against the two Diagonals lines, and by the like rule you hall also make the oppermost Cornice, as you may so in the oppermost part, where the small Quadrant with the Diagonals lines stand. The doores that stand under in the Gallery, are each of them two Quadrants broad, and source Quadrants high: below in the ground there are certaine takens which she like Payles, which signifie the wydenesse of the windowes about the Cornice: which windowes if they ston whole there, then they would be twice as high as they are broad. The other Payles opwards between the shortening Pillars, are also the breath of the story sening Pillars, which (as I sayd before) are all source Quadrants high, but they are partly covered with the Cornices. The part of the Arch which standed at the ende, is separated from this Gallery, as the ground also sheweth it.

Jhave here made no Bales noz Capitals, that the other things might not bee confounded: but you must buder. And that they must be placed in the worke, as is sufficiently before themed. And by this rule you may draw divers Buildings out of the ground, as in the Figure following thall be thewed in divers formes. The Centers of the Arches

you la them marked, Canving all opon one Posiscrialiline.



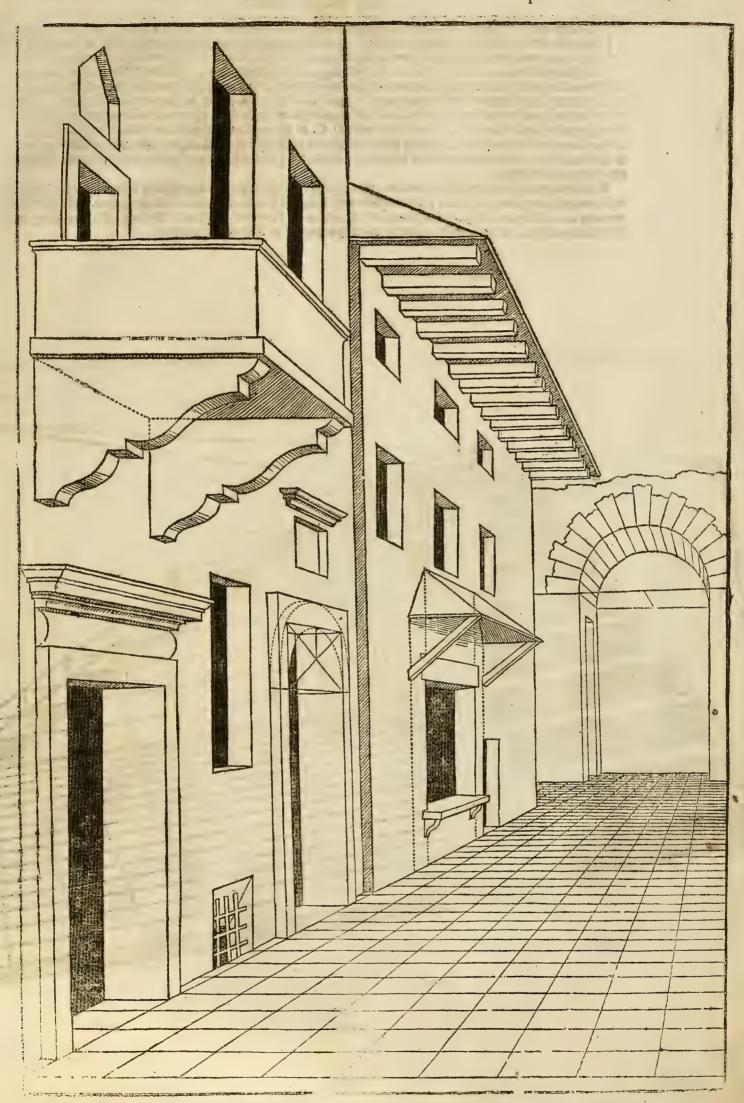
I Dw I have A cived the manner how to make a Gallery n ith Arches and Pillars, with other things thereunto belonging; now by an easier key I will the wome forme of Gonles that are to be built out of the ground. Pen must make a ground or feote worke with Anadrants realthing long inough vowards, which Anadrants must each of them be reckoned at two face lquare.

And first, at the entry of the Bonfe there thall be a dooze of fine fote broad, for that it containeth two Duadrants and a halfe in the Cottening : end the height ihercet Chall be of tenfote, becaufe it is fine Duadgents high : Ber Dilaiters 22 Antipagmentum fall bee a fcote broad, because they containe a halfe thortening Quedrant; the Frite shall also containe as much : and the Counice Chall containe to much leffe, as the buder part thereof bearing over containeth, and mall be made according to the rule aforefictied. Louching the part petting over the ocore, the Acquillones or Will tiles, that Cand right about the Pilatters of Antipagmentum of the cocze. And that little dooze bron the petting, Chall Kand right in the middle aboue the lowell coze, and thall be the ofote broad. In the other corner of this first Poule, there thall be another tooge, the widen the thereof thall be fire feote; you may make it round of fquare above as you wil. But why doe Ifpend my time colet bolt ne all these measures, which you may so plainely se in the Figure; enely it is necessary to warne fuch as are fluticus berein, that what worke former a man rayleth out of the ground, confisteth in the principall things, that is, in length, beroth and beight. The length is of certaine Poules or Romes, containing a certaine number of let. The berdth confilleth of Mindowes, Dozes, Bates, Shoppes, and such like things. Tho beight censuiteth of Poetes, Windowes, Jettings, Cornices, Columnes, Rooffes, and such like things. But there is yet another, that is of the titchenesse of the Walles, Pillars, Columnes and Pilaisters: A be length is taken from the Chortening Quadrants, and from thence also you take the bretth. But the height is taken out of the brooth in the Quadzents, le hich beetth me fi be taken from the Quadzan oz halfe Quabzan, le hich toucheth it on the hithermoft fibe as it Canocth: as also from the hithermost ocore, which is ten foote high, there you must take the measure from the Duadgans, which come to the Peralels on the nethermolicogner of poput of the booge; fog if there you take fine Dua-Drans in bredth, it Chall be height within the Antipagementum. And that which I have fayo of these doores, you must also bnockland of all the other things: The thickenetic of the Wall is two foote, for you fee it containeth a Quadrant. The bearing ener of the second Poule is of fire foote, measured bonthe ground: the like also the bearing oner ozict. ting of the first Poule contains the To conclude all things, as I have law, rising out of the ground on all sides, I have fet no Counces, not any other experients in this Figure, that you may the easter understand it; but a man stripe indgement and buberstanding knowing the terminations, can by his owne invention helpe himselfe to make faire Buildings. And for that I may not spend too much time herein, I will make others to give you more light therein.



The third Chapter. Fol. 17.

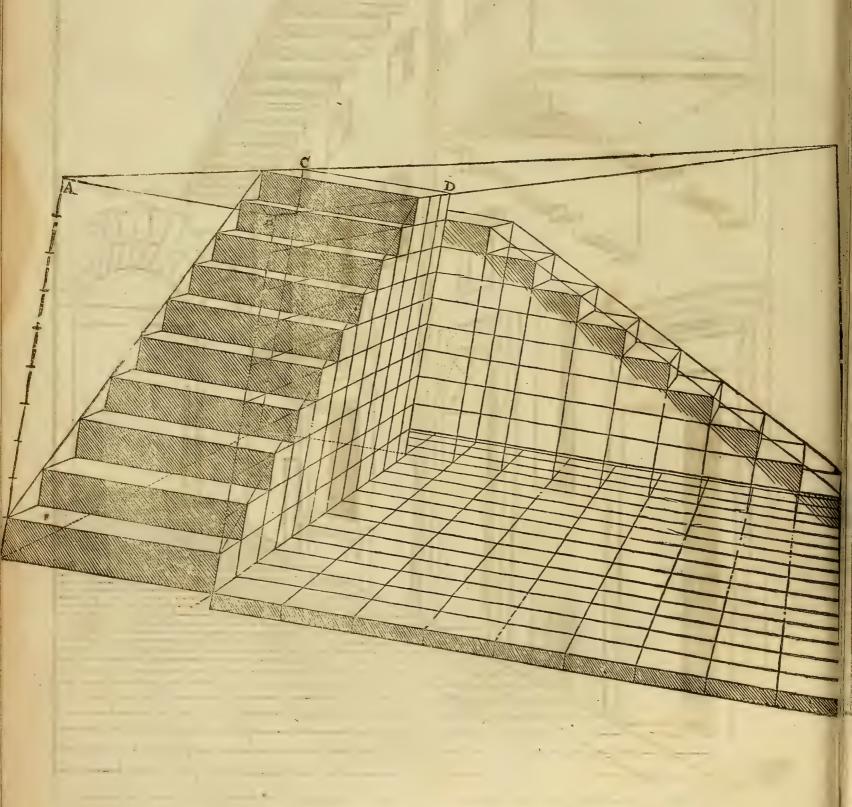
The second Booke.



thereof, and first I will begin with the ealiest. According to common custome a Stayze or step is about halse a soft high, and about a soote broad upon the step; then let the square stones of this ground be a foote square, there with we will make a paire of staires of sine soft high, and three softe broad: at the soft of the ground were will take the measure of the breath, which both on the right and less shall be set in Perpendicular lines on the Corners of the Stayzes, which shall be devided into ten, as the lines A. B. shew you. Then all the parts of A. B. shall be raised to the Portion, and then you shall take nine Duadrantes upwards in length: and where as two lines are set up cutting through the Portional lines of A. B. there the corners D. C. of the uppermost steps shalbe, containing a sours square of three Duadrants on each side. From the hithermost points of the same uppersteps, you shal draw two helding lines to the lowest steps; against the which the Portionall and the Perpendicular lines of the Duadranshall come together and that up the Stayzes.

These Stayres are thorsened on the one side, and the other is plaine or profil, and contained a see less in the height, which maketh foure foote and a halfe; it is also three foote broad, as it is marked under it on the ground. By this rule you may make Stayres or degrees as high as you will, and make some resting places in the way: alwayes taking the

measure from the fote of the ground, as well of the shortening, as of those that are bright.

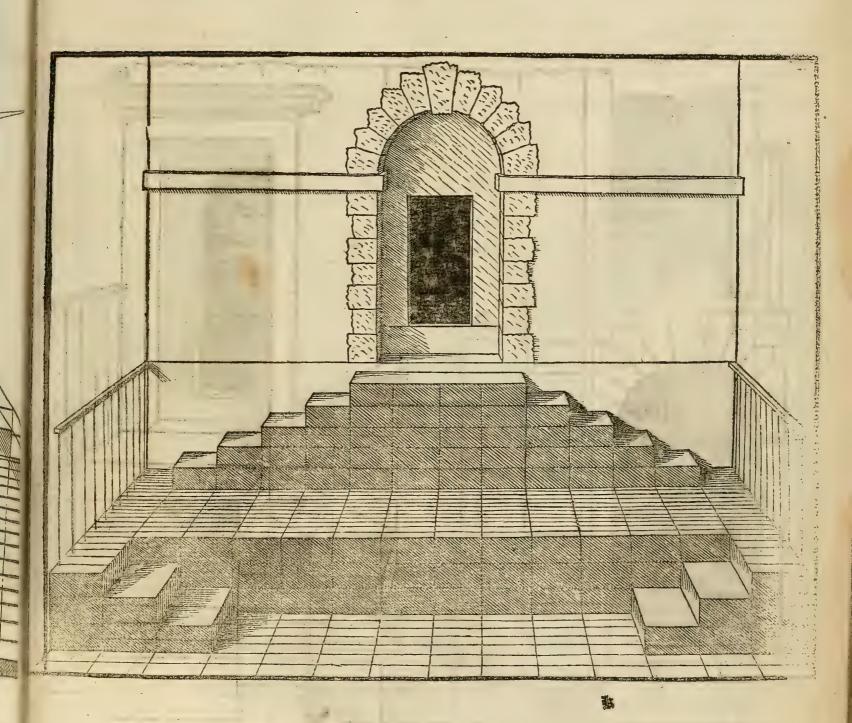


The second Booke.

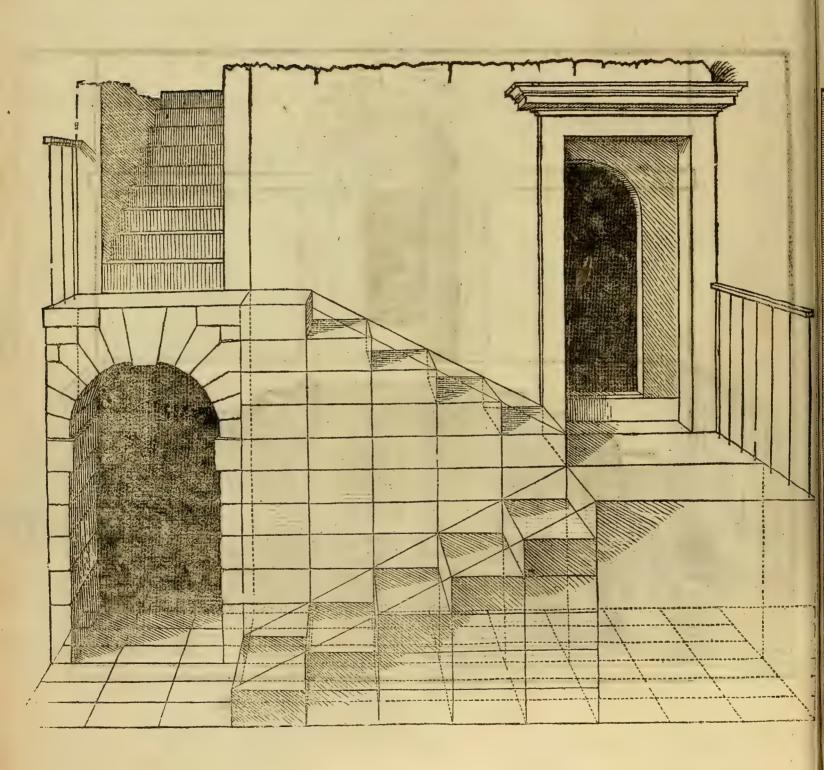
Eg

The third Chapter, Fol. 18.

The turning, and may ferne for many things, specially in Buildings, where a man going by softly and with ease, giveth the beholders a kind of pleasure to diem them, principally in common places, sor that there is a going by on eyther soc, so that poon the one side men may goe by, and on the other side they may goe downs; and although there are only but two goings by, yet by this a man by his own invention may denise others. How these Stayres are made, and with what reason, you may by the Figure percease them, although I should say nothing thereof: sor as it is sayd before, the Duadrants are of a foote broad, and the stepshalfe a sort high, and so the bredth of the step is one sot. The bredth of the Stayres is suc soote, both the sirst and second: The resting gate containeth in widenesse three, and is sire soote high; which although it semeth to be shut, and a small doore opening in it: yet it may be made whole open and otherwise closed. The two sides above the three steps are succosed plants in the yet it may be made whole open and otherwise closed. The two sides above the three steps are succosed plants leaning places, and they should serve well also to the steps, but less they sould comber the worke, I have less them out.

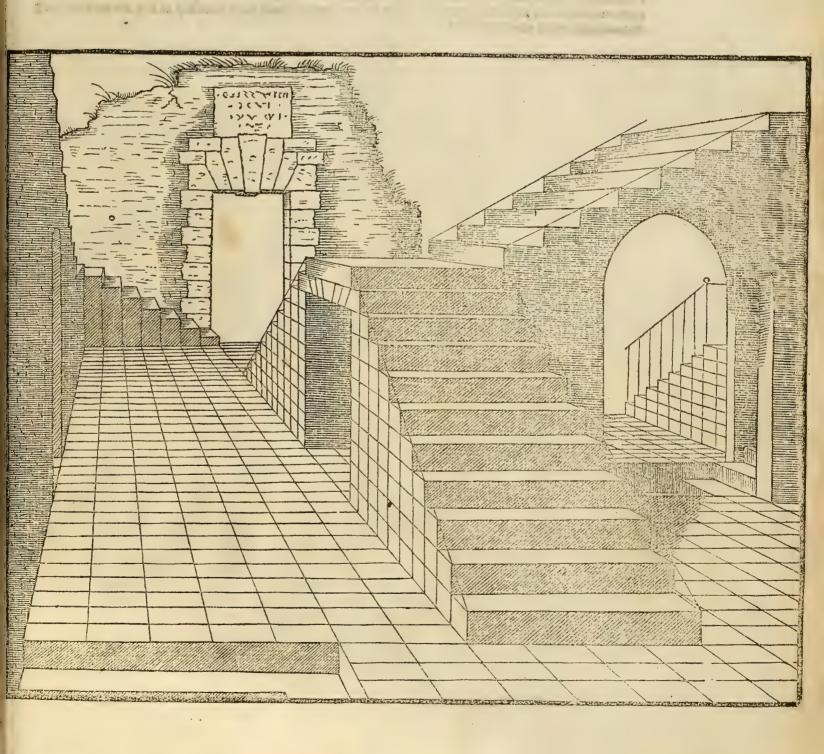


Adonged other things which show well in Perspective works. I sinde that goings by at steps are very simely, and the office that they turne, the better they shew; therefore Have made these two goings by turning, which stand in profil, pet you so the ground and the steps. Alts first going by is sire soote high and three soote broad, as you may see it marked in the ground with pricks: the resting place between the first and second going by, is two some some, which is necessary, because of the turning. At the end thereof you sinde a Portale, the vorethereof is two soils so the supposition, the Antipagmentum is halfe a soore on exther side, so that the place is three softestill. The Perpendicular times on the right side of the plaine, signific certaine leanings, which may be made of Iron, Mod, or Stone; the like may be made along the Stayres both upward and downelvard, setting a Baluster upon every Stayre: The height of this raile or leaning, shall be two soote and an halfe; sor so it is calle to lay a mans hand upon. How these Stayres are made upwards out of the ground, although it may well be seened by the Figure without declaring it: yet will say some thing thereof, to ease them that are short of memory. The resting gate or round doze under the plains nesse betweenes the second and the third going up, is no deeper then to the wall: About the same doore there Candeth and other going up, of sourc steps, which to make, I have sufficiently showed; otherwise a man should continue the ground at the resting doors, to draw them up from it.



The second Booke. The third Chapter. Fol. 19.

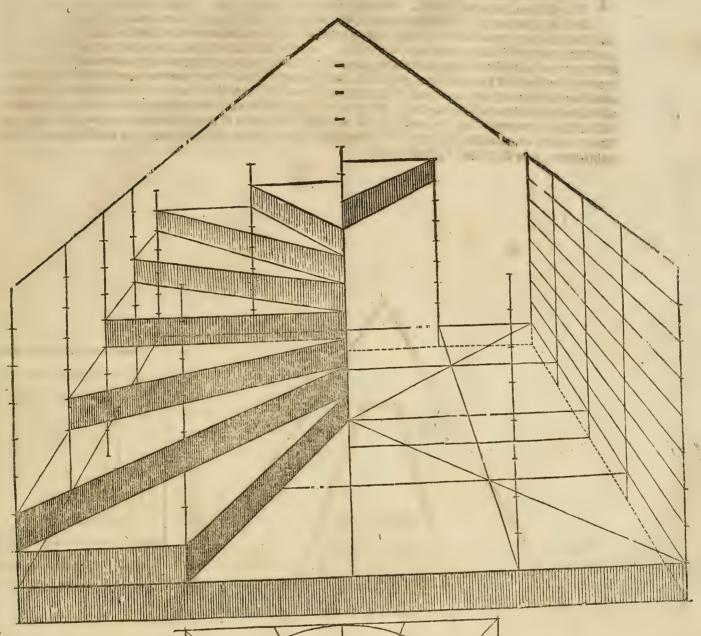
Duching the fourrall kinds of Stanges, I am affored that they may partly be boderffoed without describing them in waytingg, and specially the middle most which goeth up on both sides; and so shall the uppermost also, becuse it is rapled by from the ground as well as the other, and is five foot broad, as you may fee and tell it on the ground bpon the plaine flones. The two Arches buder the two go ugs by are each a foot in thickenesse, whereby a goo ing downe is source foote within, and is also drawen out of the ground as the rest are. The other goings by, which you fee through the Arches; you may fufficiently perceive by them how they are made: and fait is with the two pairs of Staves on the left band, for from the first fleps at the relling doze, you may cally la how they are rayled byout of the ground, and about at the cut of them ther have a piece of plaine ground to come to the other Stayles, which allo is Drawne by out of the pauement as the reft are, that is, each Mey halfe a fote high, and a foote broad. But it is hard to measure in so small things, but it sufficeth that hereby you may see the manner thereof : and when you make them great pou hall find that thep will come well inough to pale. Under the Stages laft named, there frandethalfo a round doze which is fine for topde: been this ground, and on thele Stayles a cunning Paynter might place diners Figures in les verall formes, epither standing or sitting upon the Stayres; and lying upon the ground in Chartening manner, and that in this wife: You may place the Figures where you will with fixte, and then take sire fixte or squares whereou they fland, and that that be their height, for that it is the height of a common or ordinary man: this you must observe both before and behind, and in every place. If the figure be boon a flep, then take the measure of that flep whereon it Kandeth, and make it twelve Croshigh, lubich thall be fire fote: And is the Figure lying, doe the like; but if it lieth in Mortening manner open the ground, then you must take the length by the Mortening Quadrant.

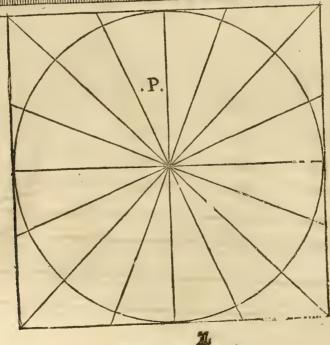


Of Perspective whole brook is a

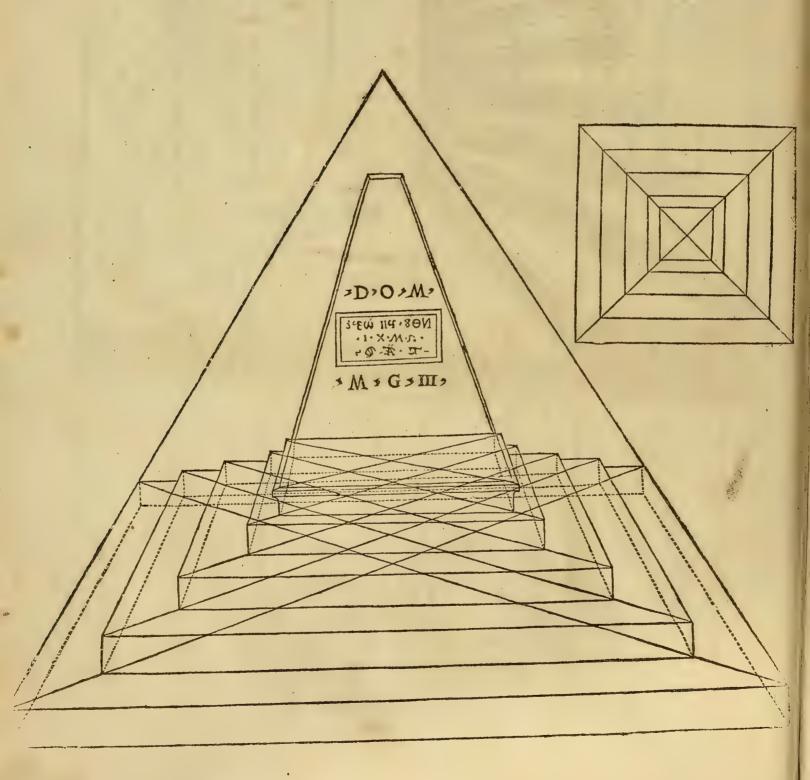
Have the wood many kinds of goings by, but there are other kinds, and he that is not well intructed in the former will hardly budgethand thefe two which I have here fet downe. The first thall be winding Stayles in four esquare, and he that can make these foure square Stayles, may well make the round Stayles, so, it is all one thing, specially if he pleth the rale before set downe of the round bodies.

The Figure P. is the ground of this winding Staye, but it is much leffe then the oppermoft to get ground. This foure fquare ground in thostening you must make halfe a foic high, which thalbe for the first flep. Then before at either end. you mult make a Derpendicular line bysight, and in it make as many halfe fixte as you defire to make the Stayzes high; you must also place the like Perpendicular lines betweene the middle, the corners: then you must draw the terminations both on the right and the left fives towards to the Boulon, which must cut through the Perpendicular lines, which are dra tone out of the terminations of the Keps; and of the fame beight that the two cornerd Derpendicular lines are: and of the same measure pou must make the other two Perpendicular lines betweene the corners and the middle. Aben in the middlemost termination of the ground you must place an other Perpendicular line, and devide it also in balfe fet, as the other Perpendicular line on the fide is : So out of this Perpendicular line of the Centers against the nærest Perpendicular line beneath on the left hand, you multframe the first step with two lines : The second step you the allo frame and that by out of the Perpendicular line of the Centers in the corner following. Then from that popul or corner pon must draw a line to the Porison, which against the second Bervendicular line will make the termination of the third flev, which chall also bee that above, according to the aforefaid rule: from that popul or corner of the flep you must also make an Hoziscotal line, which will touch the termination of the fourth step; which being closed, then pon mult raise that corner also to the Horison, and that will thew you the termination of the fift flep. And when that Ken is also closed with lines: then you mult draw the poput towards the Borison, which line will thew you the terminations of the firt flep against the hindermost Perpendicular line; and that being also closed by with lines, then out of the fame corner you must draw a Pararel line to the termination of the leventh step, and not towards the Portion, because it is another soe of the fonce square. Thus you must worke round about from step to step, alwayes following this rule by the which you cannot faile.





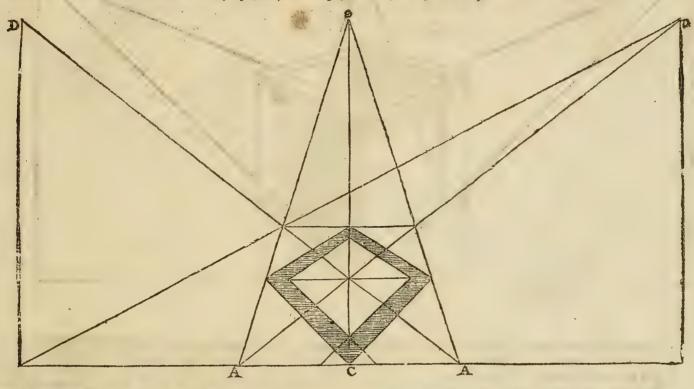
fore I have made these stayres, whereon a man may goe by on all stoes, whereof the ground kandeth above on the right hand, but yet very small. These stayres must thus bee made. First, you must make a four square shortening body of halfe a foot high, by on this you must draw two Diagonall lines, and from the corner in wards there hall be a foote broad lest on either side, and the terminations thereof drawns to the Porison, and so from the Diagonall lines you shall see the corners of the second step. Dow I need not set downs but you how you shall since the lessening corner of the second step, the which is round about that by with Paralel and Porisentall lines: then by on the second plaine you must draw two Diagonall lines, which doing (as I sayd before) will shew you the third step; which also being closed up with lines, you shall also since the fourth and sists, with the like rules: This Piramides is fantastically framed upon them to sill up the place. Also I need not set down to what we stay say may serve, so, that the halfe of them is commonly sound in divers pieces of works, as the gates of Pallaces. Churches, and other dwelling Houses, and the ascending up to Altars: By this way also you may make round Stayres, and also Stayres of sixe or epsiticorners, as by their sounes I have the well and the works.



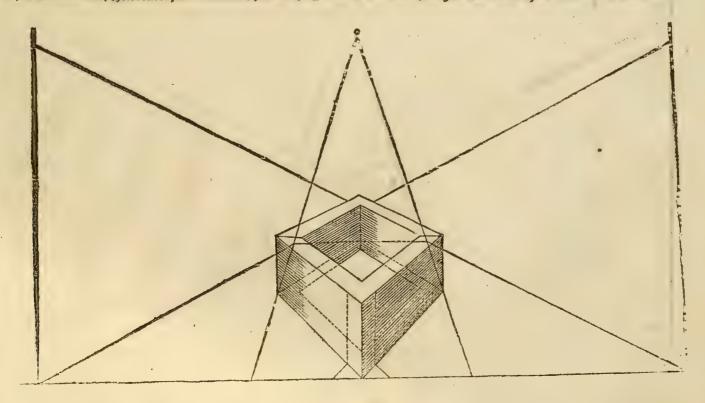
The second Booke.

The third Chapter. Fol. 21.

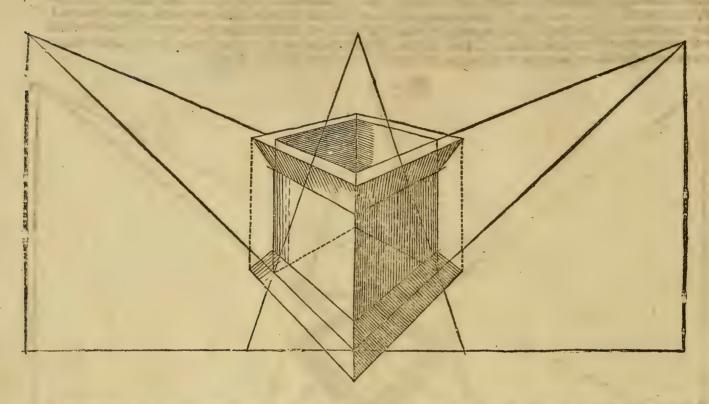
Dane promifed the Andious Reader by this my labour to thew as much fouching Perspectine worke, as Zean; that dee might show his conceit touching Poules or Bailvings in Perspectine wise, meaning to set do some some simple manners thereof, as it he should forme a single or double ground, thereupon to rayle a body, and therewith means to make an end. But falling from one works to another, Jam entred into a Laborinth, which peraduenture is two sarre about my reach: which commeth to passe by meanes of some men that have entreated me thereunto. And therefore, as I shought at this time to make an end of my second Booke, I begin to handle a harder matter, which rule is onely called an outward source square: neverthelesse, it is aswell drawned by the Porsson as by the distances, as you may seem the Figure following; which sheweth a right shortening source square, containing in it another source square, the which also may bee sounce by the distances without Borrson: some men place the sides of the source square over the corner, so are the distances alike marked D. And as much more as you will have this source square to shorten, so much you must braw the distances from the Borsson; and as much as you will that the edges of the source square standing above the corners goe all to the distances, and none to the Borsson, but enely the source square that is set therein.



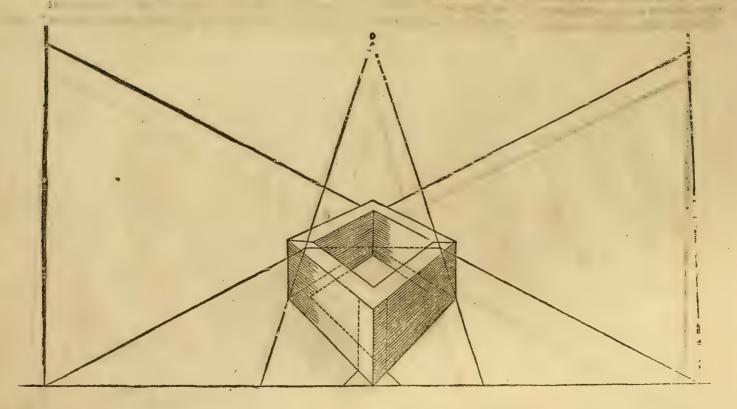
Div I have the wed, how you hould thost en a Superficies, ouerpoint of outloard four square: here I will the whow to involve of beare out the body thereof with the same Position and distances also, which body within is hollow, and you may heave it by as high as you: but I have purposely lest it somewhat low, that you might see the ground thereof. And by this Figure you may conceave to how many things this may serve; and also how you may increase of diminish it, according to skill and indgement. This shall suffice so these sources are nodels of hollow things: but I will show how you shall make them to Cress of Counces.



Dis Figure is allo formed by the aforefayd Porison, and the like diffrances as the other before, onely that they stand a little nexes: Low to creak this body both about a beneath, you will imagine the greatness of the creak, and draw the same greatness of the creak, and draw the lame greatness of the work about and beneath the body; then give the Creaks about their one Projecture, and from those poynts you must let Perpendicular lines fall to the poynts or conners below, whereby you shall have the Projectures of the Wale and top thereof, which must be drawne towards the Wikances, and not towards the Porison. How you see how the Cornices stand without the source square body; but this is only for Cornices that are made without members, not to comber you with the spadowing of them, so will speake of them hereafter particularly.



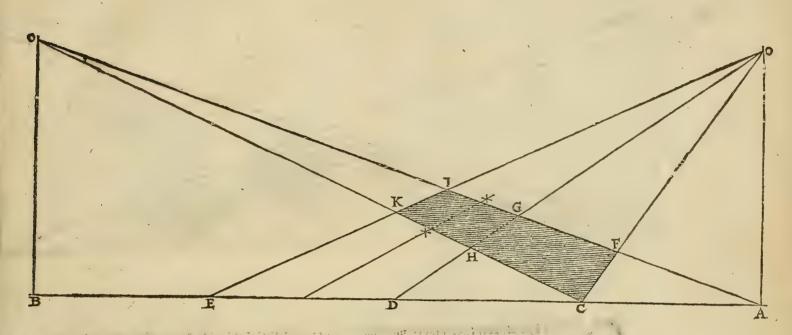
superson of Cornices without members, which might force this hollow Duadran, and how you thall make the terminative thereof. How in this Figure I flow you the layd Cornices with their members, which you may also make in other maner as it pleaseth the workeman, that is, to make them bigger or leffer, as I have spoken of other Cornices, alwayes bling good discretion and integement to chase and make such members therein, as may show well in mens light. There are some Cornices which reach to farre over, that men can not see the members thereof under them; therefore in that case the members are so to be made, that they may be seemely and pleasant in mens light.



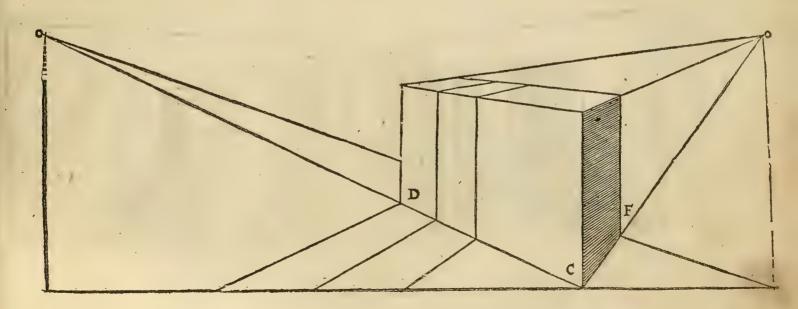
The fecond Booke.

The third Chapter, Fol. 22.

The foure Figures alozeland have their distances, equally broad from the Porison, that is, as much on the one ude as the other; but the Figure following is of an other manner: so that the Porison that is, as much on the one ude as the other; but the Figure following is of an other manner: so that the Porison the locate equally parts, as C.D.E. the lines C.D. are drawne on the right hand towards the Porison, and the lines A.C. are drawne towards the Porison the left side, which forme a perfect shortening source square; which source square you see more on the one side, then on the other. The source points or corners of these source square things, are F.G.H.C. If you device these source things in two parts, then you must be uide the Base D. E. in two parts, and the terminations thereof being drawne to the right side, there you shall since the halfe of your source square marked with two Stars. But if you will lengthen it another halfe source square, then draw a termination E. to the right Porison, the lines at I.K. the other halfe source square, so that these Superficies shall be of two perfect source corners: And this will serve the ingenious workeman sor many things, which I will not here set downe sor breutice sake.



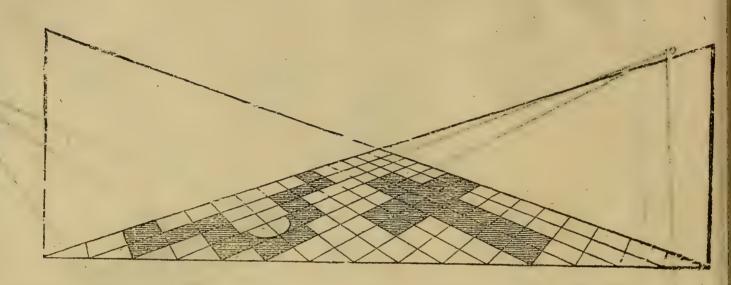
Dis hody bereafter following is rayled by out of the former Figure before let downe, and is made with the lame Portion; which body contained two Quadrants in length, some Quadrant in height for the line C.D is let in Very penvicular maner by on the nethermolecorner, whereon the other Superficies are left thus then this body is of two foure liquares, I meane two foure squares in length, and one foure square broad and high. And this body (as I said before) that serve for many things: But if you will have more cubits in the length, then lengthen the Bale in so many parts more, and you hall alwayes sinds the truethhereof. And if you will make a border or creak about this body, then you must fellow this rule asozesays.



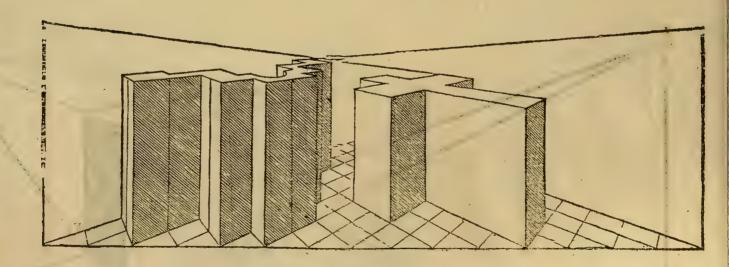
mient that first you make a pauement, as

1 19 1 1 1

In I will you make diners things boon one ground, then it is convenient that first you make a pavement, as you have the feet downe, and the reupon frame what you thinke good boon the Duadrans, and the less the Duadrans are, and the more in number, you may the easter frame things boon them. The crosse made boon this ground is onely to show you the way and entry thereunto, but so, such a some, you may make a some of a Christian Church as they are now built. The other some by it, sheweth a piece of a soundation of a House, but all these things you may make in a greater some, and set them sorth as you will, sometime placing the Horisentall lines in surh manner that you may see more of the out soes, but yet the Horisons must sand all of one height.



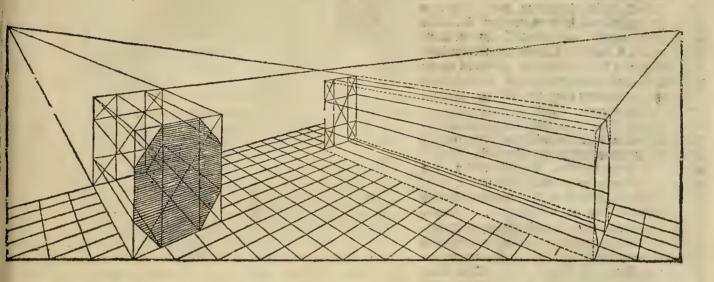
A T of this Superficiall Figure aforelayd, I have rayled these bodies, to thew how the Porlions of them does fland in the worke as well above as below, as you thall finde by experience, and in trueth these workes which you see our the poynts or corners, contains a Booke alone by themselves: but (as I sayd before) my meaning was to thow but this or foure Figures of them, get I will show ten of them; intending to leave the Audent some worke, whereof I am well assured: For that he hath more eyes, and more patience then my selle, her thall since many things which I write not of, nor yet set downe.



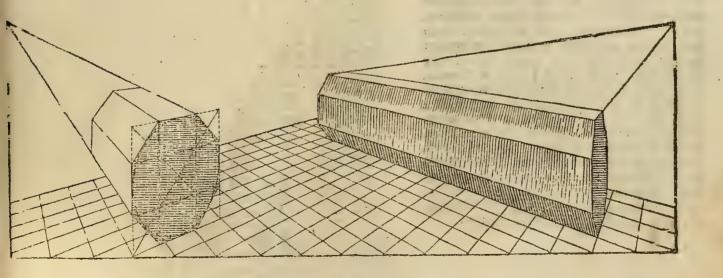
The lecond Booke.

The third Chapter, Fol. 23.

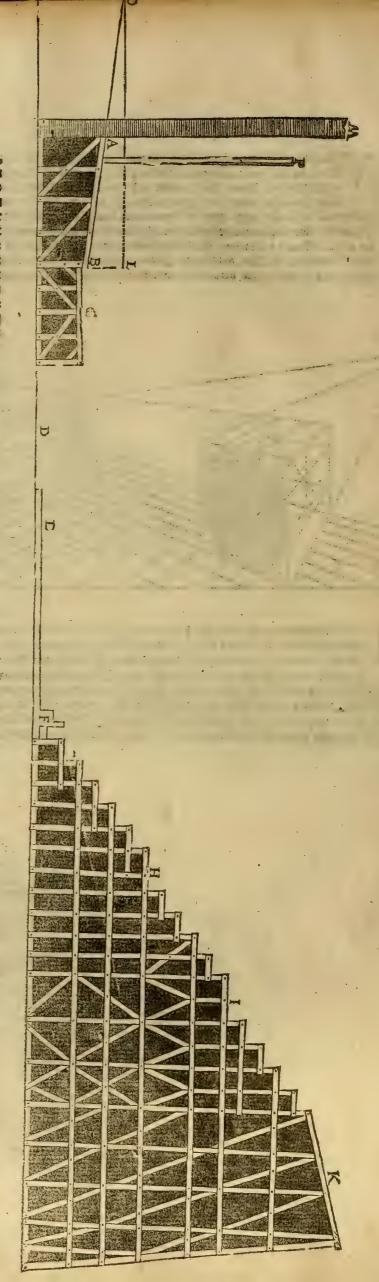
Iden this Panement (as I layd) you may forme or frame what you will, but in this Panement here coloring, you fix a columne lying, being eight square, which is the Duadrans in thickenesse, and sourcecone in length. This cright square columne may be made out of a columne of sourcesquare, habefore in an other place is thewed: which sourcesquare you may see drawns herein with prickes, and the terminations of the eight square with blacke lines. But because that this eight square columns is to much sense on the sides, the readier to make it out of the source square: I have therefore made an other piece by it, the which, because it draweth naver to this Porison, is sense more before, then the other, although not so long; so it is but halfest long as the other, as you may see a tell it in the ground or southereof. And it is were so that this eight square Figure reached naver to the Porison, it would then be better save, yet it would not be wholly save before, because it standed without the source square and corner.



ipele Columnes are the same which are before set downe, but the other well hollow, and these massie, whereby an expert workeman map since out many things exercising this way, although there are other meanes to be bled, as Albert Duier hath shewed, to looke through holes with a thread: There is also another way, which is drawne out of stat somes which is the surest way, but very troublesome and hard to describe in writing; wherefore I have thosen this as the easiest way to be shewed. And if I had not undertaken to show other things of more importance, I would have drawne divers bodies and houses after this manner. But so, that I meane to entreat of Scenes, and the preparing of places so, to show Comedies and Tragedies, which is now bled in this age, and specially in Italy, therefore I will make an end of these source corners things, leaving it to another (as I says before) to set south more thereof.



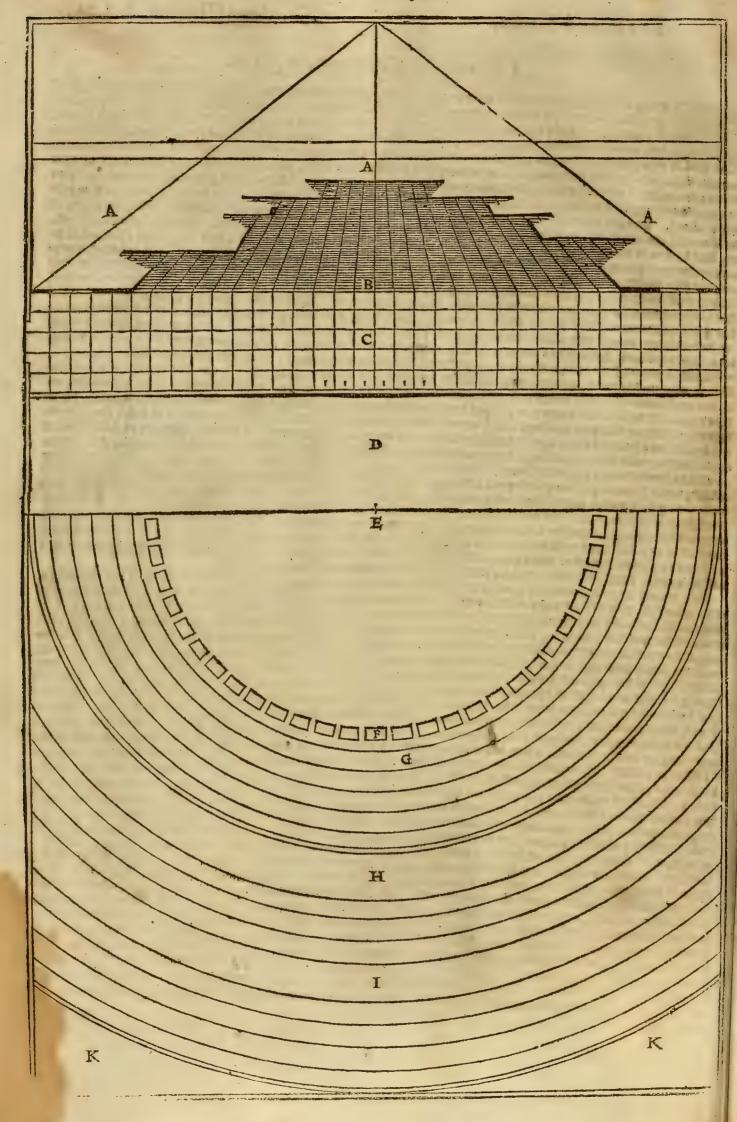
I Caule Imcane hereafter to entreat of Theafers, and Scenes belonging untothem, as we ble them ur fipele dayes. In the which Scenes it will bee bery hard for a man to thew how, & where a man Mouldplace the Hopison herein, because it is an other thing then the rule before beclared: Therfore I thought it good first to make this profil, that the ground by the profil may both together be the better understood; yet it were connenient first to studie the ground, and if it to falleth out that a man cannot attaine to all within theground, thenhee mult proceede to the profill to bee the better instructed therein. First therefore, 3 will begin with the Scaffold before, which as the eyes that Land clenated from the earth, and thatbe flat, made by the water compate, marked with C. And the Scale fold from B. to A. thail stand heaved by boder the same A. a minth part of the length thereof, and that Canding by behind the feate marked with an M. aboueit, is the wall of the Hall or other place, against which, or where this Scene thall be made. That which Candeth a little distant from the Wall Berpendilar wife, is marked P. that be the backe or upholoting behind of the Scene, that a man map go betweene it and the other wall. The ter. mination O. is the Posison. The lines with priches comming croffe bpon the water compasse from L. toO. where it touchest the backe P. there you hall placethe Position onely to ferue for the land backe. And comming forwards to L. this line thall alwayes be the Bo. rifon, for all the Detograpte of the Boules which thall Candleswards of outwards: But the Seenographies or hortening fices of the Houses, they mult have their Hopifons franding further to O. And it is reason, which in effect have two fides (as thef muft be built that men map for ant of them on both fides) thould happen two Portion lines, this is touching the profil of the Scene. But the place which is called Procenie is that which is marked with P. and the part marked with E. is called Dechellra, which is rayled halfe a foote from the earth, Inhere you le F. marked, are the places for Poblemen and Buighte to fit on. And the firth feate og ftep, markee G. are for the poblewomen and Ladyes to fit on: and going up higher, there mult the meaner fort of Pobles fit. The broader place, marked H. is a way, and fo is the place marked E. Betwene H. and E. mult fit Gentlemen of quality. And from L. bywards meaner Gentlemen Shallfit. But the great space, marked K. Moll be forcommon Officers and other people: which place manbe greater as leffe, according to the length of the Wall, or any other place. And the Theator, with the Scene or Scaffold, which I made in Vincente, was almost in this lost: and from the one corner of the Theater to the other, was egght and twenty fote; for it was made in a place where I had comme inough, but the Scene or Scaffold was not fo broad, because it was placed in a lodge. The frame of the feates was all made in one, as you may fee in this Flo guie. And because the Theater Good in an open place which has no wall, whereunts it might be made fak, therefore in the circumference I have mode it Aicking out, for the more Grength and fallnelle thereof.



A Treatise of Scenes, or places to play in.

Wong all the things that may bee made by mens hands, thereby to palo admiration, pleasure to light, and to content the fantalies of men; I thinke it is placing of a Scene, as it is the wed to your light, where a man in a fmall place may fe built by Carpenters of Palons, fkilfull in Perspective worke, great Palaces, large Temples, and divers Poules, both neere and farre off; broad places filled with Houles, long Arcts croft with other wayes: tryumphant Arches, high Pillars of Columnes, Pframides, Dbelifcens, and a thousand fapte things and buildings, adorned with innue merable lights, great, middle fort, and fmall, as you may fe if placed in the figure, which are fo cumningly fet out, that they thew foorth and represent a number of the brighted Cones; as Diamonds, Lubins, Saphirs, Smaragdes, Jacinthes, and such like. There you may le the bright thining Done alcending only with her homes, and already vilen bp, before the frectators are ware of, or once In some other Scenes you may le the rising of the Sunne with his course about the world: and at the ending of the Comedie, you may fee it goe downe most artificially, where at many beholvers have bene aboth. And when occasion fernetty, pou thall by Arte fe a God descending downe from Beaucn ; vou allo fe some Comets and Stars that in the fkyes : then you fe diners personages come boon the Stage, richly adorned with diners trange formes and manners of Apparell both to daunce Portis coes and play Pulicke. Sometimes poul allerange bealts, wherein are men and chilogen, leaping, running, & Tumbling, as thole kind of beatls ble to doe, not without admiration of the beholders: which things, as occasion serveth, are so pleasant to mens eyes, that a man could not for fairer made with mens hands. But for that we are entered into another maner of Perspective worke, therefore I will speake, although it be contrary to those rules which are thewed before, because these aforesayd are imagined to be byon a flat wall: and this other rule because it is material and imboli fed or rayled outward, therefore it is reason we observe another rule therein, according to common custome. First, you must make a Scaffeld, which must bee as high as a mans eye will reach, looking directly forward; for the first part thereof which is marked C. But the other part behind it, whereon the Houses fand, you must rayle by behind against the wall at least a ninth part thereof, that is, you mult denibe the playne Stage of Scaffold in nine parts; and then you mult make the Scaffold higher by a ninth part behind: then before at B. which mult be very cuen & frong, because of the Popilco Dancers. This hanging bownward of the Scaffold, 3 haue found by experience to be very pleasing, for in Vincence which is as sumptuous and rich a Mowne as any in all Iraly; there I made a Theater and a Stage of wood, then the which, I thinke, there was never a greater made in our time, in regard of the wonderfull Aghts that there were ferne, as of Magons, Clephants and other Poziscoes. There I ozdained, that before the hanging Scene there thould be a Scaffold made by water compate, which Scaffold was 12. foot broad, and 60. foot long, according to the place wherin it Mood, which I found to be very pleading and fit to thew. This first Scaffold, because it was right, therefore the panement thereof mult not obey the Bogison, but the Duadants, whereof on enery sios were foure square, from whence at the beginning of the rising Scaffold B. all the Quadrans went to the outtermost Porison O. which with their due diffances do Morten very well. And for the fome men have placed the Porison of this Sciographies against the wall right about the Scaffold, whereby it semeth the Poules runne all in one; therefore I vetermined to place the Hogilon before the bone , which plealed me fo well, that I bled the fame kind of order in all thefe kind of works: and fo I counfell those that take pleasure in such Arts, to ble and esteeme this way for the best as I will thew in this Figure following, and have also declared in the profill of the Theater and Scene.

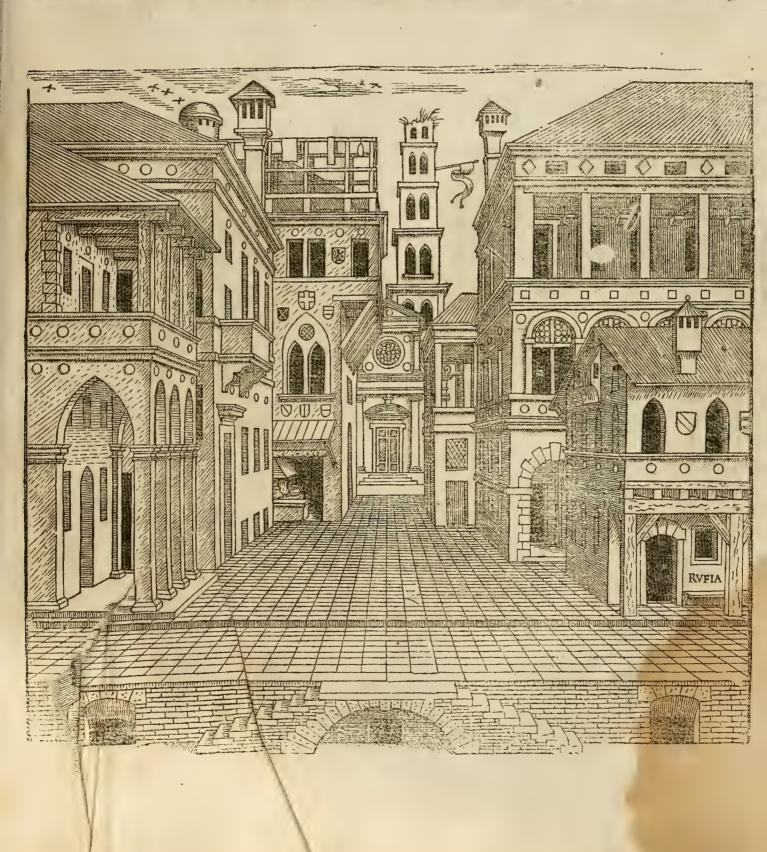
And because the preparation for Comedies are done in the forts, that is, Comical, Tragical and Satiricall, I will first entreat of the Comicall, whereof the Poules mult be made as if they were for common or ordinarie people, which for the molt part mult be made bnder roofes in a Ball, which at the end thereof hath a chamber for the pleasure or ease of & personages: and there it is that the ground of the Scaffold is made (as I faid and the twed befoze) in the profil. Therefore C. is the first part being the flat Scaffold; and suppose that each Quadran containeth two fote on either lide, so that they boon the hanging Scaffold before on the Bale be also two for broad, which is marked B. And (as I fand before) my meaning is not to place the Hornson hereof against the backe behind in the Scaffold, but as farre as it is from the beginning of the panement B. to the wall, to farre I would also that men thall passe behinde through the wall, and to thall all the houses and other things thow better in the Mortening: and when by convenient diffances you have drawne all the Quadrans towards the Porison, thortened them, then you mult shorten the houses right with the foure square Kones; which houles are the great lines marked byon the ground, aswell for those that Kand byright, as those that Morten. All such houses a alwayes made of spars, or ratter or lather concred with limin cloth; making dwies and windowes, both before and in the Mortening, as occasion fell out. I have also made some things of halfe planks of wood, which were great helpe to the Paymters to let out things at life. All the spaces fro the backe to the wall marked A. Gall be for the personages, to the which end the hindermost backe in the middle Mall Cand at the least two foot from the wall, that the personages may goo from the one side to the other, and not be fene. Then you mut rayle a termination at the beginning of the panement B. which Mall be the poput L. and from thence to the Posison there halve a line ozatune, as it is marked in the profil with prickes, which shall be of like height; and where that toucheth the hindermost backe of the Scene og Scaffold, there the Hogilan of that backe Chall Kand: and that Hogilan Chall ferne onely fog that backe. But if you aretch a corde or any other thing to the termination L. then you may fallen a thread to it, to thrull backward or forward, to ble it out of the Aedfact Portion , sall the Ditographie of the houses before. But the Portion which goeth through the wall, thall ferne for all the Mortening floes of the honfes: and for that men thould breake the wall, if they would bee all this Bornfon in groffe, which may not bee done, therefore I have alwayes made a small modell of wood and Paper inft of the same bignes, and by the fame modell fet it bowne in groffe, from piece to piece. Butthis way will fall out hard for some men to buderfiand, neuerthe leffe, it will be necessary to worke by models and experiments, and by frudic a man hall find the way: and for that a man can hardly finde any Halls how great foener, wherein he can place a Theater without imperfection and impediment; therefore to follow Antiquities, according to mp power and abilitie, I have made all such parts of these Theaters, as may kand in a Ball. Therefore the part marked D. Hall be the poll scene, and the circular place marked E. Hall bee the Deche kea: round about this Deche kea Mall be the places for the noblest perforages to fit, marked F. The first steps marked G. for the noblest women to fit byon. The place H. Anthemicole betwens thele degrees are fleps the eafier to goe bp. The places marked K. is a way, so is the part marked I. must bee made logreat backward as the Pall will afford, which is made conswhat slooping, that the people may see one surece others head.



The second Booke.

The third Chapter, Fol. 25.

Duching the disposition of Theaters and other Scenes, concerning the grounds thereof, I have spoken sufficiently; now I will fpeake of the Scene in Perfpective Looke : and for that Scenes are made of the Conta, toptay Comedies on, Wragicall, for Tragedies, and Satiricall for Satirs. This first thall be Comicall, whereas the houses must be slight for Citie zens, but specially there must not want a brawthell or bawdy house, and a great Inne, and a Church; such things are of necest's tie to be therein. How to raple these houses from the ground is sufficiently expected, and how you shall place the Boxison : never theleffe, that you may be the better instructed (touching the former of these houses) I have here fet downe a Figure, for satisfaction of those that take pleasure therein; but because this figure is so small, therein I could not observe all the measures, but refer them to invention, that thereby you may chuse or make houses which thew well, as an open Ballery, or todge through the which you may see an other house. The hangings ouer or shoting out, tholo well in thortening worke, and some Cornices cut out at the ends; accompanied with some others that are painted, Mow well in worke: so ove the houses which have great bearing out, like lodgings or Thomas bers for men, and especially about all things, you mult fet the smalest houses before, that you may to other houses ouer or about them, as poule it here about the bawoy house: for if you place the greatest before, and the rest behind Will lessen, then the place of the Scene mould not be fo well filled, and although thefe things byon the one five be made all byon one flore: Devertheleffe, for that you place great part of the lights in the middle, hanging over the Scene or Scaffold, therefore it would Cand better if the flore in the midft were taken away, and all the roundels and Quadrans which you for in the Buildings, they are artificiall lights cutting through, of divers colors; which to make, I will thew the manner in the last of this Boke. The windowes which Cand before, were good to be made of Glatte og Paper, with light behind them. Butit I thould here write all that I know to force for this worke, it would be querlong to rehearle; therefore I referre that to the wit and discretion of those that exercise and practise themselves heerein.



Of Perspective and become

Dalas for Tragedies, mult bee made for great perfonages, for that actions of love, Arange adventures, and cruell murthers, (as you reade in ancient and moderne Tragedies) happen alwayes in the houles of great Lords, Dukes, Princes, and Rings.
Therefore in fuch cales you mult make none but Actely houles, as you lait there in this Figure; wherein (for that it is to fimal) I could make no Princely Pallaces: but it is sufficient for the workeman to fa the manner thereof, whereby he may helpe him: felfe as time and place ferneth: and (as I sayde in the Comicall) her must alwayes study to please the eyes of the beholders, and foract not himselfe to much as to let a small building in Read of a great, for the reasons aforesayd. And for that I have made all my Scenes of laths, concred with linnen, yet sometime it is necessary to make some things rising or bolling out; which are to bee made of wood, like the honles on the left fide, whereof the Billars, although they thorten, frand all byon one Bale, with come Kapres, all co stered over with cloth, the Cornices bearing out, which you must observe to the middle part: But to give place to the Galleries, you mult fet the other Mortening Cloth somewhat backwards, and make a counice abone it, as you fee : and that which I speake of these Buildings, you must biderstand of all the rest, but in the Buildings which Cland far backward the Painting worke, must suppliethe place by thadowes without any bearing out: touching the artificial lights, Thave spoken thereof in the Comical works. All that you make about the Roofe Kieling out, as Chimnepes, Towers, Piramides, Dblices, and other such like things or Images; you mul make them all of thin bords, cut out round, and well colloured : But if you make any flat Buildings, they mult fland fomewhat farre in ward, that you may not fee them on the fides. In thefe Scenes, although fome have painted perfonages therein like supporters, as in a Vallery, or doore, as a Dog, Cat, or any other beats: I am not of that opinion, for that fandeth to long without Mirring or mooning ; but if you make fuch a thing to lie lieping, that I hold withall. Pou may also make Images, hillogies, or Pables of Warble, or other matter against a wall; but to represent the life, they ought to firre. In the latter end of this Boke 3 will thew poulow to make them.



The fecond Booke.

The third Chapter, Fol. 26.

He Satiricall Scenes are to represent Satirs, wherein you mult place all those things that bee rude and rufficall, as in ancient Satirs they were made plaine without anprespect, whereby men might birderstand, that such things were referred to idiffic call people, which fet all things out rudely and plainely: for which cause Vierunius speaking of Scenes, saith, they should be made with Trees, Awtes, Herbs, Wilsand flowes, and withfome countrep boules, as you fe them here fet downe. And for that in our dayes thefe things were made in Minter, when there were but fewe granc Aras, Berbs and Rowces to be found, then you mult make thele things of Silke, which will be moze commendable then the naturall things tarmfelnes : and as in other Scenes for Comedies or Tragedies, the houles or other artificiall things are painted, lo you mult make Eries, Pearls, and other things in thele; & the more fuch things coll, the more they are effeemed, for they are things which fately and great persons doe, which are enes mies to nigardinelle. This houe I liene in some Scenes made by Ieronimo Genga, for the pleasure and delight of his lord and partron Francisco Maria, Duke of Vrbin: wherein I saw so great liberalitie bled by the Prince, and so good a concett in the workeman, and fogod Artand proportion in things therein represented, as ener I saw in all my life before. Oh good Lord, what magnificence was there to be some, for the great number of Eres and Fruits, with sundry Perbes and Flowres, all made of fine wilke of divers collogs. The water courles being adogned with frogs, Snailes, Togtules, Toads, Adders, Snakes, and other bealts: Rotes of Corrale, mother of Bearle, and other thels lago and thruft through betweene the Cones, with fo many fenerall and faire things, that if I hould declare them all, Ishould not have time inough. I speake not of Satirs, pimphes, Per maids, divers monters, and other Grange beaffes, made lo cunningly, that thep femed in fiew as if they went and firred, according to their manner. And it & were not deficous to be patete, I would fpeake of the colly apparel of fome Shepheards made of cloth of gold, and of Silke, cunningly mingles with Imbrothery: I would also speake of some Fishermen, which were no leffe richly apparelled then the others, having Pets and Angling rods, all gilt: I bould freake of fome Countrey maybe and Aumphes carelelly apparelled without prive, but I I ace all thefe things to the difcretion and condiveration of the indicious workentan; which thall make all fuch things as their pattrons feruethem, which they must worke after their owne beutles, and never take care what it shall cost.



Of Artificiall lights of the Scenes.

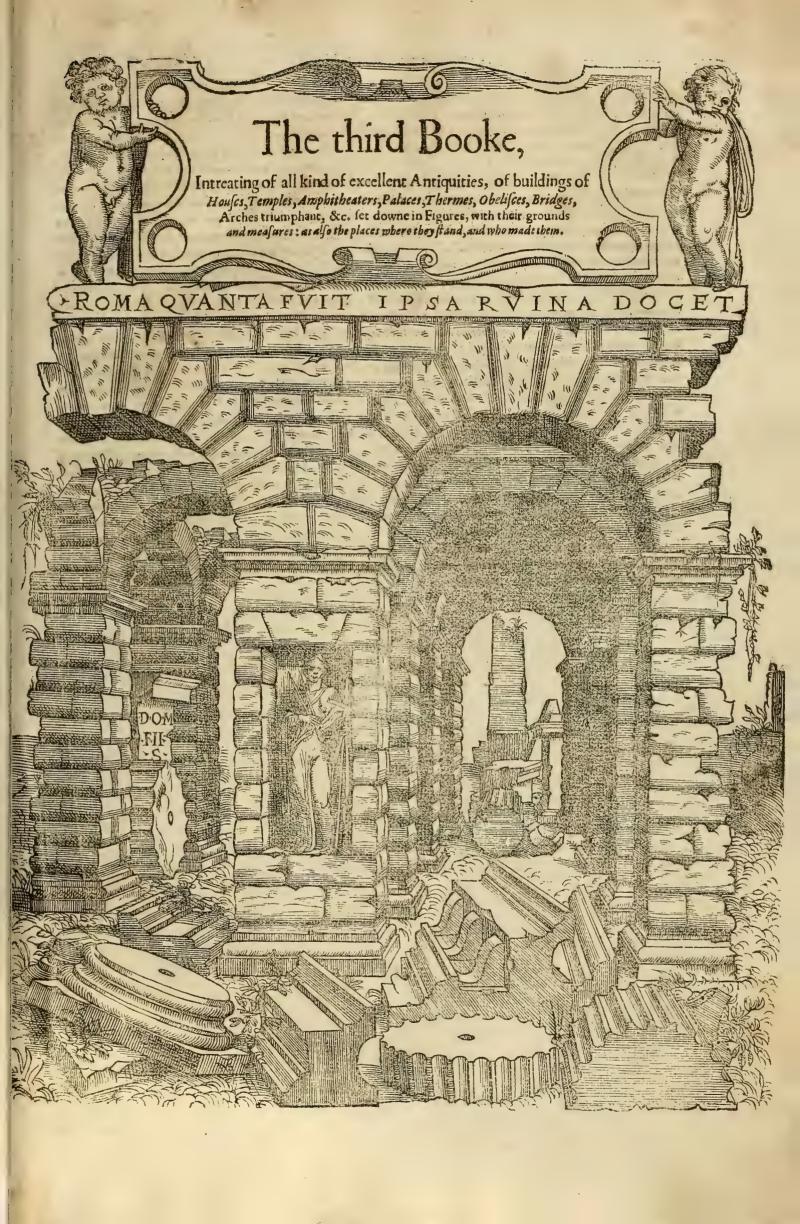


Appamised in the Areatise of Scenes to set volvne the manner hold to make these lights thining through, of divers collours, e first I will speake of a sure collour which is like to a Zaphir, and yet somewhat sayer. And a vector of Salamoniacke, and put it into a Barbers Basen, or such like thing, and put water into it: then bruse and crush the Salamoniacke softly therein, till it be all mosten, alwayes putting more water unto it, as you desire to have it light or sad collour; which done, if you will have it saye and cleare, then Graine it through a sine cloth into an other bestell, and then it will be a cleare Telestial blew, whereof you may make divers kinds of blew with water. Will

pon make an Emeraulo collour, then put fome Baffron as you will have it pale or high colloured; for heere it is not necessary to preferibe you any weight or measure, forthat experience well teach you bow to doe it. If you will make a Rubbic collour, if you bee in a place where you may have red Wine, then you need not ble any other thing; but to make it pall with water, as need requireth: but if pow can get no wine, then take Brazili beaten to poweer, sputit into a Bettell of water with Allum, let it fothe, and fkum it well; then Arapne it, and ble it with water and Climneger. If you will counterfeit a Ballaves, you mut make it of red and white Wine mingled together; but white Wine alone wil fowe like a Lopas of a Crifolite: The Conduit of common water being Arapned. will be like a Diamond, and to doe this well, you must byon a glassie ground frame certaine points of tablets, and fill them with was ter. The manner to fet thefe fliama collours in their places, is thus, Behind the painted house wherein these painted collours shall fland, you must fet a thin board, cut out in the same manner that these lights shall be placed, whether it be round or square, corners or ouale, like an Egge; and behind the fame board there finall be mother fleenger board lapo flat behind them, for the bottels and other manner of glades with thefe waters to Cand in, much be placed again T the holes, as it thall nece Carily fall out, but they much be fet fact, led they fall with leaping and daircing of the Boulcoes. And behind the glasses you must fet great Lampes, that the light may also be Acofast: and if the bottels or other beffels of glasse on the side where the light flands were flat, excather hollow, it would show the clearer, and the collours molt excellent and fayer; the like must be done with the holes on the sportening fice : But if you need great light to thow more then the rell, then fet a torch behind, and behind the torch a bright Balon; the brightnes whereof will thew like the beames of the Sunne. Pou may also make glatte of all colicurs and formes, fome foure square, some with croffes, any other forme with their light behind them. pew all the lights foruing for the colleurs, that not be & fame which mult light the Scene, for you mult hanc a great number of torthes before the Scene. Pour may also place certaine candlestickes about the Scene with great candles therein, and about the candlesticks you may place some bestels with water, wherein you may put a piece of Camphir, which burning, will thow a very good light, and finell well. Sometime it may chance that you must make some thing or other which should some to burne, which pon must wet throughly with excellent good Aquanite, and fetting it on fire with a candle it will burne all over; and although Toould fpeake more of their fires, pet this that fuffice for this time; & I will fpeake of some things that are pleasing to the behole ders. The ubile that the Scene is emptie of personages, then the workman must have certaine Figures or formes ready of such great nes as the place where they mule Cand, will afford them to be, which mult be made of palle board, ent out round and paynted, finnifie ing fach thirgs as you will, tohich figures must leane against a rule or lath of wood, croste ouer the Scene where any gate, one, or war is made, and there fome one or other behind the core mult make the Figures palle along, fometime in forme of Pulitions with infle uncorts, and forme like fingers; and behind the Scene forme must play on, Spon certaine instruments and fing also: formetime pour mult make a number of foote men and hazlemen going about with Trumpets, Philes and Daummes, at which time you mult play with Dannibes. Trumpets and Philes, ec. very foftly behind, which will kape the peoples eyes occupied, and confent them well. If it be requilite to make a Planet or any other thing to polle along in the Agre, it mult bee framed and cut out of palle board: then in the hinocrmoff and backe part of the houses of the Scene, there must be a piece of wire date ne aboue in the rose of the house and made fall with certain rings behind to the paste board painted with a Planet or any other thing that shallbe drawne softly by a man with ablacke thied from one end to the other, but it mut be farre from mens light, that neither of the thieds map beefene. Somes time pou hall have occasion to their thunder and lightning as the play requireth; then you must make thunder in this manner:com monipall Secres are made at the end of a great Ball, whereas blually there is a Chamber about it, wherein you multronle a great Bullet of a Camon og of some other great Domance, and then counterfeit Thunder. Lighining muft be made in this maner, there muft be a man placed hehind the Scene or Scaffold in a high place with a bore whis hand, the couer whereof mult be full with holes. and in the mivole of that place there that be a burning canole placed, the bore mult be filled with powder of vernis or fulphire, and case King his hand with the bore bewards the powder flying in the candle, will shew as if it were lightning. But touching the beames of the lightning, you must draw a piece of lungs over the Scene, which must hang downewards, whereon you must put a squib cone. red over with pure gold of fining lattin which you will: and while the Bullet is rouling, pou mat theote of some piece of Das binance, and with the fance giuing fire to the fquibs, it will mothe the effect which is defired. It would be ourrlong if I Chould freake of all things which are to be bled in thele affaires, therefoze I will leave fpeaking of Perspective things.

FINIS.

Fere endeth the second Boke of Architecture, entreating of Perspective Arte; translated out of Italian into Dutch, and out of Dutchinto English, at the charges of Robert Peake, for the benefit of the English Lation; and are to be sold at his house neare Volbores Conduct, buder the Sanne Danerne. 1611.



To the Reader.



Lihough diners Authors write many strange things touching Architecture, as the Egyptians, the people of Asia and Grecia, with divers other nations, and have left them for our example, so that reading them, we may sufficiently satisfic our eares, and fill them with the greatnesse thereof, that is, touching the length, breath and depth, that certaine places have contained; yet we can not satisfic our eyes, nor the desire we have to see such incredible works, where it had beene our hap to bave the contemplation thereof, for that the rehaves of such works are almost, or for the most part witerly defaced; or wn

leste we might have seene them drawne in proportion unto our eyes, as in this Booke we may not onely read, what the Romanes at the last, after other nations had built, but also the same Authors have set downe unto us in Figure (as you may (ee them here) piece by piece, not only how many rods, ells, feet & palmes, but also the minutes thereof, and what compas they contained, all perfectly described. And although it was no part of my intent, to translate this Booke of Aneiquities of Rome into our mother tongue, regarding the barrennesse of our language; or peraduenture such as studie or favour the same, are all too few to defray my charges therein: yet I have not refrained to doe it, being thereunto compelled by the great works of the forification of the City of Andwerp, and other great places; and for this cause specially, that every man that wondreth at the greatnes thereof, which was made with most great cost & charges, may hereby see and consider, yea how much greater, & needles charges (to be compared unto this) the Romanes (not speaking of other nation) baue in time past bestowed, in making of Obelisces, Piramides, Thermes, Theaters, Amphitheaters, tryumphant Arches, and many more such lake things, which served only for pleasure & tryumph: whereby it is to be presumed, that they would have made the fortifications of such Cities or Townes, made for the safety of the Land, far better then they now are. Now it is to be noted, that all, what soener the Romanes bane made, doth not wholly agree with Vitrunius rules, so that many which have counterfested these, and such lake peeces of worke, have thereby beene abused and deceived: for some would hardly believe, that in those dayes (as well as at this time) all maner of workemen were one better then another, which many, unawares and unskilfully do many things, which good Antiquities would willingly not suffer, bereof they (hall find good instructions in this Booke (and they may learne, if they will read it) how to discerne good from bad; whereunto the former printed fourth Booke is specially made: for in it the whole quantity of the measures is contayned, as in the Epistle of the layd Booke it is promised. So in this third Booke, you shall not onely find, first the Ichnographia, and then after the Orthographyes, with part of the Sciographies of the molt famous Antiquityes of Rome, Italy, and some of other places, but also of the most excellent buyldings in our dayes, specially those that are made by Bramant. So that the Reader being well instructed in the aforesayd fourth Booke, where all the Orders are well set foorth and declared, he may of bimselfe judge what is well or ill made, that at one time a man may, without any further labour, make agood and incorrigible peece of worke.

The third Booke of Antiquities

The fourth Chapter.



Mong all the ancient building to bee seene in Rome, I am of opinion, that the Pantheon (for one piece of worke alone) is the fayrest, wholest, and best to be vnderstood; and is so much the more wonderfull then the rest, because it hath so many members, which are all so correspondent one to the other, that wholoeuer beholdeth it, taketh great pleasure therein, which proceedeth from this, that the excellent workeman, which intented it, chose the perfitest forme, that is, the round forme, whereby it is viually called, Our Lady of the Round: for within, it is as high as it is broad. And it may be, that the fayd workeman, confidering, that all things proceeding orderly, have a principall and onely head, whereon the nether parts depend, was of opinion, that this

piece of worke should have onely but one light, and that, in the highest part thereof, that it might spread abroad in all places alike, as in effect you see it doth: for belides other things which have their perfect light, there are fixe Chappels, which (for that they fland within the thicknesse of the wall) should be darke, yet they have their due light, by the meanes of some drawing windowes, aboue in the top of the sayd Chappels, which give them becond light, taken from the vppermost hole, so that there is not any small thing in them, but it receive tha part of the light, (and this is not made without great judgement:) for this Temple, in old time, being dedicated to all the gods, by which meanes there stood many Images in it, (which the divers Tabernacles, Seates, and small windowes shew) it was necessary that every one had his Wherefore such as take pleasure to make Images, and other imbessed or graven worke, must confider, that such a Cabinet should have his light from aboue, that every one, standing in his place, neede not looke for light to see, but that they may bee seenealtogether at one time. But to come to my first fpeach: For that the Panikeon scemeth vnto me to be the perfectest prece of workethat ever I saw, therefore I thought it good to fet it first in the beginning of this Booke, and for a principall head of all other peeces of worke. The founder of this Temple (as Plinie writeth in more then one place) was Marcus Agrippa, to accomplish Augustus Casars last will, who being intercepted by death, could not finish it : and so it was built about source teene yeeres after the byrth of our Lord, which is about 5203, yeeres from the

beginning of the world.

In this Temple (as Pliny writeth) the Capitals were of Copper; and hee writeth also, that Diogenes, the Image-maker of Athens, made the excellent Caracters in the Pillars, and that the Images placed about the Frontespicium were much commended, although by the highnesse of the place they could not be so well discerned. This Temple was consumed with lightening, and burnt, about the 12. yeere of the raigne of the Emperour Traian, which was about 113. yeeres after the byrth of Christ, and in the 5311. yeere of the creation of the world: and Lucius Septimus Seucrus, and Marcus Aurelius Antonius, repayred it agayne, with all the Ornaments thereto belonging, as it appeareth in the Architraue of the fayd frame: which Ornaments, you must presume, were all new made, otherwise the Caracters of Diogenes would still have bene seene there. But in truth, the workman that made it, was very indicious and constant; for that he proportioned the members thereof very indiciously to the body, and would not suppresse the worke with many cuttings: but as I will shew, when time serueth, how to place and detide them excellent well.

Also, in all the worke, hee hath observed the worke of Corinth, and would mixe no other with it; and withall, the measures of all the members are as well observed as ever I saw or measured in any other peece of worke, whereby we may call this Temple an example of workemanship. But leaving this matter (for that it giueth the workeman little, or no instruction to the purpose) I will proceede to the particular meafures: and that I may goe forward orderly in these Antiquities, the first Figure shall be the Ichnography. Thesecond, the Orthography. The third, the Sciography. This

Of Antiquitie

This Figure following is the Ichnography, that is, the ground of the Temple aforefayd, which is measured by the ancient, or old Romish Palmes placed along by the side hereof. And first, speaking of the Portall, whereof the Columnes are 6. Palmes & 29. minutes thicke. The Intercolumnes (which are the spaces from one Columne to another) are 8. Palmes and 9. minutes: the breadth of the Portall is 40. Palmes: the breadth of the flat Pillars of the Portall, is like the Diameter of the Columnes: the breadth of the Seates betweene the Pillars, is 10. Palmes: and the Pilasters on the sides are 2. Palmes: the widehesse of the Gates is 26. Palmes and a halfe: the widenesse of the whole Temple (that is, of the Floore within, from one wall to another) is 194. Palmes: and just so much is the height from the Floore to the vndermost stone of the window aboue. The fayd round hole is 36. Palmes and a halfe broad: each of the fixe Chappels that are made within the thicknesse of the wall, are 26. Palmes, and 30. minutes; and goe halfe as deepe into the wall as the thicknesse of the source square Pillars on each side. But the principall Chappell is thirtie Palmes broad, and also is an halfe Circle, besides the Pillars aforesayd. The thicknesse of the Columnes of all the Chappels, is 5. Palmes, 3. minutes lesse: the four equare corner Pillars also of the fayd Chappels, contayning as much. The Columnes of the Tabernacle betweene the Chappels are two Palmes thicke: the thicknesse of the wall that goeth round about the whole body of the Temple, is 31. Palmes. And although that the Chappels make the walles hollow, yet betweene them there are hollow places made within the walles, which some say, were lest for places to receive wind, because of carthquakes. But Iam of opinion, that they were left so vnfilled, to spare stuffe, because they are made circlewise, and are strong inough. going vp, which you see here on the left side, was also on the right side, to go vp the Portall: men also went from thence round about the Temple, ouer the Chappels, through a secret way, which is yet there: through the which also, they went without on the steps, to clime vp into the highest parts of the buildings, with many goings vp which are round about it. It is thought, that this foundation was all one masse or lumpe, and without, many places hollow, so that some neighbours marking it, and seeking to build, haue found fuch a foundation when they digged.

This is the old Romish Palme, which is deuided into twelue singers, and each singer is deuided into source parts, which are called Minutes, by the which measure this present Figure, with all the parts following, was measured.

In the sight of Vor the Returneday

fithe antient landhoon at Rome ever wally

fell in, to the interior amobition of that magnife

getilration building, a pression remains of the

Roman who becture, at has a few fine

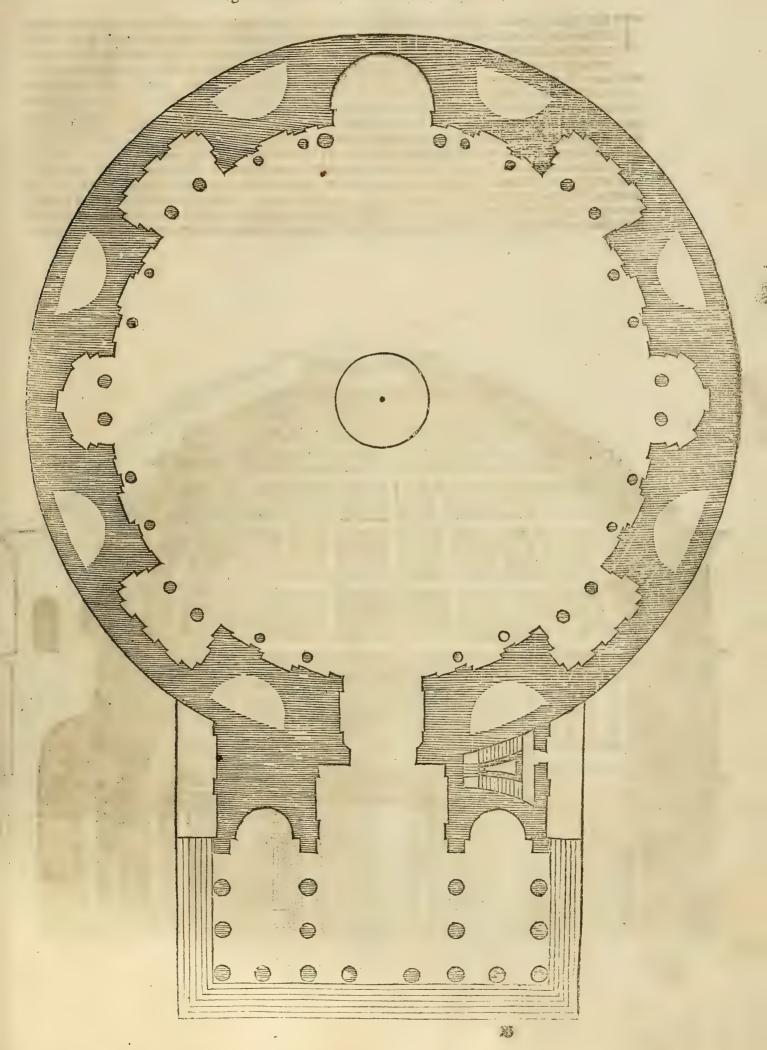
attornests (herek occidentes to the Vingen

thang and also the Marty is Stalled the Change

falls Jainty

The third Booke. Chapter, Fol. 2.

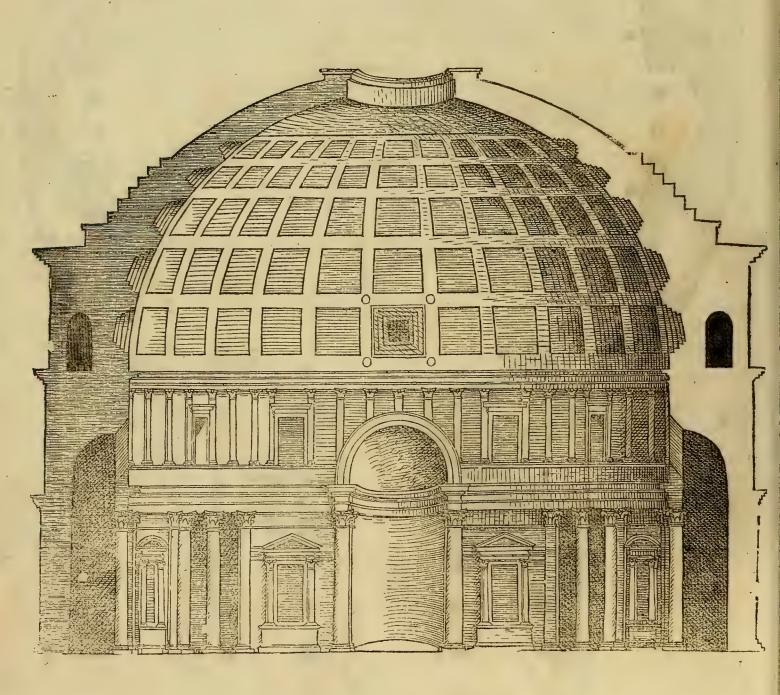
The ground of the Pantheon called Reconde,



Of Antiquitie

The forme of the Pantheon without.

defigure hereunder, sheweth the whole forme of the Pantheon right before, and although at this time men go downe into it by certaine steps; yet as it was made at the sirst it was seven steps about the ground. It is no wonder that such and so old a piece of worke is yet twhole and kanding still, for that the foundation was not sparingly made; for it is thought that it was once as droad againe buder as it is above, as it had been found by the neighbour workemen: but let is proceed to the particular measure thereof from the earth by wards. I sayd before, that the Diater of the Columens of the Portal is sire Palmes a nine and twenty minutes, but the height is soure and siste Palmes and nine and twentie minutes, without the Bases and Capitals: the Bases are three Palmes and nine them minutes high, and the Capitals seven Palmes and seven minutes high, the beight of the Architrane is sive Palmes, the Frese is sine Palmes and thirteen munutes high; the Cornice is source Palmes and nine minutes high, above from the top or Scina of the Cornice, to the popul of the Gewell, are source and thirtie Palmes, and nine and thirtie minutes. The Timpanum, that is, the stat part of the Gewell, is thought to have bene adorned with slaver images, althought it is not set downe in writing; but considering the great power of such Emperors, I am persuaded that it was so, so, if the Goathes, Mandals, or other nations (which special Rome more then once) had beene destrous or conetous of Copper, they might have taken it from the Architranes and other Dramments in Portals in great abundance: but let it be as it will, there are Figures and tokens sayd tokens sayd there were Figures and tokens of Wettall Canding thereon.



The fourth Chapter. Fol 3.

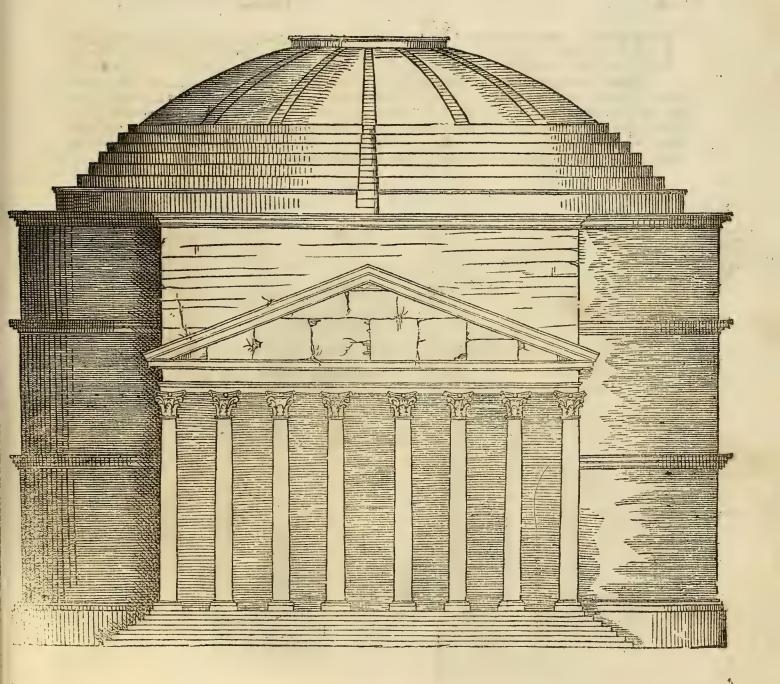
The inner part of the Temple or Pantheon.

This Figure following the weth the Pantheon within, which forme (as I faid) is taken from Sphera, because it is high from the Paucenent to the open place byon the top thereof, which widenesses and height are both a hundred ninetic and source Palmes bywards, from the Paucenent to the highest; and from the Cornice to the highest part of the rose is also the same measure, that is, each the halfe of one hundred ninetic and source Palmes. The Quadrants in the rose are all like that in the middle; and it is thought that they were also beautified oner with Silver plate by certaine remnants thereof yet remaying to be seene: so, if they had beene of Copper, they would yet be seene there, or else those over the Portals would also have beene taken away.

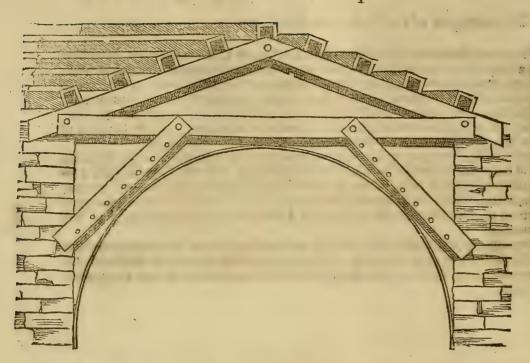
Let no man wonder that in these things (requiring Perspective Arte) that there is no Pauement or other shortening sene, but I make it onely out of the ground to thew the measure of the height thereof, that you might not mille it by shortening: But in the Booke of Perspective Arte these things are shewed in their right shortening manner (and that in divers wayes) that is to say, in Superficies, and many bodies, and divers sorte of houses, serving thereunto: I will not nowlet bowne the measure of Cornices downewards, sor hereafter I will show the Figures piece by piece, and

thereof fet beime a fenerali meafure.

The Chappell in the middle, although here it Goweth well with the other worke, pet many men are of opinion that it is not ancient, because the Arch thereof wanteth the Aus pillars, which is a thing never bled by good Antiquities, but it is thought that it was made greater in the Christians time, as the Christians Temples alwayes have one principall Altar which is greater then the rest.

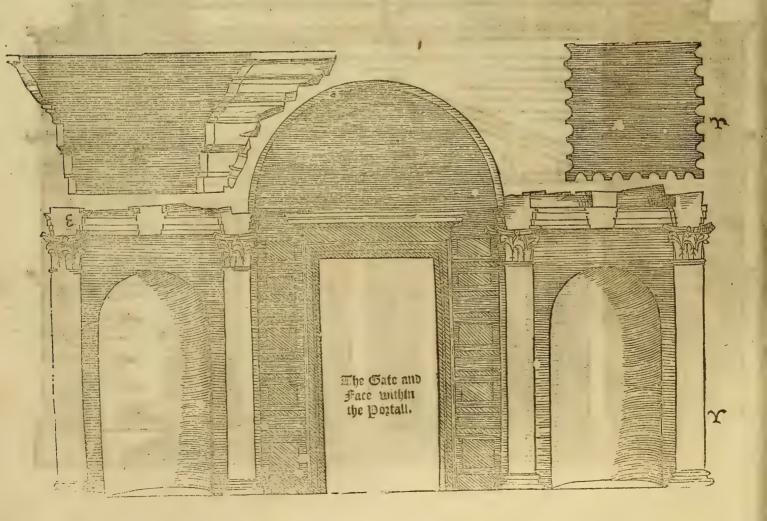


Of Antiquitie

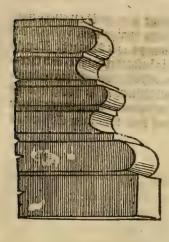


This Denament is yet tanding about the Poetall of the Pantheon, which is made in this manner, all of Copper plates, the halfe Circle is not there; but there was a croked Superficies finely made of Copper: and many men are of opinion that the beautifying thereof was of Silver, for the reasons aforefaid; but wherof it was, it is not well knowner, but it is true, it was ercellent faire works, considering that which is yet to beefore.

fore is well set out with Harble, and also without, although by continuance of time is much desaced. The source sould set out with Harble, and also without, although by continuance of time is much desaced. The source Pillars are cancled with such a number of Canels, as you see it here winder set downe; and because this round Columns is thinner about then the Diameter, where the edge or border of the Architrabe is as thicke as the Columns: If a man would make the Architrabe equal with the source Pillars, which lessen not about, then the edge would have had no Perpendicular, so it would have wanted as much as the lessening of the round Columnes. Thus the shiffell works man half placed the Architrabe so much right about the the source Pillars, because such things show well. Touching the dozes, shey are twenty Palmes, and swo minutes wide, and sortie Palmes and source minutes high. Of the other several measures I will becaster speake at large.



trave stands above the Doze of the Panthron, touching the measure thereof, the Architrane or Superficie is the eight part of the light; the Frede, because it is vneut, is a third part lesse then the Superficies, the Comice is as high as the Superficie; the other members are proportioned according to the greatnesse, whereby a man may finds the rest with the Compasse.

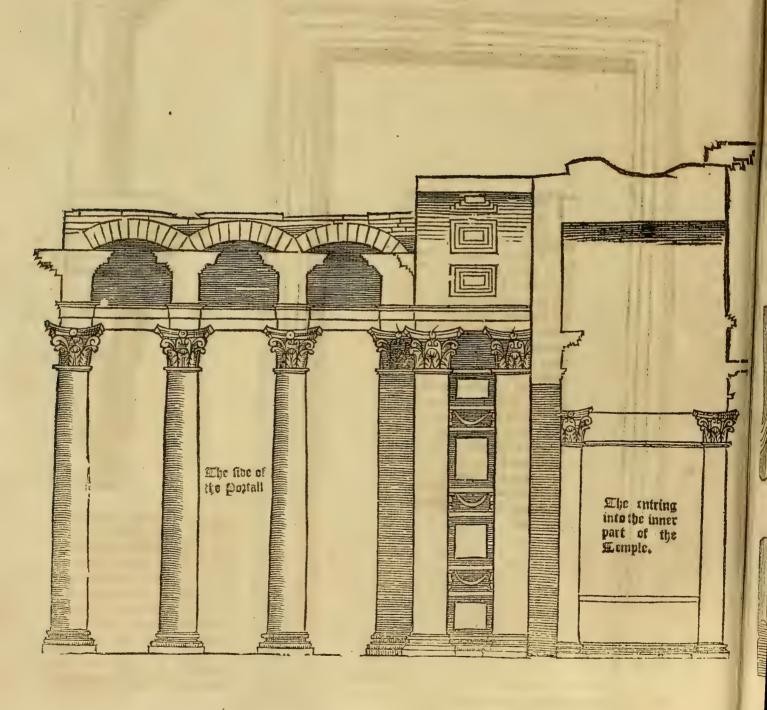


This Bale is one of those which than the fact pillats, in the fecond or der, which for that they fand farre from mens fight, have one Altragelus for two, not to hore ten the works.

P De proportion of this Doze is already let down touching breath and height, but the Pilaillers thereof is the eyght part of the breath of the widenesse of the light: and although Vicrauius maketh & Bilaifter of Doriea and Jonica about the fire part, get this is not onlæmelp, because it is Z Cozinthe; for the Cozinthian Co. lumnes are more lightly then or thers, yet it fæmeth to be so much thicker then the fides are of a god depenelle, fo that a mans fight bes holding them all at one time, it lee meth not to be fo fmall as in effect it is; the Pilailters on the fives and the Superficies of Architrane bpon them is faid to be all of one piece, and I for my part hane fiene no viullion or parting therein: the particular measures stand here on the lides. The Coanice, Frele, and Archie

Of Antiquitie

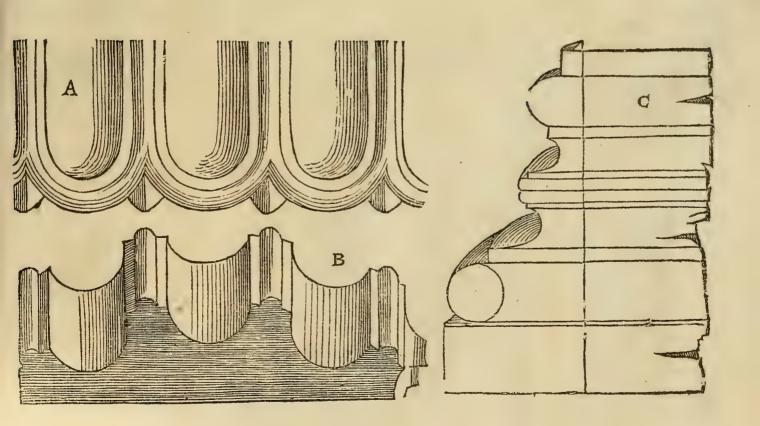
Thew all the parts of this most excellent and beautifull piece of worke it is convenient to turne it on every side, and therefore having she wed the outside thereof maiestically as it sanceth, with all the things which you se before now will I she with lodge, the Portall and the entring into the Temple, side wayes as it sanceth. Louching the measure, the thicknesse, and the height of the Columnes and the Pillars, it is before set downe, and therefore nædelesse to be rehearled, it sufficeth onely to see the disposition of the things within, which, although they be small they are drawne and proportioned in their measure according to the greatnesse. The small Pillars at the going into the Temple are source square, in manner of Pillaisters, the measure thereof I will hereaster set downe, so, they are also at the Corners of the Chappels within round about the Temple, and as much as the space of these three inter Columnes holds, so farre reaches the Copper rose, whereof I spake before.



The third Booke.

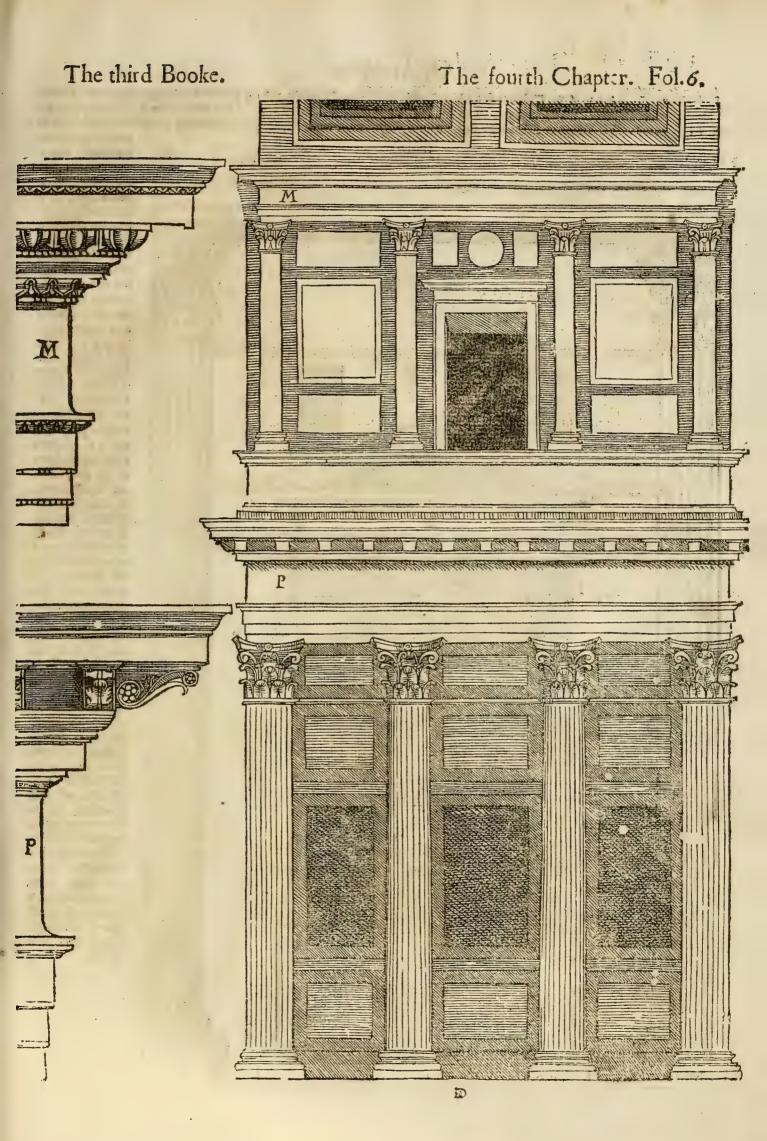
The fourth Chapter. Fol.5,

Will not take boon me to write of sucry fenerall cutting or hollowing of the Columnes whereof there are many in the Bantheon, but onely of the Columnes before the great Chappell, because they are very sayte and excellent worke, I will thew formething, to the which end the Figures marked with A. and B. their the outward works of the graning of the Columnes of the great Chappell, that is, in the flat and in the brightness and flanding by : touching the forms and the fallion it is sufficiently the wed in these two Figures; and thus will I them you the measures thereof. The Canaels are four eand twenty in number, enery Canall being nine minutes and a halfe broad, the Therns with the two Quadrats or litts are both together foure minutes and a halfe, for the Thorns is thee minutes, and then there refleth a minnte and a balfe, which beufded into two parts, euery Quadgate on euther fire is their quarters of a minute. This hollowing pleafeth the beholders passing well, and such worke is boon the Wasting de foro transitions, for the beautisping of a Bate, as it is the wed in the fourth Booke. The Bale marked with C. is the Bale of the layd Columnes of the great Chappell in the Pantheon, whereof the beight is two Paimes and cleuen minutes and a halfe, which is in this manner divided, The Plinthus bnder is ninetone minutes high, the badermoft Thogus is fenenterne minutes, and the Duadrate aboue it is their minutes and a halfe: The first Scotte or Troches is eight minutes and a third part, the Quadrate binder the Adragal is halfe a minute, to is the other about the Adragal the two Adragals are fire minutes and a halfe, and to each Altragall is the minutes and a quarter. The fecond Scotic ex Trochile above the Altragals is fire minutes, the Supercilie (foramed by Victorius) or the Duadrate boder the fecond Thorus is one minute: That The rus is seven minutes and two third parts high, the Cincte, that is the band of the Columne above the Thopus, although the Bale benotone, is the minutes; the Projecture of this Bale is three and twenty minutes proportioned in manner as it is here binder thewed.



Of Antiquitie

His Figure following represente tha part of the Pantheon within, that is, from the Panement till you come by to the second Cornice, which beareth by the Tribune or the round roofe; and also about the Cornice you for the beginning of the four equare hollowing of the faid Tribune: This Figure also in the nether part theweth the widenelicof one of the fire Chappels, whereof two are in forme of the halfe Circles, and the other foure in forme of a Quadrangle; yet in thow they fame all to be of one forme : each of these Chappels have two round Columnes, and the corners have their foure square Pillars, as you may fee in the ground of the Pantheon aforesaid, and in this Figure And although it be not fet in Perspective manner, whereby a man might fe whether it were a rounde or foure square Chappell, that is omitted because of the measure thereof; not with landing this is made so a source square, which you may le by the forme of the blind windowes which are within the Chappell, for the other Mould runne more The thickeneffe of thefe Columnes is fine Palmes thee minutes leffe, the height of the Bales is two Palmes and one and fwenty minutes, the height of the Columnes without the Capitals is fourtie Palmes, the height of the Ca pitals is fine Palmes and thirtie minutes; and fo the whole Columne with the Bales and Capitals: is fourtie and eight Palmes high. The height of the Architrane, Freie and Comice, are altogether thirteene Palmes and a halfe, and this height in all is deuided into ten parts, whereof the parts are for the Architrane; the other the are for the Sophero or the Freele, and the other foure parts are for the Cornice: Touching the rest of the other members, I fet downe no measures, because this is proportionably veclared touching the principallest of them that stand on the side thereof marked with P. And in tructy, a man in this Cornice may perceive the indicious skill of the workeman, who therein touching the mutiles, would not cut any deatiles therein, thereby not to fall into that common errour, wherein to many ancient workemen have fallen, and at this day more moderne workemen. The errour I meane is this, that all the corners wherein mutiles frand, and bnock have bentiles cut in them are vicious, and by Victuuius are rejected in the fecond Chapter in his fourth 25 whe: and although that in this Coanice the forme of denticles are, notwith fanding, because it is breat, it is not to be condemned in this respect. Abone this Cornice there is a Podium, or a manner of bearing out, whereof the height is feuen palmes and fire minutes, which commeth not farre out, for the Willars Canonot farre out from the Wall: the height whereof, together with the Architrane, Friese and Counice, is fourtie Palmes and lire and thirtie minutes, which beight being deutoed into fine parts, the one part thall be for the Architraue. Freie and Cornice, the which Architrane, Freile and Cornice proportioned according to the greatnesse, stands marked with the letter M. Anthis Comice, and also in the Architrane, the members are so well devided, part cut, and part bucut, that it darked neth not the forme thereof, but rather the more, because bucut members are mixed with the cut members, and so you fe a wonderfull grace in them: the window about the Chappell is to give light to the same Chappell, which light, although it be not principall, neverthelette, because it is radially drawne by from the bypermost open place, it giveth the Chappell the delive light: betweene the Pillars, and also about the windowes, there are many fine stones intermired, and the Frese of the first Comice is fine profil Cone.



Of Antiquitie

This Figure theweth one of the Tabernacles which Cano betweene the Chappels, and the Pillars on the Coes represent the source square cornerd Pillars of the Chapples, here agains you may le the notable sudgement of this workeman, who leking to iopne the Architrane, Frese and Cornice close to the wall, and marking that the source square Pillars Canding on the lides, were not so

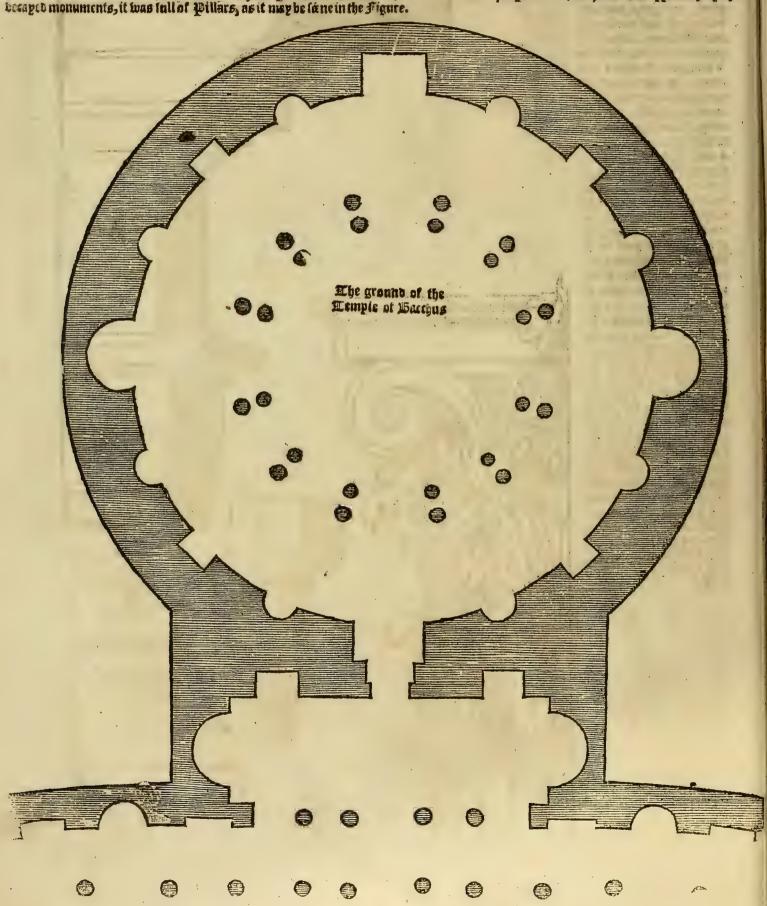


farre distant from the Wall, that a man might make the whole Proiece ture of the Coants ces therein: there, fore bee made the Scine theron, and the rest of the other members bes ture ned into a Falcie, whereby the work was moze fæmely and accompanied with order. The two blinds windowes are thought to have beene plas ced for idols. The fote of the Mabers nacleis 9. Palms and II. minutes high, the thicknes of the Columnes are two Paimes, the height firtene Palmes without Bales or Capi tals, the Males are one Palme high, the bright of the Capitals are two Palmes & a halfe; the Architrane is a Baime, & Frale also is as much. Which is also of fine profil, but the height of the Cop-nice is a Palme & a halfe, the frontispice is 5. Palms high, y Architraue aboue himo greatelf Pillars, is a Dalme and thie quarters, the o. thermeasures that hereafter be fbetos ed; e of these Tas bernactes there are thie with Marpe genels, and these with round genels, that is the fourth part of a Circle.

Hele foure Figures hereunto annered, are members of the Dabernas clesingreat; astheletters A. B. C. D. theme them. . Deuching their measures in height, it is the wed bes fore, and for the rest it is ful: ficient for the workeman that all things from member to member arefet pat in great, and proportionable with great diligence broght into this forme, although it may bee that fuch as fludy Vicrous will thinke this Comice to bee to high for the proportion of the Archie trave and Frese; and I for my part to ould not make it fo high, but to le the fame in a place that bath great bis Stances, and which Mandeth not very high, it theweth to bee in good proportion. The Capitall is farre from Vitruuius oader of ivaiting, for it is higher without the Abacus, then Victorius mas keth it with the Abacus:not: with Canbing, according to common opinion, they are the fayzest Capitals that are in Rome, (and not onely the Capitals of the Taberna cles) but they also of the Chappels are of the like forme, and those of the 1002 tall also in such sort, that 3 indge (as I layo at the beginning) that I have not found a building of greater observation of order then this: but if I thould wayte all that are in it, both within and without, I thould peraduenture be ouer tedions, therefore 3 wil make an end of this wonderfall Building, and speake of other Antis quitics.

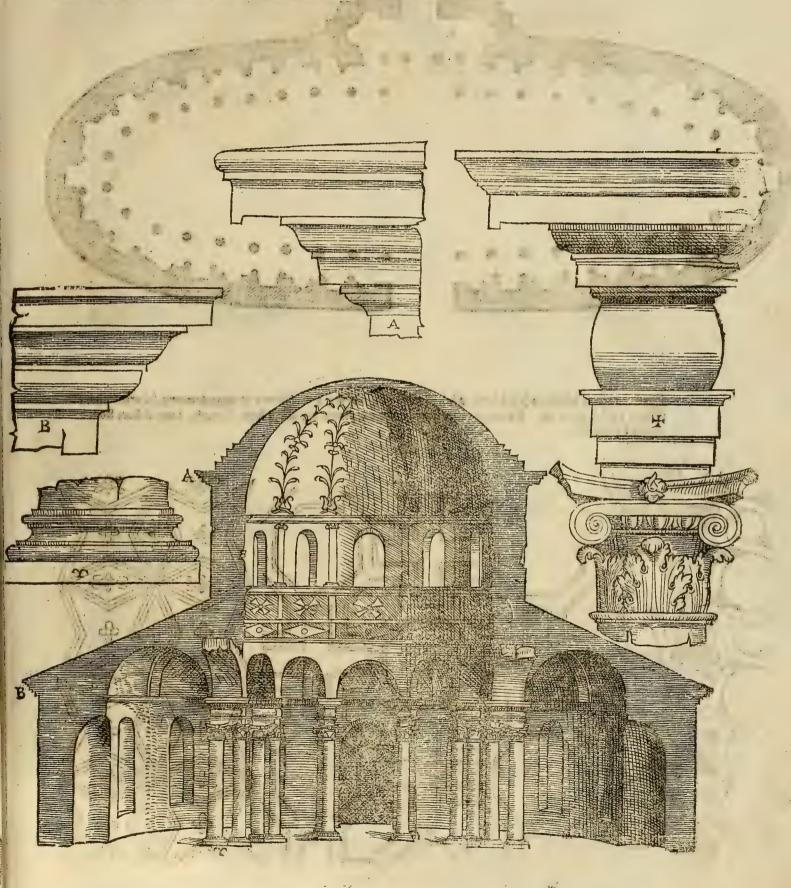


Mis Kemple of Barchus is very ancient, and also whole inough, and also so worke, sayteness of kones, Plaister, both in the Panes ment and inwalles, also in the Arthunes or round roses in the middle, and in the roose of the round walke, made altogether after the nexter of Composita: the whole Diameter within from Wall to Wall, is 100. Palmes long, whereof the middlemost body set about with Pillars, containeth 50. Palmes: in the intercolumnes I sind great dissernce to liken hone to the other, because that the middlemost intercolumnes or spaces between the Columnes where you came in, and out of the Portaliere 9. Palmes and 30. minutes; and the other right once against them are but 9. Palmes and 9. minutes: those that are over against the greatest Cheppelare 8. Palmes and 31. minutes, and the other source Columnes ressing hold 7. Palmes 8. minutes, and some 7. Palmes 12. minutes. The widenesse of the entry within and of the source cornerd Cheppell over against it, sollow the intercolumnes, and so tooth the widenesse of the two great places of the portal their intercolumnes. The other places or Chappels are 7. Palmes and 5. minutes broad. The measure of the Portal before, may be taken by the measure of the Temple, which Portal is round Recost d: without before the Portal, there was a walking place made in some of an Egge, which was 588. Palmes long, and in the middle it was 140. Palmes broad; and as it appeareth by the becaped monuments, it was sailed Pillars, as it may be sained the Figure.

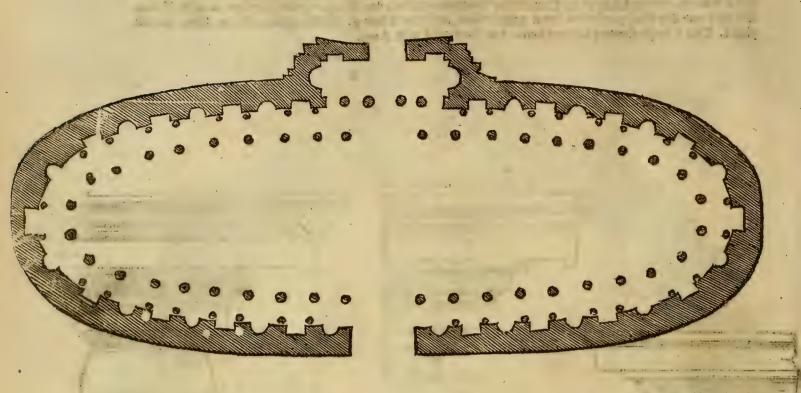


The fourth Chapter. Fol.8,

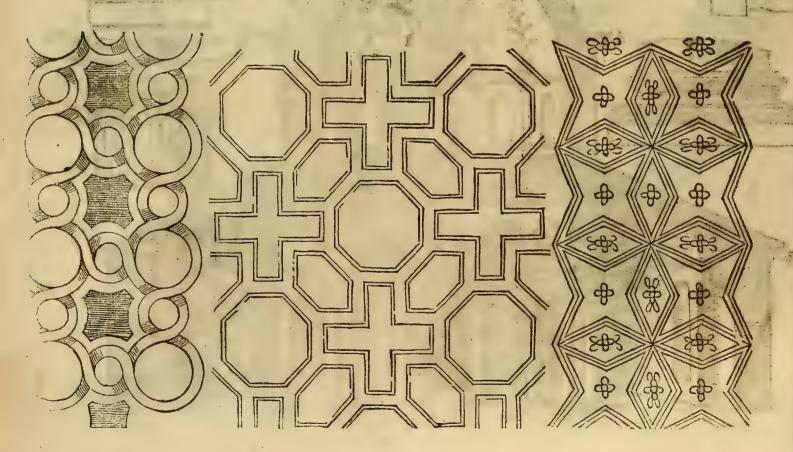
Dere befoze I thewed the ground of the Temple with the measure thereof, now in this Figure I will thew the Ditographis thereof within, for without it is wholy defaced; the height from the Pauement to the oppermoder part of the roofe is 86. Palmes, the thickness of the Columnes is two Palmes and 14. minutes, the height of them is 22. Palmes and 11. minutes. The height of the Base is one Palme and 7. minutes. The height of the Capitall is 2. Palmes and a quarter. The height of the Architrane is one Palme and a quarter, so much also the Frése holdeth. But the height of the Cornices are two Palmes and a halfe. The particular members, as of the Bases, Cornices and Capitals, you see here under proportioned, according to their greatnesse, and marked in their severall places. This Temple standeth without Rome, and is dedicated to S. Aanc.



I) E Ichnographie hereunder placed is the aforefayd walking place before the Cemple of Warchus, with a ladge round about it, as you may perceine by some very ruinous places thereof, and all about between each intercolumne there was a place or leat beautified with small Pillars, where it is thought a certaine Idall stood, (and as it is sayd) this walking place was made Duale wife, yet very long as of 388. Palmes and 140. Palmes broad.



The Temple of Bacchus (as I layd) is full of many Denaments, and of diners Compartements, whereof I have the to to feme part, but not all. The this inventions hereunder placed are in the lame Temple, some of faire Contend the other of Pilailler.

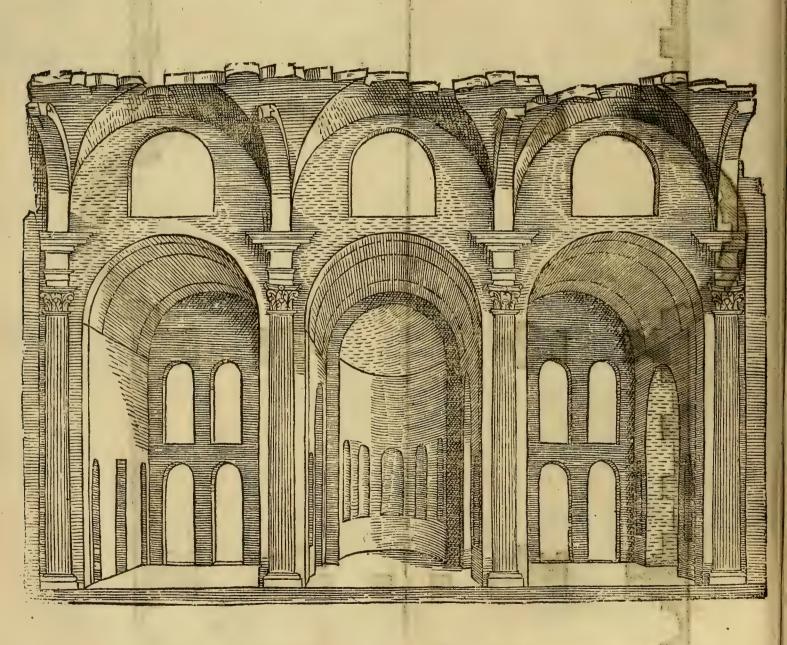


The fourth Chapter, Fol. 6

Pis Temple of peace the Emperor Vespatian caused to bee made by the Barket in Rome, which Temple is come mended of Plinie, for it was much beautified with graven worke and Pilaister of Stucco; and besides these Arab ments of the said Temple, after the death of Nero, Vespatian caused all the Images both of Copper and Parble to bee placed therein, which king Nero had gathered together out of divers places, which were no small number. Vespatian also placed in it both his owne and his childrens Images made of a new kind of Barble brought ent of Echiopia, called Basalco, being of an Aron collour, a kind of Custe much commended in those times. In the said Temple and the principal Chappell thereof, there sood an Image of white Parble very great, made of many pieces, of which reliques there are many pieces pet to bee fene in Campidoglo; eally bpoit, wherby a man may guelle and among other pieces there is a fate, whereof the greatnesse of the Image, and it was the traple of the great Toe is to great that I fate made by an ercellent workeman. 544474474

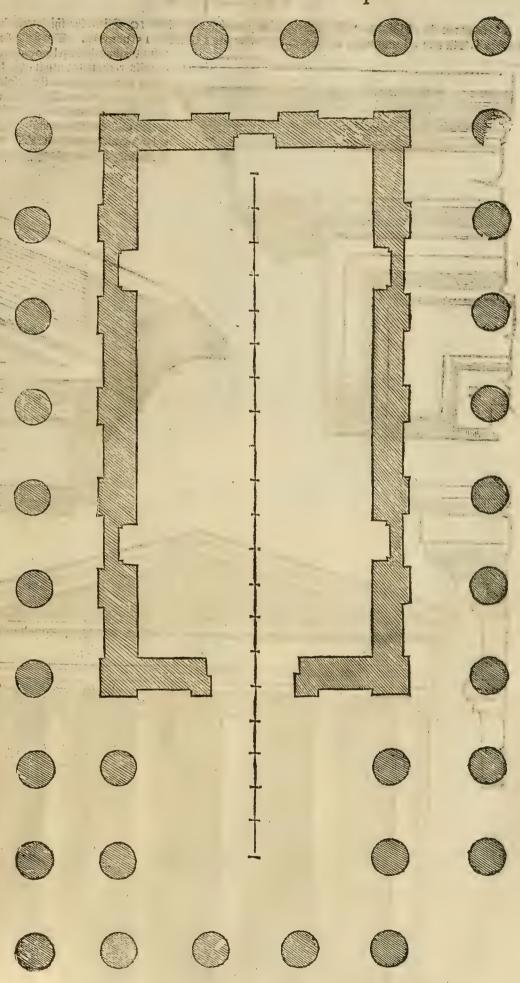
his Temple is measured with Elles, and the Elle is devided into 12. parts, called ounces, the measure which Candeth in the middle of the ground of the Temple is halfe an Bile : First, the length of the lodges about is 122. Giles, the breath is 15. Cles, the widenesse of the places before in the loggis containe 10. Elles, the thickenesse of the Pillars at the entric is fine Elles, and betweene the one Pillar and the other is 10. Elles, the goings in on both floes, both of the Portall and of the Temple are 16. Elles wide, the length of the whole Temple is about 170. Elles, the bredth containeth 125. Elles, the principall place in the middle of the Temple is 35. Elles. The floes of the Pilatters against the schich the round Tolumnes stand are 9. Elles and a halfe, and the thickenesse of these Tolumnesses. are 4. Biles, 4. ounces and a halfe, and they are canclert, enery one having 24. Canels: the caue or hollowing of each Canell is 5. ounces broad, and the lift thereof one ounce and a halfe; the bredth of the principal Chappell is about 32. Elles, and is halfe a Circle. Alpole on the Ades marked A.B. are 37. Elles broad, land goe 16. Elles into the Wall, which is lefte then halfe a Circle: the thickenetic of the Wall round about the Aemple is 12. Elles, altough in many places, because of the Bowes, it is much thinner. The Circumferences of the Chappels are 6. Elles thicke, betivene the one Bilafter and the other, it is 45. Elles; you may conceane the quantitie of the measure of many places and win doires with other particular things, by the measures aforclayd, for the Figure is proportioned. Lauching the Ortographie, which is the Figure hereafter following, because the ground is all concred over with the ruines thereof; I could not measure it from the ground to the top, but as much as I conceived by that part of the ground, and also of the raines which are there to be fene; 3 make this piece Canbing bpzight. 3 am not certaine whether the Columnes have this pedeftall under them of not, because that men cannot see the fot of the Columnes. And although that Plini much come mendeth this Building, pet there are many buhandlome things in it, specially the Cornices above the Columnes, which are not accompanied with any thing, but fand bare and naked alone.

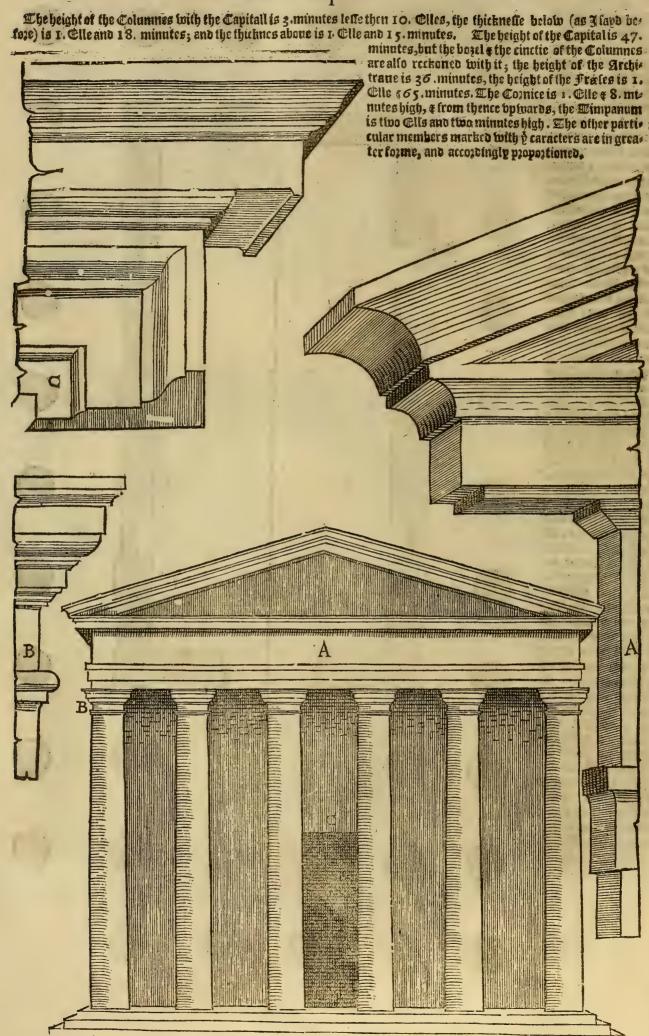
skidolimik sti

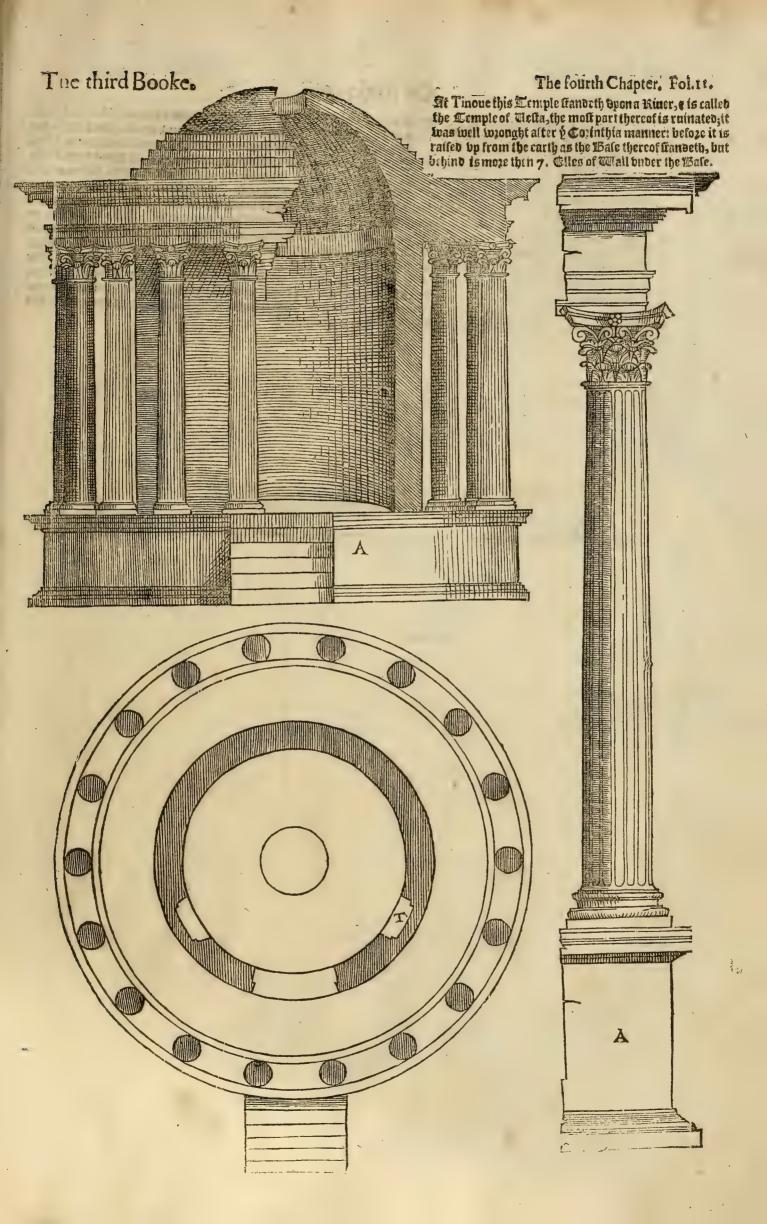


The fourth Chapter. Fol. 10,

His Building is A called Templum pietatis, it is made altogether of akind of rough stone, which is there called Tiburrium, after the River of Wis ber; but for that the None is spengie and ful ofholes, it was covered all over with a kind of Plaiffer called Stucco, it is very rulnous, for therein you le no propostion of windowes: neuerthelle, 3 haue pla ced them in the ground where Ithought them fittelf to Cand. This Building is measured with an other Elle, lohich its devided into 60. minutes; & the line through the middle of the ground of the Temple is the third part of the lato Elle: First, the Columes are an Cile & 18.minutes thickethe intercolumnes 3. Elles and 14. minutes, the bacoth of the gates is 4. Elles and 14. minutes and a halfi, the thicknes of the wall is one Elle and 20. minutes, the length of § Temple is 18. Elles and 20 mi nutes, the bredth of the Temple is 8. Ells and 30 minutes: the Galo lery round about the Aemple was flat roo fed with fours square pearches: but how the broad place before the Temple was rosed I cannot coceane, because it is so rumous. The columnes of this Temple haue no Bases noz any Cinthic, oz Proieco ture, but fand bare bps on their ground, a well made of Tiburtium, and covered over with Stacco. This Aemple had the frotespice both behind and before,

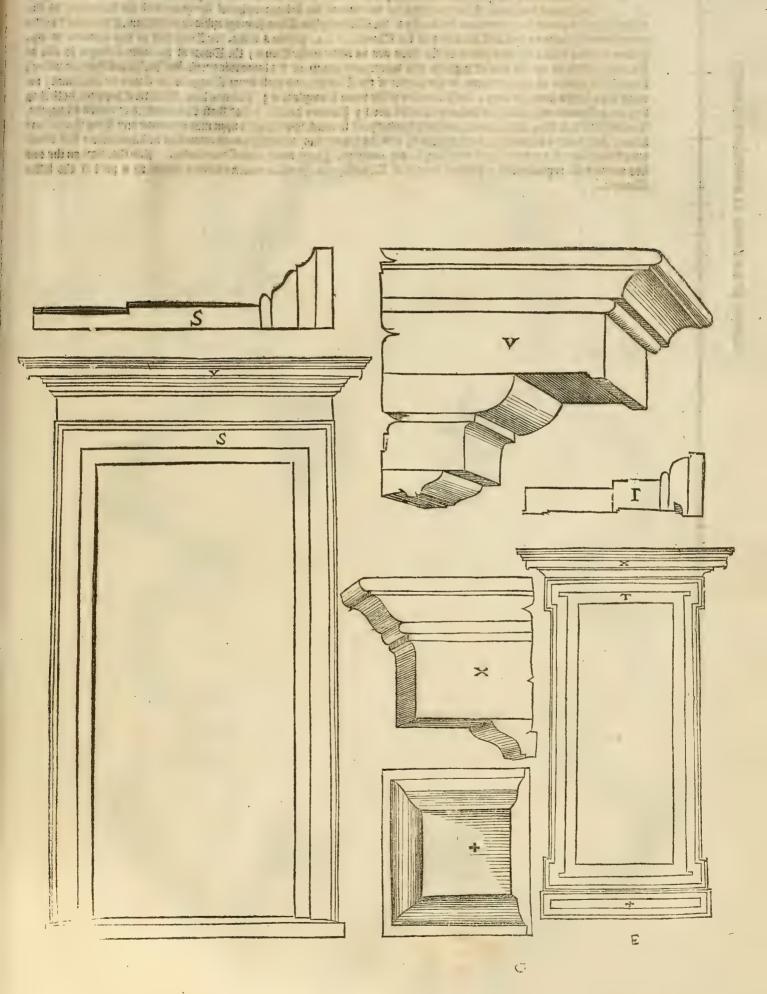




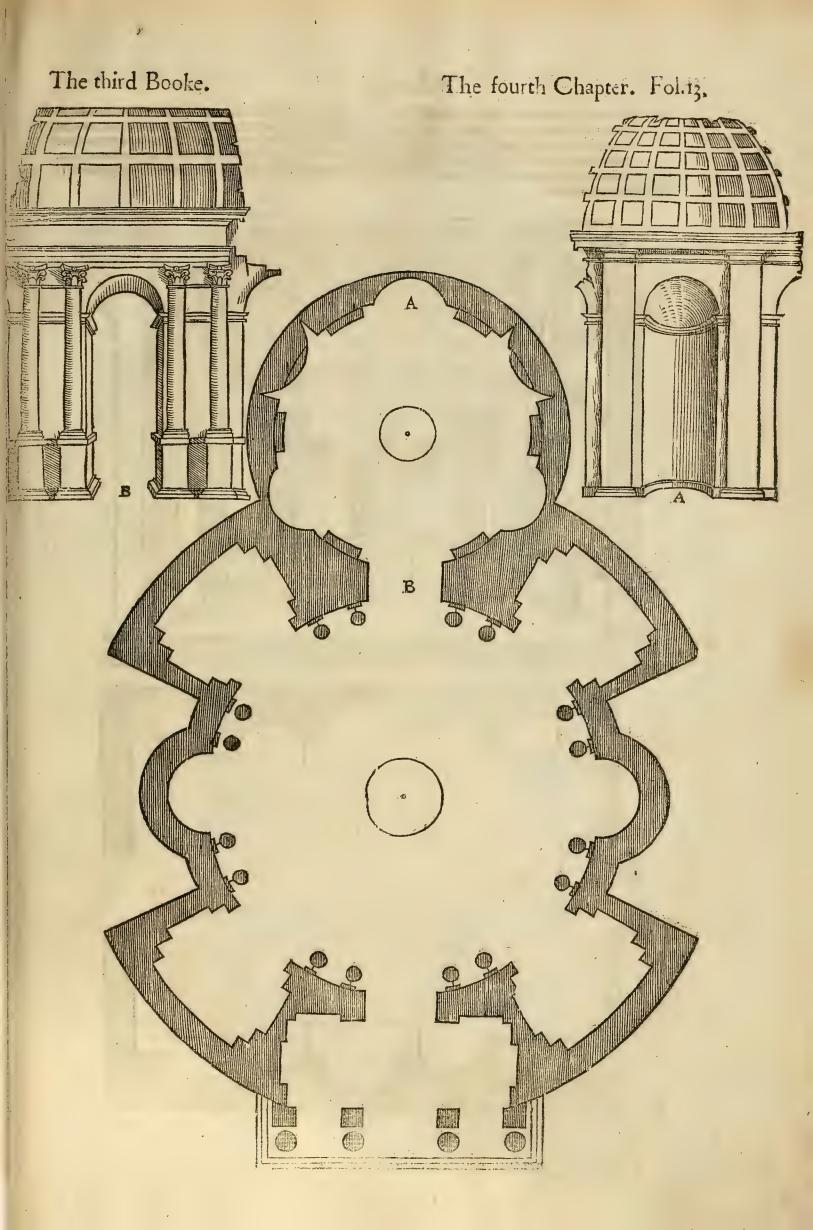


This last Temple is measured with the last Elles of 60, minutes, and first, the Columnes are one Elle and 17. minutes thicke, the intercolumnes 2. Elles and 34, minutes, betweene the Columnes and the Wall is 2. Elles and a halfe, the thickenesse of the Wall is an Ell and 13, minutes, the Paucinent of the Temple within is 12. Elles and a halfe: the Poetesall marked A. with the Columnes and their conaments serve for the whole order of the Temple. The height of the Base of the Poetessall is 2. Elles and 48. minutes. The Commes is 37, minutes and a halfe, the Temple of the Columnes is 38 minutes and a halfe, the Temple of the Columnes is 10 Elles high: the Capitall is an Elle and 24, minutes high. The Architrave, Frese and Counce all together are about two Elles and a halfe high. The Dooze marked with S. Y. is 9. Elles in height, the breeth of the light unter is 4. Elles 4, minutes, but the wideness about is 3. Elles 54, minutes, the which is lectured about, according to Vierusius doctrine. The Anterpagmentum is 52, minutes and a halfe broad, but the Supercitic (because of the lecturing) is but 51, minutes; the Frese is 30, minutes and a halfe broad, and the Coinice 24. The Teinedium marked with T. X. is one Elle 46, minutes and a halfe broad, the height containeth 5. Elles 3, minutes, and is lectured aboue, as the Dooze is. The Anterpagmentum is 31, minutes and a halfe broad, and the Coinice containeth as much, but the other particular members, are in greater to me marked with the same lecters set by them, and well proportioned: This Thindow is inrought both within and without.

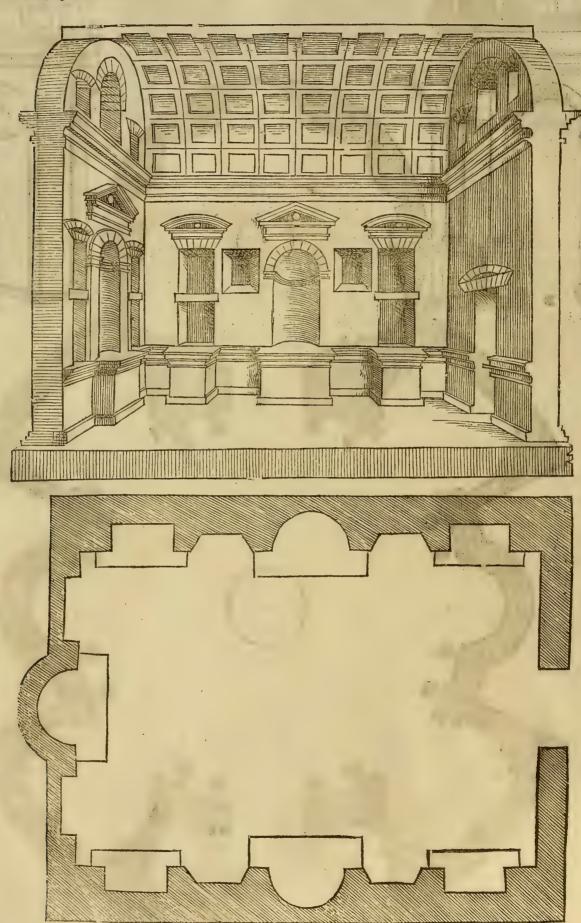
This is the third part of the common Elies of 66. minutes, wherewith the Temple aforetayd', and this also is measured.



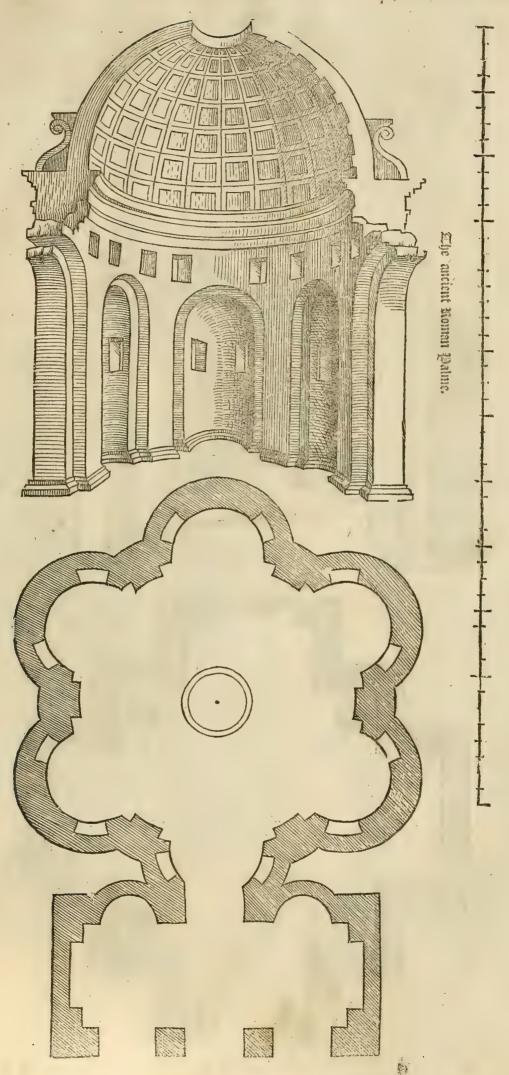
ornament's therein which I have here placed in Figure; but as it made of Bricke; poulé none of these ornament's therein which I have here placed in Figure; but as it made be conceived by the ground thereof, and also considering the proportioned height, it was made of that sation as the pieces marked A. B. Canding by the ground doe thew. Thus we have the measure of the Ichnographie of the ground of the Temple, by the which measure a man may conceave the worke of the Drographie: This Ichnographie or platforme, is measured by the olde Romane Palme: and first, the doore of the Temple is 24. Palmes wide, the Diameter of this Temple is 69. Palmes and a halfe: the two places on the sides are as wide as the Doore; the Doore of the lesser Temple is also so the same breath, so are the foure Chappels also where men goe in, of the same widenesse, but backward they are wider, because the walles of the side runne to the Center of the Temple, and those some Chappels (as it way be conceaved) receive their lights from the sides: the Diameter of the small Temple is 63. Palmes long, the little Chappels, both they that are hollowed out, and those that are elevated, are 15. Palmes broad: but of those two elevated or rapsed Chappels, I cannot tell how they ended about, so, there standeth not so much byright as a man may conceave any thing thereof cere tainely, but onely a beginning about the earth; and (as I have said) although a man cannot se in what maner this Building shood about the ground, yet according to my conceipt, I have made this Ortographie. And therefore on the one side marked B. representeth a piece of the great Temple, and the other marked with A. Cheweth a part of the lesser Temple.

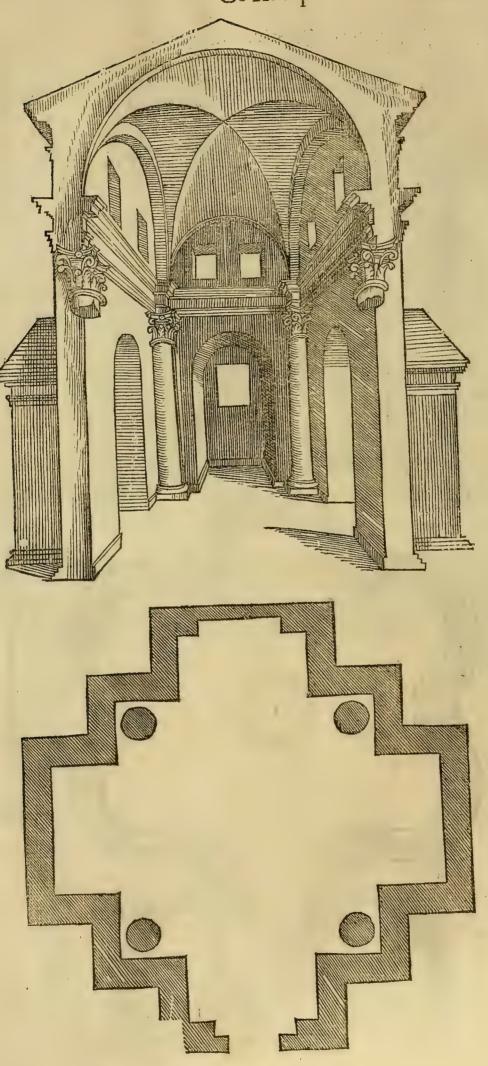


Bricke, it is not very great, it cannot also be discerned, that it had any light in it but at the doores, and from the windowes about the Cornices. And all the rest of the holes were placed for Jools or such like things; the measure of this Temple was lost by the way, but yet I remember well that the Temple was a full Anadrant and a halfe, as well on the ground as about, therefore I set downe no other measure, but a skilfull workeman may helpe himselfe therewith by invention.



Bis small Tem pel is of nogreat compas, and all made of Bricke; it is measured by the olde Romane Palme, the length of the lodge oz Ballery is 40. Palmis, the breath therofis 16. Palmes, the Dooze is 10. Palms, the places in the walles within, are all of one widenes, that is, 14. Palmes; the space bestween them is 6. Palmes, the rest may bee guessed by sight; for I guest the height from the Pauc ment to the Architraue to be 40. Palmes, and the Architrane, Frale and Comice to bee 9. Palmes : and touching the rest, I made accompt that if I allow ed a Palme vpzight for the round rose, then the whole Tempel Mould be about 70. Palmes.



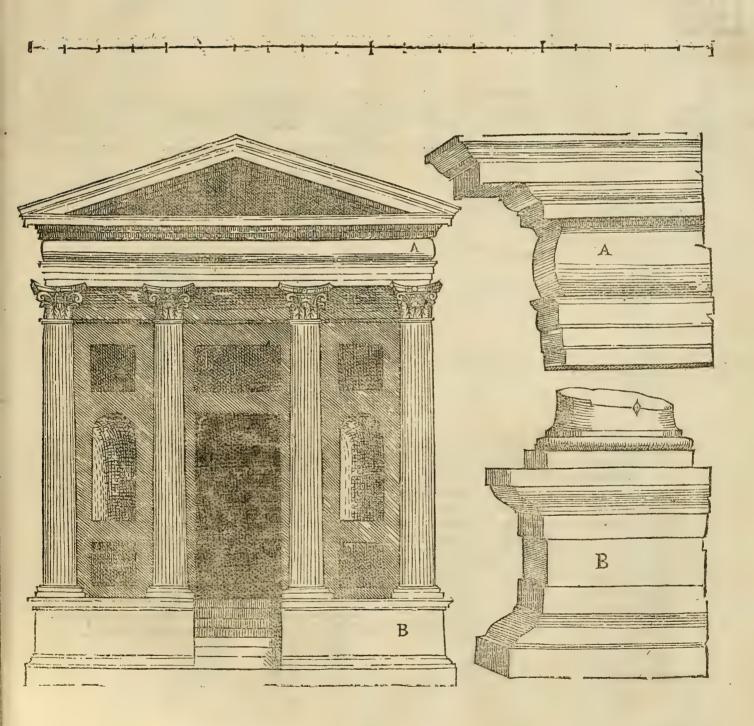


Dis Temple is without Rome, made part of Parble, and the rest of Brick, it is much decayed, it is thought that it was a Sepulchie, and on all sides it is right foure square; fro the one Wall to the other is 30. Palmes broad, the thicknesse of the walles is 2. Palms and a halfe, the wides nesse of the Chappelis ten Palmes, the Doze is five Palmes broad, the height of the Pil-lars with Bales and Capitals is 22. Palms and a halfe; the thickes nesse of the Pillars is not much aboue two Palmes: The Archi-franc, Frále & Comice are 4. Pelmes high, from the Comice to the height of the roofe is 11. Palmes : the height of the Bowes of the Chappel is 20. Palmes.

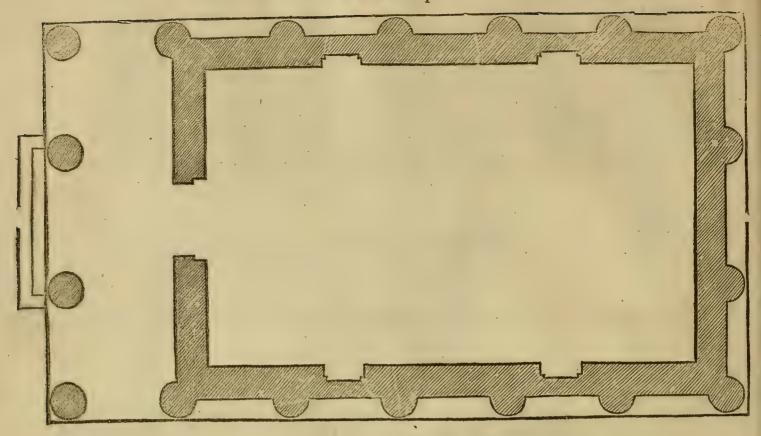
The fourth Chapter. Fol. 15.

behind the Columnes, on the sides are more then halfe without the wall; the widenesse of the Temple from the one wall to the other, is 11. Elles measure by the same measure that Templum precauses measured withall, the kingth of the Temple is 8. Elles, the thickenesse of the wall is one Elle and 11. minutes, the shickness of the Columnes of the Portall is an Ell and a third part, the height of them with Bases and Capitals is about 12. Elles, the height of the Architeane, Frese and Cornice is the Elles, the Frent spice from about the Tornice to the height is 3. Elles, the height of the basement is 3. Elles and a halse. In the Fascie before, there is no show of a Deore, nor of any piaces in the Malles, by reason of the rushousness thereof, but I have drawne it out thus, to make the more show, because I indee it had bene so, neither can you se any windowes in the wales nor sides, nor yet behind, although I have placed them here in the ground, where I thought best. The measure of the members both of the Basement and the Comices about, I will not name particularly, for they are proportioned according to Antiquitie, whereof you may se some parts.

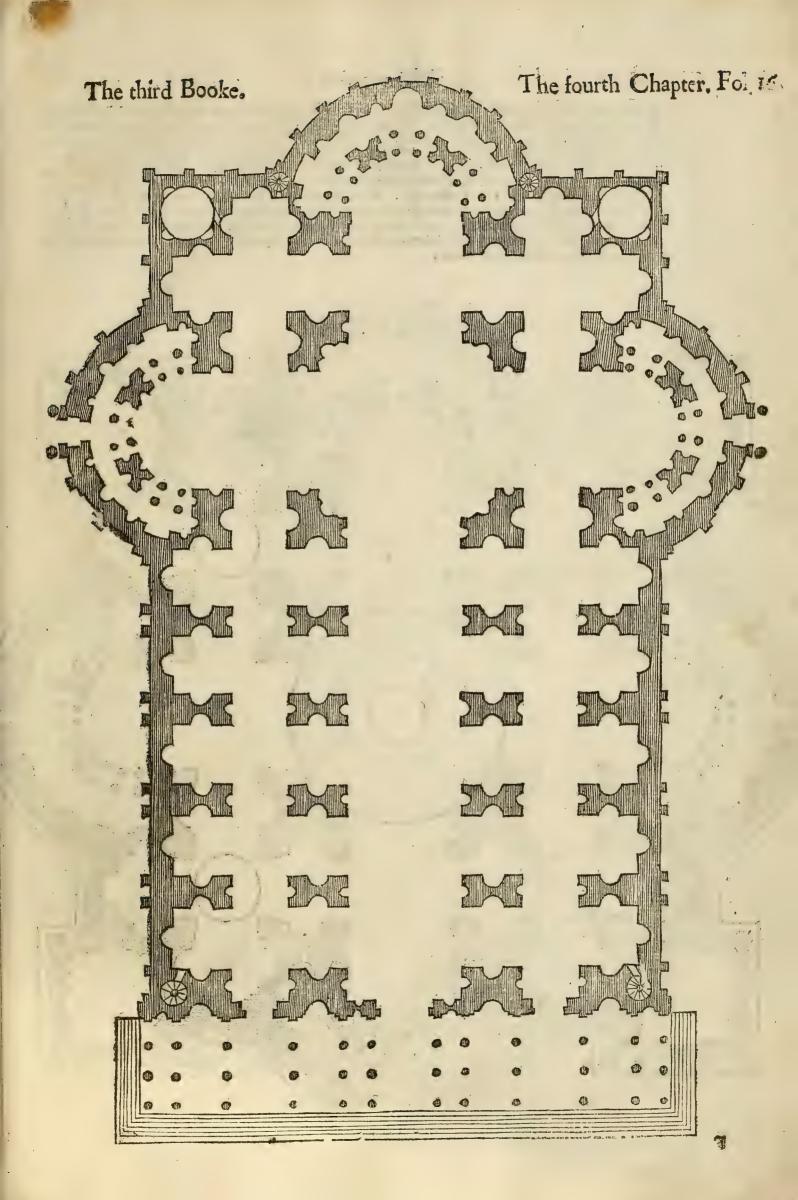
The third part of the Ell aforefayd.



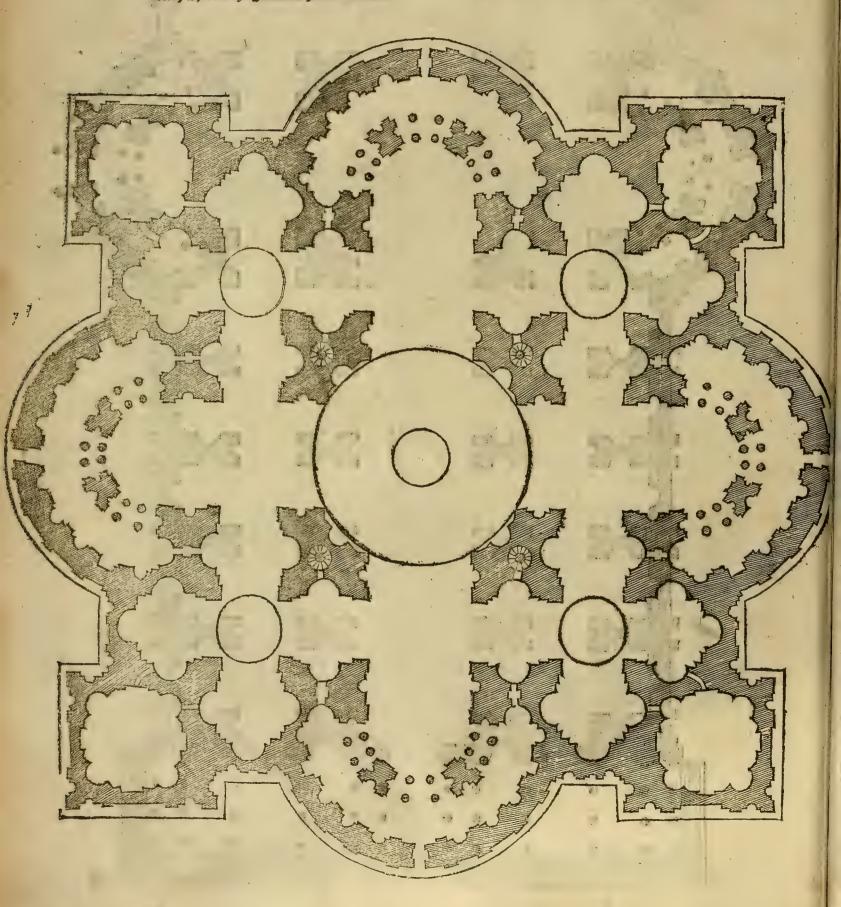
Of Antiquine



Libough at the beginning of this Booke, I fair I would speake onely of Antiquities, yet I will not omit withall to entreat of some moderne things made in our time, and specially, because our age hath flourished with so many good wits so; invention of Architecture. There was in the time of Pope I ulio the second, a workeman calted Bramane of Castel durante in the Dukedome of Vrbin, who was a man of sogreat processanding in Architecture, that it might be sayd (by meanes of the ayde and personnents which the Pope gave him) that hee raysed by good Architecture againe, which from ancient time till then had beine hidden and kept secret: which Bramane in his time layd the soundation of beginning of the wonderful sworke of S. Peters Tempel in Rome, but being prevented by death, did not oncly leave it dishisted, but the model thereof also was lest unperfect, wherein divers ingenious workemen sought to buse themselves both to perfect and finish it; and amongst many others Raphael Durbin, Paynter, a man also been skillfull in Architecture, sollowing Bramanes steps, made perfect this draught, the which in my opinion is one of the faprost draughts that are to be sound, out of the which the ingenious workeman may helpe himselse in many things. I will not set down all the measures of this Tempel (because that it is well proportioned) and a man may by part of the measure should not the rest. This Tempel is measured with the old Komane Palme, and the broadest walkes therein is 92. Palmes broade, those of the sides are but halse as much: by these two measures you may guesse the rest.

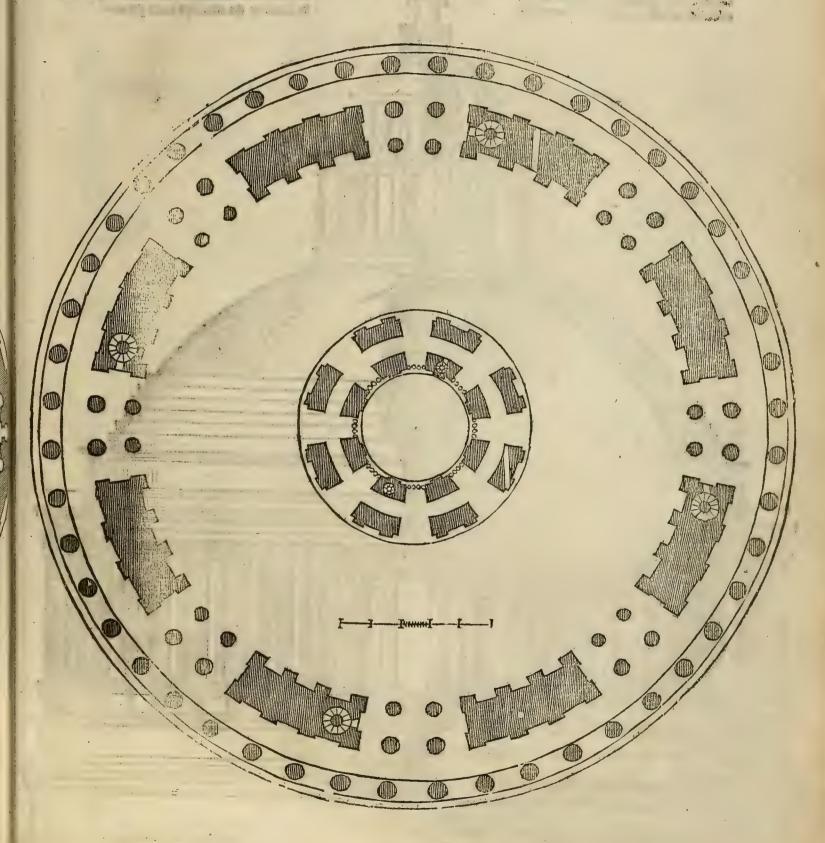


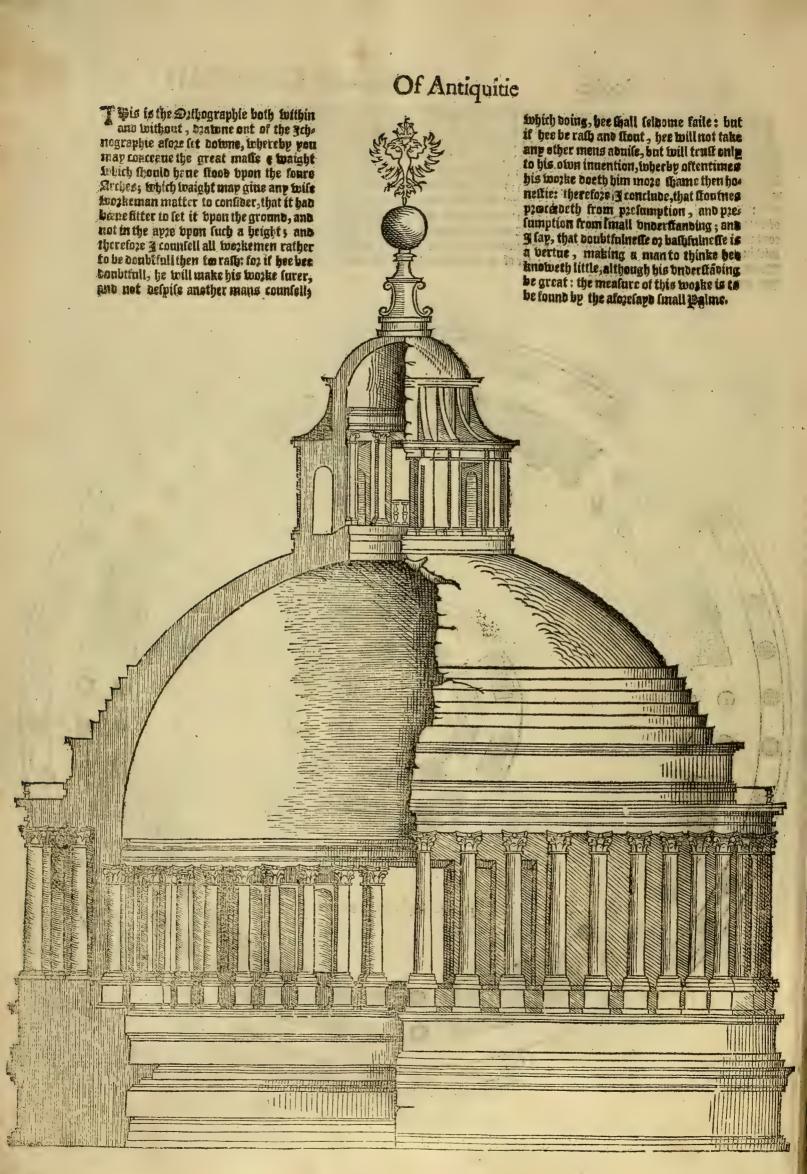
Defic time of Indias the script cure, who following the eactime of Braman, made a modell in some hereunder set dolone: where meaning was, that the Temple Gould have foure gates to go into it, and that the high Altar should kand in the middle thereof: et the source Comers he made soure Hacristes, byon the top whereof men might place the Clockes so an expanse thereunto; and the sist part of Facie thereof looked into the Citie. This Temple is measured with the close Komme Palme, and the sist in the middle from one Pilaster to another 204. Palmes, the Diameter of the Circle in the middle is 184. Palmes long. The Diameter of the foures mall Circles is 55. Palmes. The Hartistes are 100. Pediaces wide. The foure Pilasters in the middle make soure Bowes of Arches which beare by the Lanthome, and the same Bowes of Arches are allfull made, which are in height 220. Palmes, and above these are these a Aribum excellential first footh with Columnes, with a round Roose byon it, which Bramanc ordanied before here



T a third Booke.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 17.

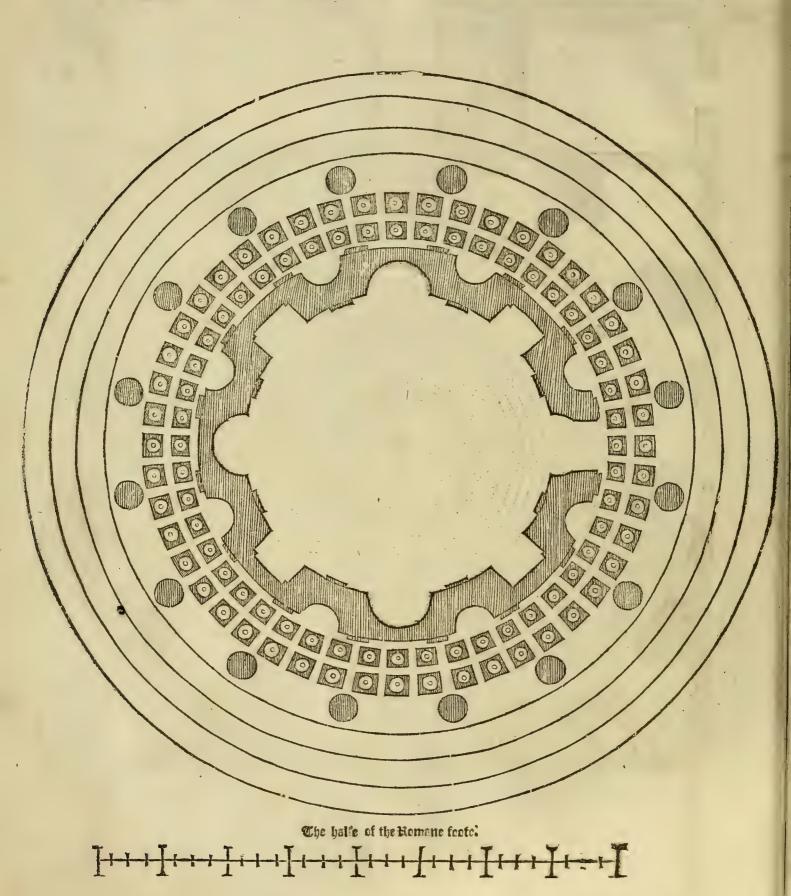


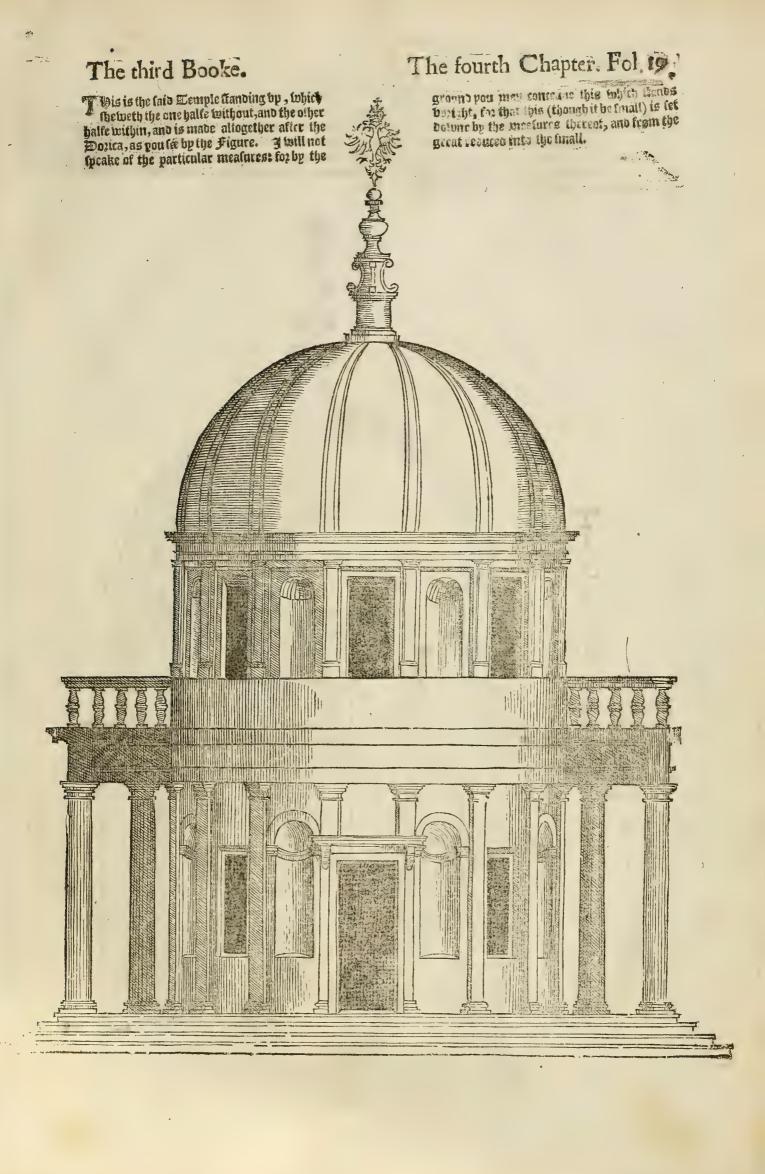


The fourth Chapter, Fol. 18.

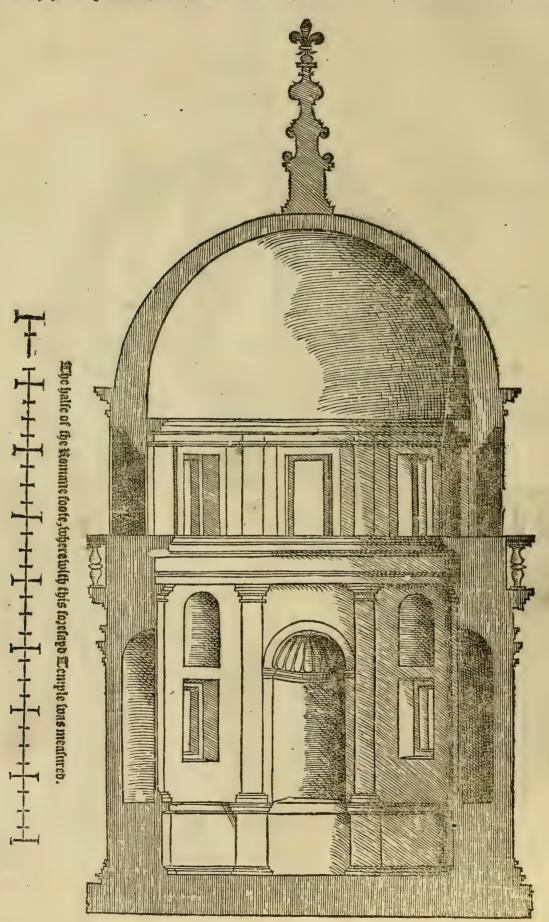
This ground let under this, is also an invention of Brawant, though it was never made, which agreed with the old works: that part which is marked with B. is H. Peters Church in Montorio without Rome; and that part nurthed with A. is an old Cloylier, but that part in the modele, Brawant oldanted, thereby to helpe himselfe with the old works: the place marked C. Agnifieth a Gallery with fourse Chappels in the corners. The place B. Centeth under the agree the part marked E. is a little Temple, which the said Brawant made: the measures where shalle shewed in much greater forms in the lease ensuing. These said nothing touching the measure of the ground, but I have see this here onely for the invention. B C 1 (III) D E

The the last fide I promised to show Bremants Aemple in arguster forme, which is not very great, but was onely made in remembrance of S. Perer the Apostle, for it is suit that her is as crucified in that place: the layd Aemple is to be measured by the old Romane feate, is bich facte is sizent fraction of energy finger is soure minutes: whereof also you shall since the measure by the Romane Paime, expending the said lower singers. The Diameter of this Aemple is of sue and twenty sate, and two and twenty minutes. The latternise of the walke round about the Aemple is see not soote, the thickenesse of the Columness are one soote and 25, minutes. The subsection of the Docre is three soote and a baise: The Duadrants with the round is within. Which goes and about the Aemple, three the Lacurary of the Aemple about the Columnes: the thicknesse of the wall is sine socie; the rest of the other measures you may conceaue by the sicil.



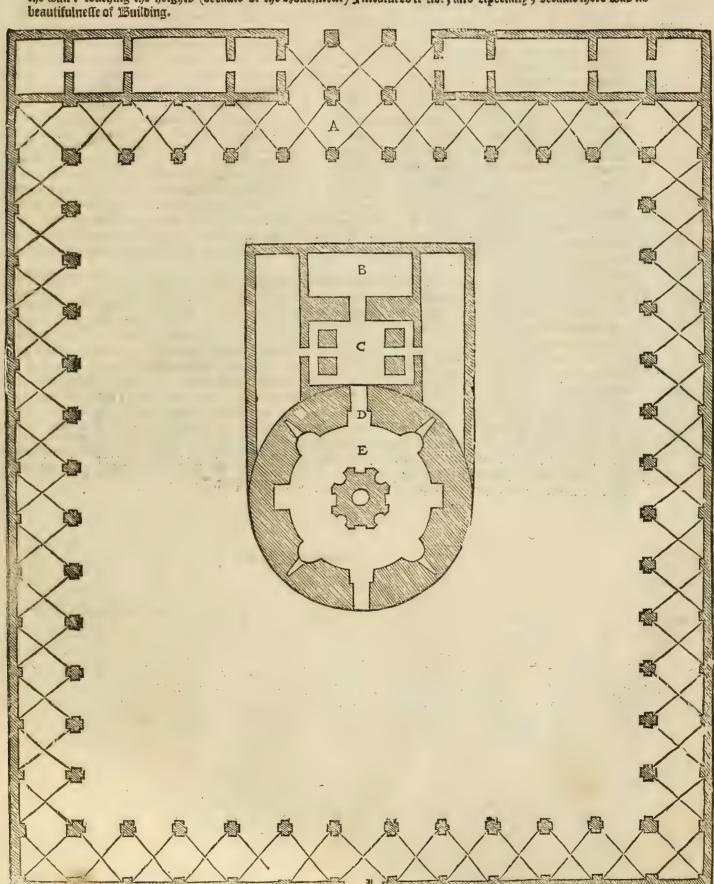


In I have the worked of S. Perers Temple, in this I will their the innermold part, which is made with fuch proposition, that the workemen by the intender of the ground, may finde all the measures, and although that this Temple theweth to high for the breach, for that it is thought and theired to be as high as it is broad: Potwithe francing, by the opennelle of the windowes, and the Pichens or Chappels that are in it, the height thereof is not amile, and effectedly by meanes of the double Tornices, which goe round about, and coner much of the height together with the Projecture, the Temple the weth much more as it is.



i he fourth Chapter, Fol. 20.

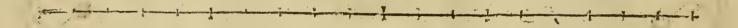
but the Builting is without Rome, at S. Sedalians, and is all fallen dolvene to the ground, especially the walks about, but the Builting in the middle (because it is very sure works) is yet whole, and is made of Bricke: you see no or naments in it at all, at it is darke, because it both no light but at the Bore; and about the source hollow places in the wall, some small Windowes. The ground of this worke is measured with the old Romish Palme, and the lengths with the bredits are measured with two cases, and curry rode is ten Palmes. First, the walks or Balliery marked A. is 49 rodes and 3. Palmes, the other two longer, are 56. roodes and 3. Palmes: the bredth of the walkes is 32. Palmes: the thickenesse of the comer Pillars, with all their members, is 12. Palmes: by the which measures you may conceaue the rest. Touching the Buttling in the middle, the place B. is bucouered, and is in length 7, roodes and 6. Palmes: the bredth is 3, roodes and 4. Palmes: the part marked C. is concred, and containes 4, roodes in sources quare. The fource Pillasters are ten Palmes thicke; the thickenesse of the wall round about the room. Builting, is 24. Palmes: the place marked E. is rooft: and that part in the middle is a masse, which beareth the roofe; in the middle inhereof, there is an spening: and this masse is beautised with many hollow seates in it, which stand right, and accompany those that sand in the wall: touching the heights (because of the brokenhesse) I measured it not; and especially, because there was no beautifulnesses.

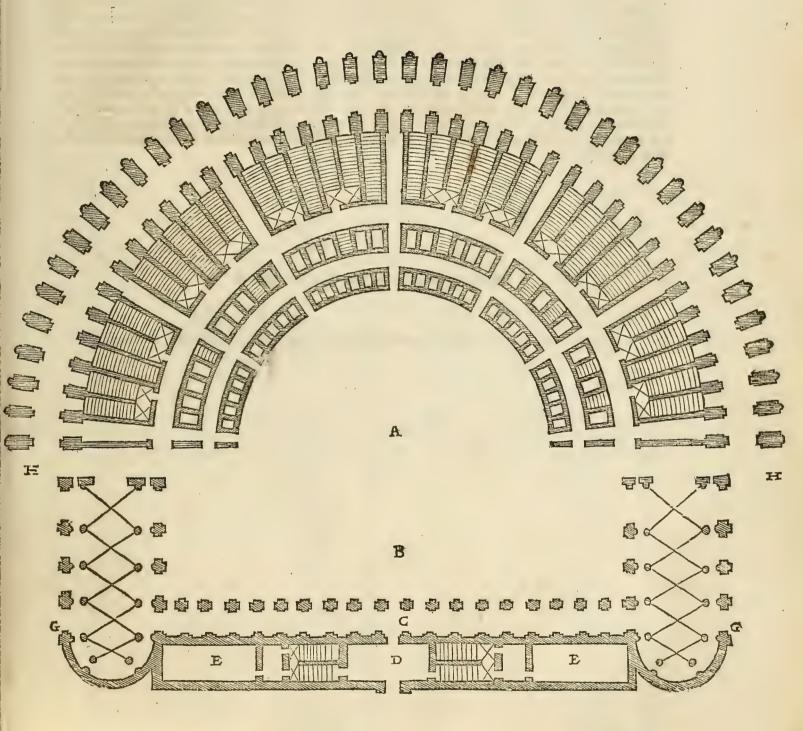


Dis Theater Augustus made in the name of Marcellushis Acphelo, and therefore it was called Marcellus Theat ter, it Candeth within Rome, you may at this day le part of it Kanding bright, that is part of the Calleries to ith out: it is onely of two rules, that is, Dorica and Jonica, a worke, in truth, that is much commended, although the Dozicall Columnes have no Bales, noz any Cincte cz Proiecture buser them, but fland playnely without any thing bnder, bpon the flat ground of the Ballery. Acuching the ground of this Theater, men could not well conceaus ft: but not long fince, the great Patrician of Rome, going to make aboute, the scituation whereof was to be set byon part of the Theater (this house was mate by one Balchalar of Stenna, an excellent workman) and ashe cause the foundation to be diaged, there were found many reliques of divers Comices of this Theater, and a great part of the fame Theater was discovered, whereby Balchasar concepted the whole forme thereof, and measured it with great circumspece tion, placing it in the forme following: my felfe being at that time in Rome, fallo many of the Cornices, and found friendlyip to measure them, and in truth, there I found as excellent formes as ever I salo in any old Livins, and most in the Capitals of Dogica, and also in the unpotes of the Arches, which, me thinks, agric well with the destrine of Vierreuius. Likewife the Frafe, Trigliphen, and Dethopen, agree well inough: but the Dogica Coonice, althought be bery full of members, and well wrought, yet I found it to differ much from Virrunius instructions: for being licencious ineugh of wembers, was of luch a height, that the two third parts of luch beight thould have beine inough to the Archie fraue and the Freile. But I am of opinion therefore, (by the licence of thefe, or other Antiquities) that a workeman in these daves should not erre, (which erroz, I meane, is to doe contrary to Vicruuius precepts) nor to bee peremptory that bee will make a Cornice, or other thing tuft of the same proportion ashee hath some and measured, and then let it in works; because it is not sufficient for him to say, I may doe it: for ancient workemen have done it, without consideration whether it be proportioned according to the rest of the building. Besides, although an old workeman was so bold, pet we must therefore not bec fo, (but as reason teacheth bs) wee Mould observe Virrunius rules as our guide, and most certaine and infallible directions: for that from that time of great Antiquity, till now, there is no man found to have written better, nor more learnedly of Architecture then he: and as in cuery Arte there is one more learned then another. to whom such authority is given, that his words are fully, & without doubt believed. Who then will deny (if he be not ianozent) that Virrunius, for Architecture, is worthy of the highest degree ? and that his writings (whereno other notae ble reason or couse is to move bs) ought for the worthinesse thereof to be inviolably observed, and to bec better credited. then any works of the Romanes? which Romanes, although they learned the brzight maner or building of the Grect. and neverthelette, afterward when they became Rulers ouer the Grecians it may be that feme of them thereby became licencious: but certaynely, if a man might le the wonderfull works which the Occious then did make, (which are now almost all spoyled and cast downe in time of warre) her would assuredly indge the Grecians worke to surpasse that of the Latines farre.

Therefore all those workensen that chall condemne Victurius writing, a specially in such cases as are clearely undersshood, as in the order of Dorica, whereof I spake, should erre much in the Art of Architecture, to gainelay such an Author, as so so so many vares hath vane, and pet is approved by wise men, learned. Polivhauing made this vigression, which was necessary so the good of those that would not have considered so much, turning againe to the purpose, I say, that this ground was measured by the old Romane soote; and first, the place in the mivdle, marked A. Which is called Drechestra, is in the Diameter 194, sout, and is halfe a Circlesrom one corner to the other: of the sages or seates, marked H. it is 417, soete: the place marked B. called Prosession, is very spacious; and where C. Canbeth, is the Gallery, which they call Porticus of the Scene, in the middle whereof soot the Pulpit: that part marked with D. was a Portall, with Stayres on both soes, which went up to the places marked E. called Pospitalia: the two Galleries on the soes marked G. they vised to walke in: Of which things men can see no more about the Ground, sor that they are concred with other houses. Touching the scene allow Colled, I will declare it more at large, whereby a man may conceaue how this stood: but that part without, which went about the Theatre, I will see un the second Figure, which was measured (vesore this) with a common Cll, which is devided into twelve parts, which parts are called onness: and every ounce both such a minutes; of which Cll, this is athird part.

The third part of the Ell.

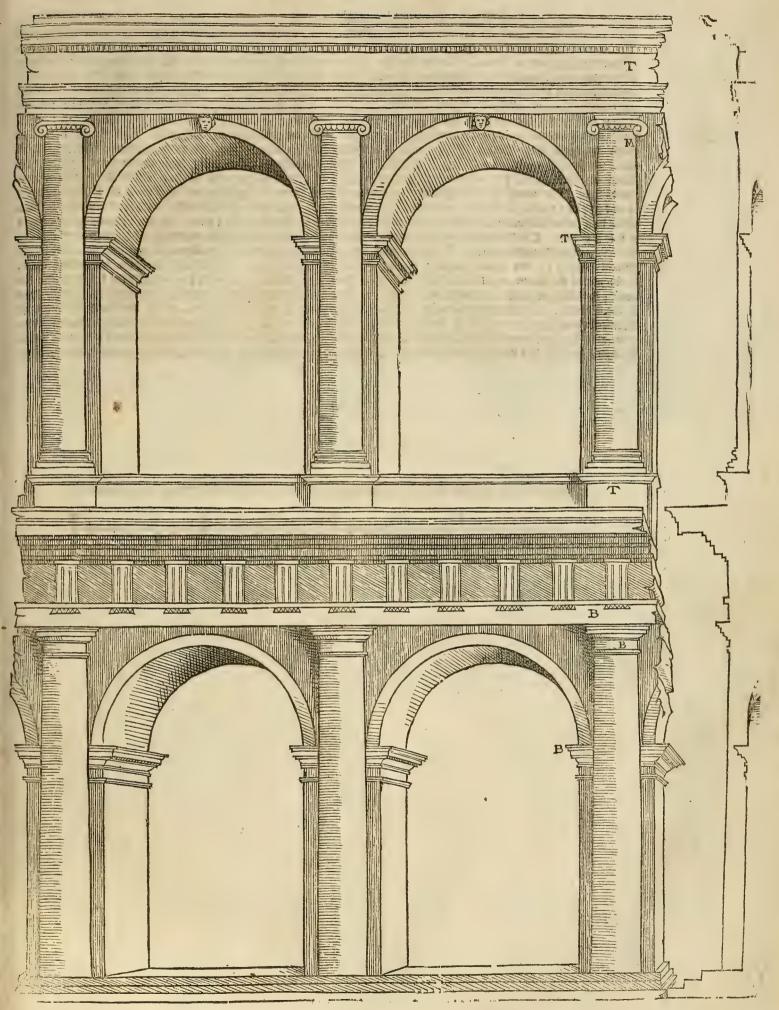




His Figure following representeth that part without, of the forelayd Theater, and is measured with the Ell aforefand: and first, the thickenesse of the Columnes beneath in the nether part of the first order, is an Ell and 42. minutes in Diameter: and the thicknesse of the Diameter about bnder the Capitall, is an Ell and 16. minutes: the height of the Capitall, is halfe the thickenelle of the Columnes beneath, the which Capitall is more perfecter marked in the fourth Booke, in the order of Dorica, in Folio E. 3. And the same Capitall is marked with B. Likewise also the impost, whereon the Archresteth, is as high also as the Capitall, and Candethalso in the same lease E.3. The Dilasters, befor the Columnes, are 19, minutes: the widenesse of one Arch, is 7. Clies and 9 minutes: and the height is cleven Elles and firetone minutes; the height of the Architrane, is 49. minutes: the height of the Frole is one Oll and egght minutes. The height of the whole Cornice, is an Ell, and fourtie minutes: the wivenelle of the fecond Arch of the second order, is as wide as that below; but the height is ten Elles and fourtie and egght minutes: the height of the Pedelall buder the Columnes of this fecond order, is an Ell and fourtie and egght minutes : the thickeneffe of the Columnes, is an Ell and twenty & foure minutes: the height of the faid Columnes without Bales oz Capitals, is II. Olles, 27. minutes: the beight of the Bales is 44. minutes: the height of the Capitall, that is within the Coluces, from the lift of the Columnes, to aboue the Capital, is 36. minutes: but the Coluce hangs over the Afragall of Bozell 20. minutes and a halfe, which in all, from beneath the Coluces, to aboue the Abacus, is 47. minutes and a halfe: the breadth of the Abacus of the layd Capitall is one Ell and a halfe: but the breadth of the Wolutes is two elles; the height of the Architraue is 59 minutes; the height of the Frede is 58 minutes; the height of the Cornice is an Ell, & 48. minutes: which Cornice, in truth, is halfe fo much more as it (hould be (if we will credit Vitrumius precepts.) But I pray you, gentle Reader, elicime me not prefumptuous, neither yet account me for a corrector of the works of Antiquitie, from whence men learne fo much: for my meaning is onely, willingly to let you understand and know that which is well made from that which is ill made: and that I will not doc after my owne conceite, as if you were taught by me, but by the authority of Virrunius: and also of and Antiquities, which are these which best agrae with the docfrine of that Author. The Bale of this fecond order, and the Pedeckall underit, the Impost of the Arches, and withall, the Architrane, Frate and Comice, you hall altogether find in the fourth Boke of the order of Ionica in Folio K. the fecond, and are all marked with T. Likewife you hall find the Capitall in the same fourth boke, behind in the leafe I. the 4. marked with M.

The third part of the foreland Ell, of 60. minutes.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 22



P Dalmaria there is an ancient town called Pola, lying by the Sea live, wherin you may fe a great part of a Theatre; in the making whereof, the expert workeman old being himselse with the bill whereon it standeth, bling the bill sor part of the degras or fleps to goe by, and in the playne below, he made the Dreheffra, Scene, and other buildings belonging to such a piece of worke. And in trueth, the ruines and the pieces which are yet at this day sound, doe thew that it was a most beautifull and sumptuous piece of works of stone and workemanship; besides this, there you may see a great number of Columnes, some fanding alone, others with Bilatters, and some Corners with foure square Billars, and some halfe round, all bound together, and well wrought, after the Corinthia; for the whole work, both without and within, was made after the Cozinthia manner. This Building was measured with a moderne of bluall foote: which fcote is denived into twelve parts, named ounces, whereof the one halfe hereafter followeth. The Figure hereafter following, theweth the Ichnographie, and also the Profil of the Theatre, whereof this is the measure: the wideness of the Deche ara which is halfe a Circle, is in Diameter about 130. foote the vegrees of Reps round about, with the two twaves of fraces, are of 70. foot: the way marked T. comes even with the plaine of the Bulpit of the Scene to the fouretanth flep. The widencie of the Posticus round about the Theatre, is 15. foote, and the fides of the Pillars inward, is of 17. foot sa halfe; but the fore-rancke of the Pillars round about the Ballery, together with the Columnes, holdeth about five fot in bredth, and from the one Pilafter to the other, it is about 10. foot wide: and this is touching the ground of this Theater. The two greates Anadzans marked O. are the Bospitalia, from the tohich places men went into the entry of pading through, marked T. which comes by to the freet, halfe way to the fleps, as you may perceive by the Profil marked T. and buder the going through, is part of the going in. The Polpitalia is fine and fourtie foote. the breath of the Scene, is 2 I. foot, the breath of the Porticus or Ballery before, is 27 foote, and the length is like the house; the Building which Kandeth about the ground of the Theatre, Agnifieth the Profil, which is cut through the fides of the Theatre. The Arch marked with A. fignifieth the going in, the second Arch C. and B. are under the Keps, the Comice belives marked with D. is the impost of the Arches there naved no going by to this Abeatre, for the hill afore. layd caled the workeman therein, and men might allo goe by to the Theatre from the scene, because it was somed to the lapd Theatre : but the Theatre of Marcellus is leverated from the Scene, and therfore the goings op were necessary.

This is the halfe foote of measure, whereby this Theatre was measured with all the omaments.

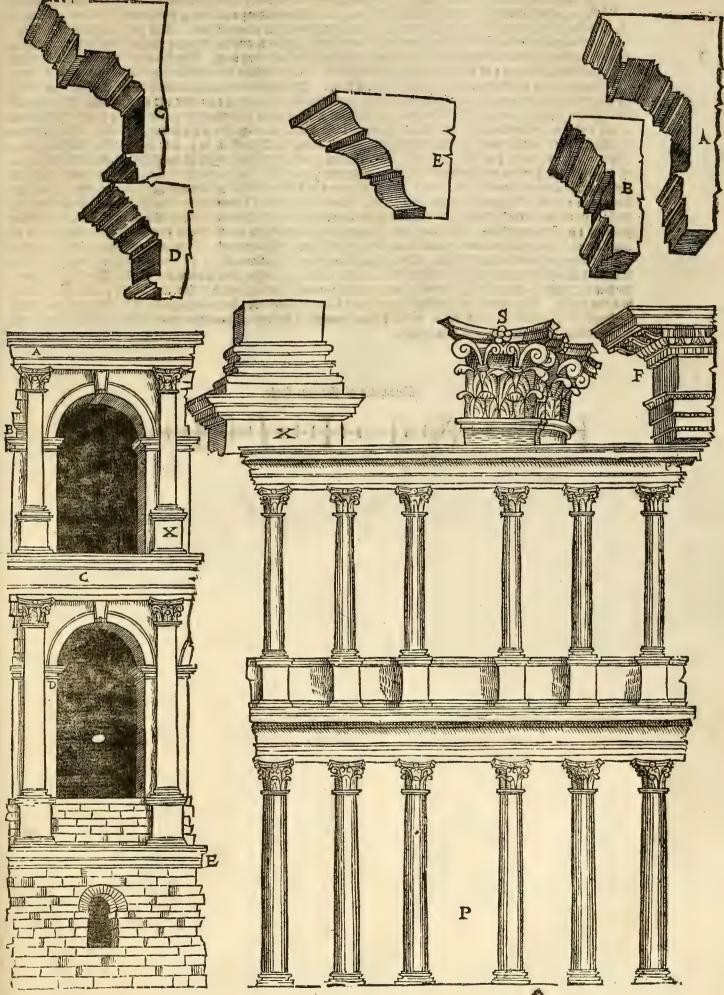


The fourth Chapter. Fol. 23. The third Booke. OREHESTRA PROSCEN. SCENA PORTIG.

His Theater (as I have fayd) was very rich of ognaments, all of Cone, and made of Coginthia worke, very well and richly wrought, and by as much as is feine by the ruines which lie feattering about the Scene, was bery beautifull of Columnes boon Columnes, both double and fingle, and also in the innermost and cuttermost parts, with divers ornaments of Doores and Windowes. The innermost part of the Building is much ruinated: and touch. ing the measures, I can say little; but of the outvermost parts, I will say somewhat of their measures. Are first, a rus Micall or clounist order, wherein there is no Columnes, is elevated from the earth, together with the whele Cornice, marhed E. about 16. foote ; the height of the first Bedestall, is fine foote, the height of the Columnes with the Bales and Capitals, is 22. foot, the thickenesse of the Billars, with the Columnes, is 5. foote: the thicknesse of the Columnes as lone, is two foote and a halfe: the twidenesse of the Arches, is about ten foote: and their height twenty foote: the height of the Architrane, Frase and Cornice, is about fine foote; the second Pedelkall marked X. is of source foote and a halfe: the height of those Columnes are about firtiene foot, the Architrane, Frase and Cornice, is source foot high. Flet not bolune the measures of the particular members, but in the Figure you may conceave them; for they are intt of the same propose tion : I fet not downe the measure of the Scene, not of the other parts within: oncly I have here let footh a part of the Postiene of the Scene, which is marked P. And also the Cornice, Freese and Architrane marked F. was in the highest thereof: the Capitals marked S. Awde within, with some halfe round Columnes, rayled out of some Pilallers, things that were very well wrought: all which things (as I fayo before) are fo fumptuous, both for from and workemanshiv. an they may well be compared with those of Rome : the Coanice, Friese and Architraue, marked A. was in the highest part of the Theatce: the Counice marked B. is the impost of the second arch: the Architrane, Frese and Counice, marked C. is the Comice about the first Arch, the Comice marked D. is the impost of the Arch: the Comice marked with E. goeth about the rufficall basement round about the Building : this line hereunder is halfe a sote, of the whole foots therewith this Building was measured. And wonder not, gentle Reader, that I fet not downe all the measures more precifely; for these things of Pola, were measured by one that had more bader flading in casting, then in measuring.

The halfe foote, whereby this is measured.

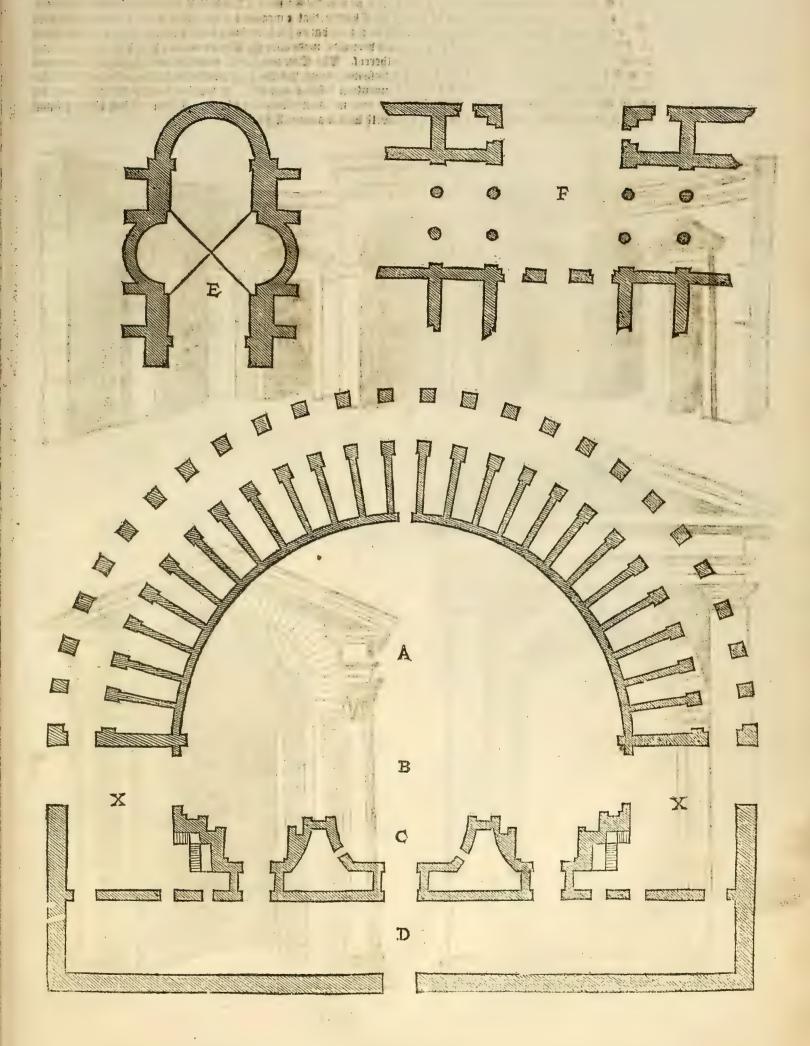
The fourth Chapter, Fol. 24.



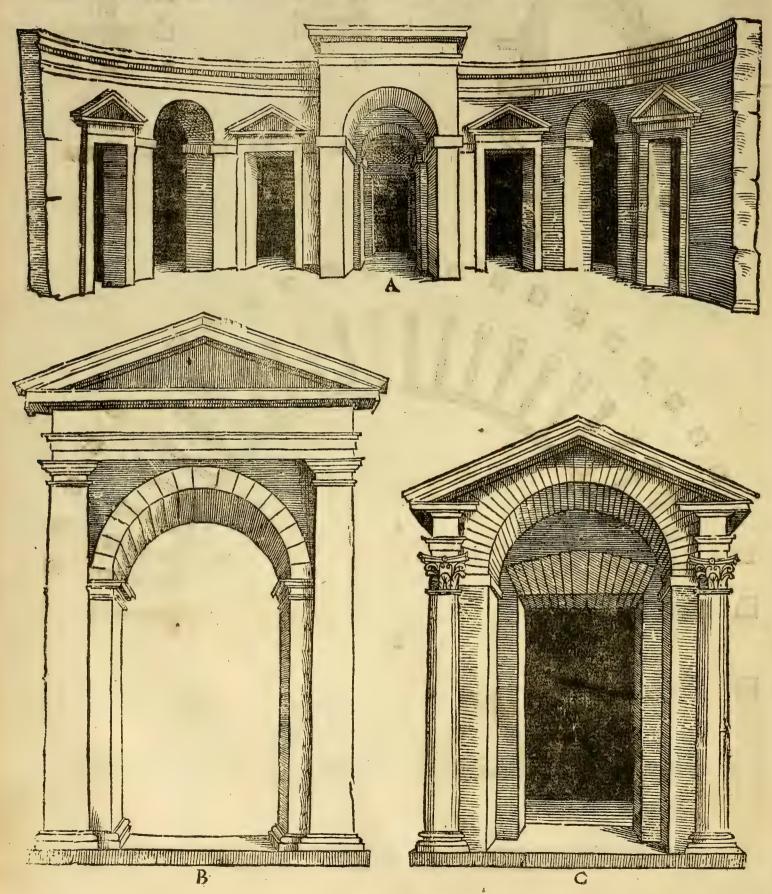
TFerencen, an old Towne lying by Vererben, there is yet to bee fiene the forme of a Theatre, much decayed, being of no great works manship, and lesse ornaments, for any thing a man may percease by the same; for there are no pieces to be fane whereby a man may concept any matter of importance. But you may yet fie in the Pop ticus going from the Theatre, there were foure lquare Pullars, also the Stavees thereof were very simple and playne: and because it is so much decayed, you can hardly discerne how they Cod. The Stene of this Theatre is much different from others, as you may fee in the ground thereof: notther is there to much flanding about ground, that a man may percease how the Scene and the Pulpit thereof Good. This ground was measured by the ancient fote, and first, speaking of the Dichestra A. which is halfe a Circle, the Diameter thereof is 141, fot and a halfe long. The body of the Theatre, that is, from the Dachellra, to the outtermold of the Coaner Billars of the Porticus, is 3 5. fot : the Pillars of the corner on euther five, is 5. fate broad : the entry of the Porticus on the five of the Seene, is 8. fate : the bault but ver the Stayles, is 22. fote: the thickenesse of the Wall about the Dechestra, is 3. fote end a halfe: the Hospitalia, marked X. is in length 40. foot and a halfe; and in bredth 30. foote: the wideness of the Portions about the Theatre, is 11. foote: the Pillars are thicke and broad, 3. foote and 3. quarters: the widenesse of the Arch, is 9 foote: the full bredth of the Dreheltra marked B. is 20, foote: the place of the Pulpit C. is in length 40. foote and a halfe; but the brepth is 12. foote: the going through, is 9. foote. The place marked D. Monlo be the Porticus behind the Scene: get there is no thew of any Columnes; but it the weth that there was a wall Kanding by the water five. The breath of this place, is 19. foot and a halfe. Without this Theatre there Candeth the foundation of two Buildings, but they are fo much decayed, that you can find no end of them: neverthelette, the Building marked F. for as much as you fee of it, the toa eth that it was to yned to other things. The widenelle wherein the F. Candeth, is 31. fote. The 2. small places oz stancies holding by the one fide, are egght foot and a halfe; and on the other fide, ten foot and a halfe. The Arches where the foure Columnes Aand (which I take be made in that manner) are in length 27. foot and a halfe, and in bredth ter foot and a halfe. The bredth of the Building marked E. is twenty foot; the hollow places in the fides, are 17. foote: the length of all logether, is 60. foote, and is distant from the Theatre one hundred and one and fortic foot ; and from the other Building, fewentie foote and a halfe.

The haife of the olde foote.

I++ I -- I -- I -- I -- I -- I I -- I

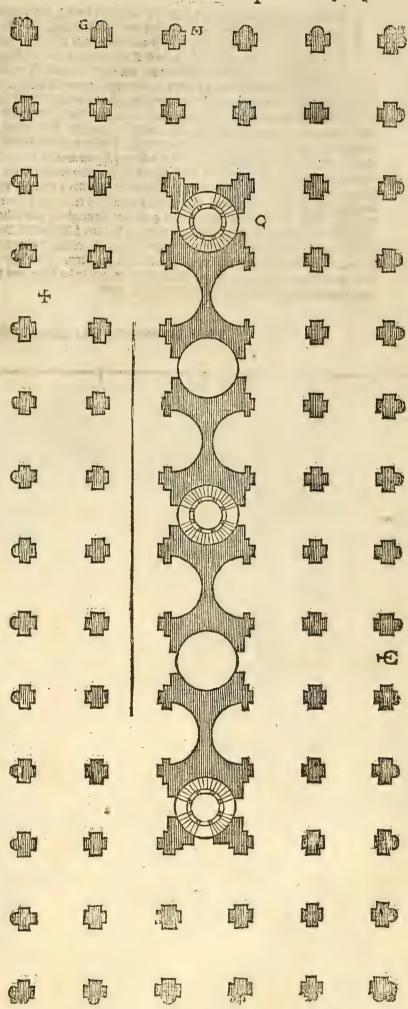


Toracina; but there is so litt'e to be seine of the Theatre, that I measured it not: neither did I measure this part of the Scene, which is more tecared then it theweth here but as I sate on horse back, I made a slight draught there of. The Dore marked B. standeth at Spolera, and is very olde, made after the Dorica maner, which like wise I did not meeture, but made onely the invention and some thereof. The Gate marked C. is between Foligus and Rome, out in the Greet: and although it same a licenticus and volumely thing, that the Arch should breake the passage of the Architerus, Frése and Cornice; yet neverthelesse, the invention disliked mee not. I measured onely the bredth and the len, th, the which I sound to be eighteene sote, and one and twenty foote and a halse. I thinke it had beine a small Temple, or a Sepulches; but be what it will, it she well to a mans sight.



The fourth Chapter. Fol. 26.

Tisland, that this building was cal-led, Posticus, of Pompeo: others lay, that it was the house of Mario: but it is called by the Common people, Caras bario: tohich building, as farre as I can learne, was onely made for men to cale themselves in: for there is no dwelling in it at all: and although this building at this day is almost decayed, yet it was bery great, and contagned many places, as poule by many houses of this build, ing which are found in the earth. Where the Line flandeth, is now the way to goe from Campo Flozo, to the Jewes place: and where the Crosse is now, the houses of Sancta Crole fland: where G. flaos. is the Jewes place: where the M. Cands eth, beethe Parcellarii: where the C. Nandeth, is the Church part of S. Sal natozie: and where the E. is cut through; is the Foze-front of the boules of Cels fis: to that thereby you may to the great compas thereof. The thie round things were Stayzes to goe by to the two emp. tie Roundles. And for that there is no thew of Stagges to be fiene in those two, it is to bee conceased, that they were or pen places to make water in, (for fuch) things are necessary.) The ground of this worke is measured by the same Ell that the Theater of Marcellus was measured withall: which measure you pon thali finde here, after the Dbiliscen, and (halfe an Ell Chalbethirty minutes.) And first, the thicknesse of the Pilatters is than Elles and a halfe: the thicknesse of the Columnes is two Elles: the Intercolumnes, are on all fides, nine Elles and a halfe: the Pilasters of the fourc Comers, are to much mose the the outers most Corners Kanvouer them: which Coiners were made with god indges ment, for they behold the Corner by Arength, and with beauty of works. Hereby workemen may learnehow to make Comers with Columnes, and with Piladers bound together, that the Corner may also be soure square, as the Columne is, which giveth the Corner moze falineffe, then if the same Cozner were dealone along the Pilaster: and for the Corners which are drawne in, if you fee them over the fibe in Diagonall maner, where the two round Columnes cover the Corner, then they will fieme buperfit Comers, and specially, because they are læne on all lides.



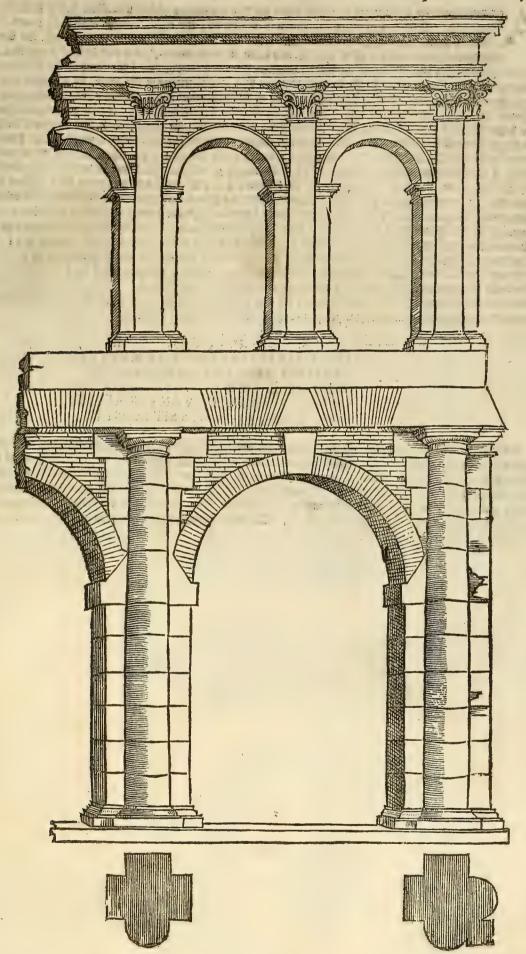
9

Ducking the Jehnographie, I have laye inough; now I mult speake comething of the forme above the ground, although there is not much thereof to be fane: neverthelette, there is yet fo much flanding byzight (although it be hinden) that thereby the backe part theref without, is to be conceaved, which, in tructh, is an ingentious invention, for a fall works, and especially in the fir a order, which you call Dorica, although it hath neyther Architraue, Erigs liph nor Cornice: But yet there is the forme, and that very fubtilly made, with great Arengthand fayze Building (as well of hard fione as of Bricks) as you may fe in the figure following. The thickeneffe and bredth are the wed before: the beight of the Columnes with Bales and Capitals, leventane Elles : and the height of the Arches, fiftime Elles, The height of the Cuneo, that is, the Chufting from abone the Arch, is 2. Elles: the height of the binding, which is in fead of an Architrane, is 2. Elles, and fo much is the Facie about it. The fecond order femeth bulupportable, for that there is a waight of Pilatters fanding aboue an openhole: a thing which in trueth is falle & erronious to fpeake in realon. Peners theiene, for that the first Dever is so fast and firong, by meanes of the chutting stone about in the Arch; as also with the crosse Come byon it, with the fall Facie byon that, and by reason of the good shoulders of the Arch, which altogether theto to befuch a ftrength (as in effect it is) that the Pallatters that reft boon it, fame not to opprette the worke, as they would, if it were a simple Arch, with an Architrauc, Frase and Comice: for which cause I blame not this invention therein. The wibened: of this Arch is 4. Elles; the beight is nine Elles: the bredth of the Pilatters, is two Elles and an halfe: the thicknesse of the Columnes, is an Ell and a litt part in Diameter: the height of the Columnes is elenen Elles and an eight part with Bales and Capitals, and are made after the Cozinthia manner. The height of the Architraus, Freie and Comice, is two Olles and the quarters. Although I can give no particular measures of this Copo nice, Freile and Architrane, because such things are not to be fene, pet there is onely so much wall, that thereby a man may conceane the Freeles, Comiccs and Architraue.

The third part of the Ell, wherewith this is measured.

7.

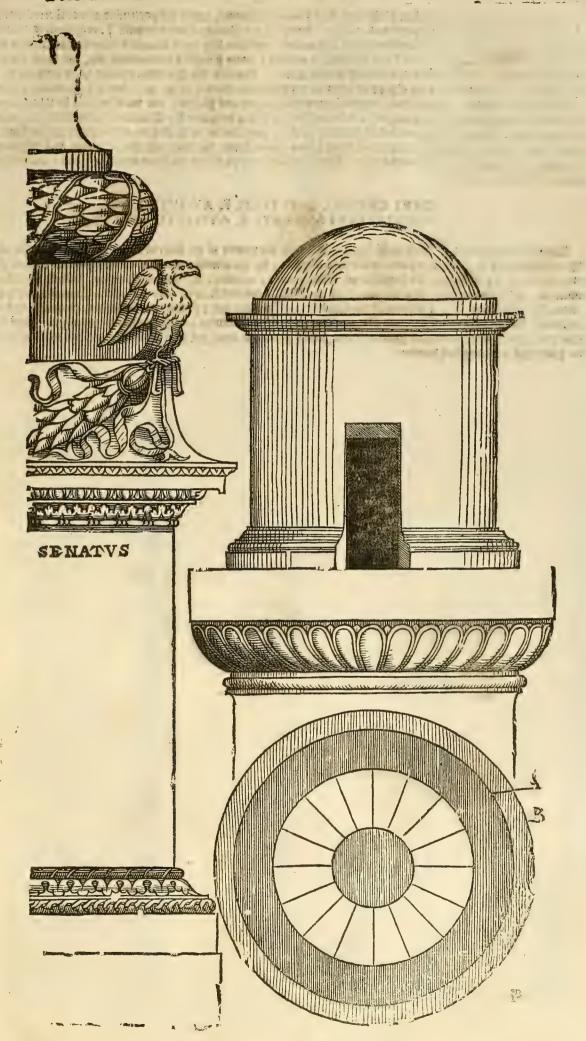
The third Booke. The fourth Chapter. Fol. 27,



Dong other faire Antiquities in Rome, there are two Columnes of Warble, all cut full of Billogies, bery good imbost worke. The one is called Anconianas Columne, the other Traians Columne: and for that Traians Columne is the wholest, 3 will speake somewhat therrof. This Columne, as men say, the Empercur Traian caused to be made, which is all of Parble, and made of many pieces; but so closely topied tegether, that they some to becall one piece; and to give the particular measure thereof, I will begin at the foote of the Basement thereof: And first, the vegra of Step in the first rest, is the Palmes high, the Plinthus of the Bale, is a Palme and erght minutes bioh; the carned of graven Bale is as much: the flat of the Balement is 12. Palmes and fire minutes high: the graven Comice is a Palme and an halfe high. The place where the Fellon hangeth in, is two Palmes and ten minutes high: the twhole Bale of the Columnes, is fire Balmes and 28. minutes, and is devided in this manner: the Blinthus where the Cagle flandeth byon one corner (but you must imagine that there is one at every corner) is their Palmes and ten mis nutes high: the Chorus abone it, is three Palmes and egght minutes high: the Cincte is ten minutes high. The height of the Columne, that is, the body, is 18. Palmes and 9 minutes: the Allragall with the Quadrants of life boter the Cohine, is 10. minutes. The height of the Cohine, is 2. Palmes and 2. minutes: the height of the Abacus, is 2. Palmes & II. minutes: aboue bpon this Columne, there is a Bedeffal of a round forme, through the which men crept fro the winding Stayles, and may goe cally round about, because the plaine ground thereof, is 2. Palmes and a halfe bload: the height of this Pedeffall is II. Balmes; but the Bale is two Balmes, and the Comice aboue, is a Palme high. The Crowne about the Pedelfall, is the Palmes and a halfe high: the thickenette of this Pedelfall, is 12. Palmes and ten minutes: the thickenesse of the Columne abone, is 14. Balmes, and the thicknesse below, is 16. Palmes: the rounds nesse marked A. in slat forme, she weth the thicknesse aboue: and the Circle marked B. is the thicknesse below. The widenette of the winding Stayres, is 3. Palmes, and the Spill foure Palmes. The breath of the Balement, is 24. Adalmes and 6. minutes; in the which ipace are cut two Compartements, wherein is contained an Epitaph, under which many Trophees are cut: and in the Epitaph are thele letters hereunder written.

S. P. Q. R.
IMP. CAESARI DIVI NERVAE, F.NERVAE,
TRAIANO AVG. GERMANIC. DACICO
PONT. MAX. TRIB. POT. XVII. COS. VI.PP.
AD DECLARANDYM QVANTAE ALTITVDINIS MONS ET LOCVS SIT EGESTVS.

This Columne is histographied with excellent god ent morke, and drawne along with Berries; it is all slinked in Doricall manner: in the flintings the Figures are made in such fort, that rising up or bearing out of the Figure, the forme of the Columnes and flinting, is nothing disparaged, between which Figures there kand seme Windows, which give light to the winding Stayres: and although the said Windows are placed orderly, yet they hinder not the Historic at all, and yet they are 44. in number, and I will thew the whole Columne in the Figure following: but these are the members thereof, openly written and set bowne. All these members are measured with the olde Komane Palme, as you find it before byon the round.

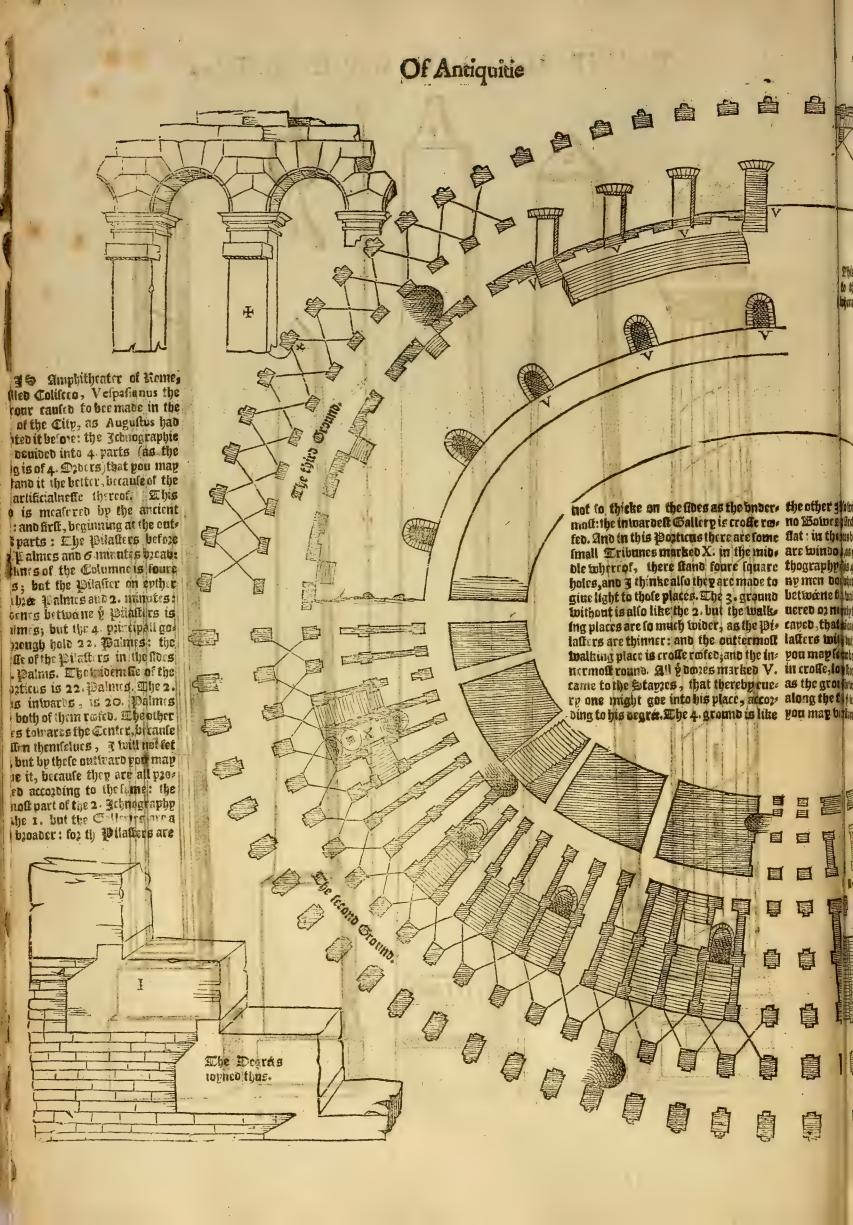


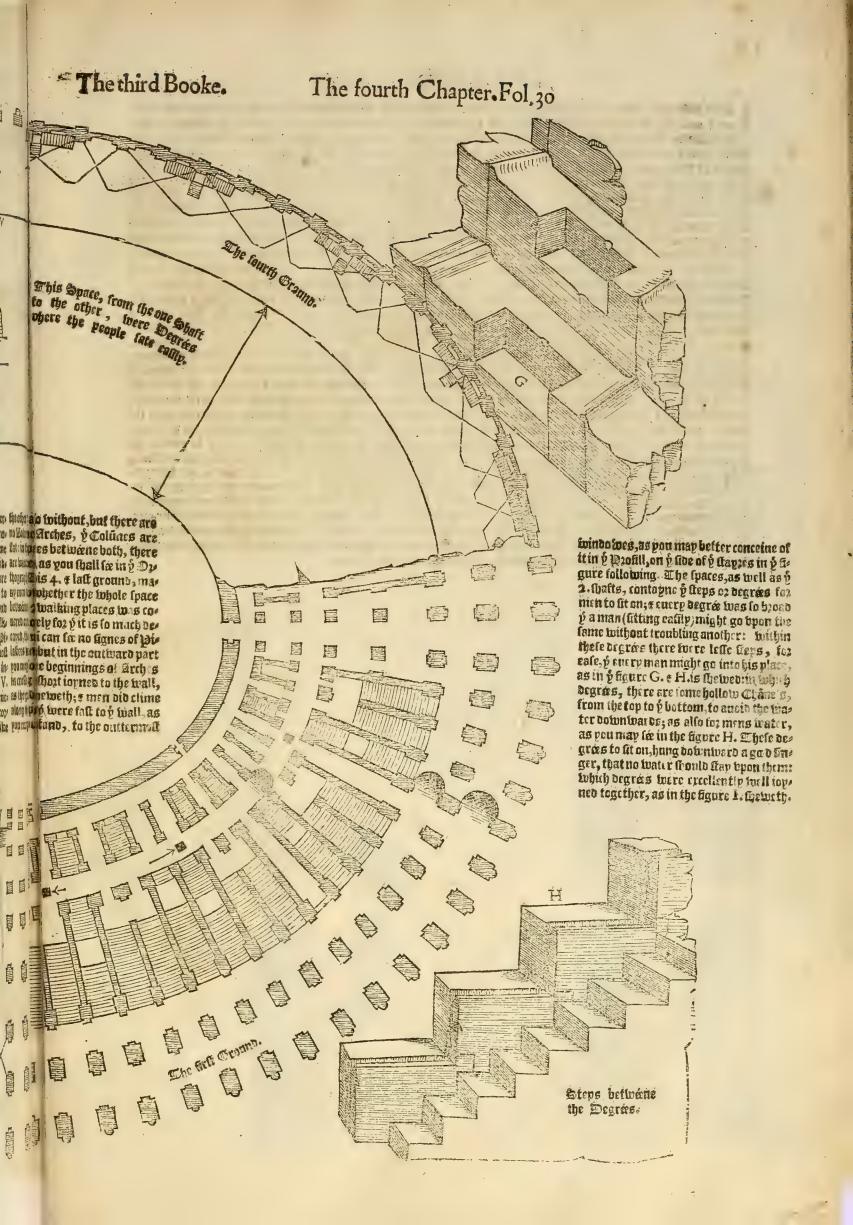
Paus befoze sufficiently spoken of the bredth of Traians Columne, and of the particular maner therees, now I will A will know the whole Columne proportioned as it is: So then, the Columne marked with T. representeth Traians Columne: but from whence the Dbelisces spring or procede, and how they were brought to Kome, and to what end they serve, I will not speake of, sor that Pliny declareth it at large: onely I will set the measure here, and show the sorme of some things which I have seen and measured within Kome: And will, the Dbelisce, marked O. is without the Capena, and is all graven and cot with Egyptian letters: the thicknesse thereof in the sote, is ten Palmes and a halfe: the height is 80. Palmes: and this onely was measured with the ancient Palme: but the other thick by it were measured by a moderne or bload Clos on innees, whereof the line that is between the Dbelisces, is the halfe, and is deviced into 30. parts. The Dbelisce marked P. sandeth in Taticano (that is) at S. Peters, and is of Egyptian Cone: in the top whereof (they say) the Athes of the Emperour Gaias Cxlar sand: the thicknesse thereof below, is 4. Elies and 42. minutes: the height is 42. Elles and ahalse: the part above, is the Elles and source minutes thicke: and binder at the soft sandeth these letters.

DIVI CAESARI, DIVI IVLII, F. AVGVSTO. TI. CAESARI DIVI AVGVSTI, F. AVGVSTO SACRYM.

The fourth Chapter. Fol 29 The third Booke of DIVO

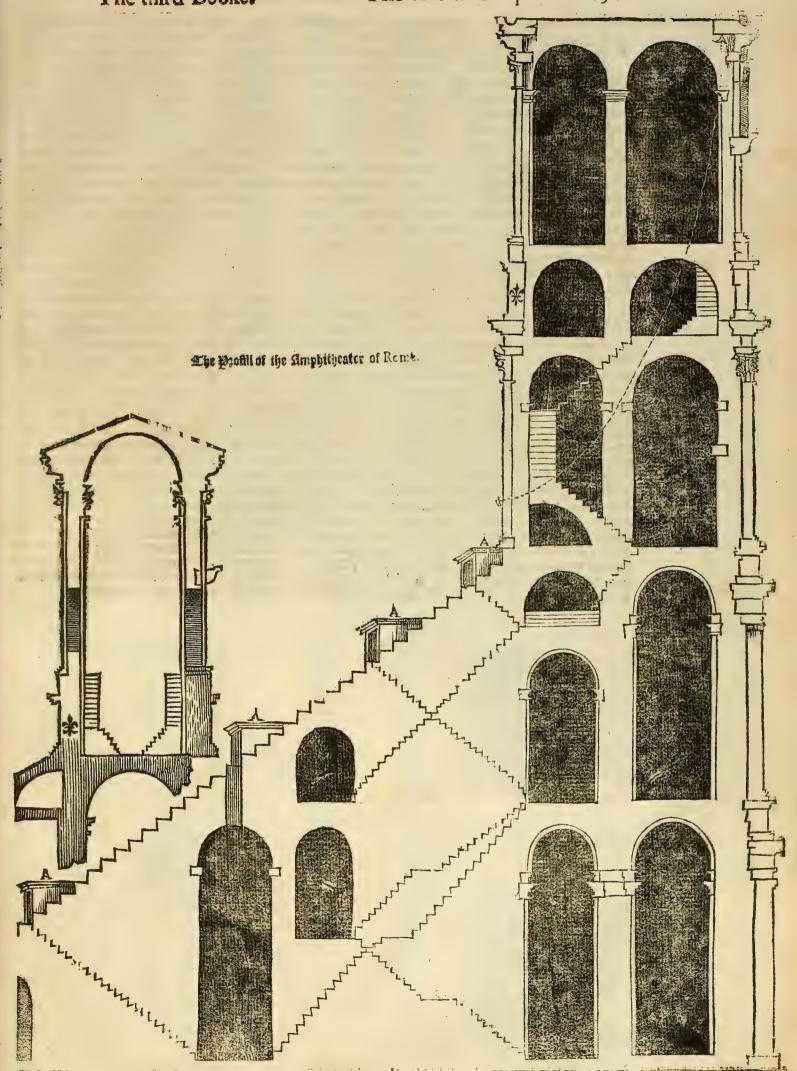
19-2





Baue Helved the Johnographic of the Romith Colifco, in foure logis, even like as the building is of foure logis og ogs vers: now I must their the Brofill thereof, by the which a man may conceaue a great part of the inward things: therefore the Figure following the with the whole building about & earth, as if it were cut through in the middle. In which Kigure, first you le all the degrees whereon the Spretators late: there also you may perceive how many wapes the goings by were, which (intruth) were very ealle to go by a downe, to that in thost time the Amphitheater was filled with a great number of men, without hind cance one of another. Poumay allo le in the outward part, how the thickness of the Bilafters, and the walles bywards leffened, which on the infide are drawne in, and being fo drawne in, giveth the building great Arength: and to thew it to be true, you may fee there, at this day, some part of the Facies without, yet tubole, from the top to the bottome, and yet the inward parts are occayed, and that hath the drawing inward in the Contra done, which made the worke flighter, taking, as it were, a forme of a Piramides. But this is not observed in the common building in Thenice, but rather the confeary, because the walles without are in Perpendicular maner, and les fen inwards: and this they doe (for want of ground) to get the more frace bewards, but that which helpeth fuch buils dings, is, that there are no Arches in it, no, Mofes, of any maner, that force the walles togine out, but the number of Weam's which are lago and fallned in the walles, bind the walles and the romes of the house together, and so such buildings fand fall fo long as the Beames incure, which men from time to time renue: neverthelette, thefe kinds of buildings latinot fo long as the ancient buildings did, made in such order as you fe in the Colico, whereof I will speaks agapne. And withall, (as I fayd) the innermost part being fo ruinous, that men fe no part of the innermost worke, which is cut off by the line that hath Shafes or Arrowheads at the ends: and for that you lie no parts thereof at all, whether that the oppermost parts of the highest Geps, bewards to the top, were all concred with double Galleries, of that the Posticus was alone, and the other left open: therefore 3 have made it in two maner of wayes: the one is las von fee in the same Poofill) iopned with all the worke: and the other maner is, which standeth without the degrees or ficus, which order alto agreeth with the other, if you let it lo, that the two Lius in the Pedellals mate each with the other: but for that you fie come remaynders of the crofted Hofes, which yet hang within on the walles, as the fourth ground theweth, the which, I judge, was onely a Porticus, and that the other part was becoursed to receive the people, and being to, mult receive them better then if the Galleries had beine Double: Pow to turne to the beginning of the vegras of fleps, that I feare nothing breouthed, as nare as Jean, I fap, by meanes of the ruines, and filling bp with matter fallen, the playue, or the place in the middle is fo filled up, that a man cannot marke how high the first des gres of the playne were elevated: but by the infructions of those that have line the end, the first begre was so high. that the wild and butance Brails could not hurt the beholders: and there was also a Booffwering, and other freetes, of a reasonable bredth to go round about, as it is theweo where it is marked with C. The two open places, the least and the greatest Arch, were to bring in light. The places standing by about the degrees of Cleps which are coursed and mars hed A. are Dozes, whereby men went without, by the Stagges to the Theater.

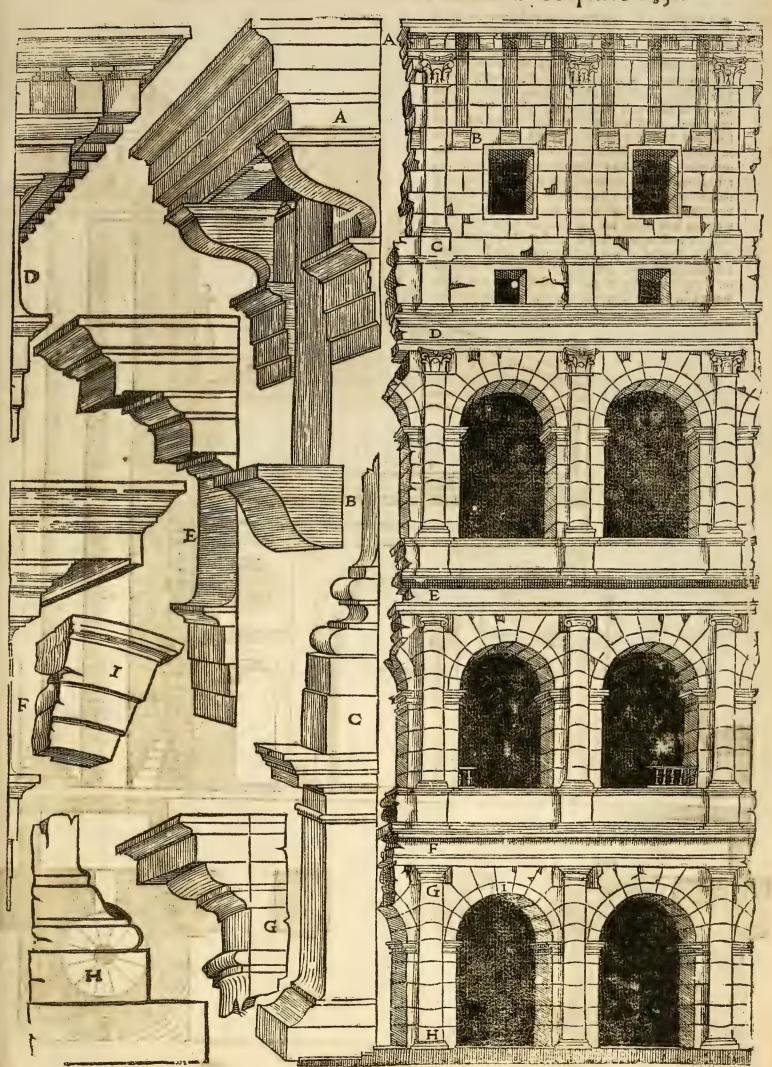
The fourth Chapter. Fol.31.

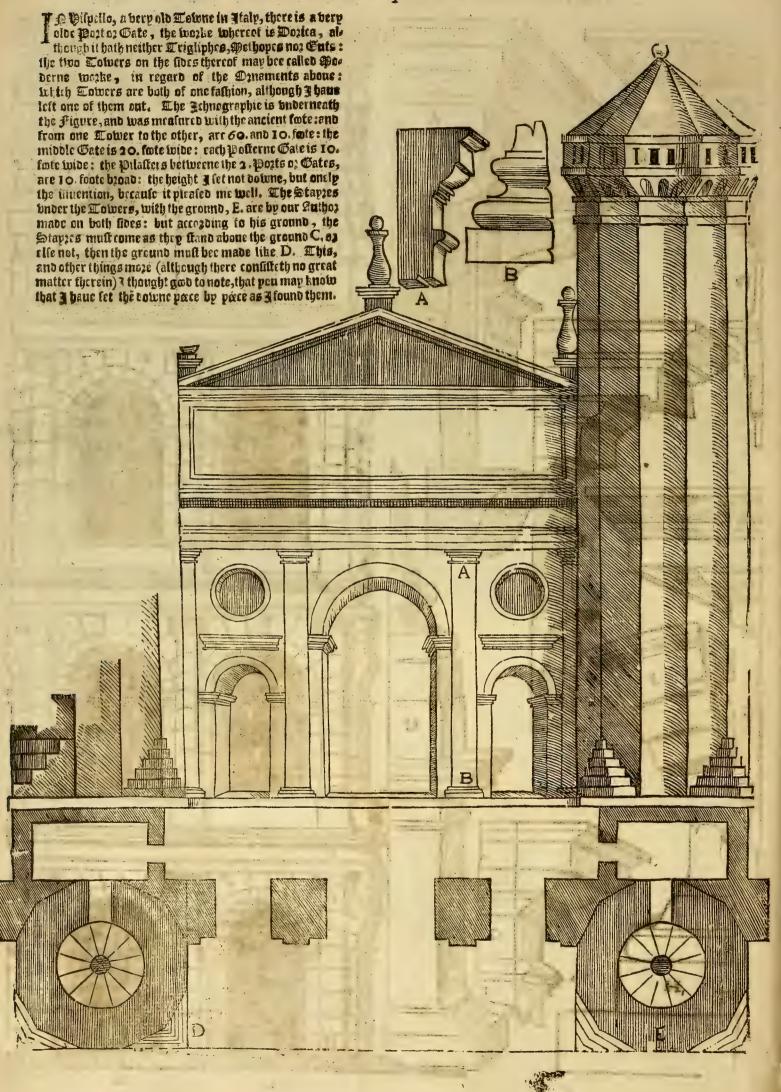


' De outward part, that is, the Dethographie of the Romith Colifceo, is made of foure Accies: and the first story nert about the ground, is made after the manner of Dozica: and although there are in the Freele neither Artigliphes not Detophes, not yet guts in the Opistolie of Architrauc; neither Fulmines and guts boder the crowne, pet it may be called Dozica. The fecond Dover, is after the manner of Jonica: and although the Columnes be not fluited, pet in effect they may be called Jonica. The third Story, is after the manner of Corinthia, but firme worke without cutting, baleffe it be the Capitals, the which with their height are not erquifitely made. The fourth Stozy, is Composita; other call it Latina, because it was invented by the Komanes : some others call it Italica. But it may well be called Composita, were it but for the mutiles which Kano in the Frésle, for that no other Story have their mutiles in the Fricke, but that. Pany men alke why the Romanes made this Building of foure Diders, and made it not all of one forme or order as many others are, as that of Verona, which is all of rufficall worke, and that of Pola allo. A man may answere thereunto, that the old Romanes, as ralers ouer al, tespecially of those people, from whence the thack former Dedershad their beginning, would let thole 3. generations one aboue another: 4 aboue all thole orders, the Composita, as found by themselves, thereby fignifying, that they as tryumphers over those people, would also tryumph with their workes, placing and mingling them at their pleafures. But omitting thefe reasons, we will proceed to the measures of the outformoll parts and Dethographic. This Building was clouated from the earth two degrees: the fecond degree was fine Palmes broad, and the first two Palms; the height was little lest then a Palme: the Bale of the Columne was not two Palmes, no moze is the Dortea: the Columne is foure Palmes thicke and two minutes: the height is 38. Palms and 5. minutes, with Bale and Capitall: the beight of the Capitall is about two Palmes: the Pilasters on exther five of the Columnes, are the Palmes and the minutes: the widenesse of the Archistwenty Palmes, and the height is 22. Palmes: from boder the Arch, to the Architrave, is fine Palmes and fire minutes: the height of the Architrave is two Palmes and egypt minutes: the height of the Frule is the Palmes and two minutes: the Cornice as much. The Pedestall of the second Diver, is eyght Palmes and ten minutes high: the height of the Columnes, with Bales and Capitals, is five and thirty Palmes, the thicknesse is four Palmes: the Pilasters and Arches are like those beneath: but the height of the Archis thirty Balmes: from bnder the Arch, to bnder the Architraue, is five Palmes and five minutes: the height of the Architraue is the Palmes: the height of the Frede, is two Palmes and nine minutes: the height of the Counice, is the Palmes and nine minutes. The Pedelfall of the fourth Dider, called, Composita, (here our Author hath forgotten the third Deder, but how focuer, it differeth not much from the Jonica) the Pedelfall of the Composita, is twelve Palmeshigh: the bover-Bale thereof, is foure Palmes: the height of the Pillars, with Bales and Capitals, is thirty eyght Palmes and fire minutes : the height of the Architrane, Freile, and Comice, is a bout ten Balmes, denided in thee, one part for the Cornice, the fecond for the Freie, wherein the Butiles Mand, and the third for the Architraue. But for what caule, or reason, the workeman let the Putiles in the Frice, (things, which, peraduenture, before that time were never made) I have delivered my opinion thereof in my fourth Boke, in the beginning of the Deder of Composita. The Pillars of the fourth Deder are flat, and rise but alittle: all the rest are round Tolumnes, (that is to fap) thee fourth parts, riling out of the Pilaters: the Mutiles about the windowes byheld fome beames, the which are boazed through with holes for men to draw cords to couer the hole Amphitheater, as well as gainst the Sunne as the rayne: for what cause the Columnes are all of one thicknesse, and lessen not one more then the other (as it semeth they should; and as Virrunius would) as the second Dider are lessened a fourth part, Than ealso declared my opinion in the fourth Boke, and the ninth Chapter. In the treatife of making Columnes, longer of those ter; and that the particular members may also be noted, I have marked them also by the Dathographie of the Colifceo, which are proportioned according to the principall, together with their Taracters whereunto they are likened.

The third Booke.

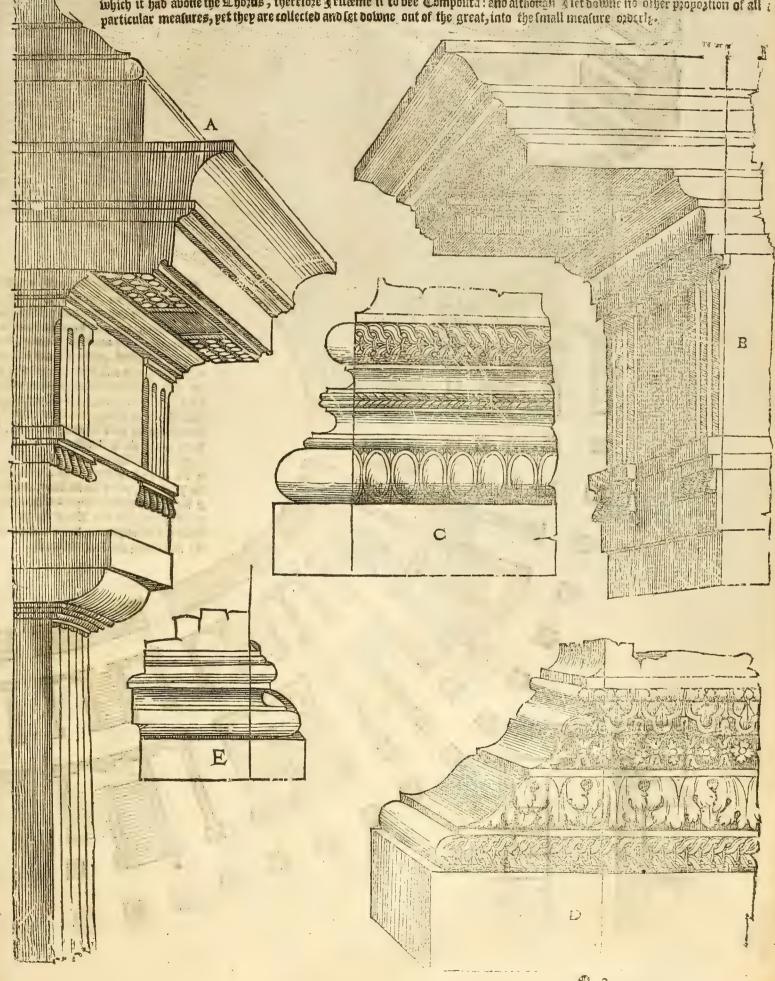
The fourth Chapter. Fol. 32.

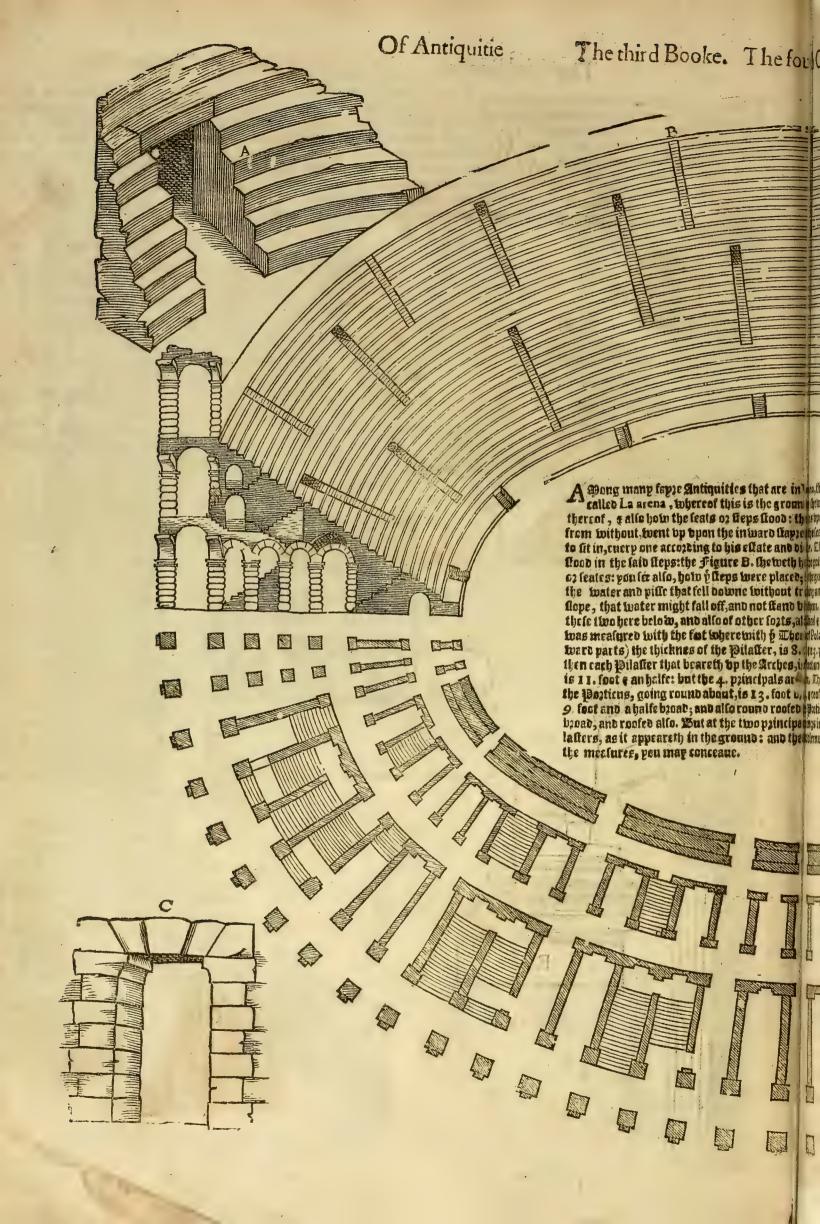


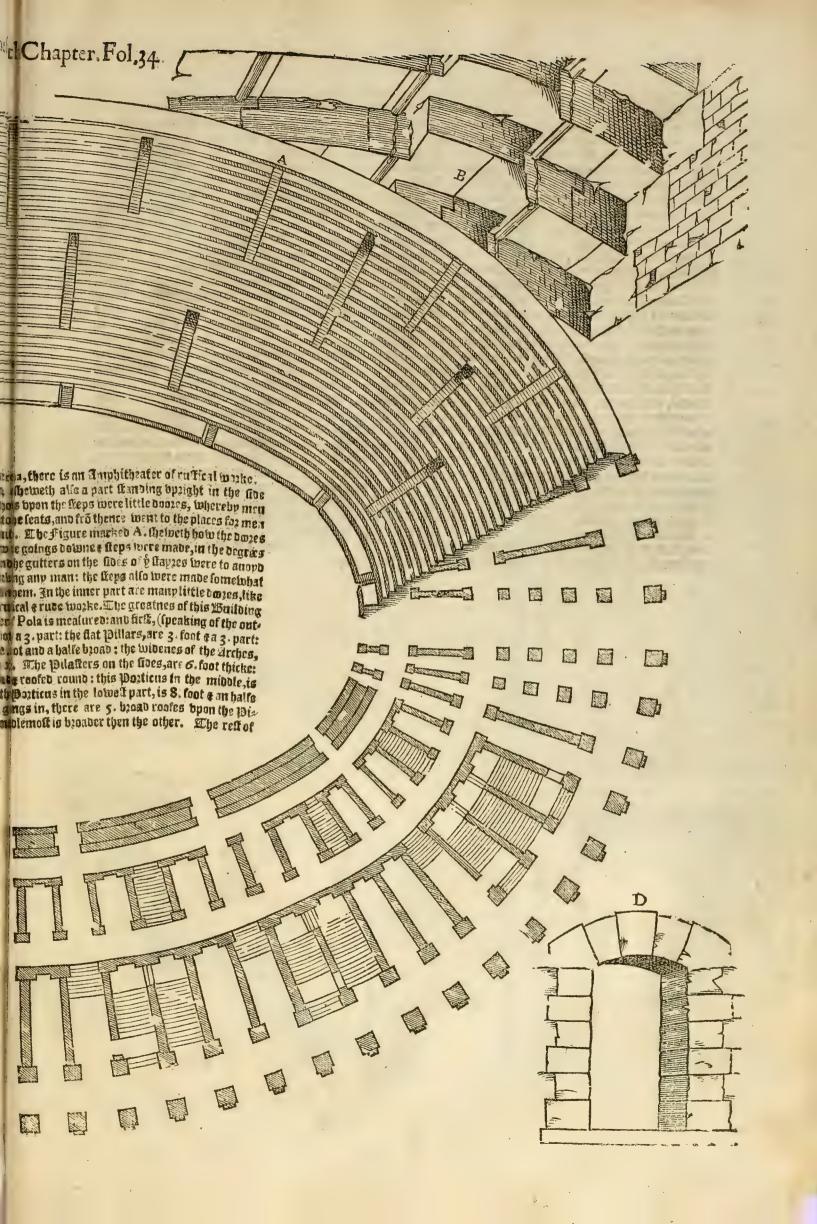


The fourth Chapter, Fol. 33

Dele Cognices, Balementse Bales, are reliques of Antiquities and that which is marked A. a piece of the Columnes with Architranes, Fracts of Cognices, and also with the Balement aboue, which was all of one Kone: the height thereof was 11 ancient sut, propositioned in that mann r, it was found without Kome by the Kiver of Aiber. The voter marked B. was found in the foundation of Hereis, and Branche caused it to bre buried agains in the ground, in the same places all the members also were of one piece; it was 6, ancient so thigh, propositioned thereafter. The Base marked C. is at H. Markes, very well wrought, of Corinthia worke, but not very great, it is a sot an halfe high, and propositioned accordingly. The Basement marked D. was sound in a place called Capranica, very well wrought: the height of has been thinked thinkins, is 2. Palmes, and also propositioned thereafter. The Base marked E. was not very great: it was sound among certaine ruines, and dyreason of the Astronal subject it had about the About, therefore Jesteme it to bee Composition and although I set down in a other proposition of all is a which it had about the About, therefore Jesteme it to bee Composition although I set down in a other proposition of all is a which it had about the About About About the Composition of all is a which it had about the About About About the Composition of all is a which it had about the About About

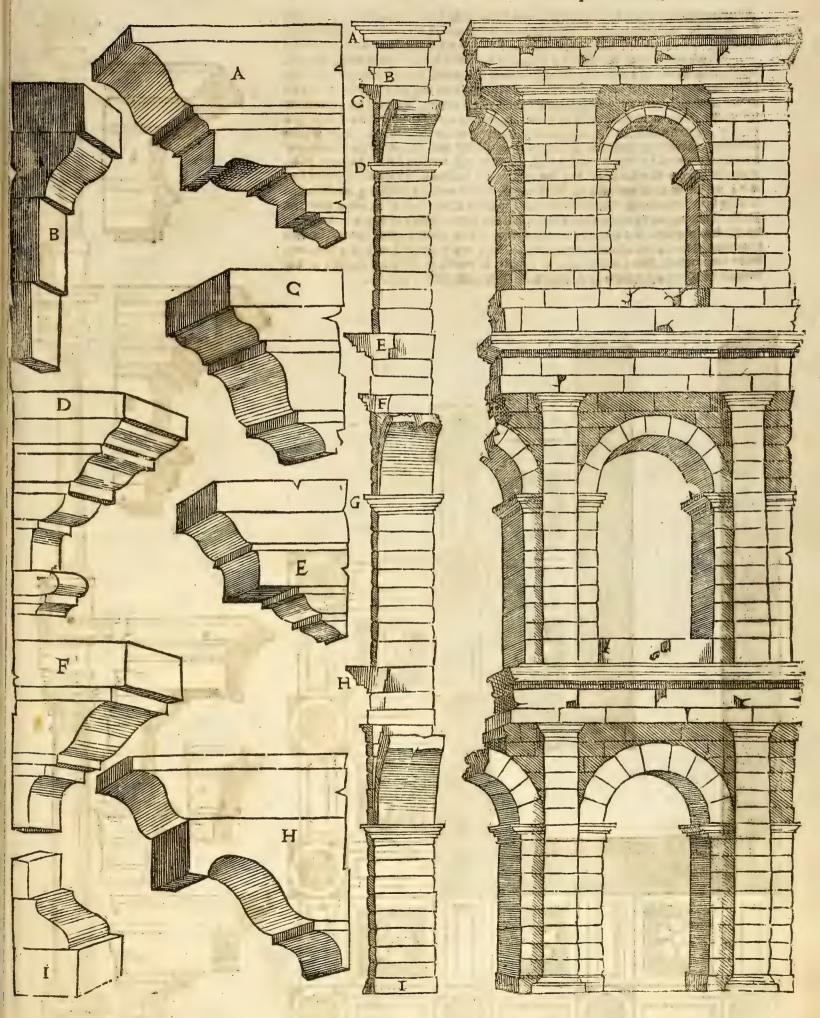


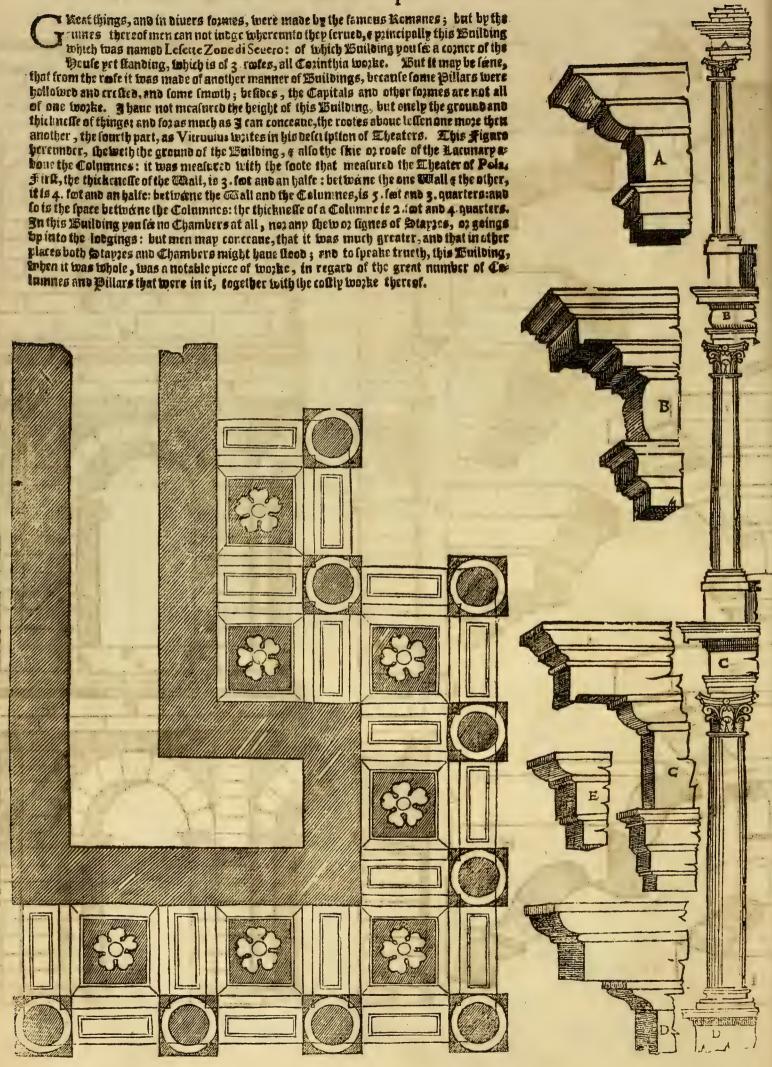


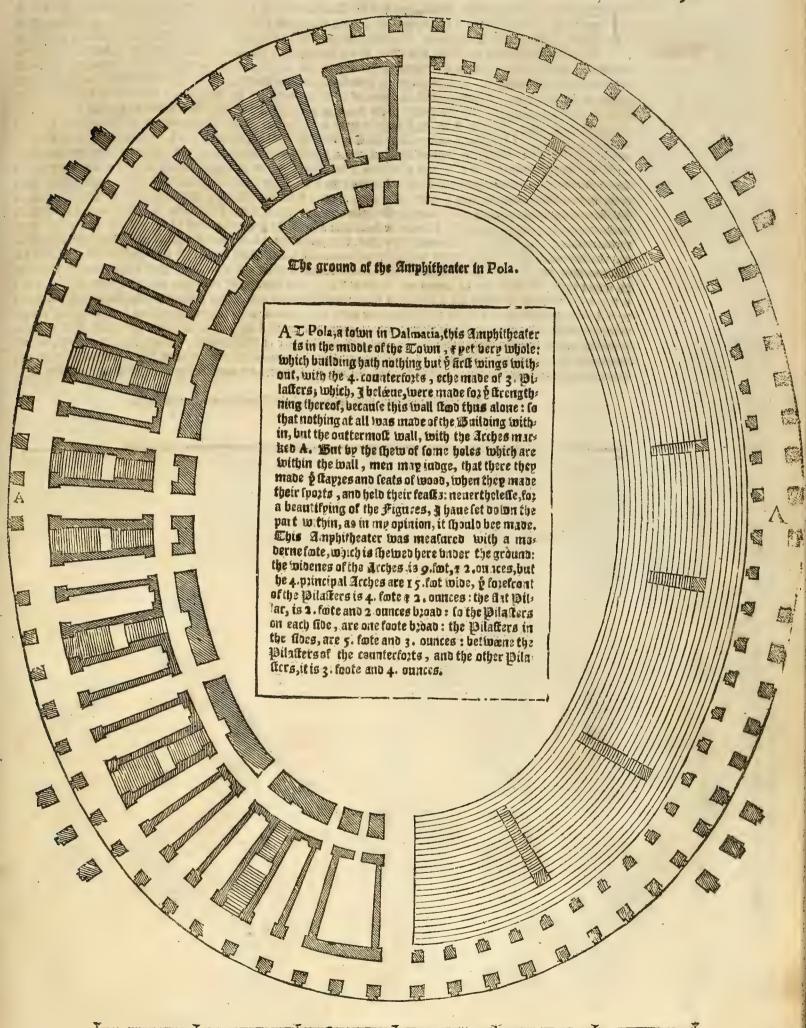


Duching the Lehnographic of the land Amphichester, I have let bolone the principall measures, and partly lyoken of that part which flandeth byzight: now Awill speake of the outward part, which works can no other wife bee called, then rupe and rufticall, and have likelvife spoken of the thicknesse and breadth, therefore I will rehearse it no more: onely of the height I will say some thing: And firth, the heighe of the firth Arch is 23. fote: the height of the Pillars 27 fote: the Forme of the Architranc, Frase and Cornice, is 6. fote high: the Place breft high about the Cornice, is 2. fote and a halfe high: the height of the second Arch is 24. fote, and his widenesse 12. fote: the height of the Willars is 24. Inte and a halfe: the height of the Cornice, Frale and Forme of the Architraue, is 5. Inte and a halfe: the Booffwering or place breft high of the third Diver or Story, is 4. swie and a halfe high: the widenes of the Arch is 9. fote and 3. quarters: the height of the Arch is 17. fote and a halfe: the height of the broad Pillers is 20. fote and ahalfe: against these Pillars, as farre as a man may perceiue, there were Images, of gwo bignesse, set: the third and last Cornice is 5. swie high. But I will not set downe the particular measures of the Cornices, sor that I have set them downe with great viligence, according to the greatnesse in this small Forme, which shall be the first Figures in the five following, and there below, the Peofill or cutting of the outermost part of the Amphitheater thall Cand. And thirdly, there followeth the Dethographic of a piece of the lavo Amphitheater without, which is all wecught after the rufficall manner, with stones of Aerona, being bery hard: but the Coanices are somewhat better made: which Coanices have divers and severall Formes of the Romanes, and are very like unto the Cornices of the Amphithester of Pola. Touching the playnenesse of this Amphitheater, which by the Common people is called, La arena, (taken from arena) which is fand, which was therein Arowed for certarne Playes or sports, which were there presented or Acted: and therefore I could not le the ground thereof: but as it was told me by some old men of Merona, when the Playes were there made boon the land, then presently there came water, in the light of all the beholders, which past through some Conduits, and in thost space filled all the placefull, so that there they might make battailes, and thousone at another with Scutes and Boates, in the water, and the place dyed by agayne, as at the first. This, and many other things, men may believe, if we confider the great magnificence of the Romanes, in the Antiquities of Merona. There are yet byon the great Rio ner of Avire two fapze ancient Bridges, betwenethe which two Bridges, there was a molt fapze and notable Spectacle, whereon there might frand a great number of people, to behold the Playes and sports there made in Boates, byon the water: which Spectacle was made along by the water fice, against abill: and higher volvards, about this Spectacle, there was a Theater, the Scene whereof, and the Spectacle toyned together: (and for that, as I fayo before, the Theater was made perpartificially in the hill, so is it about the Theater in the height of the hill) there was a great building, which furpalled all the other: but the ruines of thele buildings are lo many, and lo call dolvine in procelle of time, that it would be great charges and loffe of time to find them out: but for that in many places of the hill 3 have fane some parts thereof, therefore it makes me wonder thereat. It was also, with god reason, that the Romanes made such things at Werrona (for that, in my opinion, it is the best seitnated place of all Italy) as well for playnes as hilles, and also for waters; and specially, the men of that Towns are very familiar and friendly people.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 35

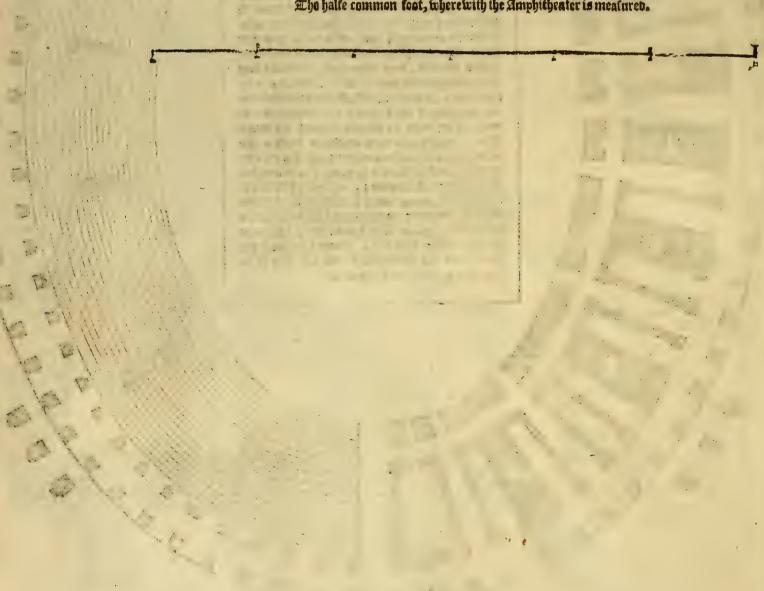






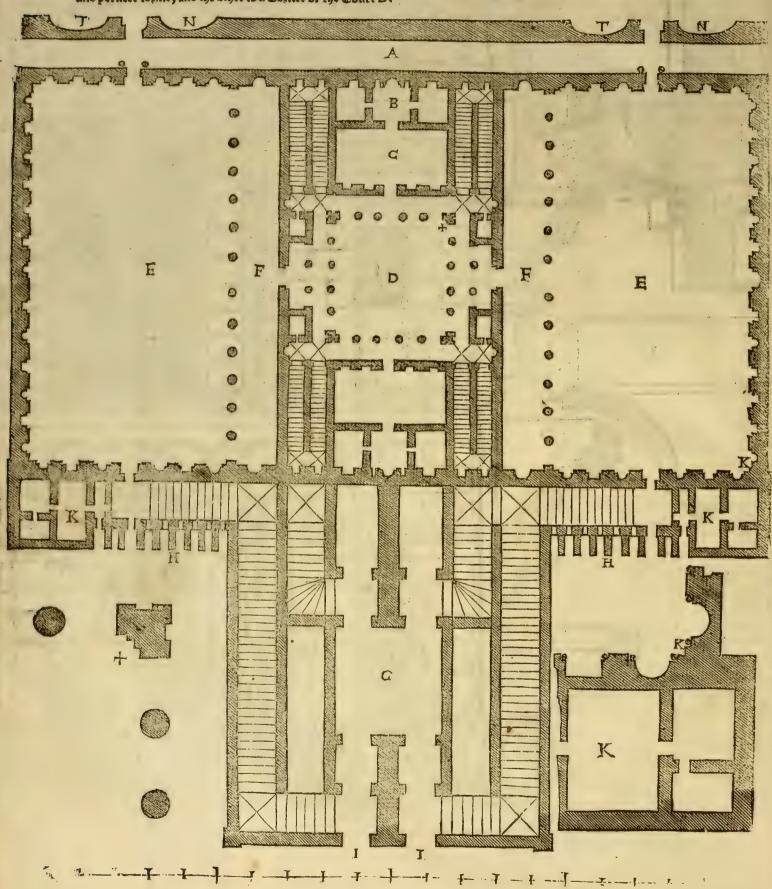
Duching the Dethographic, or the ground of the Amphitheater of Pola, I have lufficiently spoken: but now a mult the Withe Dathographie of the part flanding bp, beginning at the nether part: as fouching the Balennint, it hath no terminations of measures, (the cause why, is,) for that the Will is not even: for in the Will the Peochall is not onely loft, but also the whole first oper of the Arches, with all their Coonices byon them, and the Bill is the height of the plaine of the fecond story; therefore I will fet nowne no height of the meafare of the Balements : but will begin from thence bywards. The height of the Pedelfall bnoer the Pillar, is 2. foot and an halfe : the height of the Willar, or flat Columne with the Capitall, is about 16. foot: the height of the Arch, is 17 foot and an halfe: the Archie francis a foot and 9. ounces high the height of the Frale, is 9. ounces : the height the Counice, is one foot \$ 10. ounces: the height of the book-wering or place brek-high (if there bee any other) about the Cornice, is as high ap & Cornice: the beight of the Willar is 2 1. foot & 9. ounces, with the Capitall: the height of the Arch, is 18. foot and one ounce: the thicks nelle of the Arch, is I. foot and 9. ounces: the Architrauc, Freie and Comice, are of the fame height that the bindermoft is: the Balement marked X. is 4. fot and 4 ounces. From the Balement to boder the Cornice, is 19 foot: the height of the Comice is one fot and an halfe. And this is touching the Dethographie of the Amphitheater, the which Dethographie is on the nert five, marked P. and for that (as in the Areaty of & Ichnographie I have layd) the Amphitheater hath fome Pilaffers on foure fides, which were made for firengthening & counterforting of the walls: the which wall flood within. without any thing ellezand therefoze I meane to thew how it flod: the Figure marked Q. theweth the fides of this counterfozt: e that part marked H. repzelenteth a Bilafter: that part marked I. heweth the Profil of & wall of the Amphithe ater: betwene the Pilacer H. and the wall of Pilacer marked I. is a going through of thee for and an halfe wide : fo that two men may goe through together. These counterforts have their ground in every order or flory, whereen the prople might fand; but there are no flayzes no; fignes of flayzes, but were made of wood, as may be feene by fome holes be fore the windowes. And that the Cornices of this prefent Building may be the better under two, therefore I have fet them there befloes in greater forme, that a man may know their members, by their Caracters of Letters which they are marked withal. The manner of this Comicement is much different fro the Romith, as men may fee : and I, fo; my part, would not make such Cornices in my worke; but with the Theater of this Towne, I would serve my turne, because they are of a better manner of worke. I am of opinion, that this was an other workeman, different from the other, and it may be that this workeman was a high Almaine, because the Cornices are made much after the Dutch manner.

The halfe common foot, wherewith the Amphitheater is measured.

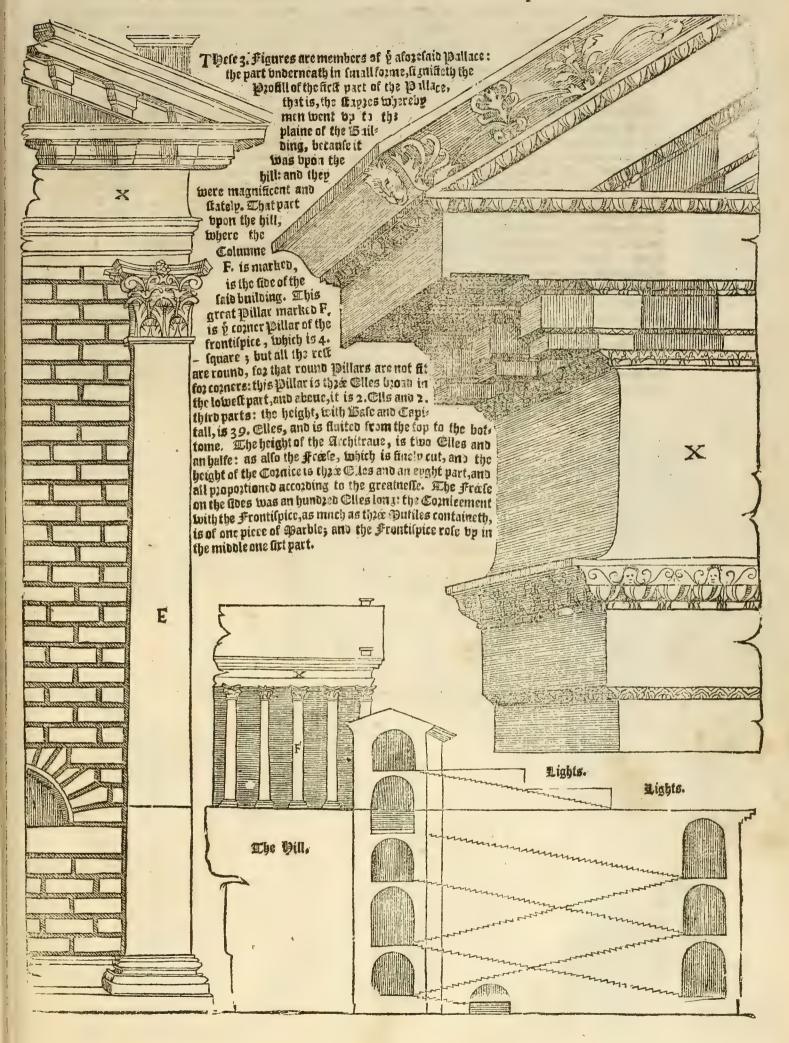


The fourth Chapter, Fol. 37 The third Booke. В E D G I I-I £. 2

A Thount Taballa within Rome, where now the kione hoples Prartitles and Phiola Kand, is the ruines of a mokeofily Pallace, whereof the part kod vecu the hill, but the part of the goings by was made right against the descending of the hill, as you may ke in the Profill hereunder. The Rednographic of this building was measured with a common Ell, the third part whereof Kandeth hereunder. And kin the Piches or hollow places, marked T. and N. were found the kigures of Tiberius and Nilus, which are now set in Beldenerie: the place marked A. is a krate or way of 10. Elles broade: the part marked B. is 12. Elles foure square: the part marked C. is 36. Elles in length, and 18. Elles broad: the place D. is 36. Elles foure square: the walkes round about are 4. Elles broad: the place our against C. B. is of the like measure. The widenesse of the foure parts of Stayres is 4. Elles each of them: the places E. are Tourts, whereofeach of them are 114. Elles long, and in breath 62. Elles and a halse. The Balleries F. are 13. Elles broad: the greatest Stayres, to goe up to the playne of the Pallace, are 11. Elles wide: that part by the Torners marked K. is 12. Elles and a halse broad, and long 16. Elles and a halse: the parts H. are Countersorts to hold by the Stayres. The place G. is a Court, which gave light to the place within: the two goings in marked I. were to goe by the Stayres, and the building began where the Stayres stand. The great stately Frontispice in the middle of the building, was of such breadth, as the middlemost part held without the Touriso? Galleries. The two Figures, K. and A. which stand without the building, the one specific forme, and the other is a Counter of the Touriso?



The fourth Chapter. Fol. 38.

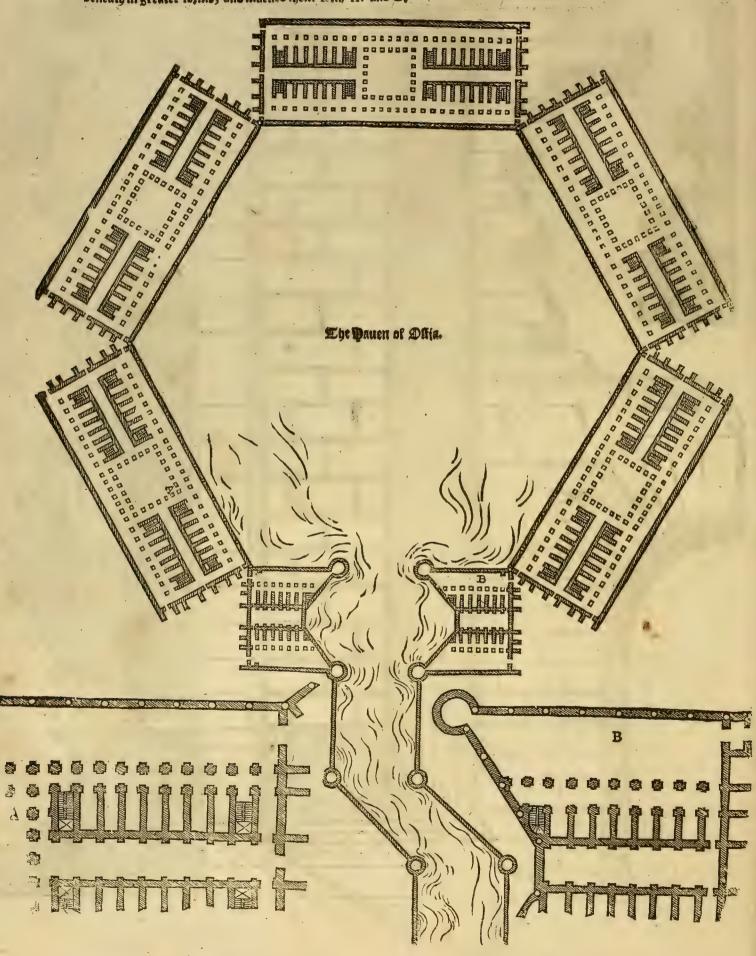


Bong the raines of Kome, there are many things found out, the which a man cannot marks not imagine what they have bone: a man also feerth there many ruines, ir buhan now self bolune and overtheolene; whereby a man may conceane the high minoes of the Ancient Romanes: among & which Antiquities, this hereafter follow ing, is one, as you may percease by that which yet frandety. This Building is called the Basilica del foro cranficorio: and a man may imagine the greatnesse thereof by the height of this Pillar, although you fee not the ending thereof bywards; for the oppermed Cornice is not there in the works, neither is there any pieces thereof among the ruines to be found, whereby a man thould conceaue what flood aboue such a Building. This ruine was measured with a common or moderne Bil, which is beunded into 60. minutes: the halfe whereof flandeth betweene the Dbelliecs: This Columne flood 7. degrees elevated from the earth, of indifferent height: the thicknesse of the Columne marked C. is 2. Elles in Diameter: beneath at the Bale and in the oppermoffpart, bnoer the Capitall, the Diameter is 2 Elles and 40, minutes : the height of the trunke or bare Columne, without Bale or Capital, is 24. Elies and 55. minutes: the height of the Balo below, is one Ell and an halfe: the height of the Capitall, is 3. Elles and 26. minutes: the height of the Architeme, is two Elles, and 23. minutes: the Cornice betweene the Columne and the counter-pillar, which Comice is marked D. is 1. Ell and 48. minutes: the Comice abone (as I have land) is not found there: the countercolumne is flat, and is of the same proposition like the round Columne, and lestineth also aboue, as the round coeth. The Capitall is formed like the Capitals of the Pantheon of the Rotund: the Male marked C. is placed there belides in better forme, and is proportioned in measure like the greater: likewise, there also you see the Comice D. in greater some. Ihave set dolone the measure of the greates Columne C. now will I speake of the lesser, marked B. which Columne budger it, hash a very sagre Basement: the height whereast, is 6. Elles: the this kenesse of the sayd Columne in Diameter beneath, is one Oll and a third part; and it is lestened about accordingly, as the greatest is: the height thereof wish the Bale & Capitall is 12. Elles and 2 tifrd parts: the height of the Bale, is halfe the thicknes of the Columne be. menth, and is fallioned like the greater: the height of the Capitall is one Ell can halfe: which Capitall is very well made, and theformethercofin great is tan in my other 4. Booke, in the beginning of § Composita. This Columne is fluted, as the Figure thereof sheweth, and hath also a flat Columne of the same forme: the Architrane, Freie and Cornice about His Columne, are about 4. Elies: which Counice hath the Butiles without Dentiles, and is very like the worke of the Bantheon, and by as much as I could perceave, this lefte Columne ferued for an ornament of a Gate or Doze of the Sand Mallica.

The third part of the common Cil, where with this is measured.

The fourth Chapter. Fol. 39. The third Booke. こ

The Romanes (because of their great proud mindes) alwayes lought to build things of great maielle, which might their great power both by Water and Land: and to that end they made the wonderfull Haven of Otia, for the case of the Citte of Rome: which, in trueth, (in regard of the commoditie and greatnesse of the Building thereof, and specially, the great strength thereof) may well bee called wonderfull. It is of some Heragonitck, that is, 6. cornerd: and each Facie is 116. roodes long, and each rood is 10. Palmes: by these principal measures, you may understand the greatnesse field thereof; every Facie had a large walking place, with Galleries round about, 4. Appertiments also compassed with Galleries, and a walking place in the middle. Along the water side there were trunckes of Columnes orderly placed, whereware the ships were fastened; and at the mouth of the Haven, there were towers to desend it from the enemie in time of nad. And so, that you can hard perceaue the Appertiments in so small a some, therefore I have placed them beneath in greater some, and marked them lists A. and B.

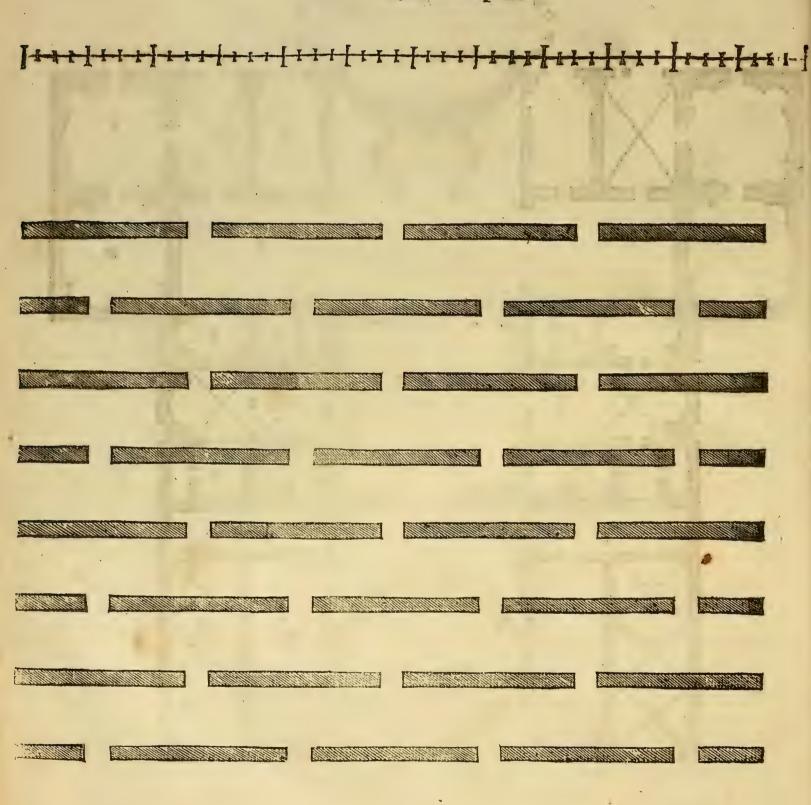


The fourth Chapter, Fol. 40.

He Thermes of Ties are leffe then the other, and therefore by the people they were called Thermi winori : nevertheleffe, (after my opinion) they are well mader the Ichnographie of these Thermes is measured with the ancient Palme. First, the Diameter of the palmes in Plaimes: The part I. is 100. Palmes, and is along the part B. is in length 80 palmes, and in breath 51. Palmes: the part C. is 80. Palmes in length, and in breath 60 Palmes. The forme D. is about 100. Palmes in Diameter: and the Portall E. is 50 palmes: the part F. is 120. Palmes long, and 70. broad: the egypt ranked part marked G. is about 100. Palmes: the round part H. is 150. Palmes in Diameter. The part I. is 100. Palmes, and is along two four foures; the two parts, each marked with K. is 30. Palmes on eyther five. The part L. is 125. Palmes, in 148. Palmes long, and 57, broad. The length, the bredth 30 Palmes. The roundnelle marked M. is about 120. Palmes in Diameter. That part mars part O. is the lame: the prefernatum of the water tollowethafter. B F F K H I (3) 0 N M

Derfolly made, and very Artificiall, and that is, for that the Arches of these preservatives are placed in such god or bet, that a man, Kanding in the going through of the one-seeth them all overthivarts: and this is the place which the prople commonly call. The scuen Halles, and it was for this cause, because the spaces are seven in number: and in them you so exerthivarts, backwards and sozewards, alwayes y. in number: the thicknesses of the walls, is source so and an halse: the widenesses of the Arches is sire foot: from one Arch to the other, are 27. soot: the widenesses multiplied to the other, is 15. sote, and they are round roosed, of an indifferent height. The walles and rooses are playstered with most hard platser.

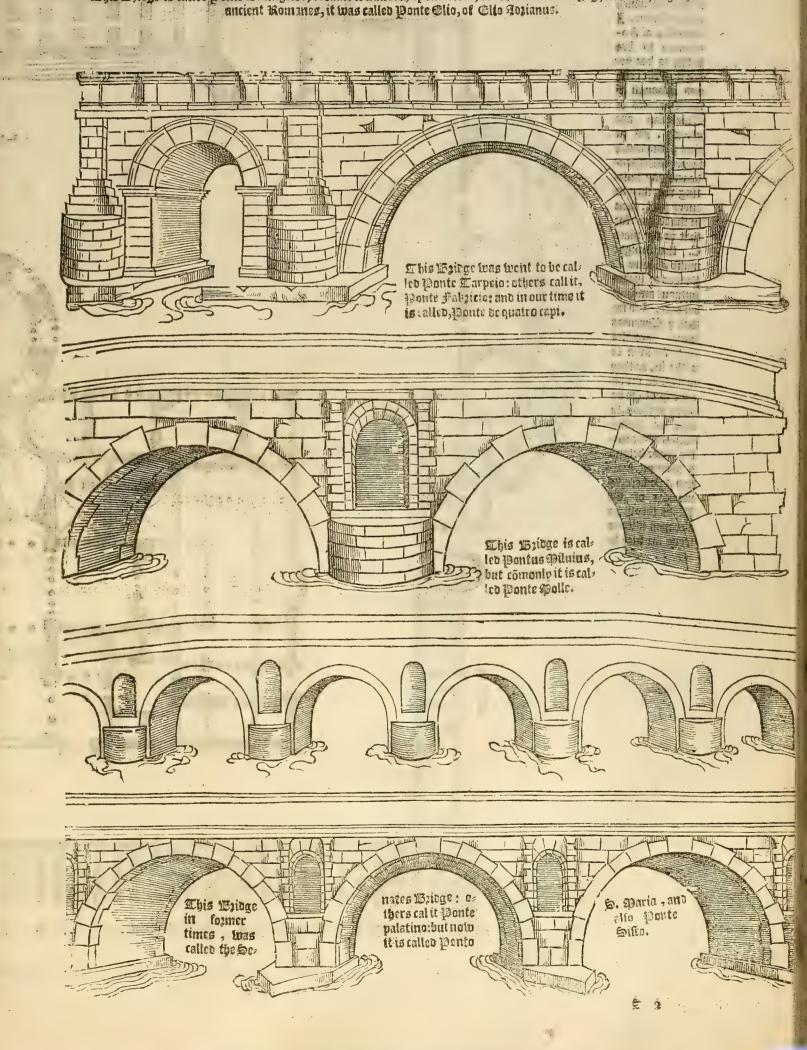
The old Romane Palme.



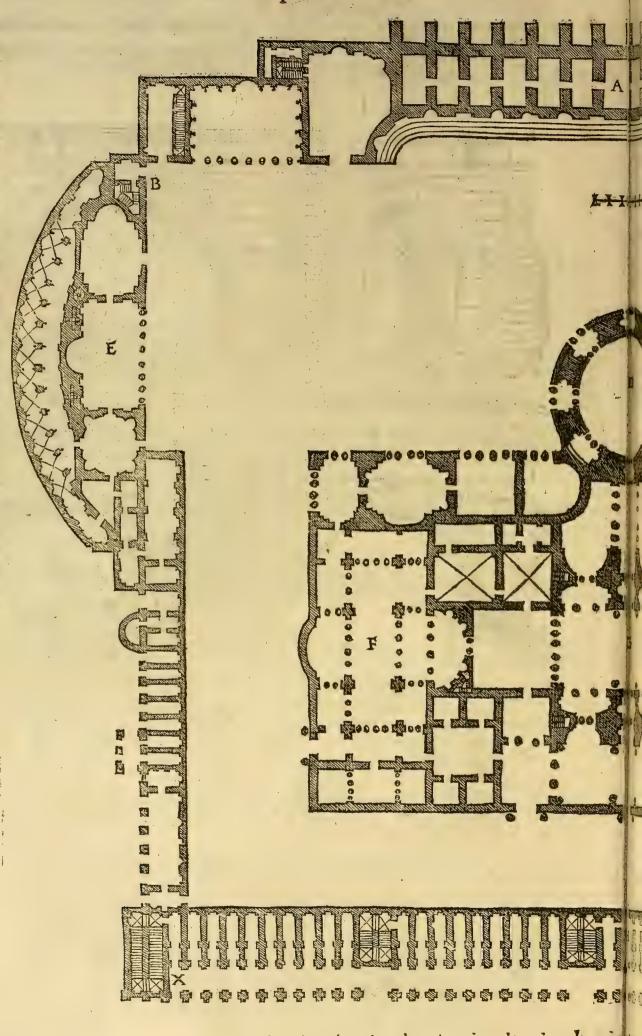
The fourth Chapter. Fol.4t.

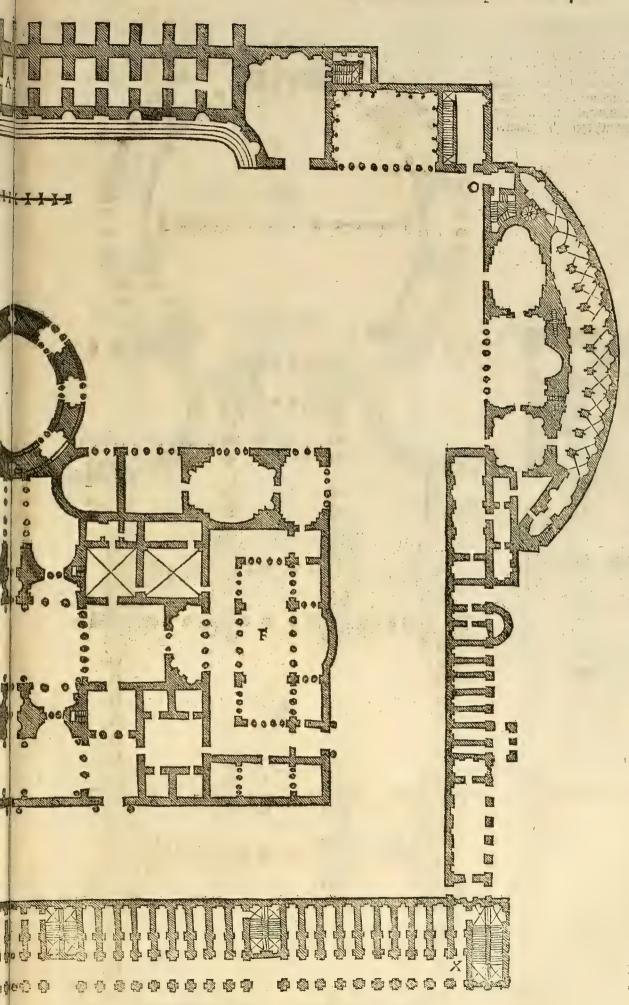
I P Rome and elsewhere there are many Bridges made by the Romanes, but I will here hew the invention of source onely, that you may see their manner of making of Bridges.

This Bridge is called Ponte S. Angelos, because it Candeth vpont Aiber, by the Cowne of Jughelenbooth: by the



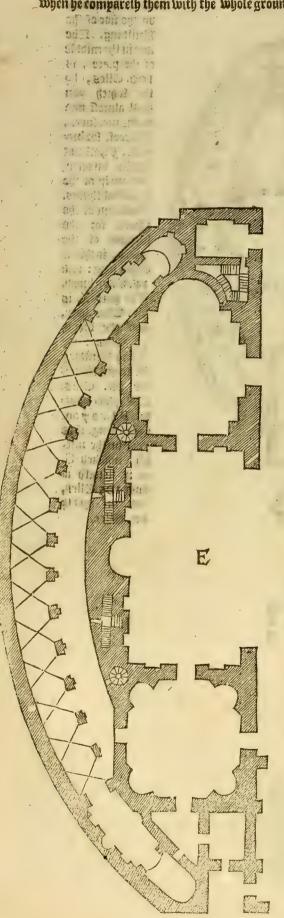
A Mong other Thermes which are in Rome, 3 finde this of Antoniano to bee better to bee nos ted then the rece, and although g the Thermes of Dioclesian are greater, yet in this I find much fapec correspon-Dencie and knite ting together in enery part, then in the others: for that in the place C. they might make all kind of Dlayes or sports without any hinberance. And for that h Thermes were specially made for men to bathe in, as they were bled for diners (posts to be made in them, fo was the prefer nation of the was ter made behind building, marked A. where, by meanes of the Pipes, they were alwayes filled to ferne for fuch be leg.

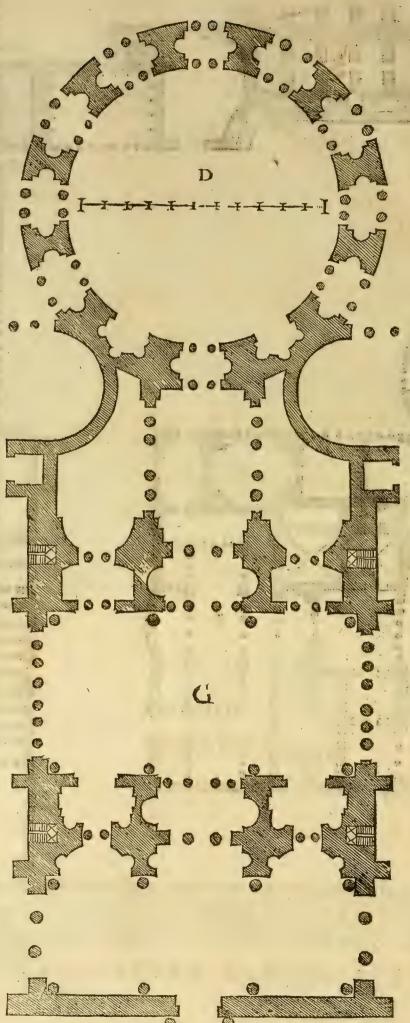




This ground is mealured with the common ell, the third part whereof is hereunder let downe by the side of the Building. The line in the middle of the place, is 100. Elles, by the which you thall almost find all the measures, whereof, for bree uitie, I will not speake directly, but onely of the principal things. First, one of the places for the happing of the water, is thirtie Elles long: and 16. Elles broad.
The part X. is
81. Elles long,
and the bredth 44. Elles : the round Building D. is in Diames ter 86. Elles. The place marked B.C. is 700. Elles long. The part in the mito Die . marked G. is in length a bout 105. Elles, and in bredth 60, Elles.

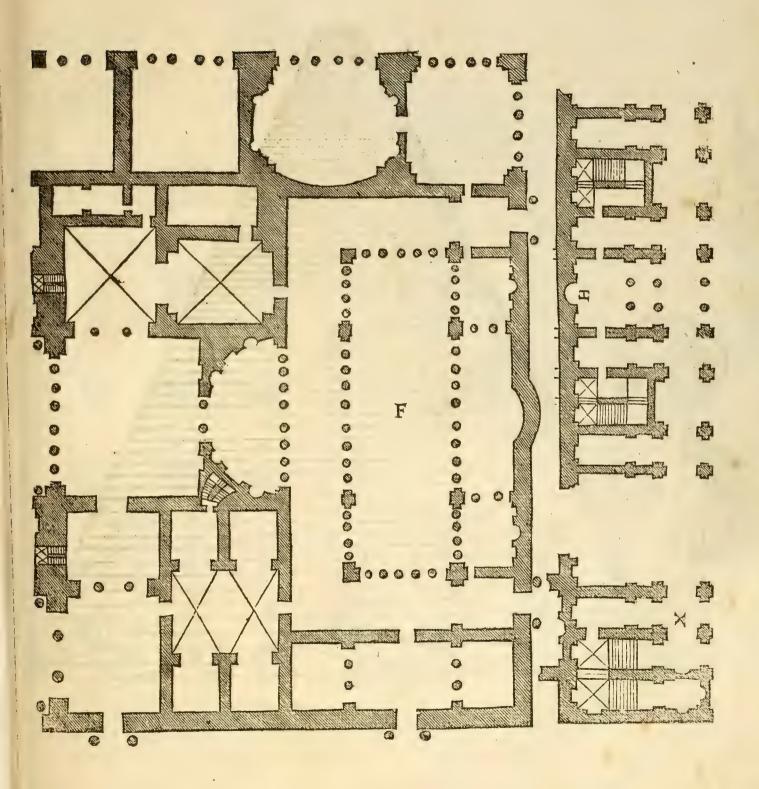
I De that in the ground before set downs, by realon of the smalnesse of the figures, which could not be made greater in this Boke, a man can not so well know the particular partes, therefore I have in these two sides set downs some parts more plainly, as the ingenious workeman, by the letters where with they are marked, may se and sinothem, when he compareth them with the whole ground.





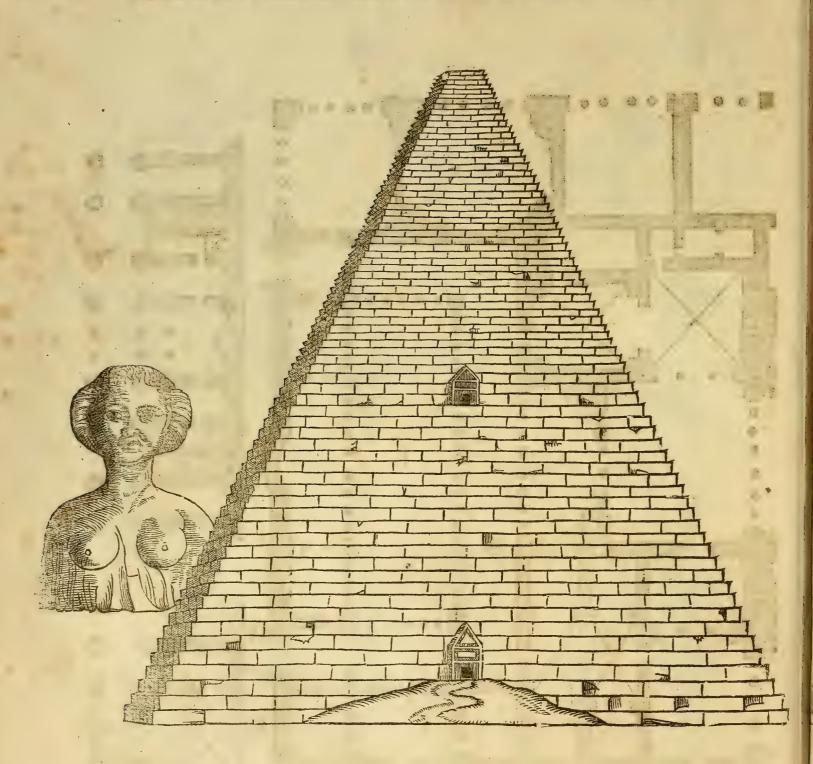
The fourth Chapter. Fol.43

Ethough these Figures Anno thus without order, and in many pieces, yet the wise workeman chall know, that they are members of the Thermes afore chewed, beholding the letters which kand in them (which comparing with the others) he chall know what parts they are. Also, he must know, that the parts H. and X. belong not to the part F. for the Figures hereunder are three scuerall parts; although, for necessitic sake, they are set one by another. I have also not set to be particular measures: for the workeman chall better helps himselse with the invention, then with the measures.



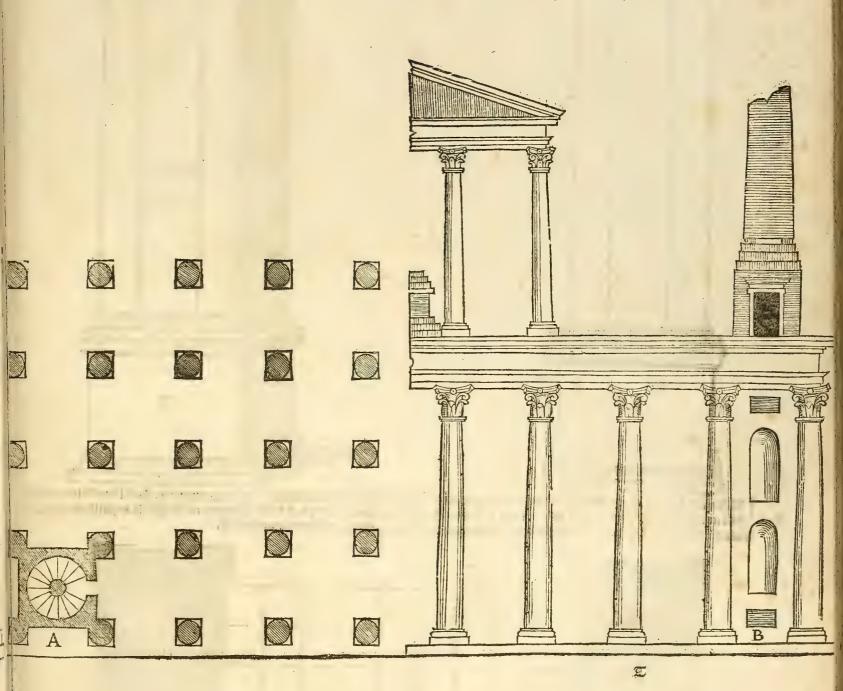
n send Onlanci ed Of Antiquitie of briefs ed I

A Bout scene miles from Ascaire there is a Piramides, whereof I will the wife forme, and also set downe the measure, as I had it from a Bentleman of Aenice, who measured the same himselfe, and was both boon it, and within it. This Piramides was measured by Paces, and every Pace is more then three ancient Palmes: the Bale, on every side, is 270. Paces, and is right source square: it is all of hard stone, and you may clime boon it without, (but not easily) but to the top: so, every Pace is three Palmes and a halfe high: but there are not so many Playnes, that a man may easily set his fact open them: the number of the Paces or steps, from the Bales so the top, or the highest part, is 210. and they are all of one height; so that the height of the whole Piramides is as much as the Bale. Hand before that this Piramides was a Sepulchee: so that within it, there is a place in the middle, whereon yeth a great some: thereupon men presume, that some great person hath there been buried: but going in, boon the left hand, you sind a going by of some, which turnes about the Piramides within, through the which you goe by the Station, in the top within. About the middle of this Piramides there is another going in, but it is fall that; on the top of this Piramides, there is a faire state or playne, about 8. Paces broad on every soe, whereby workened know, that it was the same playne that was made at the sinishing of the Piramides. Pot sarre from thence, there is a head of hard sone, with part of the brest all of one stone; the sace whereof is 10 Paces long; and in this Figure there are some Egyptian letters: of this Piramides was not head, Peter Marir soiteth, and hath also sine and measured them, which differ not much.

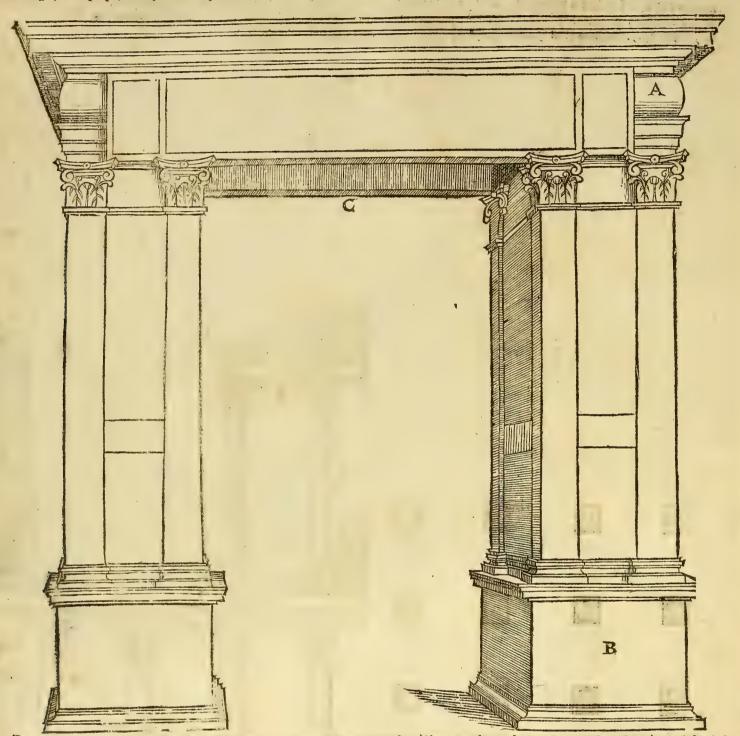


The fourth Chapter, Fol. 44

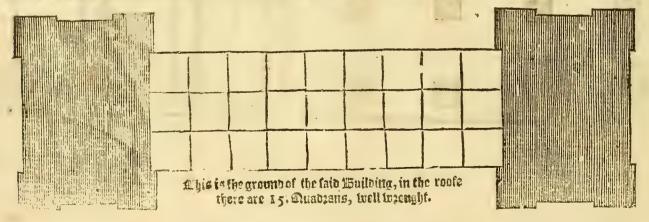
Athough the Beckes were the principal founders and inventors of good Architecture (as our Patter Virunius, and many other Authors witnesse) neverthelesse, by reason of their great warres, and their Land so often overrun and spoyled by the enemies, a man can hardly stade any good worke sanding whole in all Grecia: but as some men have told me, there are yet the ruines of a Building, which, as men conceave, was of one hundred Columnes; whereof no man can by cassing know the height. But (with our Authors licence) so, that he makes this by report, and both no measure thereof, I have onely set the fourth part of the ground by the halfe of the Building (which he half thereto placed) whereby the workeman may conceave the whole ground, and the whole Figure thereof.

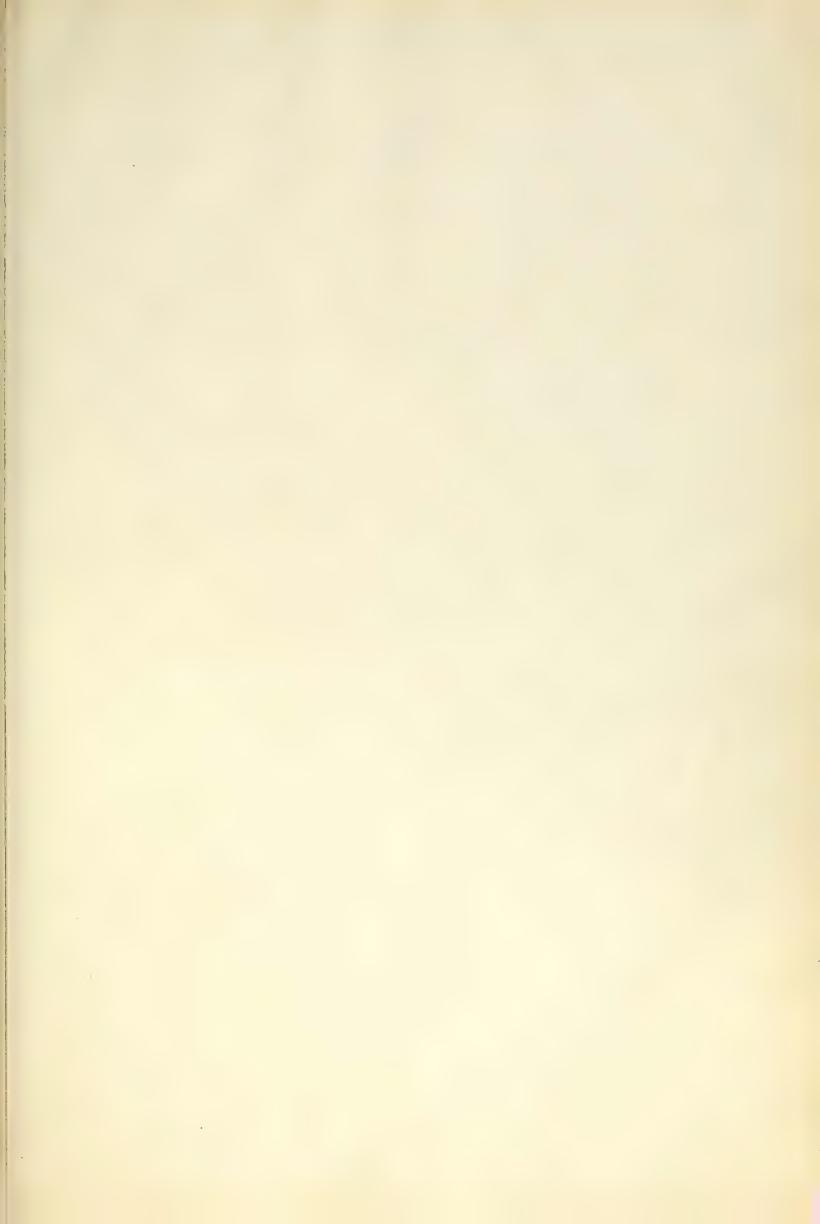


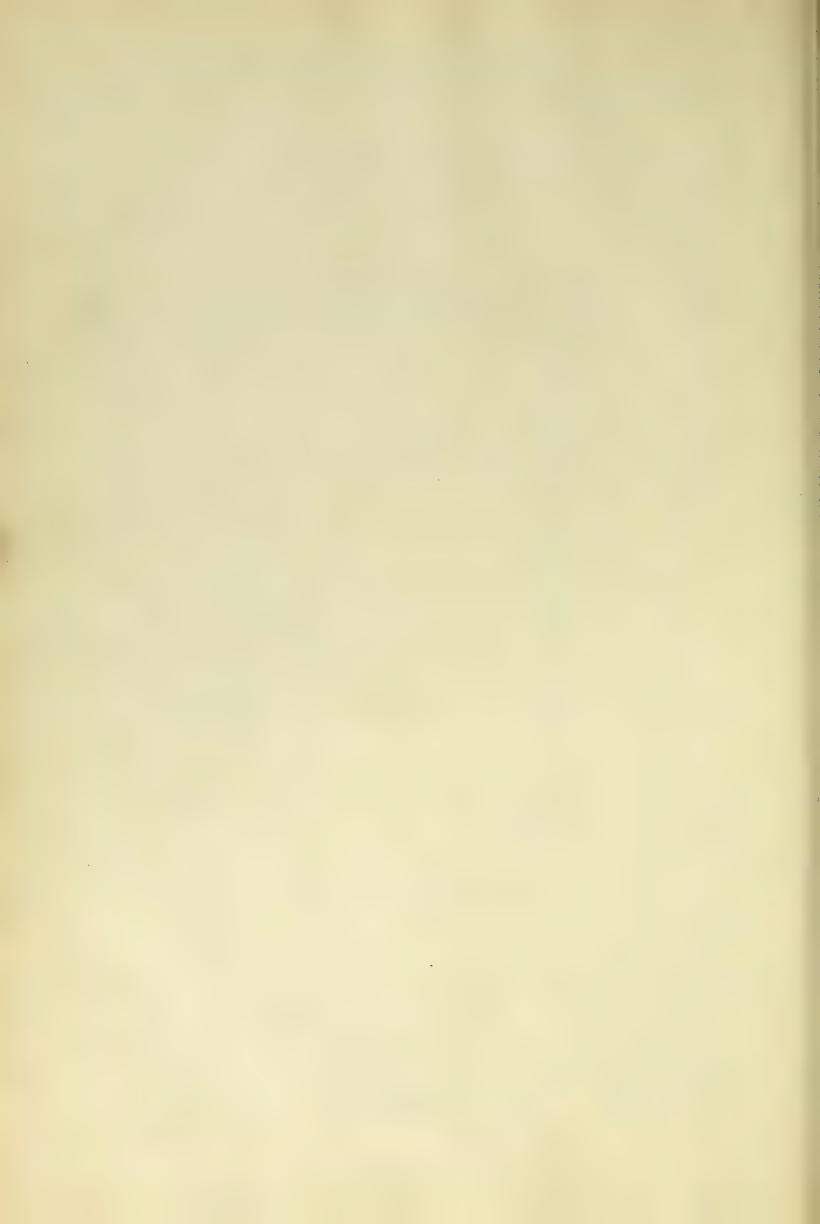
B. George Belabro, you may le this building hereunder, which was made by the Bankiers & Drenfellers, in the time of Lucius Septimus Severus, and Marcus Aurelius Aprenius: which Building is of Composita worke, wellfet foorth on every side with graving. Let no man wonder, that the Frese & the Architecture are concred with this table, so, that there being much writing to bee let into it, the frese was not great inough to containe so many letters: therefore the workeman made it so, and brake not the order of Architecture at all, terming the turn propagation therefore in the concres.

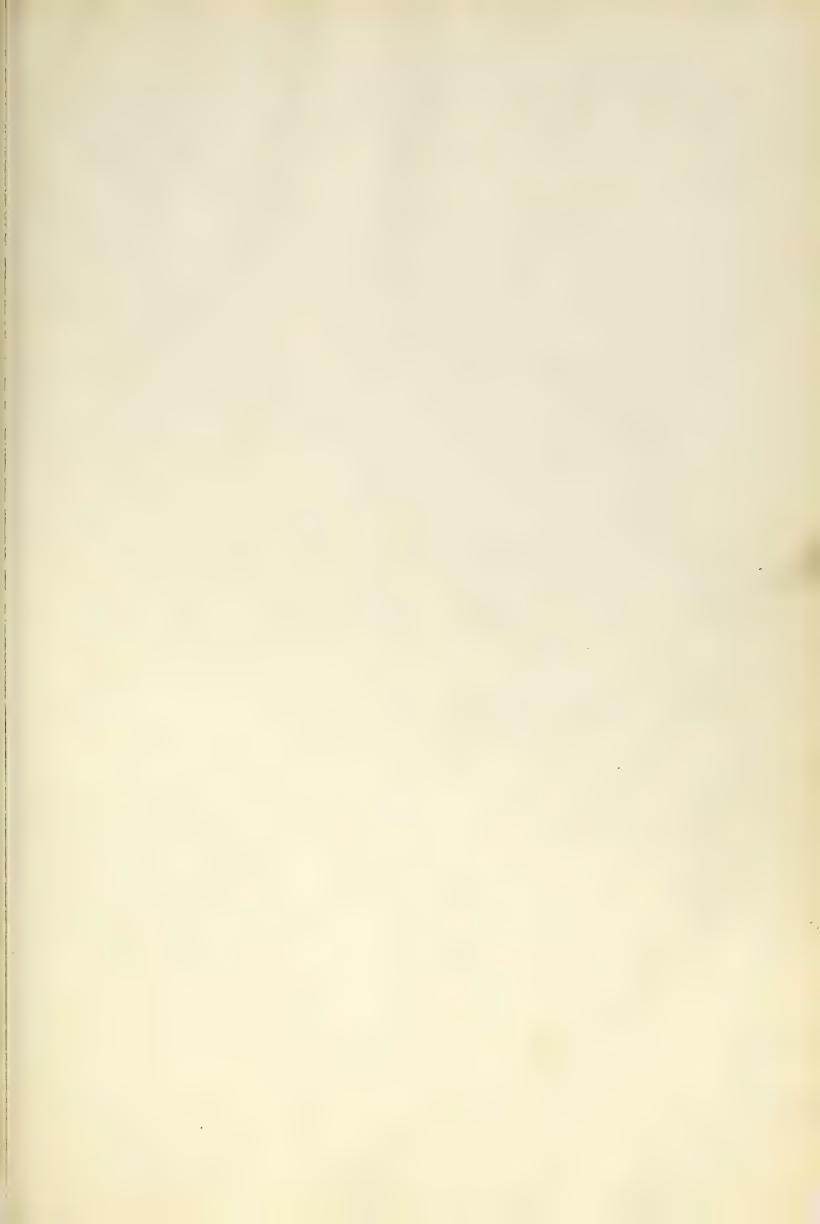


Twill not fet the machine of this Briving at large, because it was lost after it was measured: but as I remember, the widenesse betweens the energy belief that side and the energy between the pilatters, with all the Columnics which are flat, is 4.6% and any also and is much the Architeaux, Arcic and Cornice containeth.







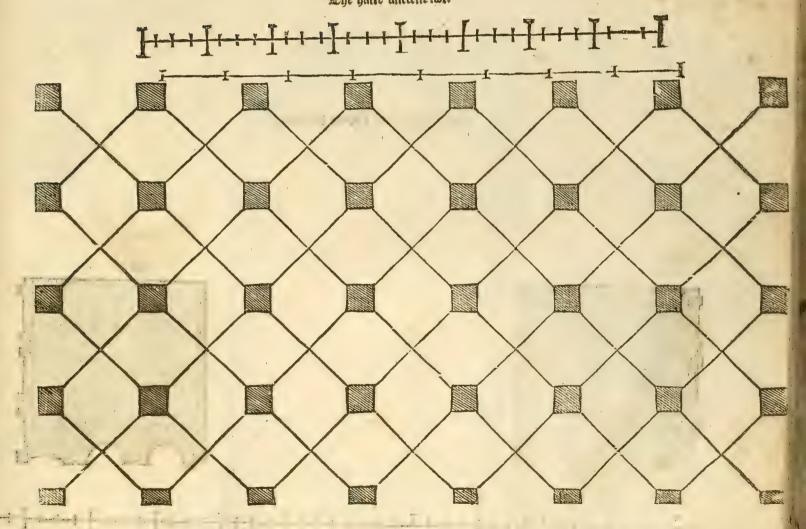




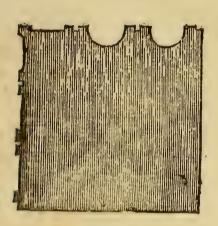
The fourth Chapter. Fol. 47

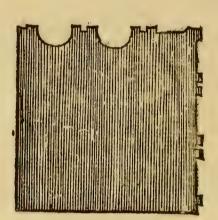
De Therme made by Dioclesian, was vied to; divers common and open sports, and specially to bathe in; where, unito it behove the have great quantitie of water, which was brought by Pipes a great way off; and it was kept in certaine Cesternes, which show in the Thermes of Dioclesian, in this manner as is hereunder set downer it was made with Pilasters, and abone it was crosserwised, with walles about them, of very good stude; which was so sirme, that at this day it is yet to be sene: the thickeness of the Pilasters is of each so four soote: between each two Pilasters is 12. soote of the old Romane sof, although the lago Therme is measured with Palmes: and this line hereux der is halse an olde soote.

The halfe ancient fot.

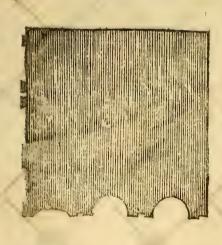


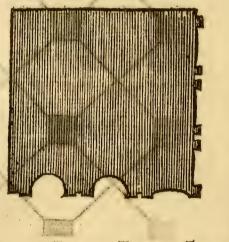
Prime there are many ancient Aryumphant Arches, among the which, this Building, by the greatest number, is accounted for a Argumphant Arch: yet by the knowledge that men have of it, it is thought to be a Porticus, or a Gallery, the buto a Burle or Archange for Parchants: it may be it was made by some one nation alone; as yet to this day in great Actions and Citics, enery nation halh a severally lace, although they are not by that meanes devided. This Porticus or Gallery Good in Nel ford Boario; and in ancient time was called, the Aemple of Lanus: which is measured with the ancient Palme. This Building hath source gates, as the ground hereunder doeth shew: be twen the one and the other Pilaster, there are 22. Palmes: round about this Porticus, there are 48. niches or hollow places but there are no more then 15. to set Images therein; all the rest are but for shewes, as being not dope inough cut into the wall: which places were beautised with small Pillars somewhat bearing out from the wall, as you se them, and were Corinthia worke, but now it is shopled of all such ornaments.





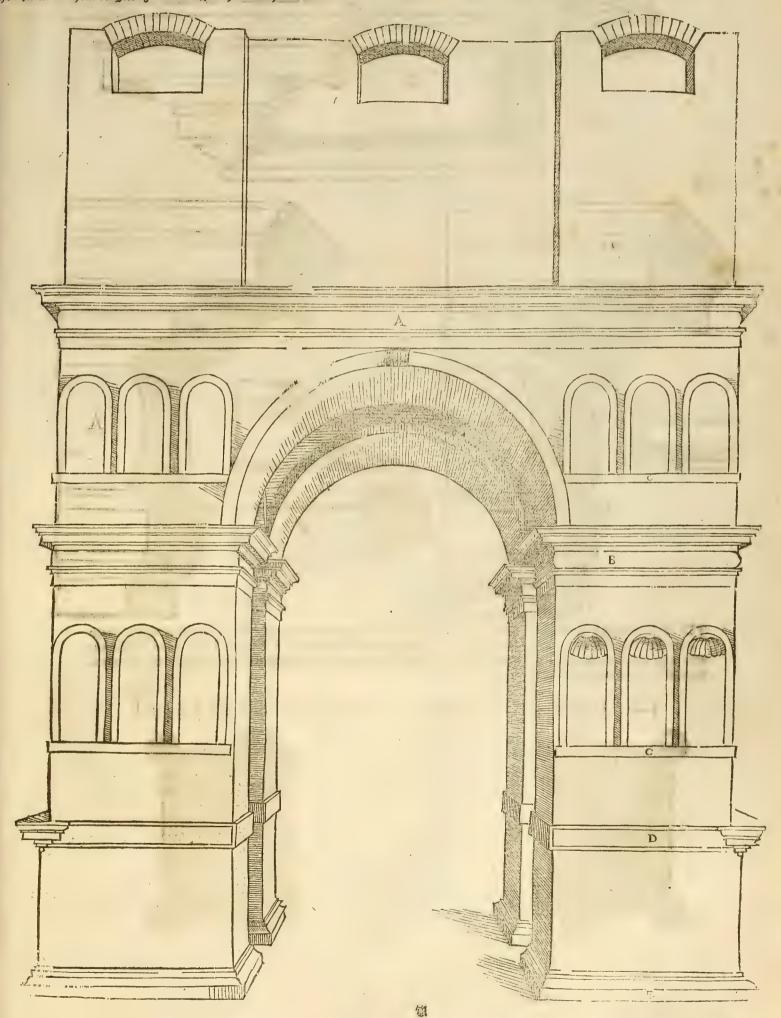
The ground of the figure following.





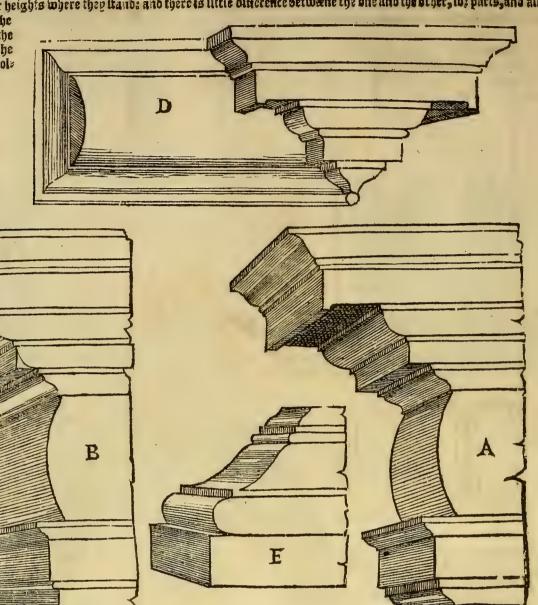
The fourth Chapter, Fol. 48

The height of the Arch is 44. Palmes: the height of the Bales beneath, marked E. is 1. Palme and anhalfe. The Facie D. within the corners, is turned into a Cornice, and is the like height. The judgement of the workman pleased me well in his piece, which is, that he made no Cornice in the innermost part, that might trouble the people that should be therein: the height of the other Cornices are not measured, but, the source of them diligently countersorted, follow hereaster.

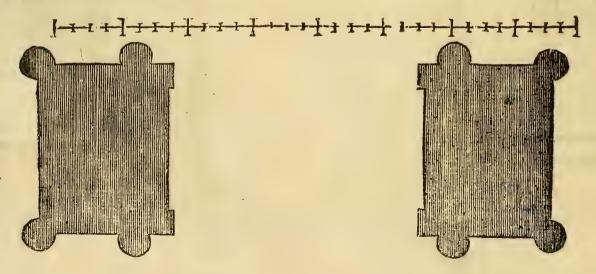


Define pieces of Comices hereunder fet downe, are the comments of the Porticus aforeland. The Bale E. and the Facie D. were measured, and in this forme, the great measure set downe; but the other were counterseited by fight, with their heights where they stands and there is little difference between the one and the other, so, parts, and also

in height. The Figure C. is the Facie buter the first Piche oxhols low place.



The Arch Tryumphant, next following, to called Titus Arch Tryumphant; whereof this Figure hereunder, is the ground, and is measured with the ancient set. The widenesse of the Arch is 18. set and 17. minutes. The thicks nesses of the Columne, is a set and 26. minutes and an halfe. The soote wherewith this is measured, is of 64. minutes, whereof the halfe is here set downe.



The fourth Chapter Fol. 49

Paue spoken of the widenesse and thicknesse, now I will set downe the height: And will, the height of the Bow or Arch is as much agapne as the dreadth. The Bale of the Proceedilis 2. so the Aminutes less in height. The Cornice of the Proceedil is 35. minutes high. The height of the Bales of the Columnes is about one swee: all these parts, and also the Capitall of the Columne, well proportioned in measure, kand in the beginning of the Composita Drece, in my sourch Boke. The sat of the Proceedial is source with and a halfe high. The height of the Columne without Bale and Capitall 17. sote and 13 minutes. The height of the Capitall is 1. sote and 27. minutes. The height of the Atchlicace is one sote and 19. minutes. The Frese is one sote and 17. minutes. The Cornice is 2. sote and 5. minutes high. The Balement of the Cpitaph is of the same with the Frese. The height of the Cpitaph is 9. sote and 12. minutes: the dreadth is 23. sote: which members shall hereafter be set downer, and figured more at large.

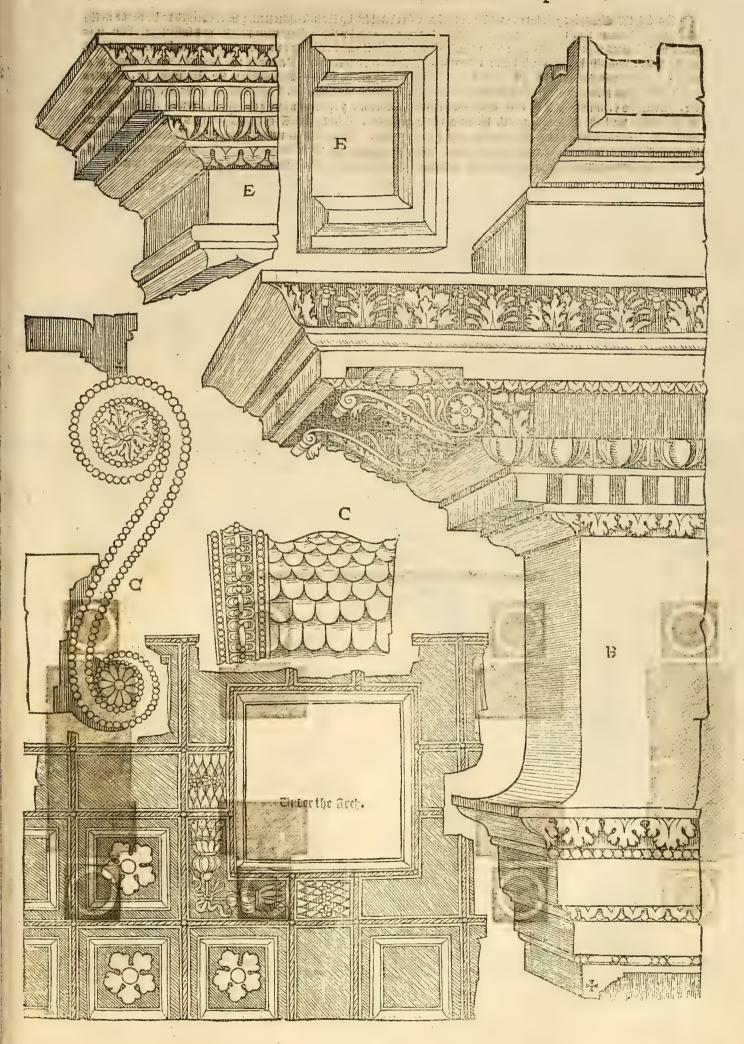


TE would be troublesome both to the legiter and to the Reader, if I Henld fet colone all the parts of these Mannenies. from member to member, as they are diligently measured; & that not onely with foote, but also with parts of minutes: but I have taken the paynes onely to fet the same bowne out of the great into the small forme, in such fort, that he that is Difcrete, map with his Compalle find the proportion thercof. It is true, that the Denaments of the molt part of the Troumphant Arches in Kome are much contrary to Virrunius writing; and this, 3 thinke, is the caule, that the layed Arches are, for the most part, made by the Koofes of other bailbings, (that is, of as many forts of paces as they could get:) and it may be, that the workemen in those dayes were selfe willed, and flood not much boon observation, because they were things feruing foz Tryumphs, and it may bec (as it hapneth oftentimes) made in balte. That part here on the for let downe, marked A. is the Bale of the Epitaph. B. is the highest Comice, Fraice, and Architrave: which Comice, in my opinion, is very licencious for diners reasons: The first, it is proportioned to high: from the neither Architrane, and abourit, there are too many members, and ofpecially Butiles and Dentiles, which fanding alike in one Comice, are visiked by Vitruvius, notwith anding it is very well wrought, and specially the Seima arbone: but had Juch a Comice to make (observing the right order) I would make the Seima lesse, and the Comice moze: I would leave the Autiles as they be, and I would not cut the Denticules, but the Cimated. The Architrave hereof pleaseth nice well inough. The two members marked C. thew the Facie and the Profil of the Wenfola, which is the cloting stone of the Arch. The members marked with E. are, in truth, rich for worke, but yet so rich, that the one barkeneth the other: but if the parts were so devided, that the one were graven, and the other player, would commend it more. And herein the workeman that made the Pantheon, was very judicious, for that poule no fuch confusion in his Denaments. The worke boder this Arch is very well made and devided; it is also a favre Compartment, and rich of worke. But it may be, that luch as are to much conscited to commend Antiquities of Rome, will (perapuenture) thinks that I am too bold to censure boon that which hath beene made by such skilfull ancient Ros manes; but in this respect 3 would have them take my speeches in good part, for that all my intent is, to thew it them that know it not, and fuch as will subject themselves to heare my opinion : for it is not sufficient to make ancient things as they frand, but it is another thing with Virrunius admice to chose out the best and fayzest, and to reject the troise. It is true, that the chiefest part of an Architectozis, that hee missaketh not himselfe in giving his censure, as many doe, who being obstinate in their opinions, make all things as they have seene them, and her by cover their bushissals neffe, without giving any other realons of things; and there are some that say, Vicrovius was but a man, and that they also are mensufficient, to make and inventuelo things, without regarding, that Vierunius confesset to have learned it from fo many thisfull men, partly in his owne time, as also by meanes of the writing of other work men.

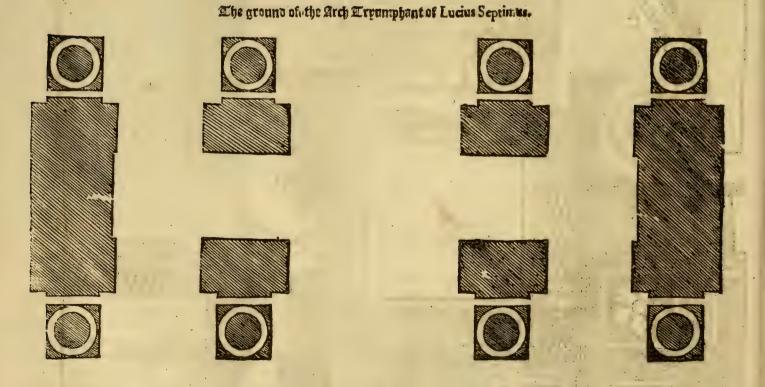


÷.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 50

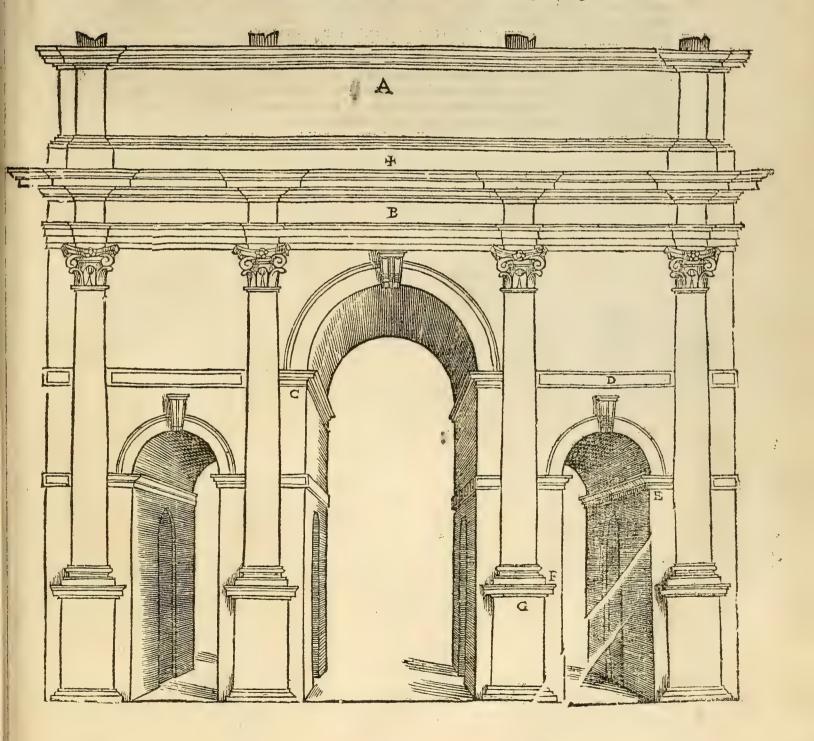


Be due at the Campivoglio there is a Tryamphant Arch, which by the inscription may be conseived to be made in the time of Lucius Seprimus Severus, and under his name, and by that which men marke and sufficiently sind, it is made with Koses of other buildings: it is also well adopned with god cutting and graving: it is richly wrought both on the sides, and also before and behind: it was measured by the old Romane Palme of 12. singers, energy singer of 4. minutes, which in totall maketh 48. minutes. The wideness of the Arch in the sides is 32. Palmes, 15. minutes and a haise. The wideness of the Arches on the sides is 9. Palmes, 30. minutes. The thickness of the Arch in the sides is 23. Palmes, 25. minutes. The little Gates within the Arches are 7. Palmes and 30. minutes wide. The dreamles is 8. Palmes and 7. minutes. The thickness of the Columnes is 2. Palmes, 30. minutes. The thickness of the sarth as sarre as about the Pedessall, (so so high the earth is there rayled with the ruines) but there was a part less uncoured to measure it, but they could not come to the Bale to take the measure thereof, because it was troublesome to remove the ruines.



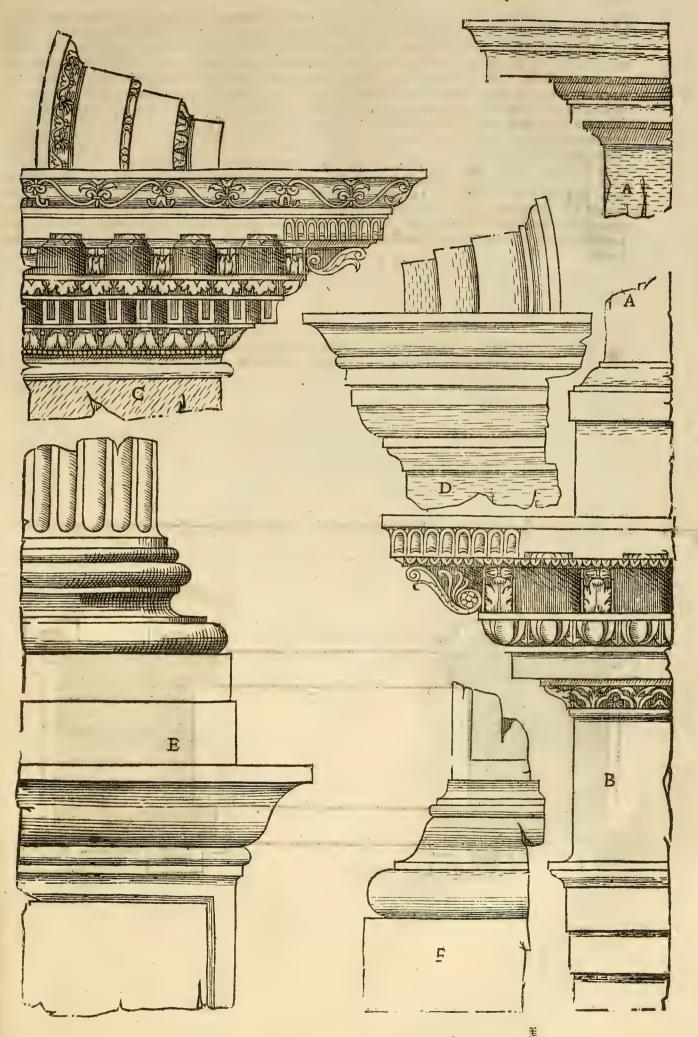
Cfore, Thine let voiwne all the measures of this Arch, touching the Ichnographie, that is, the thicknesse and becoth, now I will speake of the height. The height of the mivolemost Arch, is 45. Palmes and 3. minutes. The reight of the Arches besides, are 25. Palmes. The beight of the Pedestall, is about 10. Palmes. The thicknesse of the Columnes is 2. Palmes and 30. minutes in Diameter beneath: but about boder the Capitall, they are 2. Palmes and 15. minutes. The height of the Architeauc, is one Palmes and 30. minutes. The height of the Fræse, is one Palmes and 30. minutes. The height of the Polinithus, about the Comice, marked 4. is 29. minutes. The Wase about the Polinithus, is halsen Palme. The bypermost Comice, is one Palme and 2. minutes, and proportioned in a greater some.

IMP.CAES. LVCIO SEPTIMO.M. FIL. SEVERO. PIO, PERTINACI AVG.
PATRI PATRIAE PARTHICO ARABICO, ET PARTHICO ADIABENICO
PONTIF. MAX. TRIBVNIC. POTEST. XI. IMP.XI. COS. 3. PRO.
COS. ET. IMP.CAES. M. AVRELIO. L. FIL. ANTONINO. AVG.
PIO FELICITRIBVNIC. POTEST. VI. COS. PROCOS. P. P.
OPTIMIS, FORTISSIMISQ VE PRINCIPIBVS
OB REMPVBLICAM RESTITVTAM IMPERIQ. POPVLI ROMANI PRO.
PAGATYM INSIGNIBVS VIRTVTIBVS EORYM DOMI FORISQ. S. P. Q.R.



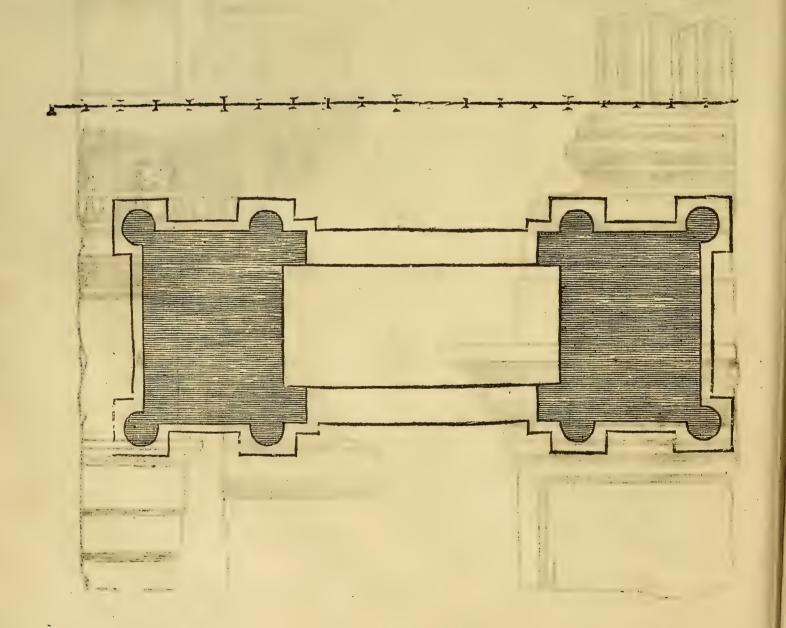
D the five before, I have let down all the heights and bredths of the Arch Triumphant, of Lucius Septimus Severus: now & will then the particular, and fenerall parts thereof, as I faid before. There is no measure of the Bale of the Be. bestals, but it may be thought, that they containe as much at the least, as the Counce of the Pedestals; which Counce is a Palme, and so much the Basamay hold: of which part, the forme frandeth heere in the middle, marked G. The Bale of the Columne Kandeth thereby marked F. the which Bale hath a flone or counter-Bale under the Plinthus: and this may peraduenture be done, because the Columnes could not reach to such a height as they should. The Capitall ishere not let belone, because you hall see the like in the beginning of the Deter, called Composta, in my fourth Boke, for this is Composita worke. The bright of the Architrane, is one Palme and 30. minutes: the Freseis 9. Palmes and 3. minutes: which frece, for that it is full of graving, the weth of almall height where it Candeth: and by Virruvius writing, it ought to Cand the fourth part higher then the Architrave; and this is lette. The height of the Core nice, is two Palmes and 14. minutes: which in truch is much to high, according to the proportions of the other members; and it the weth fo much the greater, because it hath moze protecture of height: and this makes me specially believe, that this Arch is made of divers pieces of other buildings, because of the Mainking of the members. The forme of the Architrane, Frale and Cornice, is marked with B. The height of the Bale, about the lato Cornice, is halfe a Palmethe height of the laft Comice, is a Palme and two minutes, and hath fuch a great projecture, and hanging over, as you fee in the Figure: and in such place, I blame not the Comice; but affirme that it was made with great judgement: for that the great projecture makes the Cornice thew greater, because it is lone from boder bewares, and for that there is like matter, it is not in vame for the building. This Cornicchere is marked with A. The Cornicc which beareth by the greatest Arch, is marked with C. whereof the Protecture is much to great: and formy part, in such a subject, 3 would rather gine indgement that it (hould be high, that with the bearing out, it (hould not hinder the fight of the Arch. That worke marked D. commeth right on the Facie, which goeth from Columne to Columne, about the two little Arches; and this accompanieth the Cornice C. The Cornice marked with E. is that which byholdeth the final Arch, the which Comice hath a Scima, which I thould not make in such a piece of worke: for that all Cornices, whose crownes have not their ina Proiecture, are becomely: for the fayrest part of a Comice, is, that the crowne bee of a good beight, and of a good protecture: wherefore I fet it downe for a common rule, that the crownes that are higher then their Scima, and those at least, that thall have as much Posiceture as beight, thall alwayes be commended by men of binderstanding. This I thought good to fet downe, to advertise them thereof that know it not.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 52



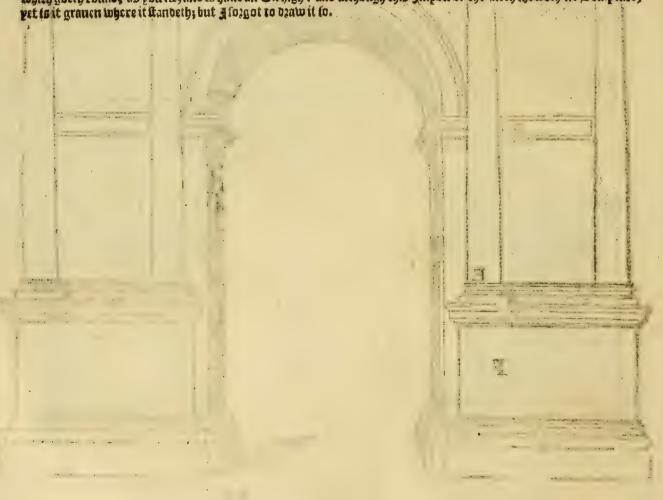
Is the kingdome of Naples, viz. betware Rome and Naples there are many Antiquities; for that the komanes had great pleature in those places: among the which, this Tryumphant Archistáne, being yet all whole and sapre to light: and therefore I thought it god to set it among the number of the rest of the Arches (which were made by the komanes.) This Arch is at Beneuence, on this side of Naples, and was measured with a moderne Ell. whereof the third part is hereunder set downe. The Figure here below, is the Ichnographic of the same Arch; and to the who khom this Arch was made, tonadlesse, because it may be boderslood by the writing that standeth thereon. The widewest of the Arch, is erght Elles: the thicknesse of the Columnes is an Ell: the Pilasse whose the Arch, is also as brown the inter-columne holds this Cles: the height of the Arch, is almost as much egaine as the brooth: the height of the Base of the Proessal, with the worder-Base, is one Ell, ten owness and size minutes: the flat of the Pedessall, is two Elles, ten owness and fire minutes: the height of his Counces, is nine owness: the height of the Columnes, without Bases of Capitals, is nine Elles and source owness. The thicknesse of the Columnes becomeath, is an Ellin Diameter, and above is lessened a surper: the height of the Capitall, is an Ell, sine ownes and an halse: the height of the Architrane, is 15. owness: the Fresse is seventeneowness high: the height of the Columnes, is one Ell, this owness and an halse: the Plinibus, which standesh as counter-Base above the Coenice, is 19. causes and a quarter high: the Wase standing open it, is 11. owness high: the height of the impost of the Arch, is halse an Elle

This Ell wherewith the Arch is measured, is devided into 12. ounces, and each ounce info 5. minutes, which comes from 12. ounces to 60. minutes: and this is the third part of the soyd Ell.



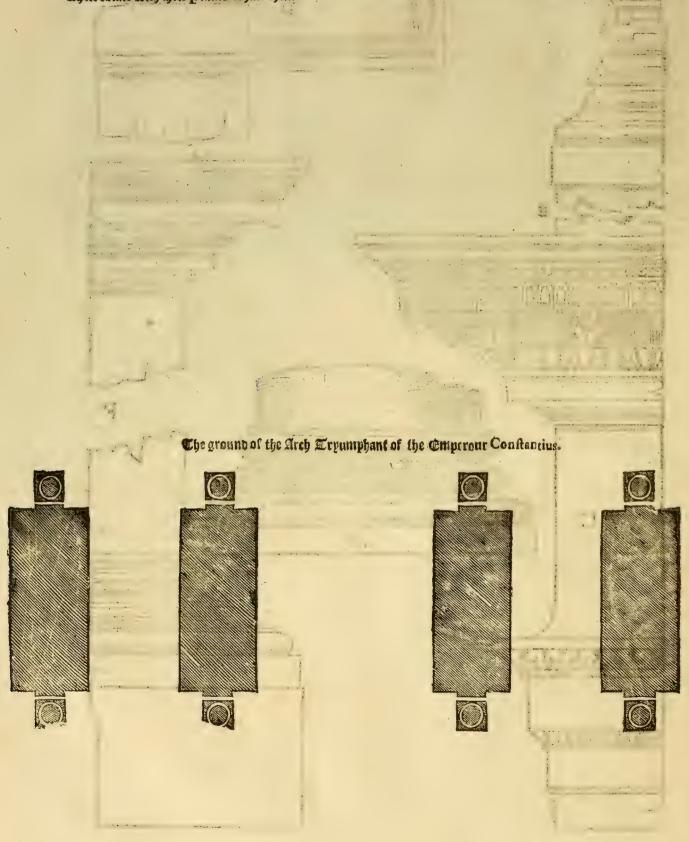


The Dinaments of the Arch of Beneuenten, which I have the tone in the leafe before, are here, according to the ineas fure let bowne, with the Dziginall. The Bale of the Pedetall, and the Cornice thereof, marked F. arc, in truth, two paces of god proportion, and fagre paces for Cornicements. The Bale of the Pedeltall, together with the Counterbale under it, isone Ell, 10. Dunces and 6. minutes high: the Comice of the fand focor Ballis 9. Dunces biah : the Bafe of the Columne is 7. Dunces high, and is of Cozinthia worke, very well proportioned according to the Columne, and Candeth hecre marked with E. I have not fet the Capitall here: for that men (as I fayd before) that find such a one in the beginning of the Composita, in ing fourth Boke, because this Archis Composita worke. The Arch, Freie, and Comice, which fland about this Columne, are here marked with C. which peces are also well propostioned on the remnant of this building: and although that the Counice is somewhat higher then Vicrunius would have it, nevertheleffe it is well proportioned of members, and the fame flat is not in it that is found in other Cornices. Inbich bene the Mutiles and the Dentiles Canding together: but this workeman, being circumspect therein, would not rut the tath in the Dentiles, although he hath fet the toame thereof in the Comice, to Anime fuch a flaunder. The fame confideration the workeman that made the Pantheon had, in the first Cornice about the Chappels, round about the Temple trithin: and therefore I counfell a workeman, to anove fuch a scandall, and not to repose himselfe byen the Doing of licencious and wilfull workemen, and ercufe themselves, laying, Ancient workemen made it, and therefore map make it as well as they. And although some will argue and say, Why, so many workemen, and in so many plas ces of the world, (not onely in Icaly) but also in diners other places, have made Cornices, with Butiles, and ingranen Dentiles , and that luch a custome is now turned into a Law, get I would not observe the same in my workes nor councell others thereunto. The Counterbale, boder the Cuttaph, aboue the Counte, marked B. is 19. Dunces and a halfe high : the height of the Bafe thereupon is I I. Bances: the height of the Epitaph is 4. Elles 4. Dunces: the height of the Cornice is one Ell and 3. Dunces. Imuch commend the Bale of this Epitaph. Icommend the Bale of this Es pitaph, with to little protecture, for the fæing by buder it, but the Cornice whereof I will fpeake, is much too high, ace tolding to the proportion of the Epitaph: but were it of leffe height, and the Crowne more, and of more projecture, indge, it would fand better, and 3 fould commend it more: allo, if there were not fo much carving or graving in it: for the members ought to to be beuided, that the one were playne, and the other graven. But there are many worker men, and most at this day, that, to make men take pleasure in their bad workemanship, make so many cultings in it. that thereby they confound workemanship, and take away the beauty of forme from it: and if euer, in times past, that fast and single things, breut, were by stillull workemen commended, at this time they are not so. This Figure, marked D. is the Impolt of the Arch, and is well knowne for such a member; the same Countre changeth it selfe in a Facie, which goeth round, as you fa, and is halfe an Ell high: and although this Jupolt of the Arch Cheweth no Sculpture, vet is it graven where it fandeth; but Afoggot to draw it fo.



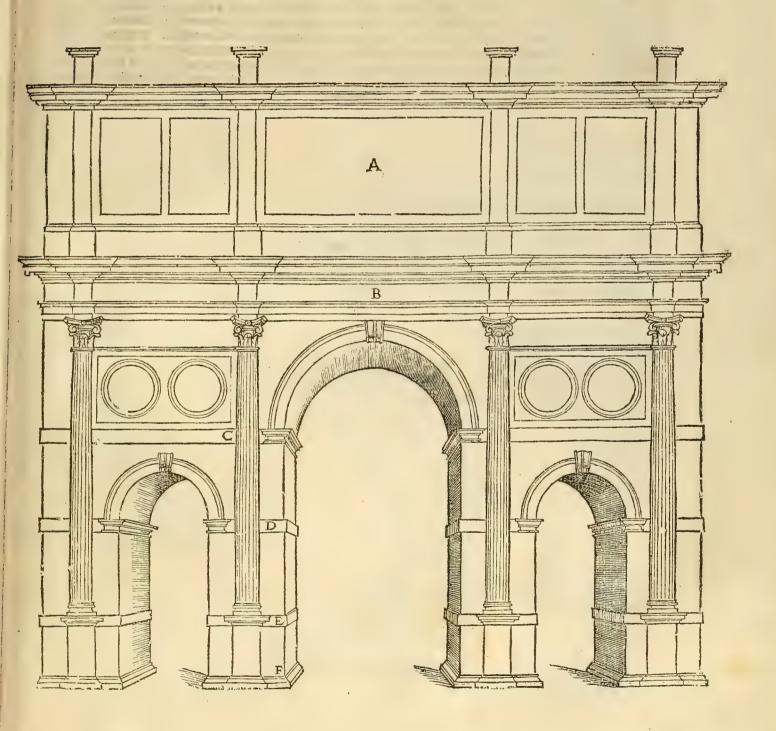
The fourth Chapter. Fol. 34 The third Booke. Ď E

By the Amphisheater of Rome, which by the people is called Colisced, there sandeth a very faire Tryumphant Arch, which is wonderfull rich of Denaments, Images, and divers Histories, it was dedicated to Constantine, and is blually called. Larco de Trafill. This fayre Arch, although it is now buried a great part within the earth, by meanes of the ruines, and rising of the earth, is nevertheless of great height, and the Gates and passages through it, are yet higher then two source squares. This Arch (as is before sayd) is passing sayre to the eye, and wonderfull rich of Dinaments s graving. It is very true, that the Cornices are not of the best maner, although they be erecteding richly gravinen, whereof I will speake hereafter. This ground hereunder, the best maner, although they be erecteding richly gravinen, whereof I will speake hereafter. This ground hereunder, the worth the Achd is 22. Palmes and 24. minutes: the wiveness of the lesser Arches on the store is 11. Palmes, 11. minutes and a halfe. The thicknesse of the Pilasters are 9. Palmes and 4. minutes: the thicknesse of the Arches in the store, is 21. Palmes and a halfe: thus the place with in the Arch is almost source square: the thicknesse of the Pedestals is 3. Palmes and 29. minutes: the thicknesse of the Columnes is 2. Palmes and 26. minutes; which Columnes are arckness or hollowed, by some called chancle, and are whole round with their Pillars behind them.

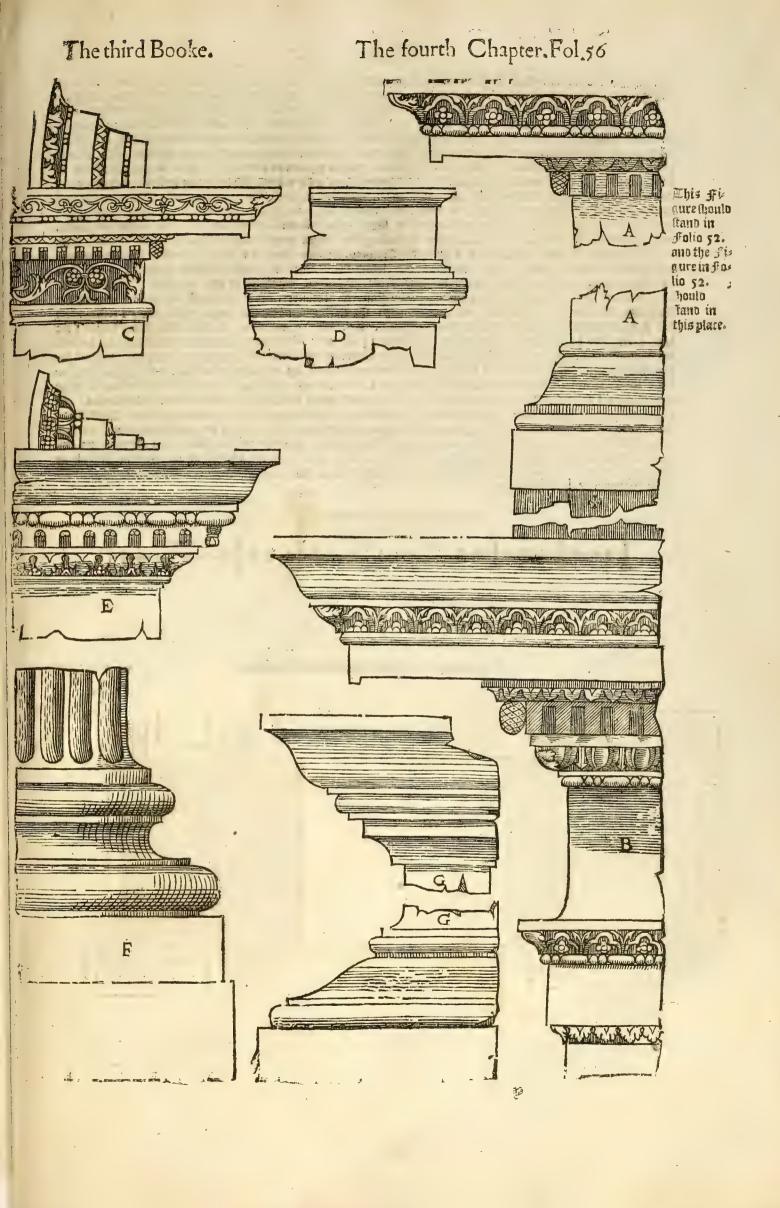


The widenesse and thicknesse of this Arch, is sufficiently set downs; now I will speake of the height thereof: and suff.
the Bale of the Pedeskall, with the Plinte, is one Palme and 30. minutes high. The height of the Gat, is 7. Palms and 5. minutes: the height of the Counter-Bale, worthe Bale, 02 the Plinthus of the Columne, is sistis and two minutes: the height of the Bale is 60. minutes: the height of the Columnes, without Bale 02 Capitall, is 26. Palmes and 25. minutes: the height of the Capitall, is 2. Palmes and 35. minutes, and is Composite. The height of the Architrave, is one Palme and 11. minutes but the Frase is much lesse, and yet graven; which, as I have save, at other times is contrary to the doctrine of Viccouius. The height of the Counter bale, where the second sozy, is 3. Palms and 9. minutes: from thence to the highest part of the Counters, is 21. Palmes: but the height of that Counce is 33. minutes. The Pedeskals about the same Counces were not measured, and thereon Good Images, and about the Counces marked B. were Images placed against the 4. Pillasters, which represented the prisoners with whom hee went in tryumph. The letters which sand here, are about the Arch, in the place maked A. besides many others, which sand in divers places of the Arch.

IMP. CAES. FL. CONSTANTINO MAX. P. F. AVGVSTO. S. P. Q. R. QVOD INSTINCTV DIVINITATIS MENTIS MAGNITVDINE, CVM EXERCITY SVO TAM DE TYRANNO, QVAM DE OMNI ELVS FACTIONE, VNO TEMPORE IVSTIS REMPUBLICAM VLTVS EST ARMIS, ARCVM TRIVMPHIS INSIGNEM DICAVIT.

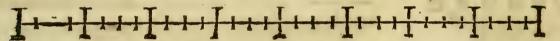


Plane spoken of the proportion of the measures of the Argumphant Arch of the Emperour Conference : now I will speake of the severall parts and Cornicements, and set their measures downer. And first, the Base marked F. is of the Dereffall of the laid Arch: the height whereof, is a Palme and 20. minutes. The height of the Plinthus under the Bale is 28. minutes: the rest of the parts are measurably denided, and proportioned accordingly. The height of the Comices of the Pedelfall, which fland marked under the Bale E. is 42. minutes, and is also proportioned according to the principall. The counter-Bale, under the Bale of the Columnes (which I thinke were placed there accidentally) to heighten the Columnes, is 32. minutes high; the whole height of this Bale of the Columnes, is 53. minutes: touching the height of the Columnes, A spake before, and also of the Capitals, of which Capitals, the forme franceth not here, for that the like both frand in my fourth Boke, of the Dider of Composita: the height of the Architraues, Frascs and Coznices, is also spoken of before: and this Cornice is very semely, for that there is no licencious nesse in it, which is in some other Bases of this Arch; as it is in the impost of the middlemost Arch, marked C. the which impost is greater and of more members and parts, then the great and principall Cornice, and is altogether confused in members, and that which is most intolcrable, the Dentiles and Dutiles are one about the other: and although the Dentiles were not there, pet there needed not such a Comice to beare up an Arch. Perein the workeman of the Theater of Marcellus was more circumfoct then this: for the impolls of the Arches of the faid Theater, are the fapzelt and belt of thew for impolls that ener A faw, and fuch, as from the which a man may learne to make the like. The impost of the lester Arches marked D. is one Dalme and 2 3 . minutes and an halfe high: the which impost would stand much better, if the two stats betweene the Altragall aboue, and the Echine buder, were turned into playunesse only; which then would ferue for an Abacus, or also for a crowne, haning the one Proiecture. The Bale boder the lecond flory marked A. is 16. minutes high: the height of the oppermost Comice, is 43 minutes, which height should bee to little in so great a distance, if it were not that the great Projecture or Gallery, or overhanging holpe it not; because they are feeing bywards, from buderneath, which the well it to be much areater then it is: therefore I much commend this Cornice in this refrect. And truely, all the Comices, whereof the crowne bath more projecture then beight, answere alwayes better, and may be made thinner of stone, so that the members of the building endure less wayght: neverthelesse, you must not make them of to many licencious projectures: but you thall read hereof in Vicrovius, where he entreateth of the Deder of crownes, after the maner of Jonica and Dozica: foz he doeth there teach you clearely inough.

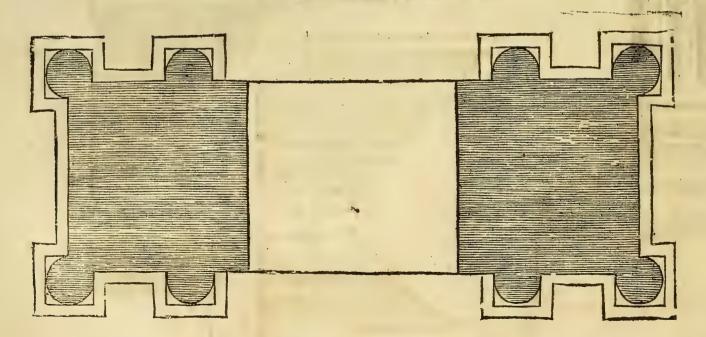


Athout Ancoven byon the hauen, there is an head which reacheth it felfe a good way into the Sea, which was not made without great cost and charges: it was to defend the thips from the Levant lea. Upon the end of the triable thereof, flandeth an Arch fryumphane, all of Warble and Cozinthia worke; and there is nothing in it but the Capitals, which are done in very good worker and in trueth, this building is so handlome, and of so good correspondencie, the members also agraing with the whole boop, that a man, although he buder liand no Art, would neverthelesse take pleasure in the beautie thereof. And those that binderstand somewhat, seing such congruitie, are not orely well contented, but also thanke the good workeman, that bath given be somewhat in these dayes to learne out of this fange and well made builting: in the ognaments whereof, there is the order of Corinily as well observed and kept, as in any other Arch that is to be found, and by reason of the Arength thereof, it is all whole; onely it is bufurniffed of many ognaments. This faire Arthas it is concepued, Neiva Traianus cauled to be builded: whereupon, in the highelf part of the Arch (as it is lago) his Image was erected, litting on hopfe backe, faming to threaten the clouds and people, ouer whom he loked and gouerned, left they should rebell againe: which Image was of Copper excellently well made. There were allo betweene the Columnes, aboue the Comices, certaine Images of Copper, as the letters in those places written, doe thew: there are also tokens of holes, which the wes that there were Kings of Copper, or other luch like things hanging in them, which might bee taken from the Cothes, Clandals, or other enemics. This building was measured by the ancient sote, the ground whereot standeth hereunder. The widenesse of the Arch is tenswie: the thickenesse inwards is nine sote and two minutes: the thicknesse of the Columnes is two fote, II. minutes: the Intercolumnes, 102 spaces betweine the Columnes, is 7. fate, 5. minutes: the Columnes fland without the wall, 1. fate and 11. minutes: the height of the Arch is 25. fat and 1. third part: and this height, although it holdeth more then two foure fquares, is not therefore miffhapen, when you behold the whole malle together: the height of the Pereffals with all their Coinices, is 5. fote: the breadth is thick fote, 15. minutes and a halfe: the height of the Bas les of the Columnes, together with the Undervales, are 1. fate and 36. minutes: the height of the Columnes to the Capitals, is 19. fote, 22. minutes and a halfe: the thicknelle buder the Capitall, is one fote and 56. minutes: the height of the Capitall is 2. fote, 24. minutes, with the Abacus; and the Abacus is 10. minutes: the layd Capitall you Mallfind in my fourth Booke, in the beginning of the order of Counthia: the height of the Architrage is one fate and 12. minutes : the height of the Frale is one foote and 18. minutes: the height of the Comice is 1. foote and 22. mi nutes : the height of the Plinthus aboue the Cornice, is one foote, &. minutes and a halfe : the height of the Bale aboue the land Plinibus, is 30, minutes: the height of the Epitaph buter the Comice, is 6. fcote and 22. minutes; but the Cornice abone it was not measured.

The halfe of the old Romin foote.

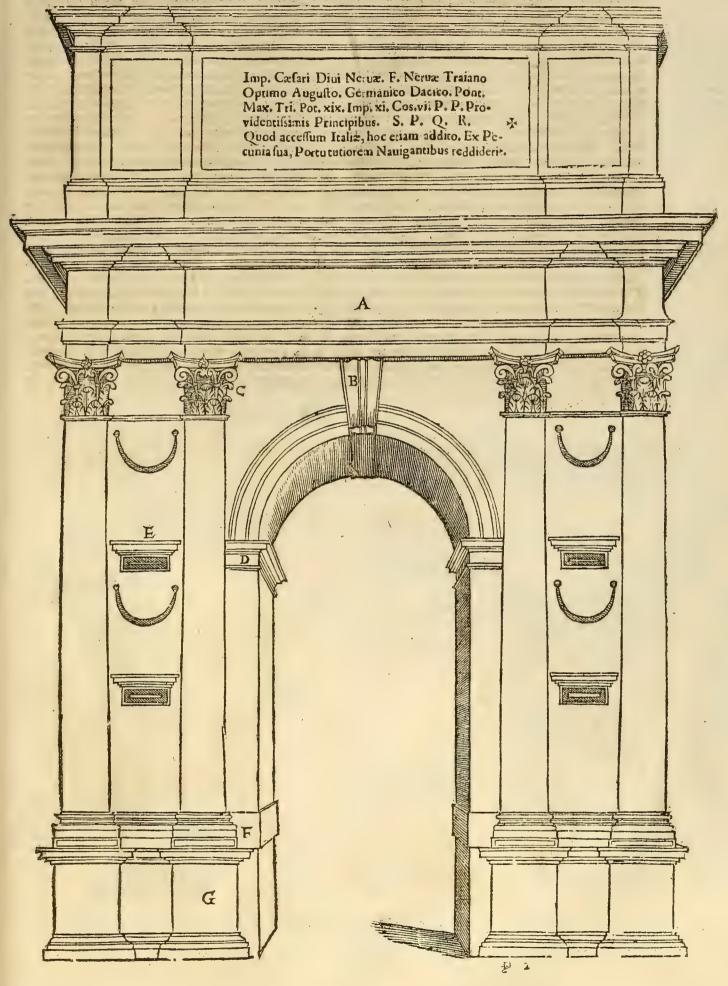


The ground of the Arch fryumphant of Ancouen.



The fourth Chapter, Fol. 57

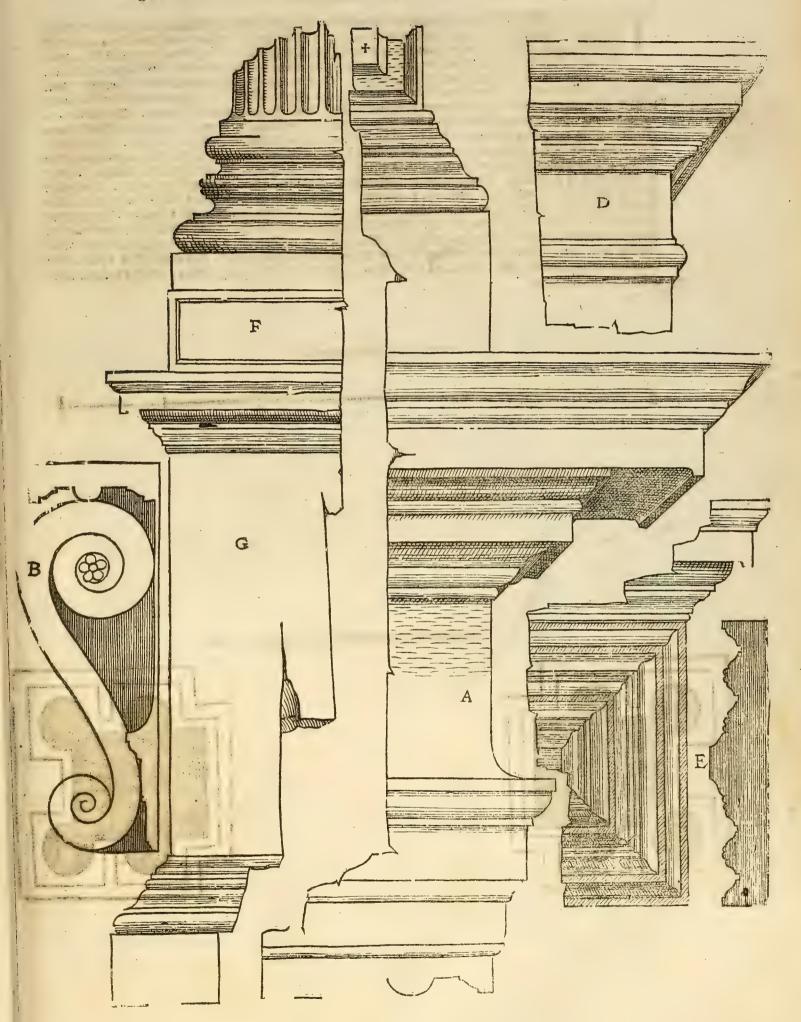
PLOTINAE AVG. CONIVGI AVG. DIVAE MARTIANAE AVG.SORORI



12 mp opinion, I have favo enough of the measure of the Arch of Ancona, get that the parts of the Cornices may be the better understood, I will shew them here greater: and first, I will set downe the lowest parts, as they stand about the ground of the works. The height of the Bedestall, marked G. is sayd to be of 5. fot, with all the Cornices there of: but the height of the Plinthus of the Bale, is I 8. minutes: the Bale aboue the Plinthus, is 19. minutes, and a third part high: the Cornice of the Pedestall, is 20. minutes, and a third part high; so much doeth the Cone also hold, standing thereby, marked f. which, by my advice, is placed there, to betylten the Columnes, and sheweth not badly, but more, because it is set forth with a lift round about it; whereby the Bale differeth from the Plinthus : and so, in mp opinion, Candeth well. The Bale, which is Cozinthia, together with the Cincte of the Columne, is 43 minutes high: and the Proiecture, is 16. minutes and an halfe in bredth: the thicknelle of the Pedefall, is 3. foote, 15. minutes and an halfer the thicknesse of the Columne, is 2. foote, 11. minutes : and therestand 13. hollowings, or chanels, without the Pilafter: the widenesse of one chanell, 18 7. minutes and a halfe: and the Lift which parteth them, is 2. minutes and a halfe. The height of the Capitals are the thicknesse of the Columnes below, without the Abacus: which Capitall hath a very fayze forme, whereby we may be perswaved and believe, that Victurius doctrine is falle, and that Victuria us binder flood the beight of the Capitall without Abacus: (and for this cause) for that the most part of the Capitals that Thave fene and measured, are most of such height, and higher, and specially the Capitals that stand in the Rotund: whereof, in the beginning of this Boke you may fe one. The height of the Architraue above the Columne, is one fote and twelve minutes. The height of the Frale, is one foote and eyghtiene minutes. The height of the Comice, is one fote and two and twenty minutes. These thick are marked together with an A. The Plinthus about the Cop nice is one fote, fire minutes and an halfe high: The Bale boon it, is thirtie minutes: the space wherein the letters are written, is five fote and two and twenty minutes, and is marked with 🐒. Ahe Impost of the Arch is marked D. the height whereof is I. fote and fiftene minutes: but the oppermoft Comice, as I have layd, was not measured. The height of the Benfole in place of the cloting flone, marked B. about the Arch, is these foot and 20. minutes: and hath a foote and 14, minutes without the wall, in the opportmost part; and in the parts below, it comes out a foot. The foure tables with the Cornices boon them, which frand betweene the Columnes, are thought to be placed there, for hole ding by of halfe Images: the forme whereof, Candeth here marked E. and is there also by the Profill on the fide, where by a man may lie how they are wrought: for they are full of works, even to the Center. The height of the Cornices, Nanding above them, is 32 minutes: and although I have not the wed all the Profestures 4 heights from part to part, yet I have with areat diligence reduced them from the great, into a small forme, and were (as I sayo before of the rest measured with the old Romane foot.



The fourth Chapter. Fol. 38

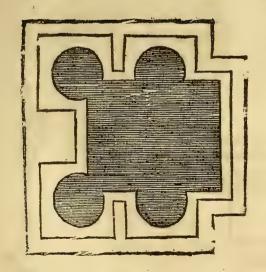


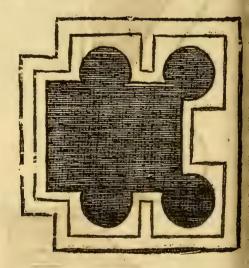
of I spake befoze, there are other Buildings, whereof now y will speake. There is an Arch Aryumphant, of Tozinthia worke, rich of ornaments, so Figures, works, and strange devices; so that from the Pedestal bywards, there is no worke nor space left diagramen, not onely before, but also on the sweet, and within, and wider in the Arch, wherein are many and divers works, so that st would require long time to declare them particularly: therefore I will show such parts thereof as are necessary so a workeman, so invention and Arte. The ground of the Arch following stands here no ensured with a Poderne or commens soot, while rest the heast is here set downe. The Arch is 12. soot and a halfe wide: the height sabout 21. soot. The Pilasters in the sides inward are 4. soot thicke. The Pilasters of a Columne is one soot, 2 duries broad. The Arch the Pilasters in the sides inward are 4. soot thicke. The Pilaster of the Arch is one soot, 2 duries broad. The height of the Pilasters in the sides of the Podestall, is one soot. The Pilaster of the Tolumnes is 4. duries. The Pilaster of the Columnes is 4. duries. The height of the Base with the Pilasters I do do not quarter. The height of the Columnes is 4. duries. The height of the Base with the Pilasters I do do not and one quarter. The height of the Columnes is 4. duries one soote and 3. quarters. The height of the Columnes is 4. duries. The height of the Base with the Pilaster is one soote and 2. duries. The height of the Columnes is 4. duries one soote and 10 duries. The height of the Frace is one soote and 2. duries. The height of the Base of the Bas

The halfe common foote.



This is the ground of the Arch triumphant of Pola.





The fourth Chapter, Fol. 59

The measure of this present Arch is set downe before in this side following, the particular parts shall bee showed.

These great letters hereunder, stand in the Fresc, marked Y.

SALVIA. POSTVMA. SERGI, DE SVA PECVNIA.

These bnoor marked, stand in these pecdestals, marked X. H. A.

L. SERGIVS. C. F.

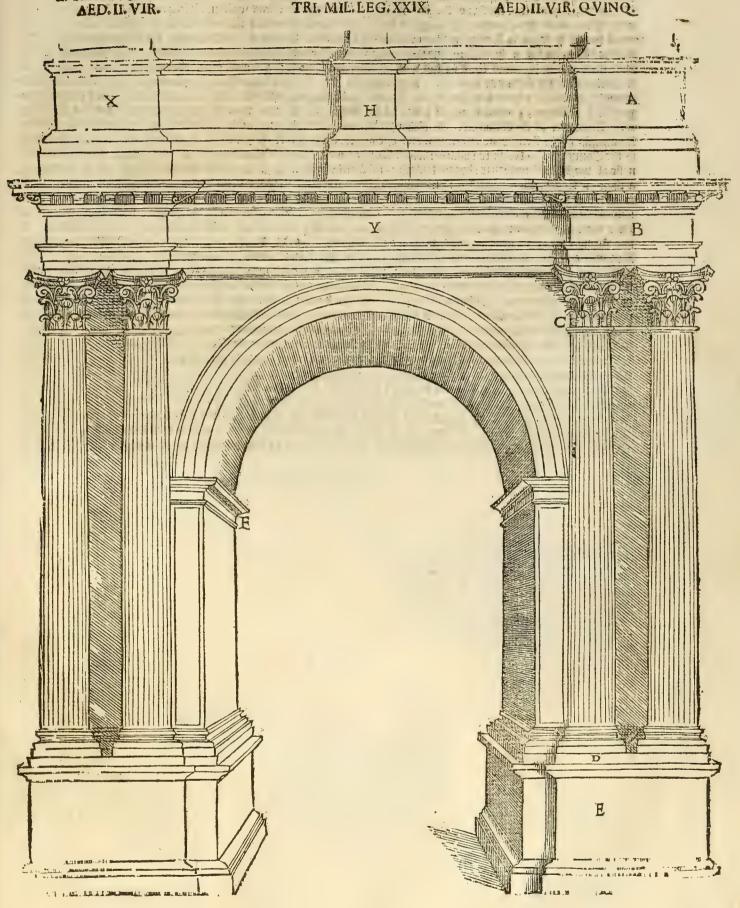
L. SERGIVS. L. F. LEPIDVS. AED.

C. SERGIVS. C. F.

AED. II. VIR.

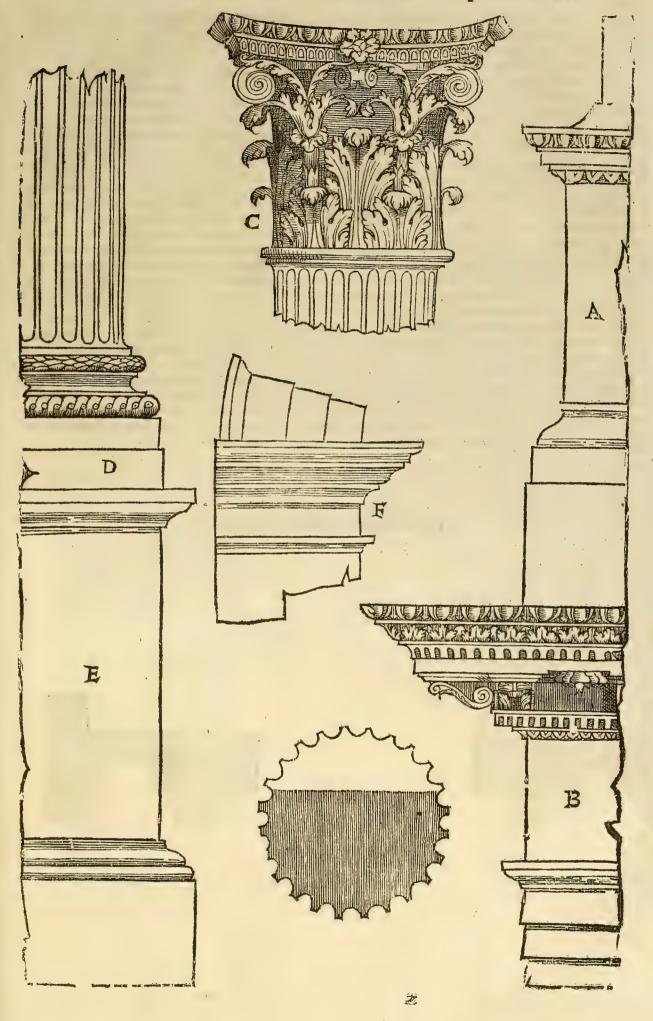
TRI. MIL. LEG. XXIX.

AED. II. VIR. QVINQ.



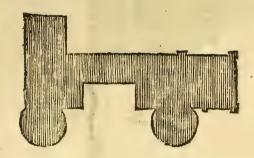
the five before, I have spoken of the buiverfall measure of the Arch triumphant of Pola, and have also there of the figure thereof, and partly let bolune some of the richest and fairest omaments of thesame: Pow I will let bolune the particular measures of the parts thereof; and first, I will begin with gnether parts, as that was placed first about the ground. The heighter the Plinthus boder the Bale of the Petettall, is one foot; although that boder it there lieth another of much moze height, but it is under the earth: the height of the Cimatie turned about about it, with the Affragalus, is 4. ounces: the flat of the Poedestall, is 3. for high: the Cimatic above, it is 4. ounces, 4 so much also is the Under-Bale, aboue the Cimatie : the height of the Bale of the Columnes, is 10. ounces, and is very well cut and graven: and although the forme is Porica, pet the delicate works thereof thew that it is Corinthia: the Columnes are fluxed or chancled from the top to the bettem; and there are allo many hollowings without the Pulatter, as the Figure hereafter docth them. The height of the Capitall with the Abacus, is two fote and one ounce: the which Capitall is higher then the thicknosse of the Columne beneath. Pewerthelesse, it is very well, and sheweth pleasing to sight; it is also richly wrought, as it is here shewed in the Figure thereof: and alwayes, as the Capitall of Corinthia is in such proportion as gainst the Columne, I would thinke it better to the viewof workemen; then if with the Abacus it had but the height of the Drameter of the Columne: and although Virruuins writeth thus (as is before land) get may his text be fallified. The height of the Archirage, is one foot and one ounce: the height of the Frale, is one foote and two ounces: the height of the Cornice, is a fote and ten ounces: which Cornice is very licencious, although it be rich of worke, because such rich. neffe of worke confoundeth it : but that ichich is molt vniemely in it, is the Ochine with the Duale about the Soma, a thing, in trueth, much budghtly : and that, which is more worthy laughter, is, that the fair Ochine in the opper part, is cut through, without being coursed with any lift, that it might not bee consumed with the water. But there bath ab waves bene licencious workemen, as there are pet in our dayes, who, to please the people, make much graving in their workes, without respecting the qualities of the orders, and will also in Dorica worke, which should bee fake and frong, ble much graning and cutting, as in Cozinthia trozke, which, by their folly, afketh many ognaments. But wife and indicious workemen will alwayes observe Decorum: and if they make worke after Dortea maner they will follow god Antiquities: which, for the most part, agric with Vierunius precepts. If they make any worke after the Cozinthia maner, then they cover them with Danaments, as that kind of woake requireth. This I have fet downe, to admertife those thereof that know it not; for they that know it, nice not my admice. Dow to come to the purpole agagne: About this Comice there is a Balement, which maketh out the Peoclials, the Plinthus buder the Bale ment, which is there let against the projecture of the Cornices, (for other wife, in laking up, it would barken the Bale) is a fort high; above it flandeth the Bale, whereof the height is 10. ounces: the flat of the Balement, is 2. fort & 1. ounce high: the Cornice aboue it, is halfe a facte high; which Cornice is very famely, and the parts thereof devide themselves bery well from each other, for that betweene the two carned members there Canbeth one playne about the Cornice is that member or part, called Corona lifes, as Ibnderstand Vierunius, whereof the height is 5 ounces. About these there are some flones that thew to no end at all, but it may be thoughf, that some things flode boon them: the height of these kones is 10. ounces: the height of the Impoll of this Arch is 10. ounces; the which Impoll is very licenciously made: and although those gomembers one about the other, are divers, yet they are like each other in projecture: and therefore in the worke they cland to no god effect: the other parts you hall know by the Caracters in the great Arch.

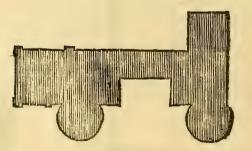
The fourth Chapter. Fol. 60



P P Verona, there are many from manifest arches, among the rest, there is one Sate, called Castel Verchio: the which. tructy, is of god proportion: this Archas men conceaue, was a rought both before and behind, and also en the fires: it had tho goings in , as you may percease by the ground which is get fane, although I Metwo but one lide entity. This building was incalured by the lame feet, where with the Arch of Pola afore layd was measured. The widenes of this Archis tenfote and an halle: the thicknesse of the Columnes, is two for and two cunces; the intercolumnes are 4. fort and 3. ounces: the Pilaffer or Pillar of the Arch, is 2. foote and 2. ounces broad. The thickenells of the Arch in the fides inward, is 4. foot and an halie: the widenesse of the Tabernacie betweene the Columnis, is two foot and ten ounces; and thus mach for the widen offe and thickeneffe; but comming to the beight, the Usafe of the Bedefa'l of the Co. lumnes, together with the plin hus, is one for to and the ounces high: the flat of the Pobeffall, is foure for, the ounces and anhalfe: the Counice is ten owness and anhalfe: the height of the Bale of the Columnes, is one foot: the height of the body of the Columne, without Bale or Cap tallis 17. fote and the counces: the height of the Capitall, is two for, foure ounces and anhalfe. The height of the Architrauc, is one footend an halfe the height of the Frase is one wete, 7. ounces and an halfer the height of the Cornice, is one fat and ten ounces and a though that in this Figure there is the Fromulpics, pet you lie it not in the Arch; for from the first Counice op wards there is nothing at all : neverthelesse, als though the wall is this pare confumed pet you may la there fome figure, where by a man may a necate that the Frence fpice he th biene there. The oppermost Counice is not there, and therefore glet no me a ures, according to all Intigate ties: but I have made one, with such measure and some sins my selfe would have made it, howing so a common rule, that the opportmost things sand the sourch part lesse, then the nothermost this Council berefore whall be the sourch part lesse then that which Kandeth buder it, and is thus democd, that the whole height thould be fet in four parts and ar halfe: the halfe part thall be for the Adragal with the lift, and the fourth part thalbe for the Sound. If he Provider mult be like the height, & fo Mall this oppermolf Comice be made in maner afozefaid. Betwane the Column stand Wavernacks, Subcrein there were Images, wher of the widenesse is two for and ten ounces: the beight is ten in wie, and the deuth thereof in the wal, is one fore and ton ounces: the height of their Balemont, is 4. but, with the Pale and Seina the little Willars on cother floe, are halfe a fort titcke: the Architrave is 7. ounces and an halfe: the Frale is 6. oauces high: the height of the Cornice without the Scima is 4. orners: the height of the Tunganum of the Frontilpice, is 8. ounces. Saboue thefe Tabernacles are finall tablets with other Counices: the which tablets are two foot broad, and told one foot in beight: the height of each Counice is I 1. onnes: the height of the openmelle of the Arch, although it be ion einhat dice ged below, is yet twife higher then broad: for the widenelle thereof, is 10. fote and a cu. recreand the height is 25. fote and an halfe. The Capitall buter the Arch, is as high as broad: the worke of this Arch is Composita, and braucly fet out with Images of Narble and Copper, as you may percease in the boyd places.

This is the ground of the Arch following.





The fourth Chapter. Fol. 61

Dis forme of the Arch Tryumphant of Caffel Vecchio in Verona, is made as it is here fet downer and although from the Fraces upwards, there are no fignes of ognaments; neverthelette, it oto fland fo. And for that the parts hereofare to small that you can hardly binderitand them, in the next five they thall bee fet downe in a greater and playner forme. This Arch tryumphant (by that which is found written within the inner parts thereof) by some is layd, that Virruuius cauled it to be made: but 3 belane it not, and that for two realons or caules. First, that 3 fe not in the Infeription, that it faith, Vicruuius Polio: but it is pellible that it was another Vicruuius that caufed it to be made. The second reason is this, that Vicruoius Polio, in his watting of Architecture, doeth otterly condemne and reject Bus tiles and Dentiles, Canding together in one Cornice, and fuch a Cornice is found in this Arch. And therefore I conclude, that Vicruuius, the great and learned Architector, made it not: but bee it as it will, this Arch hath a good forme and pro-

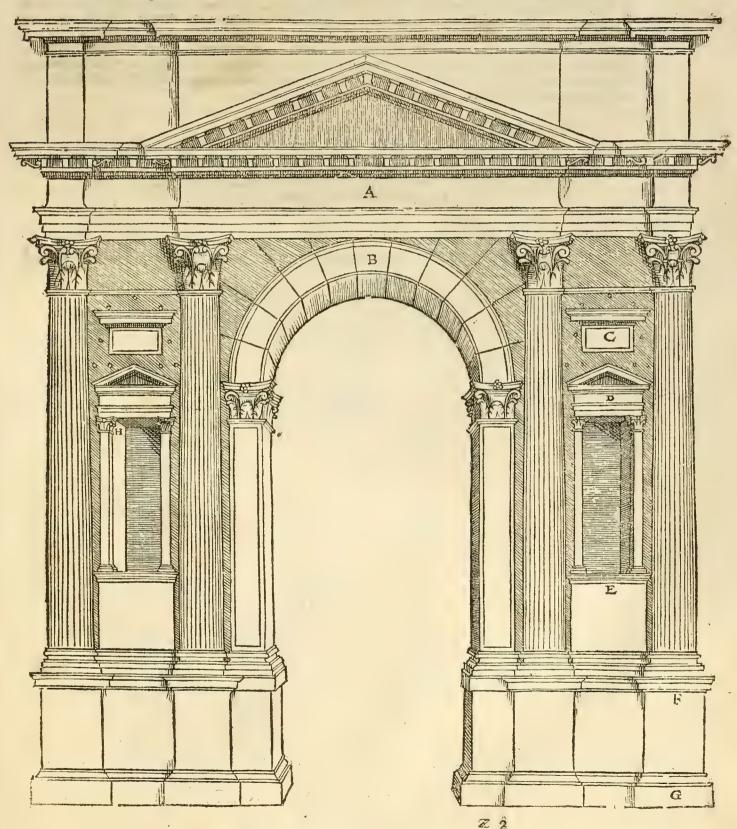
These letters are bider the Tabers nacle in the Pedestall. C. GAVIO. C.F.

STRABONI.

These letters are cut in the inward fide of the Arch.

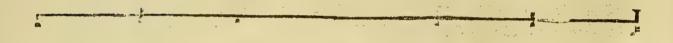
L. VITRVVIVS, LL. CERDO ARCHITECTVS.

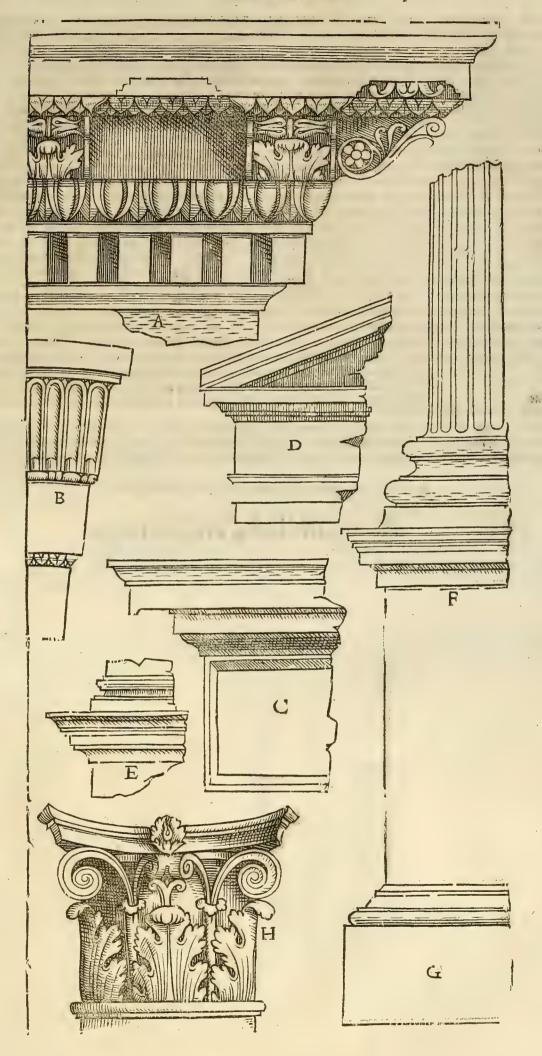
Thefe letters are allo in the Dece ttali of the Tabernacle. M. GAVIO.C.F. MACRO.



Craule I have not fully written the particular measures of the members of the aforesayd Arch, neither have ? thewed it in fuch forme that a man may conceau the particular measures: therefore you may fee them here fet out in greater forme, and in such fort as they are: and first, the height of the Plinthus, under the Bale of the Pedelfall, marked G. is a forte and their ounces. The height of the Bale aboue byon it, is 6. ounces. The flat of the Per vestall, marked F. is 4. foot, 3. ounces and an haife high. The Comice bpon it, is 10. ounces and an halfe high. The Bale of the Columne, is one foote high. The Plinthus of this Bale turneth into a Corona lifes; which me thinkes, is berp pleafant: for that I have fen fome Brake Pedelfals fo. The Columne is Arycked, chanelled or hollowed, from the top to the bottom. The height of the Capitall of this Columne, is one fot, 4. ounces and an halfe: but the forme is not here, because it is the wed in the beginning of the Deder of Composita: which Capitall, in effect, is Composita, ale though the Arch may be wholly accompted to bee Cozinthia: and this Capitall Candeth in that place, maked C. Alfo, in the fame place you fee the Capitall of the inwoft of the Arch, which is marked with D. But the little Capitall of the Ta bernacle betwerne the Columnes, is here marked H. And the Comice also, with the Bale, marked E. is that which is bnder the Tabernacle. The Figure C. is the table about the lavo Tabernacles, and the Figure marked D. is the Architrane, Frase and Comice, of the Frontispicium of the Tabernacle. The Figure marked with B. is the worke which goeth about the Arch: the Coanice marked A. is the paincipall Coanice about the Arch; the which, in effect, is bery comely, and well wrought: yet it is vicious, as I have often layd; that is, the Hutiles and the Dentiles therein are by Vierunius rejected, with many frong reasons. But in this, many men affirme, that sithence Vierunius time, many work men have made Putiles with Dentiles, in most places of Iraly, and there round about, so that now there is no question made thereof, but every man hath libertie to make that in his worke which he findeth and leth in Antiquities: whereunto Janiwere, that disprousing the same, they have proved their cause to be good. But if they will acknowledge Victualius for a learned Architector, as mod workemen affirme, then (reading Victualius with good indgement) they much confeste and acknowledge, that they have done amiste therein.

The halfe of the foet, where with the Ichnographie, and the Dethographie, together with the ornaments of this Building, are measured.



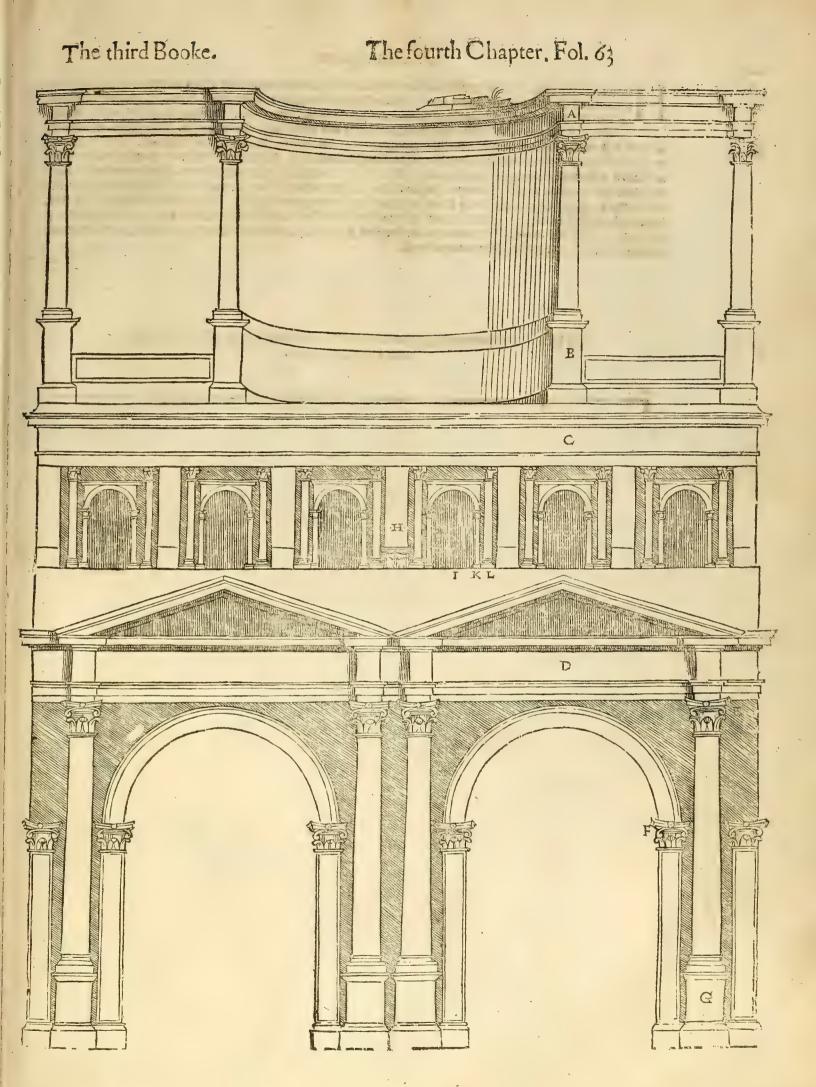


P Mercha, at the Bate Dei Leoni, there is a Arpumphant Arch, with two like goings through, which Incuer fato in any other place befives, but many with 3. Arches: which building, although it hath the figure of 6. windowes, yet go they not through, neyther yet very deepe in the wall: whereby you may judge, that some round Jinages ande in them. About the ArC Cornice this building is hollow, in maner of a Prichor leafe, but not very deepe in the wall, but yet with belpe of the protecture, or ariking out of the Cornice, men might kand there to one some thing or other, while the Arie umph lasted: but for that this concerneth the workeman very little, I will speake of the measures. And first, the opening of the I. Arch is 11. fote wide, and 18. fote high; the Blocke boder the Pedelfall, is one fote high: the Bale of the Wedeffall is 3. Dunces: the flat of the Percestall is 2. fote and one Bunce high: and the Counier is 3. Dunces: the height of the Bales of the Columnes is 8. Dunces and a halfe: the height of the Columnes, without Bales of Capitals is 12. fote and 1. third part: their thicknes is 1. fot, 4. Dunces: the height of the Capitall is 1. fote, 8. Dunres: the height of the Architraue is one fate, 5. Dances: the height of the Frese is one fate, 8. Dances; and so much is the height of the Comices: from the Comices to the fecond Kole is 3. fore and a halfe, whereon there are certagne Hotiles. Whercupon Images had Awde, made fast to the 7. Pilasters, betweene which, little winvolves, beautisted with small pillars, fland, but not much bearing out: the widenes of a window is 2. foote, 2. Dunces: their beight is 4. fot, g. Dunces: the height of the greatest Columnes is 5. foote, 4. Dunces, with Bales and Capitals which are flat, not not much rapled by. Ahe height of the fecond Architrave is 6. Dunces and a halfe: the height of the Frese is one foot and a halfe: the height of the Cornice is 10. Dunces and a halfe: the Corona licis about the same Cornice, is 10. Dune ces high. The Bale of the fecond Pedeliall is one foote; the flat of it felfe is 3. foote, 7. Dunces and a halfe high: the Bale of the fecond Columne is 8. Dunces : the height of the Columnes is 8. foote, 3. Dunces and a halfe. The thicks neste of the layd Columnes is 10. Dunces and a halfe: the height of the Capitall is one foote, one Dunce and a halfe: the height of the Architraue is one foote and one Dunce: the height of the Frace is 1. foote, 2. ounces: the height of the Counice is one foote, whereon there Candeth some part of the wall, but a man cannot perceine what it might be. This Arch is not very thicke, nepther beautified on the lides; for that behind this Arch there is another, Canding fo nere together, that a man can hardly goe bet**iv** & ve them both, as **3** will Grew hereafter when 3 fpeake of the other figure : the windolves fand not in any good ofter, but somewhat bulkmely: for the 2. windolves are not right in Perpendicular spon the tharpe point of the Frontispice, but some part aside, which theweth not well: and so that I could not endure fuch dileader, Thaue placed themoaderly. The Capitals of these Arches are part Composita, and part Cozinthia, as hereafter I will fet downe in Figure.

Louing Reader, Coroccus, a Paynter in Terona, hath counterfeited this Arch: the Cornice under the Timpanum is not there: for he placeth there certains order of figures reding byon the Architrane: the which Architrane, you mult by deritand, is between the 2. Columnes our each Arch, and is somewhat flat, because of the writing following.

Duer this Arch, on the right hand, thefe letters following fland.

T. FLAVIVS P.F. NORICVS, IIII. VIR. ID. V. F. BAVIA. Q. L. PRIMA SIBI, ET POLICLITO, SIVE SERVO, SIVE LIBERTO MEO, ET L. CALPVRNIO VEGETO.

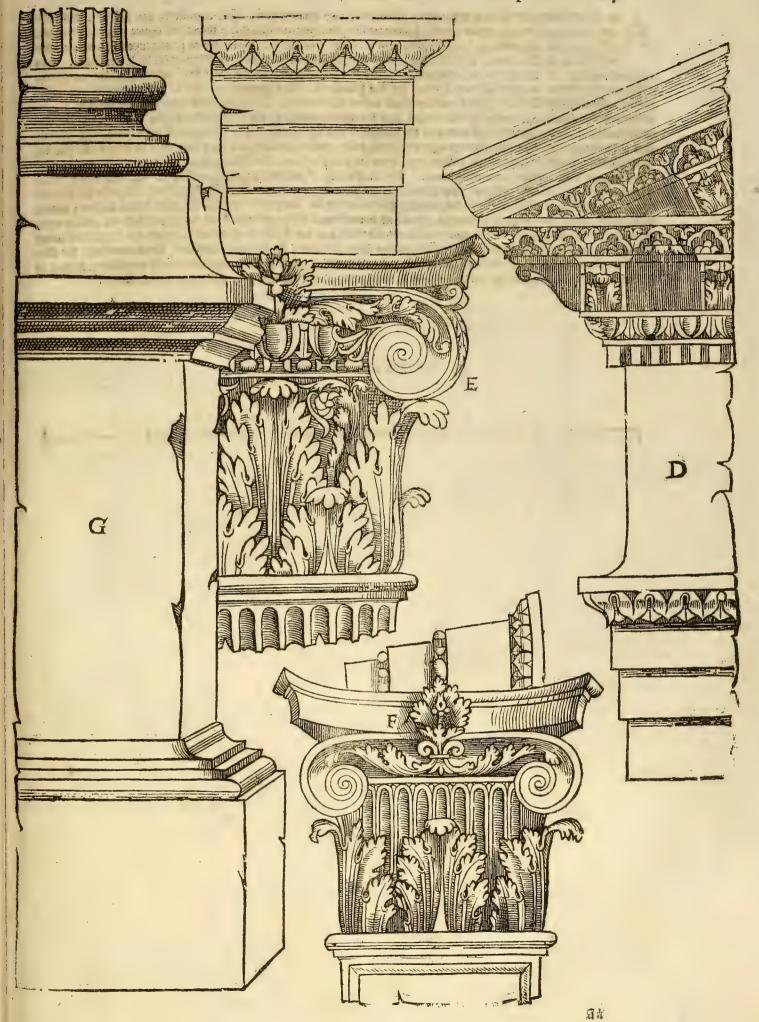


The before, I spake of the biniversall measure of the sayd Arch, and thereunto set downe the somic, according to the proportion of the same, but cannot give perfectly the particular parts in so small a some. De which members, so that there are divers ornaments in them, I will in this lease declare them: touching the height and thicknesse, I will speake no more; sor have done it already; but I will enely show which they are. The Figure marked G. is the stress proportioned according to their greatnesse. The Capitall marked E. having the Architrauc promit, solloweth upon the sire Columne, as the hollowing showeth. The Figure marked D. is the Architrauc, Freese and Cornice together, which stand about the first Columne: which Cornice, by the authoritie and crample, which is by me in many places alledged, the indictions leader may know, whether they be erroneous or god. The Capitall marked F. is that, which byholdeth the Arch upon the sourcequare Pillars; these two Capitals are called, Latine worke, and very sayze. I will not, as I have said, weake of the measures, sor that this Figure is proportioned after the principall, and with great diligence transported from the great into the small.

The halfe of the common fote, where with the aforefavo double Arch, with the following ornaments, is measured.



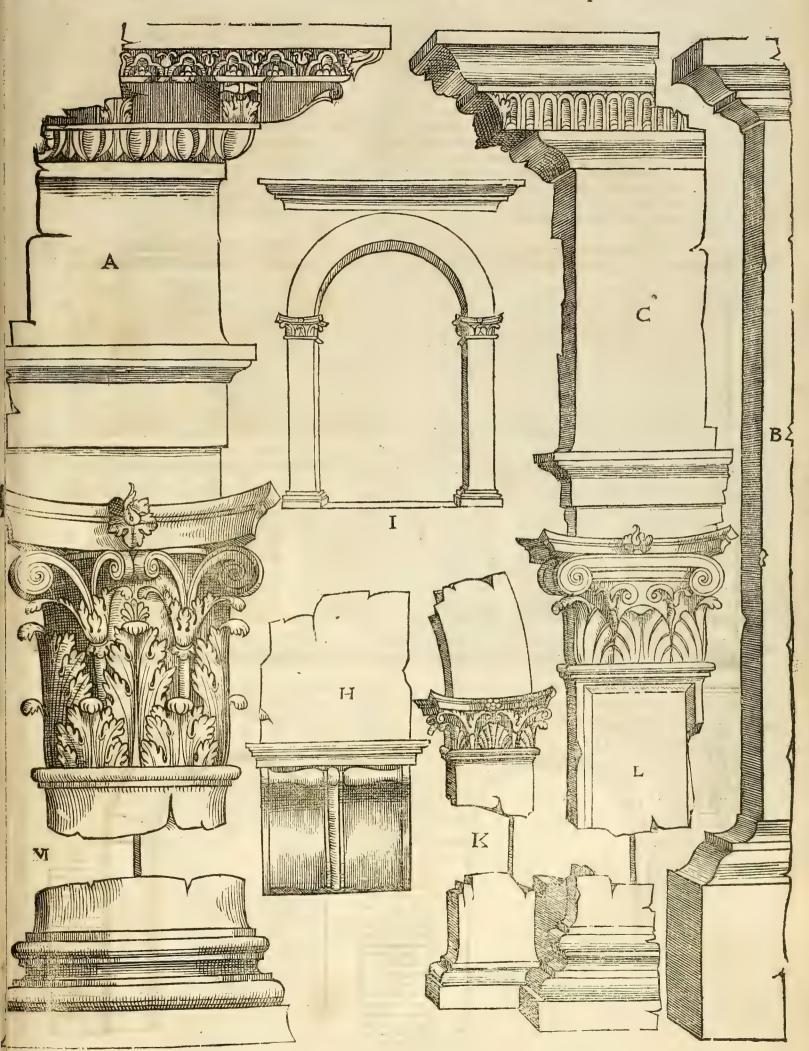
The fourth Chapter. Fol. 64



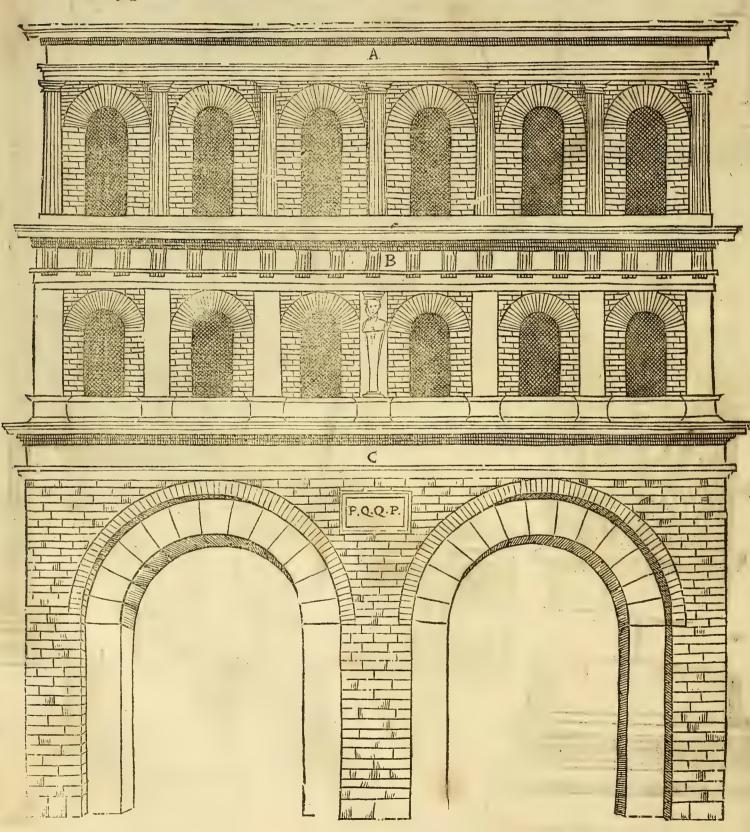
5 I fand before, the Arch is very rich of ornaments, and among them, some very faute and perfect; some also bery bicious will made: and in tructh, I finde nothing that moze millibeth me, then the Cornice marked D. in the other leafe, for the realons beforeshewed : but all the rest before fet bowne are of good proportion, as well the workes as the Cornices. And as the parts of the first flory are, to are thefe following of the fecond flory. The Mutiles marked H. are in the beginning of the second Coap aboue the Frontispicie: bpon which Images (as Thank ceclared) there were smages fallened against the flat Polatters. The window marked I. is the forme of one of the Mindowes with the Cornice oponit, and therefore init of his measure. That Capitall and the Base marked K. is of the fame windowes, the wed in greateft forme, that the members may be the better underfrood. That Bale and Cas pitall marked L. is the little Willar betweene the Wilalters and the window: and in trueth, in thefe two Bales, that is. that of the greatest of the small Pillars iounco with the lester, the workeman was very invicious to accord or agric the one with the other, that the greatest Pillar Could have his due Bale, and the letter should also have a lette Bale, acros ding to proportion, which z commend much. The Architraue, Freile and Cornice, marked C. theweth that of the les cond flory, about the small Pillars: this Cornice is very samely, and not consused with cutting. The Pedestall mare ked B. Heweth that of the last Mozy, whereof the Balemarked M. doth rest: also the Capitall which Candeth about. is his companion, and is truly Cozinthia, the which is confirmed to the principall, for worke and fathion, and in my of pinion, very femely. That Architrane, Freie, and Cornice, marked A. Meweth the last Cornice: the Architrane is not vicious, because it hath onely two Facies; for if it had thee, it would, by the farro distance, stand cumbred: the Cornice with the Builles, liketh me well, because it hath no Dentiles; and is also well denided with members: neither is it confused with much graving, but hath a sæmely projecture, which heaveth by the height thereof a little:

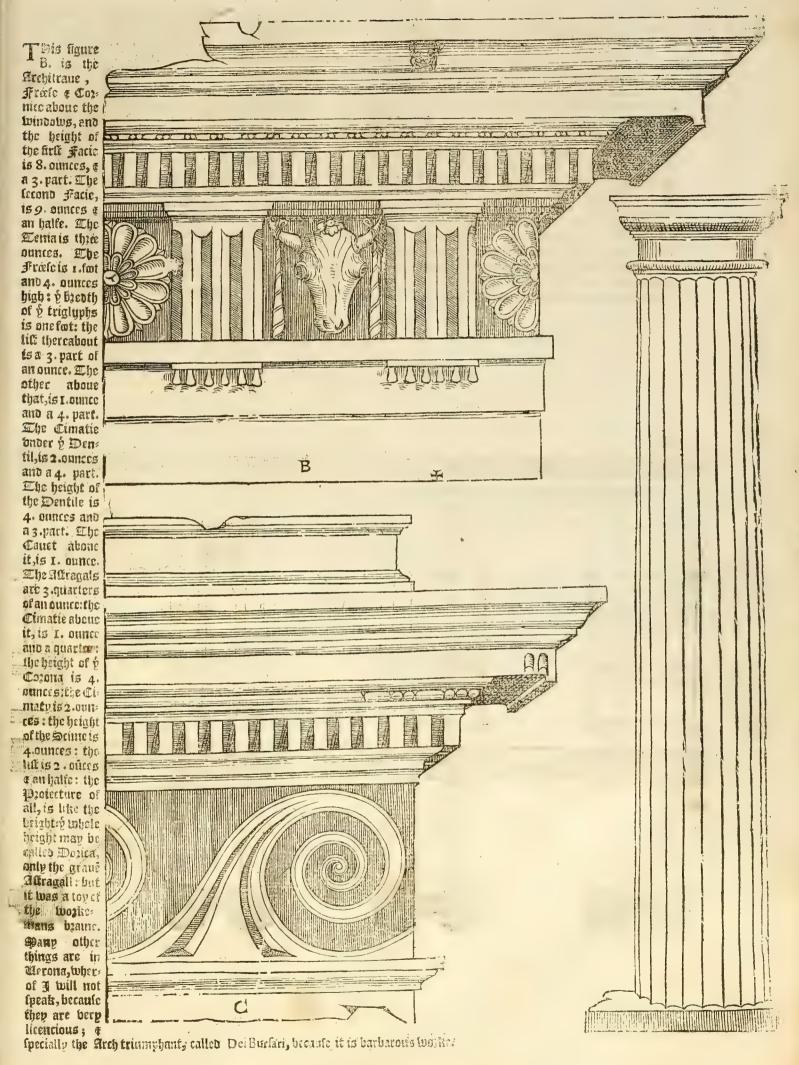
The halfe of the common fot.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 65

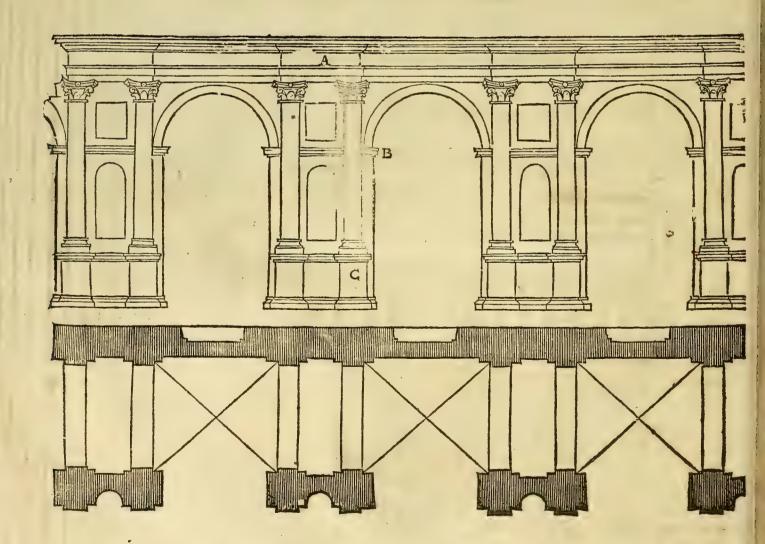


VALERIVS. Q. CECILIVS. Q. SERVILIVS: P. CORNELIVS. it is thought it was let up in the time of Hanibal. This is measured with the same measure that the other is: the widenes of each Archie II. soote: the height is 17. sate: the Pilasters of the Arch are one sate, 8. ounces broad between the 2. Wilasters are 5. sate, 4. ounces: the sides, eche holdeth 3. sat. The Cimatic under the C. in place of an Architrane, is 6. ounces and an halfe: the height of the Frese, is one sate, 7. ounces and an halfe: the like above the Frese is 2. ounces: the Cimatic under the Dentiles, is 4. ounces and a quarter; and the Cimatic above it, is one ounce and an halfe. That Astragall is one ounce. The Cimatic under the crownes is 3. ounces and an halfe high: the Cimatic thereof, is 2. ounces and quarter. The Scime is 3. ounces and anhalfe high: but the list is 2. ounces: the Projecture of all, is as much as the height. The Balement above this Comico, is one sounce and anhalfe in height: the thickness of the hollowed Columnes, is 1. sat, 3. cunces: the height without Capitals, is 7. sat, one owner and anhalfe. The Capitall is 10. cunces high. This Columne hath no Bale nor Cinthe. Carectus, who also counterfeited this Arch, seeth but source places where Histories are graven, and 5. Columnes in this third Copy in the second sory but 4. windowes, and 5. Pilasters: and above them, 5. Columnes: the third Cornice you cannot come who.



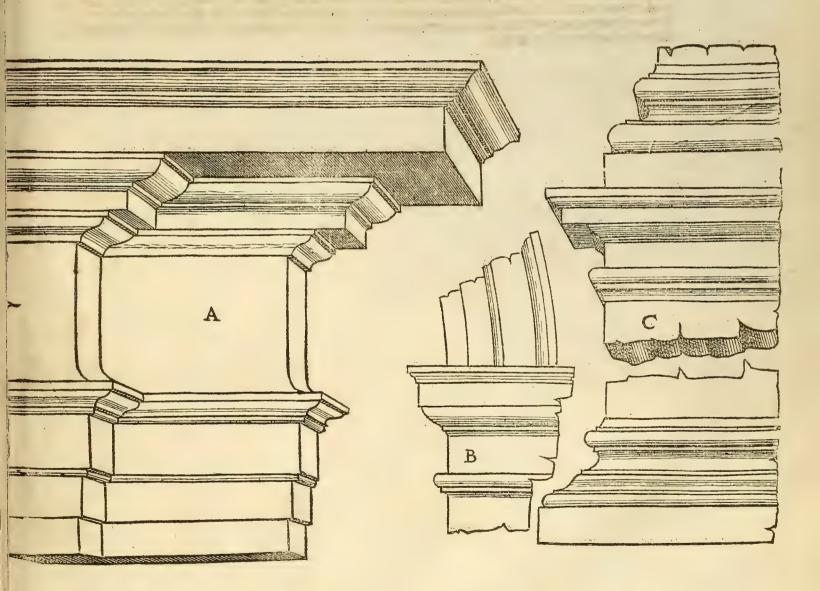


Auingspoken of many Antiquities, and placed them in Figure; it is requisite that I also thew some of those that were made in these dayes, and specially, of Bramants worke, although I have not altogether omitted it, having showed the wonderfull worke of D. Peters Church, and other things belonging to holy Temples. And in truth, a man may well say, that he resolved god and perfect Architecture, as yet, by the meanes of Iulio P. M. many sape pieces of worke were made by him in Rome, do witnesse, of the which, this set here, is one: this is a Gallery made in Beluedere, in the Popes Court, wherein are two sape things to be same: the one is, the strength thereof; the which, for that the Pilasters are of so great bredth and thicknesse, will last, while the world endureth: the other, so, that there are so many accompagnments so well set on this hand excellent proposition: this worke is measured with the ancient Palme. The bredth of the Arches, is 18. Palmes, and so much are the Pilasters; the bredth of the Pilasters is deniced into 11. parts one part on exther side of the Pilaster, which beareth the Arch shall have, which is two parts; other two parts shall be given unto one Columne, that is 4. parts: 2. parts shall be given to the little Pilasters of the Piches, or hollow seates, and 3. parts to the Piches themselves: so are the 11. parts distributed. The bright of the Peoclas shall be halfe the subconesses the Piches themselves: so are the 11. parts distributed. The bright of the Eoclas shall have one part of the beforeshor 12 parts. The Copnice is the 9. part less them that. The Base is halfe the thicknesses of the Some and Capitals, are of 9. Diameters, and thereum also the secund part. The Base is halfe the thicknesses of the Some and Capitals, are of 9. Diameters, and thereum also the secund part for the Base. The height of the Tolumnes, with Bases and Capitals, are of 9. Diameters, and thereum also the secund part for the Base. The height of the Architeaue, Frese and Copnice, is as much as the Pocalial without h

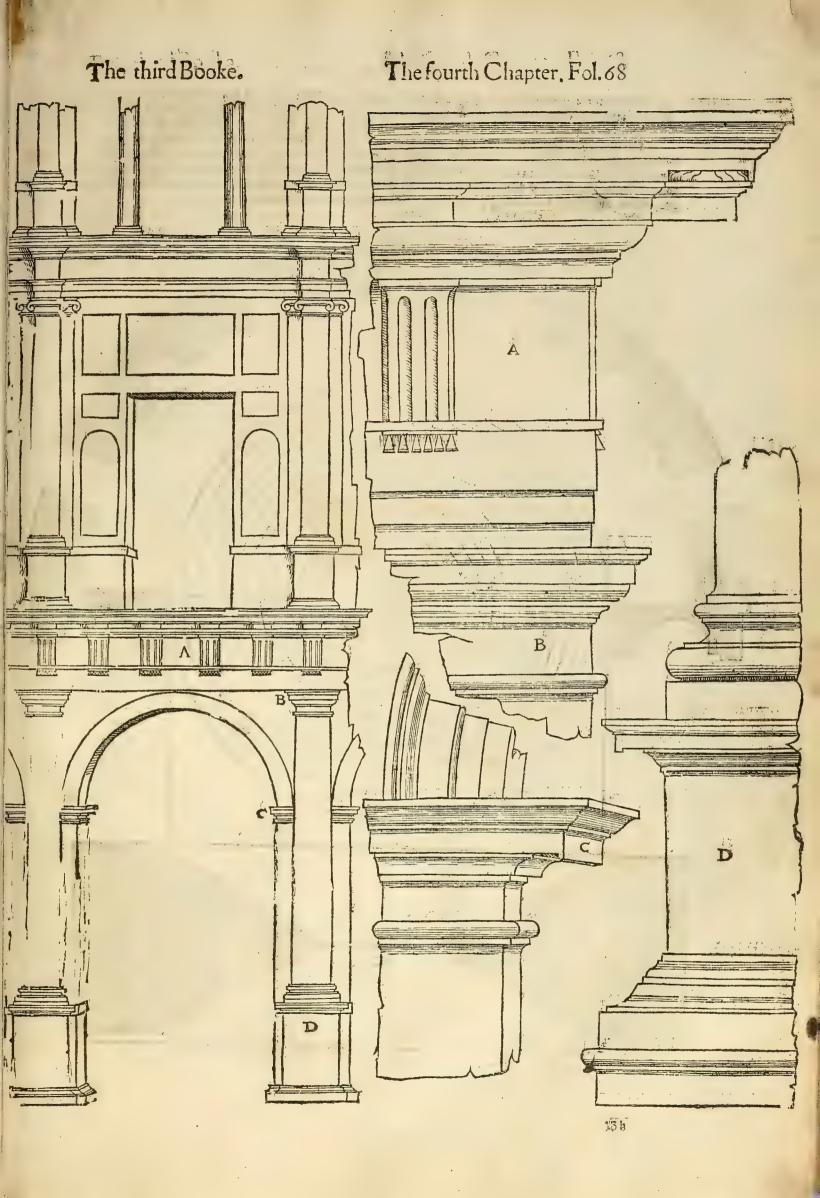


The fourth Chapter. Fol. 67

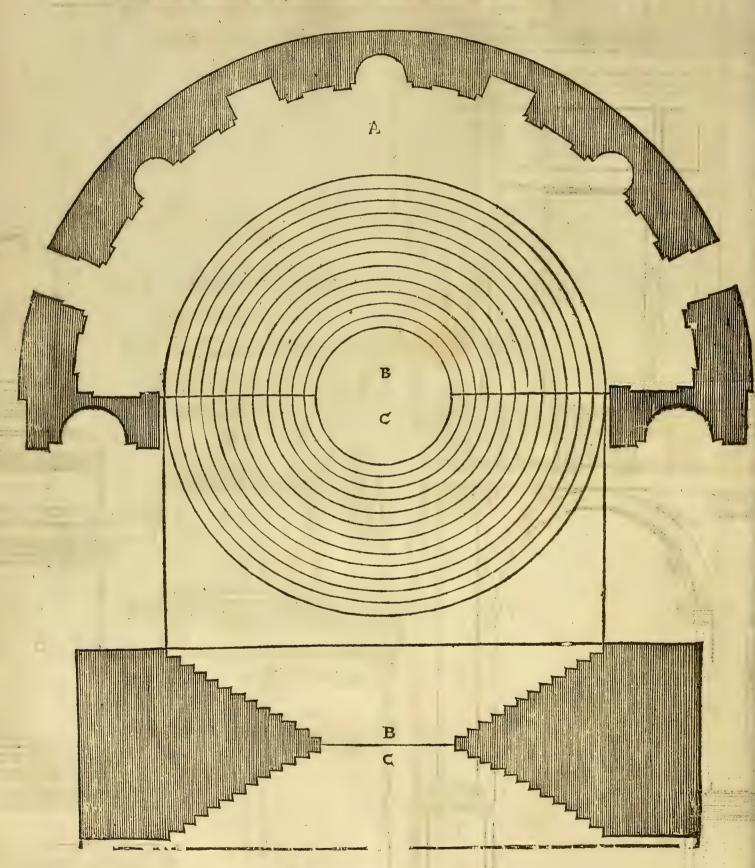
Crawle I could not (by reason of the smalnesse of the Figure) perfectly them the parts of the Gallery associated, therefore I have shewed them hereunder in greater forme: the part C. is the Bedestall of this Gallery, and open it the Balt of the Columne Candeth, proportioned according to the great: the part B. Cheweth the impost of the Architecture, with a part thereof. The Figure marked A. sheweth the Architecture, Fresse Cornice above the Columnes. The generall measures, touching the height, are already shewne, therefore not to be mentioned againe: for they are proportioned after the great. In this Cornice the workeman was very indicious, that he suffered the Corona to go through indicioned after the great. In this Cornice the workeman was very indicious, that he suffered the Corona to go through indicioned after the great. In this Cornice the workeman was very indicious, that he suffered the Corona to go through indicious, that he suffered the corona to go through indicious, and suffered the other parts of the Corona to be are outwards, which is very semiely, and the crown the Arona ger, and kiepeth the whole worke from water: with which invention, the workeman may helpe himselfe in divers accidents; for the reaching out of Cornices stand not alwayes well, but in some places well, and in some places ill; and the bearings out ontolerable, where the Columnes on the stock have no Pilasters: of these bearings out, I will say more in the fourth Booke, in the handling of source maner of Simmetric of Columnes.



the leafe before, I thewed a piece of worke of Bramanes making: and now I will thew another of his workes, from whence a wife workeman may helpe himfelfemuch, by meanes of the diners and funday ornaments that are in it. In this Gallery, the workeman would thew the Cories or orders one about another, viz. Dorica, Jonica, and Corine thia: and in trueth, the orders were faire, well fet out, and placed: notwithfianding, that the Pilaffers of the first flory or order being Dorica, were somewhat to weake, and the Arches to wide, to the proportion of the Pilaffers; and therewith the weight of the wall of the Zonica order flanding boon it, was an occasion that it was broken, ruinated and becaped in thost time. But Balchazar of Scienc, a fkilfull workeman, repayed the becaped ruines, making counter Pilallers, with brock-Arches; therefore Ihaue faid, wife workemen may learne of this building; not onely to imitate favre and well made things, but also to beware of errors, and alwayes to consider what weight the nethermost story is to fullaine: therefore grounfell a workeman rather to be timerous, then ouer-bold for if he be tunerous, be will alwayes chuse the furest way, and make his worke with confideration, and will be counsell, yea of such as are leste skilfull their himselfe, of whom sometime men often learner but if he be high-minded, and trusteth to much to his own skill and know. ledge, then he will scome another mans counsell, whereby oftentimes he decequeth and over-shotety himselse; so that oftentimes his worke falleth out badly. How I will turne to speake of this Gallery, and let downe some notes of the proportion thereof. The widenesse of the Arch shall be beuided into eight parts, whereof the parts shall be so, the bredth of the Pilatters, and the height of the Arch Chall confaine 16. of fuch parts. The forepart of the Pilatters Chall be decided into foure parts, whereof two parts thall be for the Wilatters of the Arches, and the other two thall be for the thicknesse of the Columnes: the height of the Peocetals shall containe halfe the widenesse of the lights: the height of the Columnes hall bee eight parts of their thicknesse, with the Bases and Capitals. The height of the Architrane, Frese and Cornice, is a fourth part of the length of the Columne. The second story shall bee less then the first by a fourth part, viz. That from the Pauement of the Orice story, to the highest of the Cornice, shall be devided into 4. parts, and 3. of them thall be for the whole flory of the Zonica works, and so thall all the parts particularly bee lessened in themselves a fourth part. The like also shall be done with the third story, which is Corinthia, in regard of the fecond erder, although it flandeth not here, because the Figure is drawne to great: but not to put the Reader in a maze or doubt at the Columnes which fland here in the middle, as defirous to know how they end at the top; you mult Inderstand, that you shall finde fuch invention in the fourth Booke, in the Deder of Dogica in the five H 2. that als though that those Columnes are Zonita in the land Boke, not with Canding, you may make them Cozinthia. And that the workeman might the better bader Cand the members and Coincements of this worke, I have thewed them in area, ter forme, and proportioned them according to the principall: Aspeake of the members of the first story for a man could not easily come to measure the other.

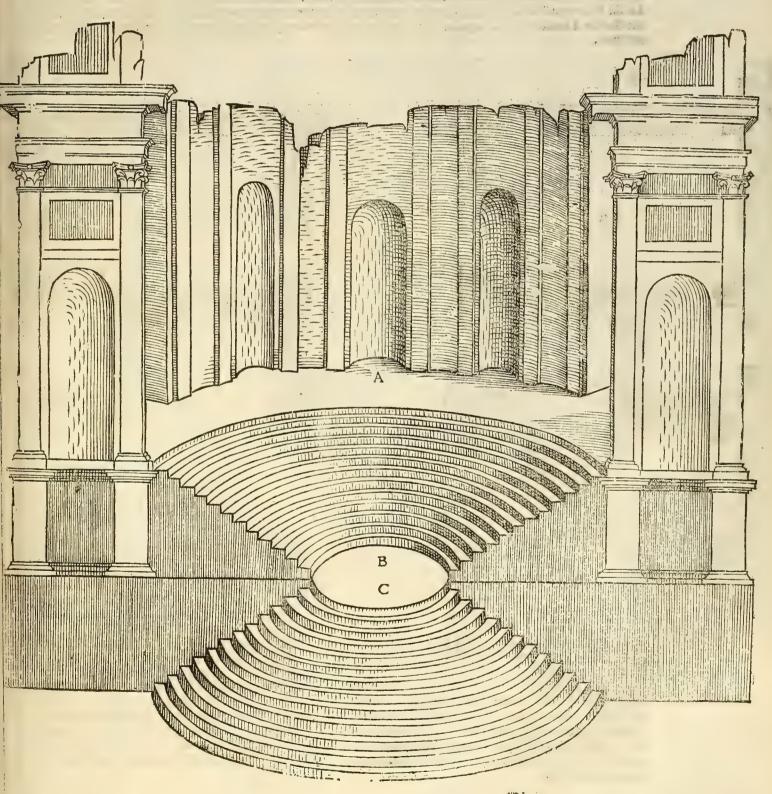


T Beluedere, at the entry of the Popes Court, through the Gallery, which I have set downe before, for the places always goe bewards, there is a going by which is very sayze: at the head wheres, you come to a plaine, which hath the some of a Theater; the ground whereof is shewed where this: and thereto I have set the Possill, that you may be best so I have kept no account of the measures, destring onely to shew the invention of the sayzes, and the halfe Circle as it standeth. This halfe Circle is very much elevated from the Court of the Popes house to the Palace-ward: and behind the halse Circle, you find a great playne with sayze appertements; at which place, you goe through the two Gates, which you see in the sides of this halse Circle; in which places there are many saire Images, and among the rest Laocoon, Apollo, Tyber, Venus, Cleopatra, and Hercules.

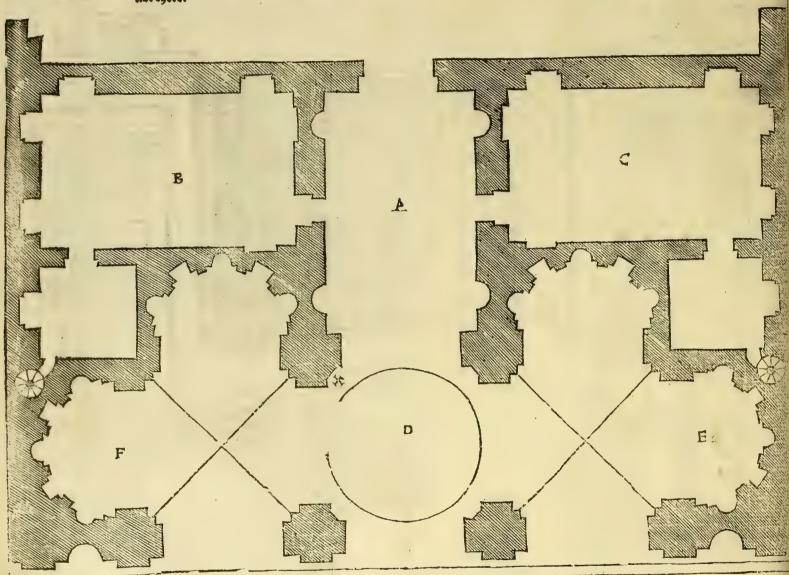


The fourth Chapter. Fol. 69

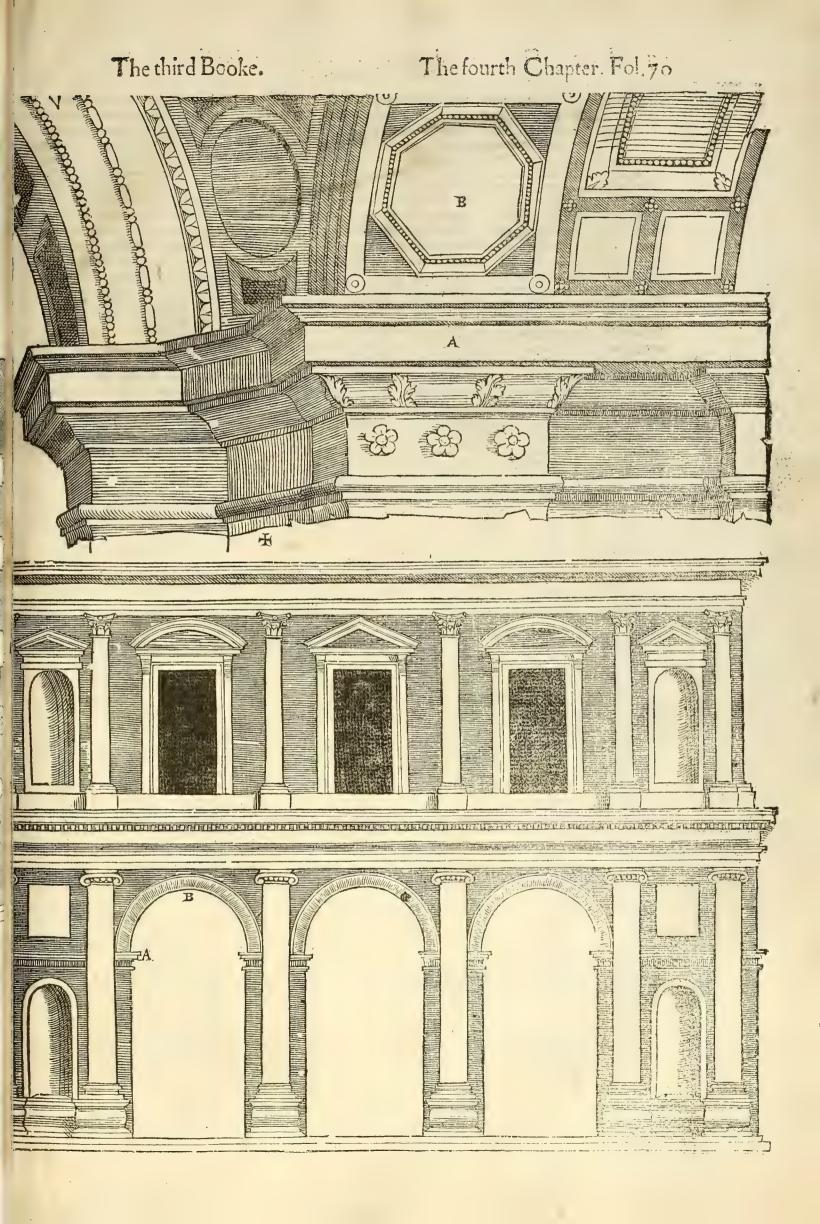
This is the Dethography of the ground the wed Folio 69. and as I have layd, I will not speake of the measure thereof, but onely of the invention: and although that here on eyther floe, onely one Pilaster, with his Columnes, is showed, yet is it not which some Galleries, whereof I have speaken before, and that appeareth by the double Columnes, together with the Piches of hollowscates, with the Quadrans above them. In Welvedere there are many other things, which I have showne, among other things, there are wonderfull winning Stayres, in the ground whereof, there standeth a Fountagne, slowing ercedingly with water, the which going op is all full of Columnes in the innermost part: which Columnes are of sourc Deders: viz. Dorica, Ionica, Corinthia, and Composita: but that which is most wonderfull and ingenious, is that betweene one and the other Order, there is no difference or distance, but mengoe from the Dorica to the Jonica, and from the Jonica to the Composita, with such comming, that a man cannot perceive where one Deder enbeth and goeth into the other: so that I am of opinion, that Bramane never made a fairer nor collier piece of worke therethis.



VV zihout kome, at Honte Fario, there is a very fayze place, with all things belonging to a place of pleasure, of which particular parts I will rather refrayne to speake, then not shew them sufficiently, onely I will speake of a Gallery, with the Facies thereof, made by an excellent workman Raphael Durbin, who hath made divers appertements and beginnings to other workes, as the Centrill, although that it is sourcequare, yet he had fathioned it round, as the soundation partly sheweth. That Activulum marked A. and the two places, B. and C. stand not in such some, but Jhaue placed them there to sill by the ground: so, the part C. endeth in an hill, as also the part E. but in the other side of the Gallery marked F. there is no halse Circle, and that was lest out, not to pinch some of the appertements, but to accompany other members by it. The order of this Gallery is very sayze; the rose whereof is concordickly altred: so, that the middle part is with a round tribune; and those two on the sides are crosse whereof is concordickly altred: so, that the middle part is with a round tribune; and those two on the sides are crosse whereof is concordickly altred: so, that the middle part is with a round tribune; and those two on the sides are crosse whereof is concordickly altred: so, that the middle part is with the beautifying of paynting, together with divers ancient Images, this Gallery may well be called, one of the sayzest that ever was made. And whereas it is spoken of an halse Circle which doth not answere the rest, neither the workeman not willing to leave it underease it is spoken of an halse Circle which doth not answere the rest, after the workeman more with side says the many Hallse side of the source, caused to be made. The measure of this Gallery I will not set sowne, but the invention shall suffice the workeman, sorthat all things are proportioned according to the great; and hereaster was those by sight, together with the Facie of the Gallery, but the Hillse or hollow seates on the sides are not shall set ma



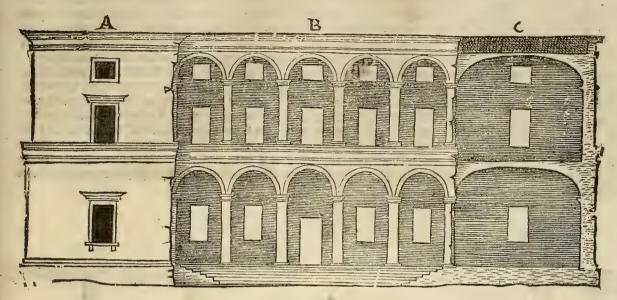
Be this part following, marked B. A. you may conceive the roofs of the aforefayd Gallery, the farrence whereof confideth much in the corner marked A. (the which gineth to kndersand also the three others, being well placed) and thew well in the heaving by of the tribune in the middle, going alwayes kinding with the duplication of Pillars, to each Facie of the Pulatters: which Pillars (in regard the Coronas remayne whole) make not the Pillaser hew bare, but rather inch breaking of Pilasters into two Pillars, maketh a large seing bewards, and sands (neverthelesse) in manner and place of a strine Pillar: for the Base of the layd Pilasters followalso. And so that in the Kigure following in the Pillaser, there is but one Pillar with a piece shewed, yet to make it better to be knderstood, is, that each Facie of the Pilasters within the Gallery is to be decided into the of the which a man may make two stat Pillars, and at the corners one Intercolumne: so that (as it is sayd) although there are two stat Pillars with one Intercolumne, yet, altogether, it is but one Pilaster.



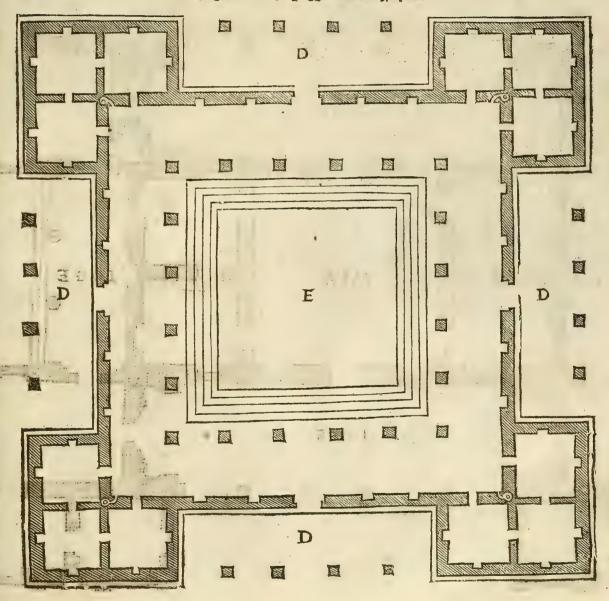
Hong other Cities of Italy, Paples is called, La Gentile, and that not onely in respect of the great Barons, Lords, Carles, Dukes, and great numbers of Gentlemen therein, but allo, because it is so well furnished with Nately Poules and Balaces, as any other parts of Italy. And among other pleasant places that are without the Citie, there is a place called Poggio Reale, which king Alphonsus caused to be made so; his pleasure, in that time (then most factunate) when Italy was in peace, and now unfortunate, by reason of the discords therein. This Pas lace hath a very faire scituation, and is well benided for koomes, for that in each corner thereof might bee lodged a Arong company of men: in the middle there are fire great Chambers, belides the Roomes under the ground, together with some secret Chambers. The forme of this faire building in the ground, as also, the building that flandeth byzight, is here let volume in the next leafe: the measure thereof I set not downe unto you, onely, because I will shew you the invention: for a workeman may imagine of what greatnelle be will have a Chamber, being all of one greatnelle; and then from those Chambers he may unagine all the measures of the rest of the building: which building the Poble King bled for his pleasure, because men accustomed to dwell in the Countrey in the Summer time. The Court of this Palace is compated with bouble Balleries : and in the middlemott place, marked E. men go downe a payze of Stayzes into a fayze eating place, in which place, the Ling and his Lords vied to banquet and cate at pleasure; in which place becaused certagne secret places to bee opened, whereby in the twinckling of an eye, the place was full of water, to that they fate all in water: like wife at this kings pleasure, all & water boyded out of the rome againe, but there wanked no thifts of clothes to put on, noz yet rich and coully beds for them to lye in, that would reft themselnes. D volunta, ous Italians, how are you impouer thed by your discords! I will not speake of the most beautifull Gardens, filled with all kind of flowers, with divers compartements of the Dechards and Tres of all kind of Fruits, with great abundance of Fish-ponds and Fishes, of places and cages of diners Birds both great and small, of fayze stables, filled with all forts of Porles; and of many other fagre things, which I will not speake of, for that Marcus Anconius Michaell, a Bentleman of that Cowne, very learned in Architecture, bath læne it, and hath written of it at large in a Latine Epille, which hefent to a friend of his. But to turne againe to the parts of the faid Palace, which is right foure fquare, it is within, Balleried round about, one aboue the other: in the foure Corners, within the thicknesse of the walls, Cand the winding flavres to goe by into the building. The foure Galleries without, marked B. are not there, but for the commoditie and beautifying of the house, they ixould fand well there.

The fourth Chapter, Fol. 71

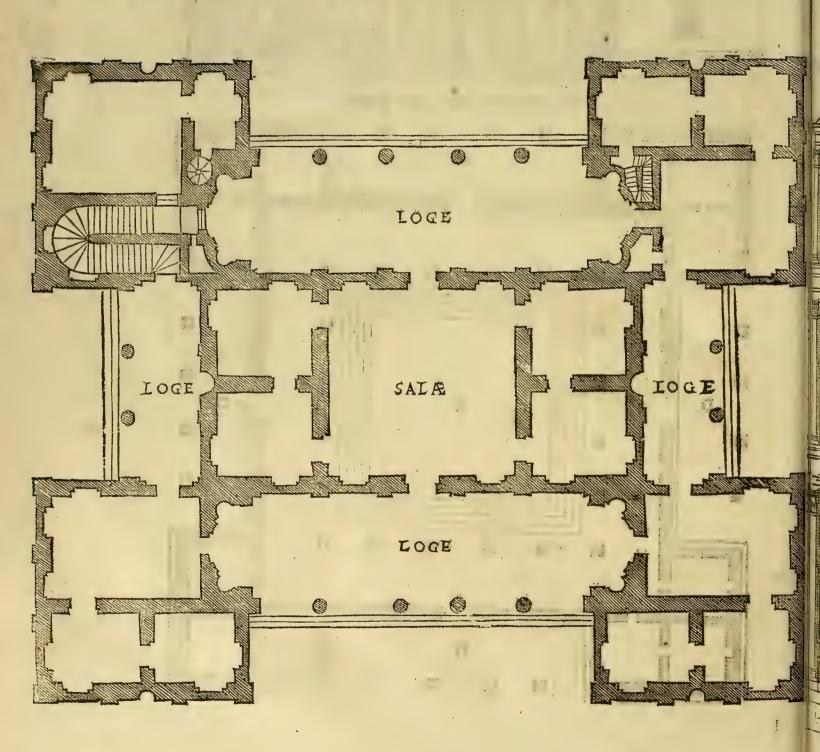
Is this Figure hereunder, I have thewed the Dethographic both within and without: the part marked A. theweth the part without: the part marked B. representeth the Galleries within: the part C. theweth the rutnes within. I have not set downe the covering or rose of this house: so according to my opinion, I would have play vered such a building, that it might onely be vised so, a walking place, to behold the countrey about.



The ground of the Poggio Real of Paples.

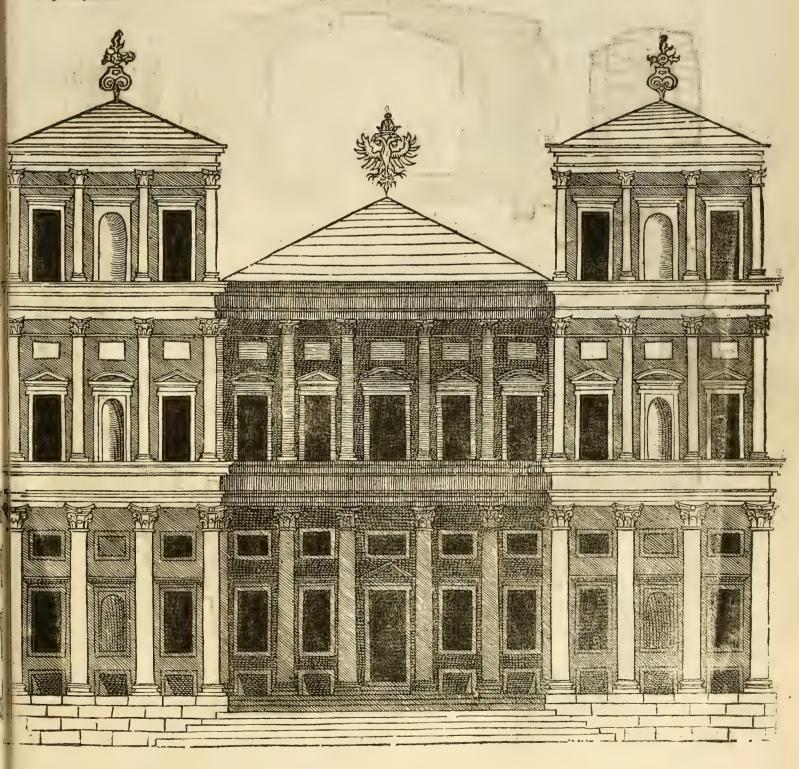


A Dulivering the fayee Building of Poggio Real, Thave thought good to let down cluch an other here in this place; but in other forme for appertements, and peraduenture with more eafe, for that the places are all of one greatnes, which is not to and a forgic: but it is necessary that the first should be areater then the ferond. In this place I make you no place for lights with in, for that it is a place in the countrep, being not cumbred on the fides, it hath light inough on all the foure corners : but fome men may fay, that the Ball with the foure Chambers , because they have no light but through the galleries, are barke, for it is no perfect couer: to which I answere, that the house being made to be bled in the time of great heat, having no place in the middle, the Hall and the Chambers will alwayes be cold, by reason the Sume cannot come buto them. These places will be very pleasant at nonetime, for that the said places have not so great lights as the other dwellings; pet have they fo much light as they not fuch like may be fone in Bolonia, which are enabe in this manner with Balteries , and baily inhabited. This Building is to dispoted, that the corner places being ofgreat thickenetie, the rell thall be throng inough, yea, although the walls had no great thicknetie, in regard they are all counterforts one to the other, yet that they be of fufficient thrength. I will not speake of the measures, for that this being proportioned, the skilful workman may imagine (according to his pleasure that raised it to be built) first the greatnes of the rame, then devide it into so many fact of other measures, thereby to measure all the rest of the building, as the Attaction of the place may beare it. Then this building, about all things, Mall be placed, that the Sunne may rife kpon one of the corners, and to Chine byon all the corners, and to Chine byon all the corners with one five to the Caff, and the other to the Whest, then it will follow, that the Posth side hall never enjoy the Sunne-thine byon it, which were rumaticke and unwholelome.

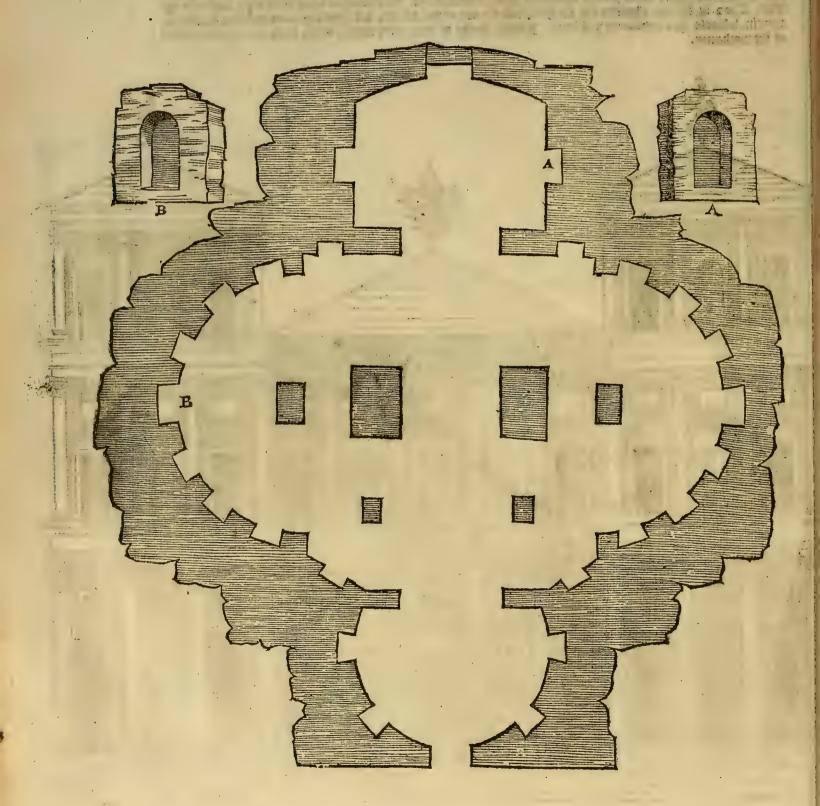


The fourth Chapter. Fol. 72

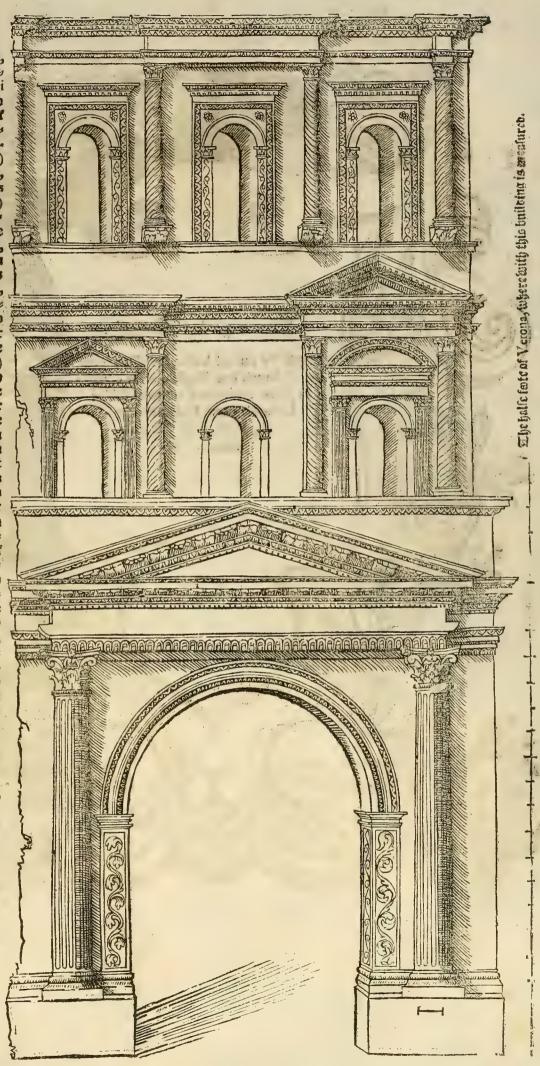
En may build in divers and fundry forts boon the ground aforelayd : but for that this is a place of pleasure, 4 thought god, for the brauenelle thereof, to make it after the Corinthia maner. I will not trouble mylielle to (peake of the mealures nor heights for in my fourth Boke, in the Deder of Corinthia, O 2. von that find a Areas tile, which, together with the indgement of & wife workman, will ferue to fet down this measure. And, for that in this Facie there is no Mortening at all, whereby you may know the Galleries, the flat and closed places ethe from or ther; therefore I will fet downe the two highelt fides at eche end: you mult conceaue it to have flat Willars from beneath bowards; that part betweene both, which is lower, you must suppose bath two Balleries, one about the other, the Colamnes whereof would be round: the fame is to be bnoer tood to be both behind, and on both fides. Den may also make abone the Galleries a Tarrace of Pauement, to defend the raine, the Gallery being made with a Leane-to, of Raile, ont of the Cornices of the first of deer of the Figures afore faye and to also the Pall in the middle, together with the 4. Chanbers of & fecond flogy, would have more light. For 2. causes 3 have made the small windows above the great, in the first The I. is, if you will make the windowes to low, that a man litting, may eafily lie out of them, then (if you Chould make the windowes no higher then the doze) there would bee to much space betweene the windowes and the rose of the house, which would greatly barken the house: and otherwyse the windowes bying much more light into the Pall. The 2. is, that the Chambers by the Hall nad not bee of such height, but you may make hanging Chambers therein, whereto those windowes will serve. I might speaks of many other things, which I referre to the judgement of the workeman.



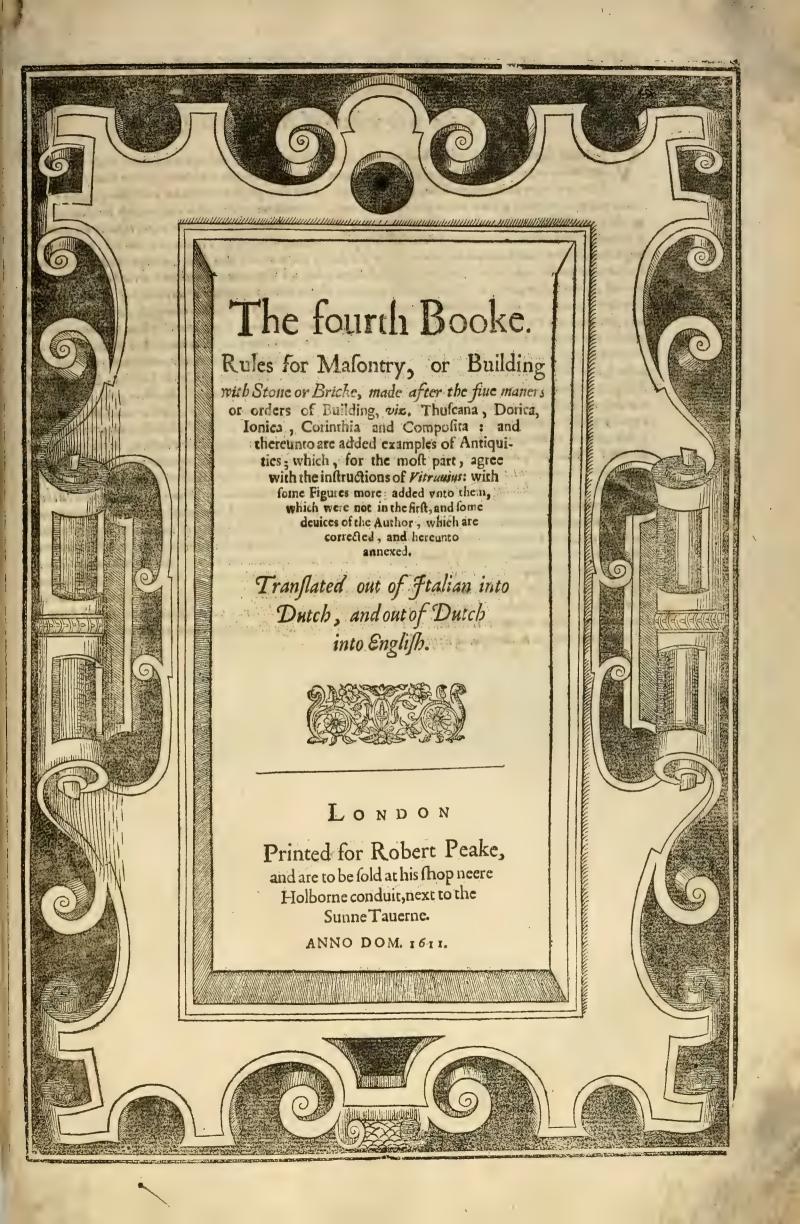
First, 3 was not minded to let this ground, not yet the building of the 100. Columnes, placed in M. r. in this Pocke; for that they are things which the Author hathmade by reports and heare-lay, which I elicame not worthy to be let by things that are counterfeyted and measured: yet that it should not be layd, that I have published this Bake lank and unperfect, and not full as the Author made it, which might have given sanderous and enuigner Figure following by him let down in the leafe R. 3. And now to turne to this ground, our Author layth, that in Irrusalem (as it was told him) on a hill, there is a building cut out of a reasonable greatnesse, in manner hereunder set downer and for that by meanes of the widenesse of the middlemost part, the roose should fall in, therefore the two pilasters were left in the middle, and withall, two of a middle sort by them, with two lesse also before, independing the rose, which altogether were cut out of the rocke with instruments. In the first entry are some little Chappels. In the middle there are 18. and behind there sand 2. and a doze locked, which shewelf, that men went surther: the greatest Chappel is wide the length of a man, whereby you may indge the greatnesse of the building. This place hath no light, nor can be perceased that it had any light. The Chappels are taken out, as the Figures A. and B.



FD; that our Authoz befoge, (peaketh of an Arch trium phant in Verona, called Dei Borfari, which he termeth to be barbarous and confused of parts and members, as (according to the writing of Vitrunius of god Antiquities) ineffectitis: penerthelelle, for that Iohannes Carottus (which our Author alleogeth) hath fet it bowne fozan oznament of Verona, in his boke of Antiquities, much better, and with more deliberation then all y rea of the Figures by himmade (toz in trueth, greff are bery grolle: Theres fore I thought it god to thew it here to the curious Reader that he may fee and also note (by Viruuius rule afozelaid) what is god or ill in it, which may peraduenture pleafe fome of this countrey better then another, because thep ble to lake for much worke in their Architecture. And for y this Figure was tw great in forme, therfore I have hers fet downe but the halfe; and you must conceave the other floe, that is, an Arch with windowes and other omas ments, like thefe: the fot of Verona, wher with this buil ding is measured, standeth here on the floes in halfe plos portion: of inhich foot, one fmall fandeth in the Porder Cal, binder & great Colimne; whereby the measure is to be concepted: for the lago Carottus gives no other war. rant of all his Figures (but onely of the Figure of the wonderfull spectacle, as hee termethit) with the Theater aboue it: but aboue all, with the goings by to the hill, tohere a Temple of lanus. Canacth, as our Author thelve ethafterward in Folio I.z. in this present Boke. Dt this building, Carottus faith moze then of all the rest: and for that I may fatisfie the Reas ber at full, of all that is layd fathis Boke, therefore I baue caused this figure to bo printed alone, because it was to great, and (in my opins on) to grafe, to fet hereby.



The end of the third Booke. Translated out of Italian into Dutch, and out of Dutch into English, at the charges of Robert Peake: and are to be fold at his house neere Holborne Conduit, next to the Sunne Tauerne. 1611,





To the wel-willers of Architecture.

Tirunius (a)th, that (ach as base built without learning or instruction (although workemen) could never make any comous or commendable pieces of works; no more can others, being no workemen, such as have followed the letter or writing onely, and made no proofe of which, some have presumed to father their doings woon Vittuvius: yet in divers places of their writings, which are found, they could not close up their rules orderly, but have left mamy things doubtfull, and (more) have effected that to be good and commendable, which in worke is not to bee endured. The cause of this errour, is, that the last Booke of the sayd Vitruvius, wherein the Figures are, was lost: whereby men might have knowne and found out his meanings: so that hereby it appeareth, that some Antiquities have beene very bare in their workes, and especially, in their Orders of Dorica, because Vittuius namethino Dorica Bases: but in stead thereof, Speaketh of an Attica. Now it may be, regarding that he there speaketh not of any Order of Attica, therefore they dur (t not make any Dorica Bafes or Columnes : on the contrary others poffilly contemning the darkneffe of the writ ter, (or for want of knowledge) have so sar exceeded their Authorin many things, that they have not onely for sakes and left the examples and reasons of good Antiquities and also (more then that) have made their workes unseemely. and ridiculous to menseyes, as may be fene in it.er ancient works whereby, gentle Reader, many workmen, well feene in both, have beene cumbred therein, and effect ly in this our time. Bramant of Castle Durant, Balthazar of Scienne, and many others, for that (not onely by me mes of fulius the 2. Pope, but) also by others, good Architecture was bettered in their times: who after long distutation and searching of many, aswell Authors and Commentaries, together with the examples of good Antiquities have with authority (to make an end of all doubts) not only added this Spira Attica, of the Dorica, but also as many orders as now are vsed, beginning at the Thuscan, as the grossest and Senderest of all the rest, and have reduced the same into a certaine and common forme, together with their ornaments and measures: which rules Sebastian Serlius, a workeman and scholer of the sayd Balthazar, hath written, and ser out in figures; so that, leaving the obscurities of Vittuuius, we may make an incorrigible worke. And for that all those that love workemanship, understand not the Italians, therefore (in my opinion) I bave translated the most certaine and best rules out of Italian into Dutch, and out of Dutch into English, onely the names of all Process, Bases, Capitals, Cornices, Go. which are not named in Dutch nor English, for that Bastian, by Vitruuius termes, wheth the common and moderne Italian words, which by some should be as hardly understood as the Latine. But I would commend him, that seeing we take upon us to follow Victuuius writings, that we give him the name of Victuuius, that the learned might bee under flood of the workeman, and the workeman also understood of the learned. And for that the workeman might the better read it, I have printed it in our ordinary Dutch letter. And although this fourth Booke of seven was first set out, because it is the best, yet the other also are no lesse fit and convenient to further Architecture or Art of Building, as in the enfuing Epiftle you shall fee,



Sebastian Serlius to the Reader.

Ouing and friendly Reader, after I had collected certaine rules of Architecture, thinking that not only those of deepe conceyt would vaderstand them, but that also each indifferent man of wit might conceaue them, as he is more or lesse addicted to such an Art; which rules are deuided into seuen Books, as hereunder shall be set downe: but for that this Art requireth it, therefore I thought it requisite to begin with this sourth Booke, and to set it out, first, which is more to the purpose, and more necessary then the rest, for the knowledge of many sorts of Building and ornaments thereof, to the end that every one may have some knowledge of this Art, the which is no lesse pleasing to the mind of those workmen that thinke vpon things that are to make, then also to mens eyes when they are made. Which Art, by the wisedome of the samous and excellent spirits that are now in the world, doth slourish in these dayes, as the Latine tongue did in the time of sulius Casar, and Cicero. Then with glad and ioy sull heart receive at least my good will, (though the effect ensuch not) which, in trueth, I have (to pleasure and satisfie your minds) in this respect.

In the first Booke, I will entreat of the beginning of Geometry, and of divers cuttings through of lines,

in such fort, that the workman may yeeld reason for that he worketh.

In the second Booke, I will shew in Figure, and by reason, as much of Perspective Art, that if the worke-

man will, he may declare his conceyt or purpole, by reasons and figure.

In the third Booke, workmen shall see the Ichnographie, that is, the ground: the Orthographie, that is, the rayling vp of a Building before. The Scenographie or Sciographie, that is, the insight, by shortening of the most part of the Buildings that are in Rome, Italie, &c. diligently measured, and set by them in writing, with the places where they are, and their names.

In the fourth, which is this, I will speake of fine maner of Buildings, and of their ornaments, as Thusscana, Dorica, Ionica, Corinthia and Composita, that is to say, mingled. And by these, the whole Arte

is learned.

In the fift, I will speake of divers kinds of Temples, set downe in divers formes, that is, round, foure-fquare, six-cornerd, eyght-cornerd, Ouall-wise, and crosse-wise, with their ground, heights and shortenings, diligently measured.

In the fixt, I will speake of all dwellings, which, at this day, may bee vsed, beginning at the meanest house or cottage, and so from degree to degree, proceeding to the most rich, fayre and princely Palaces, as

well in Countrie villages, as in great Cities or Townes.

In the seuenth and last, shall be set downe many accidents, which may happen to workemen in divers places, strange maner of situation, repayring of decayed houses, and how we should helpe our selves with pieces of other buildings, with such things as are to be vsed, and at other times have stood in worke.

Now then, to proceed readily herein, I will begin with the greatest and rusticke order of Building, that is, the Thuscan, being the playnest, rudest, and strongest, and of least grace and seemelinesse.

A 2

The

The Author to the Reader.

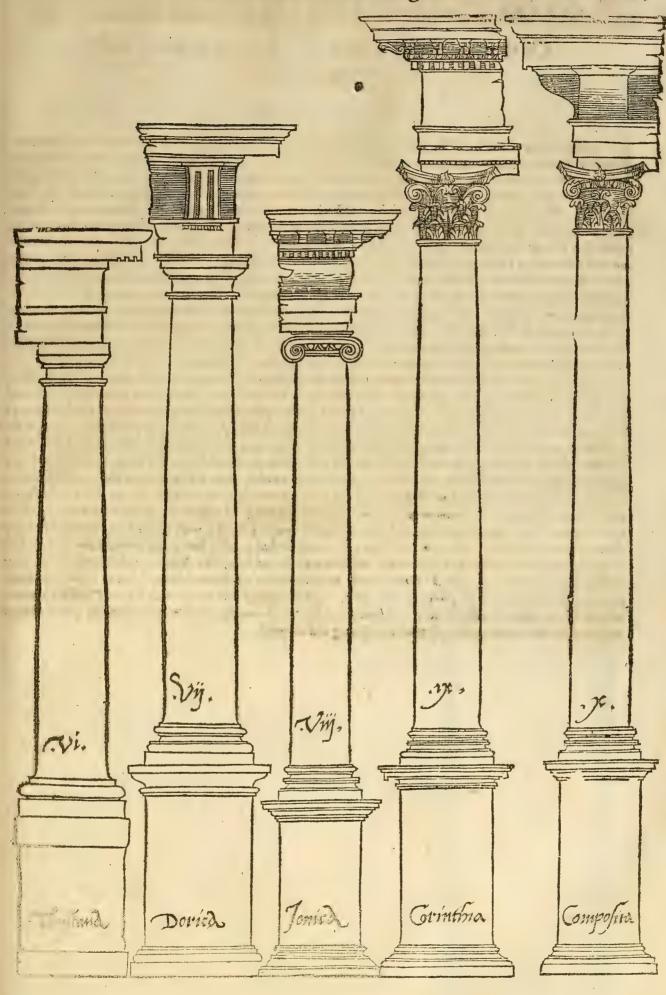
De ancient workemen in times past (as Virruvius affirmeth) devicated their workes and Buildings to the gods. according to their natures, Arength or weakenelle; fo is the forme called Dorica aferibed to the gods, lupiter, Mars, and valiant Hercules, taking fuch formes from Arong men. The forme called Jonica, is afcribed to the goddelle Diana, Apollo and Bacchus, as of the nature of Patrons, that is, of wife & fentible women, which are beth tender and from : for Diana, by ber feminine nature is tender, but by bling to hunt, thee is frong: Apollo, by reason of his beauty, is tender; but being a man, he is frong: the like of Bacchus. But the Corinthia is taken of mayos, and they afcribe all to the goodeffe Vefta, and her chafte mayes: pet at this time I thinke it good to proceed in another fort, nothing officering from the ancients aforefand. Wy meaning is to follow the maner and cultomes of the Christians, that I (as far as Amap) will afcribe holy Buildings to God and to his Saints: and profane buildings, as well publicke as prinate. I will alcribe to men according to their profesions. So lay I then, that the Thuscan maner (after my opinion) is fit for Arcnoths, for Gates of Cities, Townes and Caffles, places for treafure, munition and Artillery to hope them in : for prisons, havens of the Sea, and such like things, serving for the warres. It is true, that rullicke and playne worke, that is, luch Buildings as are made of rough Cones, and others that are made lome what Imother, according to the please fure which the Stone-cutters take therein, are sometimes mixed with Dogica; and sometimes with Dogica and Cozinthia. Denertheles, for that the Thufcan order is the roughelt fet forth, farre more then the other are, Jam of opinion. that the Country Buloing is more like buto the Thuscan, then any of the rest: which you may playnely fix to have being observed by the Thuscans, as wel in their chiefe Cities and Townes of Florence, as without in their Country Willages, in fo many rich and fapze Buildings, made after the rufficall maner, as may be fore in all Chriftendome, mixed with fuch a flight manner of worke, as the workeman thought good. Therefore I conclude, that fuch Buildings are more agreeable to Thusan oper, then any other. Therefore, altering somewhat from Antiquities, and some others of ours , I will in diners forts theme of fuch workes , viz. how to make Bates of Cities , Townes , or Forts : avallo, in publike and prinate places, Houses, Balleries, Wlindowes, Piches or feates, hollowed in worke, Bridges. Whater-couries, and fuch like fenerall Denaments, as may happen into a workemans hands to doe. Den may also (not differing from the ancient rules) mire this rudicall maner with the Dogica, and also with Bonica; and fometimes with Comithia, at the pleasure of those that sake to please their owne fantalies, which a man may affirme to bee more for pleasure then profit: therefore the workeman ought to procede with good aduice, especially in publike buildings, wherein comelinelle is commendable.

In the beginning of this Boke, Joblerned the Comedians order, who (when thep intend to play any Comedy) first fend onta Prologue, who in few wordes gineth the audience to bnderstand what they intend to entreat of, in their Co. medie. So 3, meaning in this Boke to entreat of fine maner of Buildings, viz. Thulcan, Dogica, Jonica, Coging this and Composita, have thought good, that in the beginning thereof, men should sie the Figures of all the leucral kinds Chereof querpole to entreat of. And although that in the Columnes and their oznaments, all the measures and proportions are not let downe, but onely the principall, by generall rules; yet will Inot fayle, as occasion thall serve, to set them dolone in particularities: but this is done, as I lapde, to thew in generall rules for an Introduction onely, the beffer to be under flood of enery workeman, and in the beginning will observe Vicruois order and termes, marked on the sides with A. B. C. that every two keman may name them according to his country speech. And first the Stillo bato, or Chuscan Pedestall, I meane the flat, without Crowne or Bale, shall bee a perfect fouresquare. The perfect Dozica thall be as much more as the drawing of a line from corner to corner, of the perfect four square, placing it by right. The Dedeftall Jonica, thall be of one fourefquare and an halfe : the Dedeftall Coginthia, thall be a fourefquare and two third parts thereof. The Peochall Composita Hall bee of two perfect fouresquares. Also, wonder not. that the Chapter nert enfuing is the fift, which others would estems the first; for that the first Boke doeth contains a Chapter of Geometry: the second of Perspectine, shall be of two Chapters: the third of Antiquities, shall be of one Chap.

and the state of the state of

the contract of the contract o

ter, which maketh foure Chapters: lo that, this confidered, the next hall be the fift.

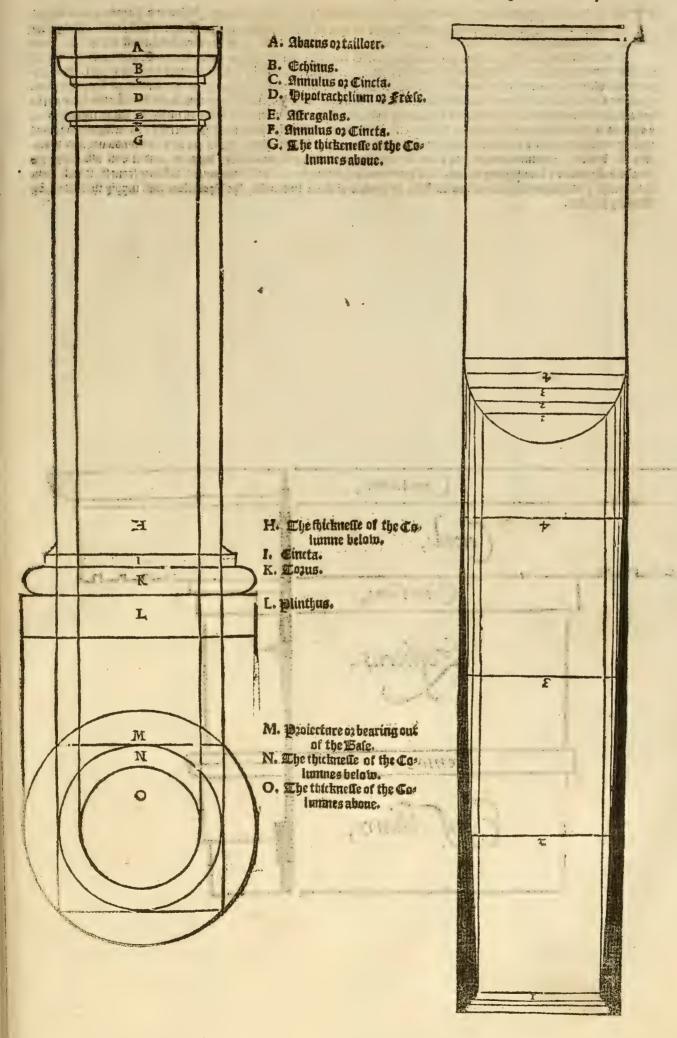




Of the order and maner of Thuscan workes, and the Ornaments thereof.

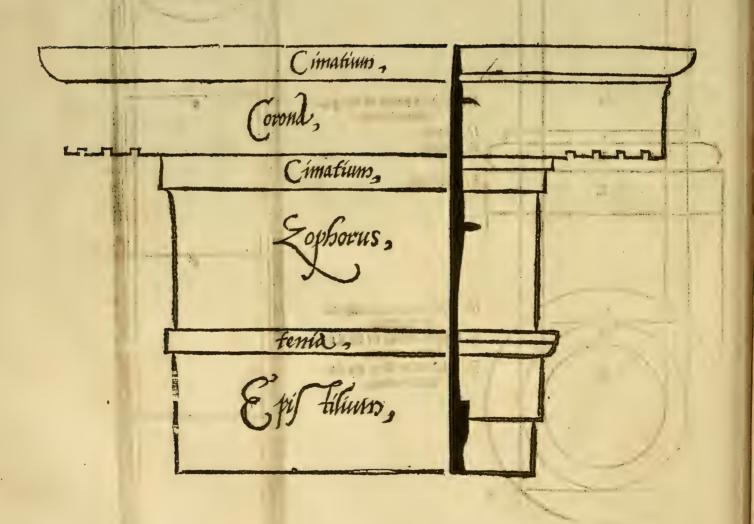
The fift Chapter.

N Vitruuius fourth Booke and sewenth Chapter, we find, that a man should make a Thusean Columne of sewen parts high, with Capitall and Base, which measure should be taken from the shicknesse of the Columne below. The height of the Bases or Basement, should be the halfe of the thicknesse of the Columne, which shall bee devided into two equals parts, whereof one shall be the Plinthus, the other dewided in three, two parts thereof shall bee the Thorus, the third the Cineta. The Proceeture you hall make in this maner: First, make a Circle as great as the Columne is thicke below, placing it in a foure square: without the foure square draw another Circle, close about the corners of the foure square, which shall bee the Projecture. And although all other Bases have their Plinthus sources quare, yet this of Thuscan must be round, as Victuuius teacheth. The height of the Capitall must bee like the Base: that devide into three parts: one part shall be the Abacus: the other shall be denided in four e parts, three for the Echino, the fourth for the Annulo or Cintho, which may be called, a Gir dle, Band, ar Lift in English. The third part resling, shall bee for the Hypotrachelium, or Freefe. The Allragall with the Cincta, is halfe the Freefe; but that denided in three, two shall be for the Round, the third his List, the bearing out must bee as the height: and although this List is here named with the Capitall, yet it is a part of the Columne, which Columne ought to be made thinner aboue a fourth part; also the Capitall in the uppermost part shall not be greater then the Columne below. The maner to lessen the Columne is thus: Let the body of the Columne be decided in three parts: the third part below shall hang at the leade, and the other two third parts you shall devide into as many equall parts as you will: then at the third part of the Columne draw halfe a Circle and from the lines that hang there, from the outtermost corners of the Capitall inwards, measure the eyght part, which in all shall be a fourth part: from under the corner (where the Columne is thinnest) you shall draw two lines by a leade, to the halfe circle, and those parts of the circle outwards, you shall set below, in as many even parts as the two third parts of the Columne holdeth: which being done on both sides , then there shall be as many Paralels or crosse lines, drawen from the one point of the halfe circle to the other, each line being marked with number, from the top downewards, and the like upon the lynes that devide the Columnes; which numbers being orderly placed, then it is certaine, that the first line shall agree with the thinness part of the Columne aboue: after, take the second line of the halfe circle, and set it upon the second line of the Columne, then the third upon the third, and the fourth upon the fourth: when that is done, there must be a lyne drawne from the Base of the halfe circle, to the lyne 4. and from the lyne 4. to the lyne 3. and from the line 3. to the lyne 2. and from the line 2, to the lyne I, also a lyne: and so from the second side of the Columne: and although that the lynes in themselves are right, yet they make a crooked lyne, which the indicious workeman knoweth how to regeire and modevate at his will on all sides in the gathering of the lynes. And although this rule is made for the Thussan Columne, which is less need about a fourth part, yet it may serve for all sorts of Columnes; and the more the deviding of the Columnes and the balfe Circle are in number, fo much the lessening will dimynish,

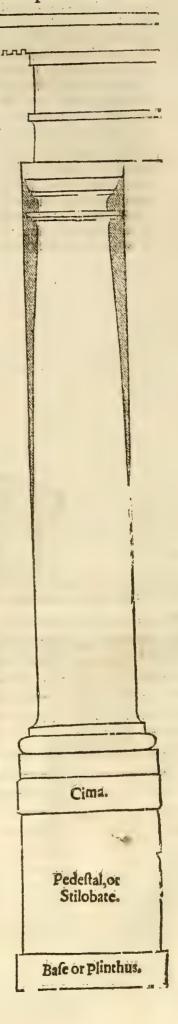


Of the Thuscana

thereen. That Spissolumno, Architrane must be as high as the Capitals, and the Tenia of List, the sixt part there of. That Sophogus of Frese of the same height. The Cornice also, with her members, must be the like: and the same being devided in source parts, one part shall be so, the Cimatic, two parts so, the Corona, and the last so, the Facie binder the same. The Projecture of bearing out of them all, must be at least so much as their height. And brider in the Corona you may cut channels of hollowings, great of small, as the worke is, at the pleasure of the workman. But, so that this worke is grosse, and plaine of members, a man (in my opinion) may take boon him to adde some parts but oit, which may same to belong but the same; which must be done when men destre to make the worke their better, as you sein this herebuder set dolume. I commend also those crownes that have most Projecture of bearing out, without their sourcesquares; especially, when the stones are sit to beare it? Which Projectures are both commodicus, and beartise the worke it commodicus in this, that the walking place byon them will be broader, and it will also keepe the worke from water: beautisping in this, that when men behold the worke with convenient desame from it, it will she we the greater; and where the stenes best scanted, by reason of their smalnesse, the Broicecture will supply that want, by shewing greater.

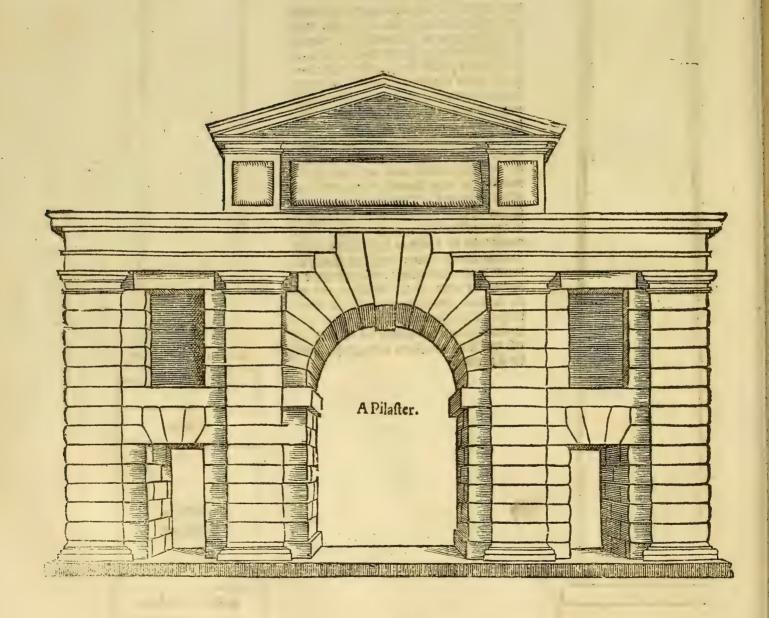


Lihough I faid before, that the Whulcan Coiumne (according to Vicruuius rule) ought to be offenen Diameters high, with Bales and Capitals, which proportion is approued god; neuerthelelle, for that the first Columnes (as you have heard in mp small Boke) were made in fire parts, taking the measure from mens fet, which is the firt part of the fame: And alfo, for that & Columnes called Dogica, arenow of feuen parte, the ancient workmen having another part buto them, to heighten them, therefore, in my opinion, by the same author ritie, for that the Thuscan Columne is Arons ger then the other, Jiudge, it might be made lower then the Dozica; and, by my aduice, be made but of fire parts, with Bales and Capitals, this you may hold for a commen rule. And, for that neither Vicruuius, nor any of ther workeman that I have fene, have fet bolone no rule for the Stilobato or Pedelfal, and in Antiquities, as far as Ican fe, were by workemen made, as noceditie required; whether it were for rayling of Columnes, or to agoing by with flavres, to Galleries, or by any other occasions: Therefore, not being copelled thereunto, 3 am of opinion, that enery workeman thould to each hind of Columne let a concenient and femely Pedes Mall, as reason requireth, and as bee leeth eaufe. It is certaine and well knowne, that the Pedeckall at least must bee fouresquare; that is, the body thereof, without Bale of Cime, therfore the Thulcan Columne being the belt of all, the Pedestall thereof ought to be a perfect fourefquare: the forepart thereof ought to be as broad as the Plinthus of the Bale of the Columne: the height hould bea denided into foure parts, one part whereof thall be fet bnoer, for the Plinthus, and one for the Cime, which members thall be bucut: so then, if the Columne bee of fire parts, the Stilobato oz Peveffall Chail bee of fire parts also in it selfe, according to the proportion of the Columne.



Of the Thuscana

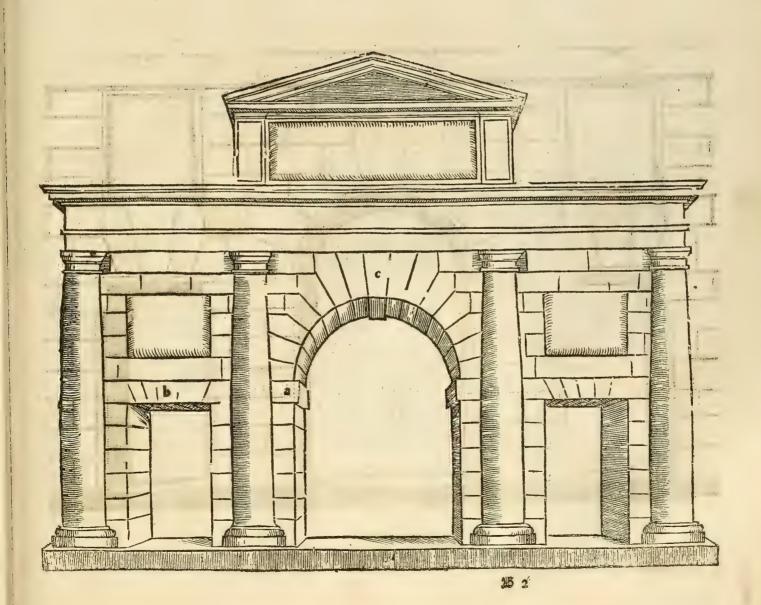
Anot, at this time, thew how men thould place the Gates of Townes and Forts, with their floes, places to lay out Cannons, with other circumflances of defence, leaving such care to the workemen belonging to warres, according to the fituation and accidents of time and place. But I will thew you, that when the Gates of the Citie, Towne or Fortresse are placed, how men, in my opinion, should let them forth, setting down some Figures thereof. You must be be then, that each Gate or Porte van Secourse, which are the Italian maner, and ought, of necessity, to have a Posterne Gate, which are ralled Porten van Secourse, which are the small Ports on the sides. But to observe the Semetry, that is, as one measure, they ought to be made in this manner. The measure of the Gate is thus, as much as the bredth of the light shall be for the halfe whereof shall serve for the height. The bredth of the light is decided into sire parts, whereof one part shall be for the bredth of the Pilasters on cyther side of the Gate: the stat of the Pilaster shall be as broad as the third part of the light, and the height, with Capitals and Bases. The height of the Bales shall be a third part of the bredth of the Pillates, and so much also the Capitals, observing the rule set down in the first Columne. That Opstodian, Zophorus, and Corona shall be altogether of such height, as the bredth of the Pillates, by the rule asserband. Bestwane the one Pillate and the other, the Posternes or small Gates shall bee, and the widenesse shall be as broad as the stat Pillates. The height shall be twice as much as the bredth: the Pilasters shall be the third part of the say Posterne. The elevation or rapsing by aboue the gate, shall bee at the workemans will. But the proportion of the Fastigies or Frontilpicie (which is called with be, the spanning, cover, or rose) I will she in two sorts in the order of Dorica.



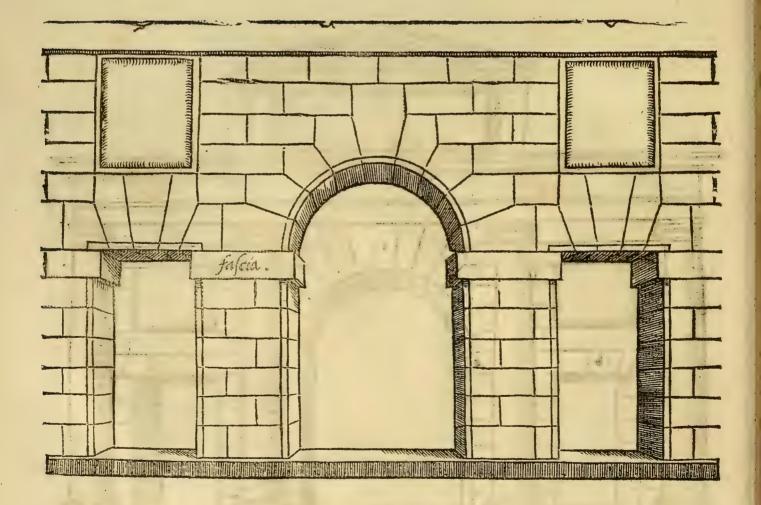
The fourth Booke

The fift Chapter. Fol, 6

A Towns, or Fortrelle, may be set out in this maner, observing this rule: that so do as the going through of the Gate is, the height hall be as much, and halfe as much agayne, that is, 2. parts in breath, and 3. parts in height. The Pilatters that he the 8. part of the widenesse of the Tate: and the Columnes kand so the round Columnes and sat Pillars, being the south part of the Bate. But so, that the Columnes is a third part set into the wall, and is bound sat with other kones, more so, their then bearing, it is to be made 7. parts high, and also of 8. at the workenans will, which will set swith the Sate with more their. The widenesse of the Posterne shall be the halfe of the middle Sate, the Pilatters also sat the greater) that is the halse. The height thereof shall be such as the Facie that beareth the Arch, and it shalbe the Supercitie, or Architrave thereof, as we call it: and if you find not a stone all of one piece if so, it, then you shall make the Cunei or Denmants as you see them heere in the Figure. And thus the proportion of the Posterne shall be a that is, 3. parts in bredth, and 5. of the like parts in height. The Cunci or Pennants of the Arch, shall be 15. In the Bases, Capitals, Architrave, Frese, and Cornice, you must observe the rule asorelayd; and the clevation in the middle shall be at the workemans will, as I sayd of the other: and all such workes, the groser they be made, and bost out, the stronger tyer are so, so, tinked as I sayd of the other: and all such workes, the groser they be made, and bost out, the stronger tyer are so, so, tinked as I sayd of the other: and all such workes, the groser they be made, and bost out, the stronger tyer are so, so, tinked as I sayd of the other: and all such workes, the groser they be made, and bost out, the stronger tyer are so, so, tinked as I sayd of the other: and all such workes, the groser they be made, and bost out, the stronger tyer are so, so, tinked as I sayd of the other.



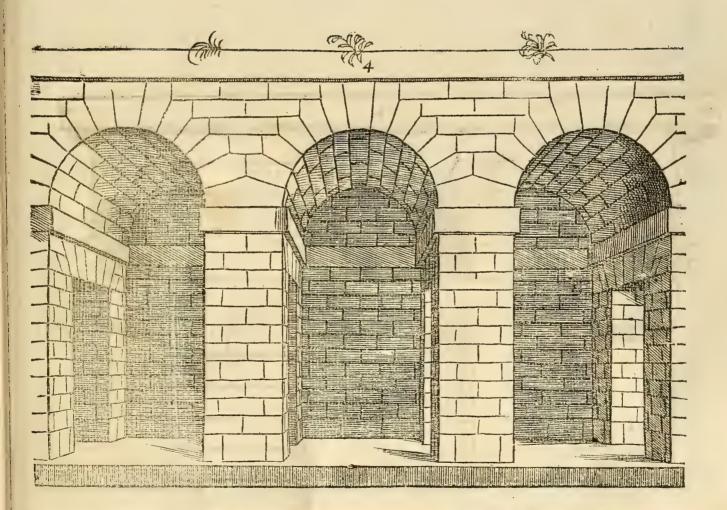
Pan may make Gates of Tolomes and Forts in another maner, both playner and kronger, following the order bereunder let downe: and the proportion or the wideness of the Gate thall be as much as the height is doner the Facie, which beareth up the roofe: and from the Facie upwards, as much higher as the halfe Ciccle; yet alwayes at the workemans will to be increased or diminished, and especially, as he is by accident restrayned. Whe two Possiners are to be made, as I have before shewed: Their wivenesses which height shall be destroyed. Their wivenesses which height shall be doubled with the brooth, and the Facie, which beholdes she arch, shall allo hold up the Canei of the small Gates. Post must were take such order, that the Facie shwing through, should bee the Supercisie, which, as I sayd, may bee altered at the will of the workeman, without altering them from the Figure.



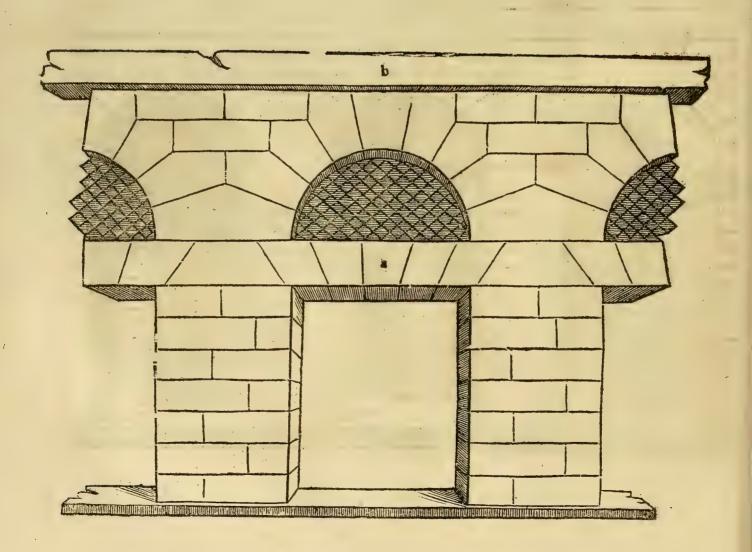
The fourth Booke.

The fift Chapter. Fol. 7

Juers kinds of examents, many times, put the workeman in mind of things which he peraduenture would not have thought of: Therefore the Figure enfaing will serve the workeman to god end in building, as occasion thall serve so a place to stand driefle, where the wall being of a good thicknesse, this worke within it would first serve so a place to stand drief, making the walking place about broader; and easily so defence in time of warre: and so worke fecuritie, it might within be filled by with earth. It might also be the workemans chance, to build about an Hill: and to free himselse thereof from the waters, that alwayes with the raybe fall from it, smake the earth to sinke, it is therefore necessary so the workeman to set the like buildings against such an Hill, whereby he shall be assued from such sufficient, and it will also be a great strengthening to the worke. The like invention Raphael Durbin bled at Monte Mario, a little about Rome, in the Universal of Clement the senenth, by him begun in the time of the Carbinal Icronimi Genga: and without Pisera, so the desence of water against a Hill, was made the like.



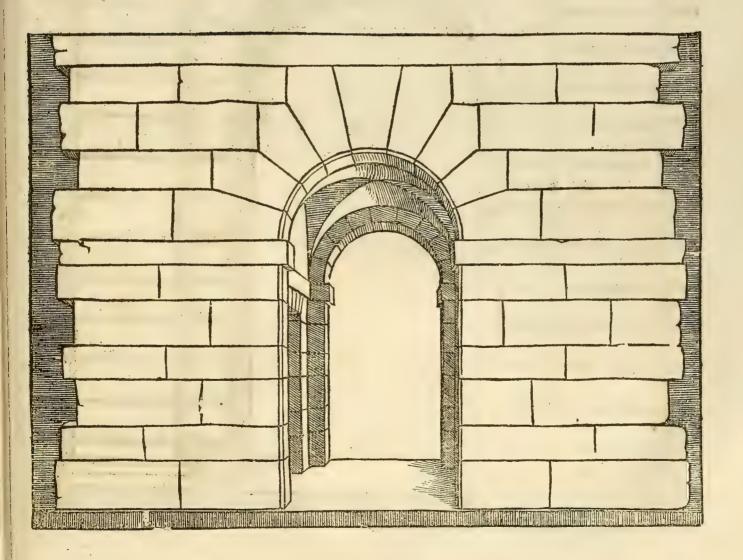
Acient workensen, in this kind of rulticall worke, have bled many and leverall kinds of Buildings, as you may like hereunder, wherewith a workenson may helpe himselse in many things, as necessite requireth: the measure shall be, that the light shall be a persect sourcequare, and the wall between both, shall be a sourth part less. That Supercitie or Architrauc, shall have the sourch part of the light, and hall be made of Pennants which run vposi the Center in bucquall numbers: and about the Supercitie shall be layd an halse Circle, denided in nine equall parts, the lines being also drawne byon the Center. The Cunet or Architone being sounced, and the three pieces layd between it, with the Facic about it, will in this sorthe an everlasting worke. But sorthat the Cunei of the Architraue must lye sast, it shall be needfull to sill the halse Circle with Brickes. And sorthe more beautisping, you may be knotes, as the ancients vsed to doe, as you may, at this day, sain Kome at S. Cosmians and Damian; which, although the sones be old, yet it is very strong.



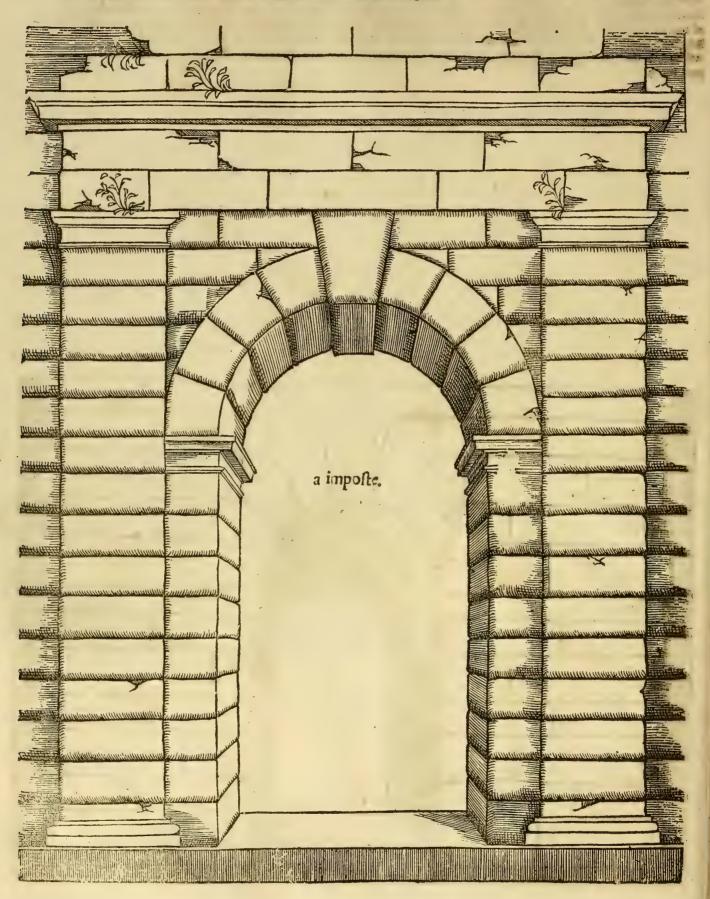
The fourth Booke.

The fift Chapter. Fol.8

S in the beginning Jaid, the workeman may vie this Bate in vivers places, but not for Fortrelles, for the pakfage through serves not for Artillerie, or other great preparation so wars; neverthelesse, this part may well serve for the outtermost Port or Bate: The proportion shall be, that the light or opening shall be twice so high as the bredth. The Archisones of the halfe Circle shall be nine; drawing upon the Center of the Circles. The Facie before the Archisold be the seventh part of the Bates; from the Facie downewards to the Pavement, shall be venthed into seven parts and anhalse, and shall be sire stones broad: three subjects, shall be each a part and an halse, the other three of one part; and thus the seven parts and anhalse are devided. The height of the middlemost Archisone, or the closurg stone, which you will, shall be halse as broad as the Bate. The Facie above the Archisone, must bee as broad as a set, that is, the thimself part of the sayd Stone; but the middlemost Archisone, and also the sore, shall be asourth part broad.



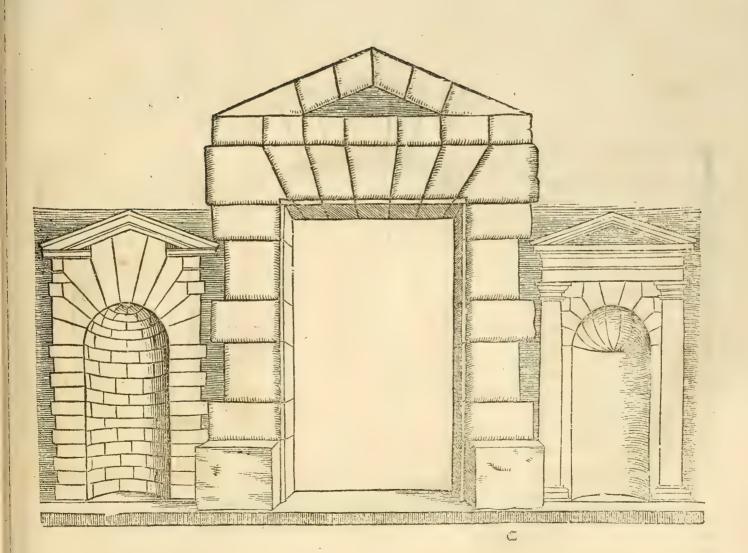
The proportion of this Sate, viz. the opening is twife as high as broad: the Pilaster and the Arch are a fift part of the breath of the light: the great Pillar shall be once so broad againe, and the beight of sire breaths. The height of the Base shall be a sourth part, and the Capitall a third part, and to great the Capitall or impost oncer the Arch Chall bee. The Frace in the place of the Architraus shall be as high as the Capitals: the Frace also as much, and also the Cornice, following the rule asoresayd: the rest may bee sound with the Compasse.



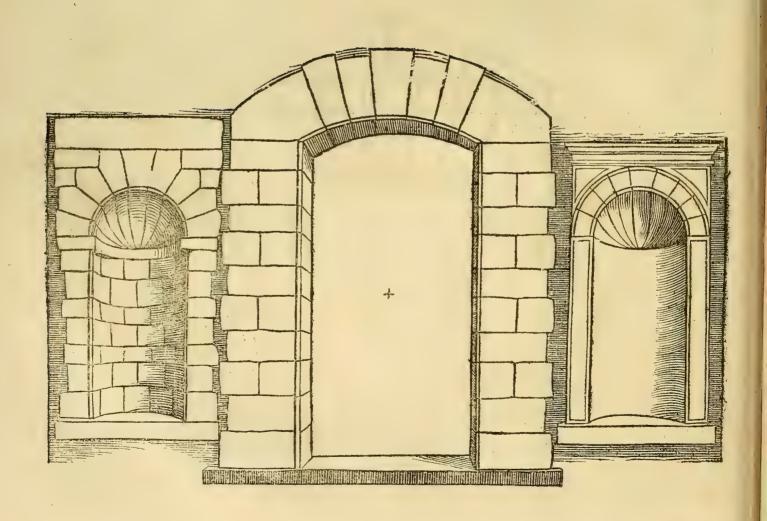
The fourth Booke.

The fift Chapter. Fol. 9

Athough the Bate herennder set downe is much different from the fathion of the rest, yet, so that it is Thuscan worke, and ancient, I thought god to set it here, the which, in somer time, was in kiome; En Capo de la milicia staiana, although by the decayes thereof, now not to bee sene: the two Piches or seates that kiand by it on the stoes, are out of their places, with which the ingenious workeman may serve his turne withall, if he place them where they should kand. The proportion of them (by the rule asortage, may easily be sound: touching the gate it selfe, I will set downe no measure, so, it is bery ease to be sound.



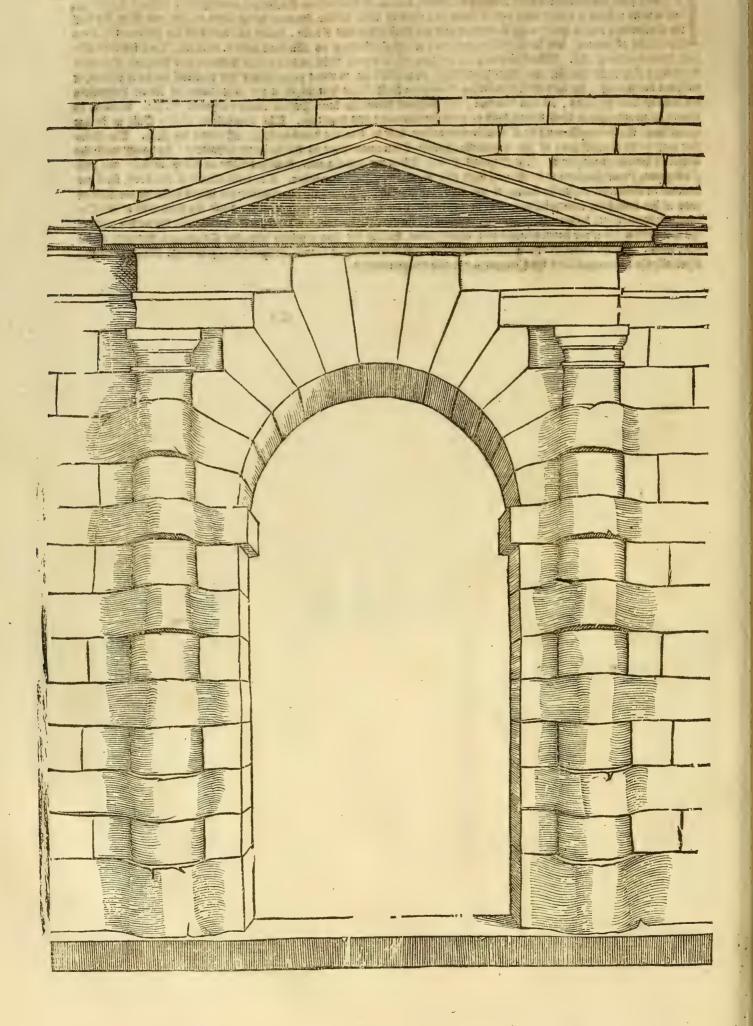
His maner of Gale is esucced by the firt part of the Circle, and is very krong worke, yet the Pennants will not agric with other Buildings of Stone: therefore if a man will make fuch worke, it would kan dwell in a wall of Bruke. Touching the proportion, I will not speake, so, that it is case with a Compass to find the measure thereof. But the Piches or seates, placed by it to sill op the place, the workernan may, at his pleasure, set where he thinketh best, and they may not onely serve for Piches, but also for windowes: if they should beedsed for Piches to place Amages therein, it is necessary, that the height should exceed the pouble proportion of the breath or somewhat more, that they may be more sit and correspondent so Images to Canoin, which is alwayes reserved to the workeman.



The fourth Booke.

The fift Chapter. Fol. to

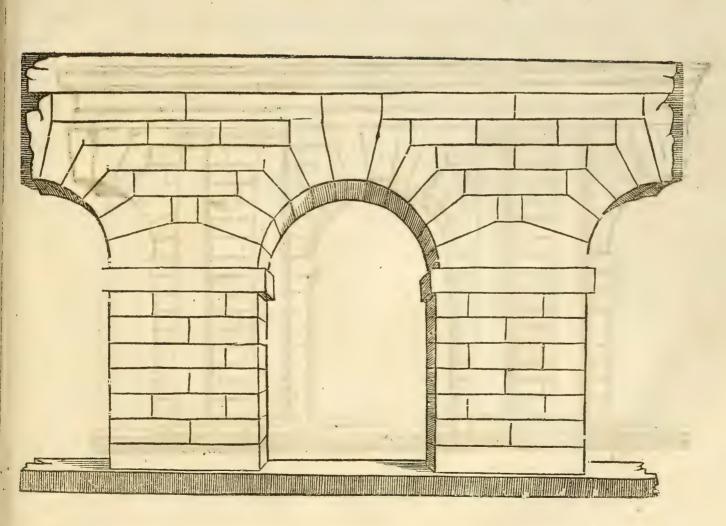
1 p times pall, the Romanes vied to mingle Dorica, Zonica, and cometime Corinthia, among their ruftical buildings, but it is no errour, if a man mire one of them in a piece of rube worke, hewing in the fame, nature and Arte, for that the Colmmes mired with rough Kones, as also the Architrane and Frale, being corrupted by the Bennants, thew the worke of nature: but the Capitals, and part of the Columnes, as also the Comice, with the Frontsspice or Benell, thew works of Art. Which mirture, in my concept, is a good fight, and in it selfe sheweth good arength, therefore fitter for a Fortrelle then for any other Building: neuertheleffe, in what place focuer the rufficall worke is placed, it will not doe amille. In fuch mirtures Iulius Romanus tooke moze beilight, then any other man, as Rome witnetteth the same in sunden places, as also Maneua, and without Rome, the fayze Palace called vulgariter El. Te. Willich, in trueth, is an example in these dayes, both of good Architecture and paynting. The proportion of this Gate is to be made thus: the widenelle mult be of double proportion, that is, twice to broad as high, tul under the Arch. The Pilather thall be the sewenth part of the widenesse, and the Columnes twice as thicke as the Pilasters: the height with the Capitall Mall be epght parts. The Capitall, Freele, Achitraue and Cognice, thail bee made as is lago before: allo, the Fakigium, Frontispicium orthe Genell Mall also bee theived in Dorica order. The halfe Circle of the Arch, Chall bee Denived in eleuen parts, for the flones of the Arch ; but the cloung flone thall bee greater: the which flone the workeman map, at his will, hang somewhat out. The Facte which doeth behold the Arch, Chall bec halfe the thickness of the Columines: from thence boime wards, pou hall beuide it into nine parts, whereof two parts thall bee for the nether part of the Columnes, the other feuen benided into equall parts, hall be the Comes which bino the Columnes, draining croffe over them. And the rubelyer this worke is bolled out (vet artificially) it would, in that case, thew more workemanlike, especially the stones that bind the Columnes and also the Pennants.



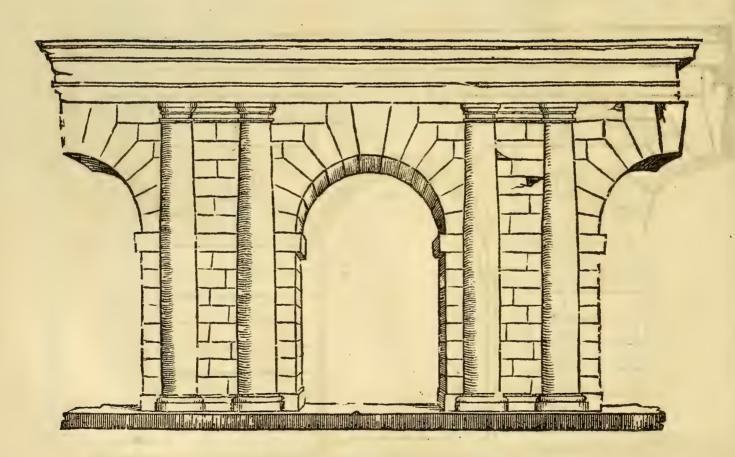
The fourth Booke. The fift Chapter. Fol, 11

T is not lufficient that the worke thould be throng, but it must also be made artificially, so please mens sight. Where fore this building of stone is not onely very strong, but also ingenious and pleasing: with which invention, the works man may ferue his turne in many things. The proportion hall be, that the openneds in the breath, hall be once, and halfe as much as in height: the halfe Circle is deutoco into 9. parts and anhalfe, because the middlemost some fourth part broader then the rest. The height of the closing Cone, is halfe the opennesse of the light. The flat facte by holding the Arth, is the strength form the facte downelvards are 7. parts made: the facte about the pants, chalbe as broad as the closing Cone broker it is, which may be made hanging out underneath the eight part of his broth. Touching the binding of the other Cones with the Pennants, you se it playnely in the Figure. a figo athemas (over 1 and english and englishe did engl

ार देव को संदर्भ हुन हुन हुन हुन हुन के दार को कहा को देव को देव सुद्देश को स्वर्ध के को देव हैं हैं हैं के देव

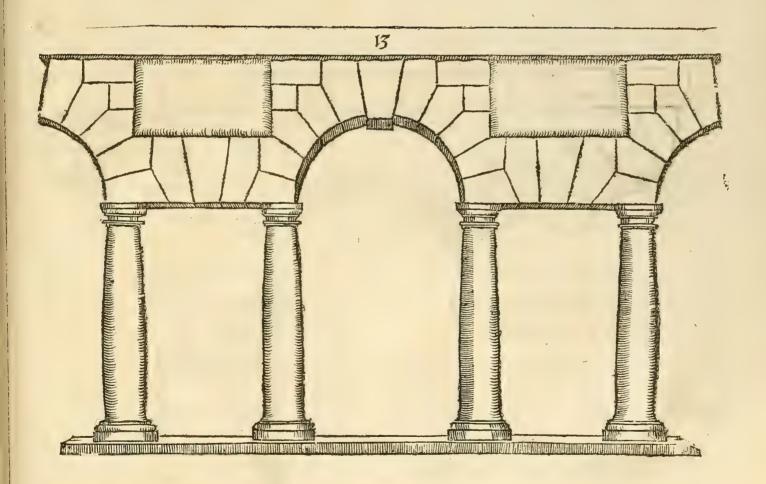


De that pleasure is sometimes turned into beautisping, and sometimes to opnaments surpassing necessitie, to she'ver, according to the wealth of the builder: This invention is made so pleasure, strength and beautie: so pleasure, in regard of the opennesse thereof: strength, so that betwirt both, there is good store of wall, well bound together; and so beautie, because it is rich of opnaments; with which invention a workeman may helpe himselfe much, in divers things, as I have save. The proposition thereof shall bee, that the closed or massic worke shall bee as broad as the opening: which opening shall be of twice so much height. The Pitalters shall be the eyght part of the inioc. nece, and the Columnes the south part. The inter-Columnes, that is, the wideness between the two Columnes, shall be the thickeness of one Columnes. The height of the Columnes, with Bales and Capitals, shall be of eyght parts. In the Architranc, Fráse, Cornice, Bale and Capitall, the rule asortsays shalls observed. The Pennants and other bindings are some in the Figure: and although the Columnes surpasse the rule two parts; yet, because they stand nare together, and are made sall in the worke, more so, beautic then account, it may passe well inough, by the authoritie of an eight workemen.

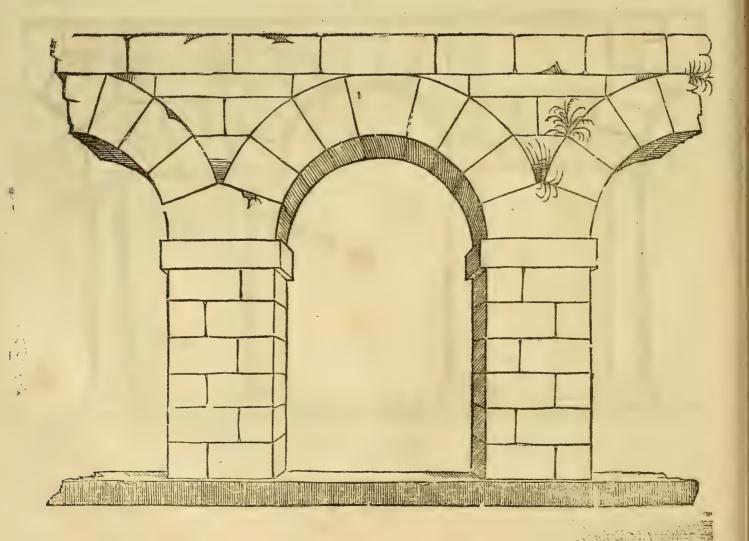


The fift Chapter. Fol. 12

T is an excellent thing in a workeman to be full of invention, in regard of the divertitie of accidents which belong tonto building: for sometimes a man shall find Core of Columnes, but so low or short, that they serve not for that purpose, for which men would be them donto, unleas the workeman devise some meanes to helpe them. Therefore, it the Columne be not so high as it will reach to the Facie, that specifies yende of this Gallery, then with these maner of Pennants a man may rayle it higher, if on both sides it hath goo strong houlders: touching the waycht about, it will be very chargeable, therefore to make it without binding of iron barres, it would not be sure: but it is lesse to be seared, if the Gallery were not so broad, but that it might be covered with Cones that were all of one piece, or else to make strong beames therein. The proportion hereof shall be, that the widenesse of the Arches shalbe the thicknesse of 4. Columnes, and the height twise as much. The least space betweene the Columnes, shall be of the thicknesse of 3. Columnes, and the height, of the thicknesse of 6. Columnes, and each widenesse shall be once agains as high as broad. The Columnes, if they be over-burdened with wayght, should be of the measure before set down; the read of the first Columne. Figure: but touching Bases and Capitals, I have says sufficient at the lirth, in the treaty of the first Columne.

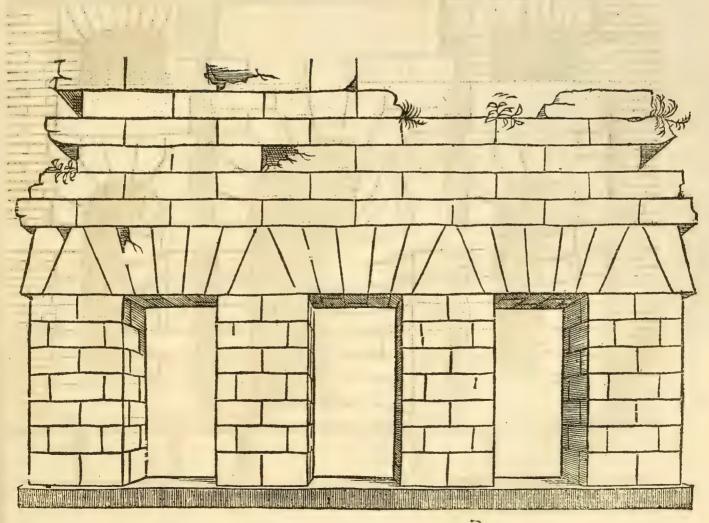


Sthis Arch is very frong, confidering the concordance of the vinding, so also it is ingenious and pleasing to vicir. Which invention that not onely serve for Galleries of such trocke, but for Fritzes over kines; Conduits to carry water from one Hill by to another, and so to a Contuit. The propertion is, that the widenesse from one Pilaster to another, and also the height, shall be to the Facie that beareis the Arch. The Facie shall be the senenth part of that widenesse or height: from the Facie cownews was as senided into five parts: the halfe Circle into nine parts and a quarter; sor the closing some is the sourch part more than the other: the rest may be sound with the Compasse.



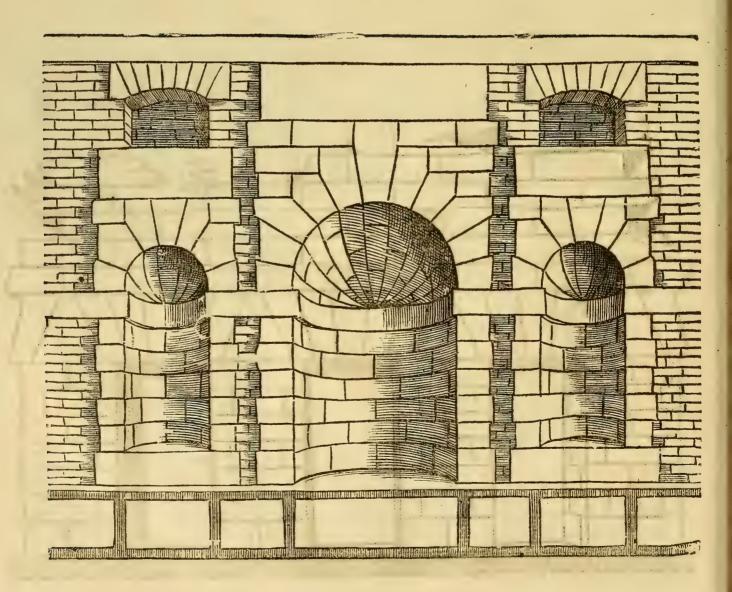
The fourth Booke. The fift Chapter. Fol. 13

I T may cometimes fall out, that a workeman thould need many holes in great walles, for the building of his Pouce, inhereunto this worke belongeth, to carry the wayght for Arengthening thereof: and were there not so much need of light, some of them might be filled by with Bricke. The proportion thall be this, that the space of the lights and the make wall, wall be both of like bredth, and twice so high as broad, although all such things are to bee increased and of minished at the workemans pleasure. The like worke is yet to be seen in Rome, being not very old made, but such as are in these dayes made, and Aronger. The example whereof is at S. Cosmas and Damianus.



Of the Thuscana a short of a

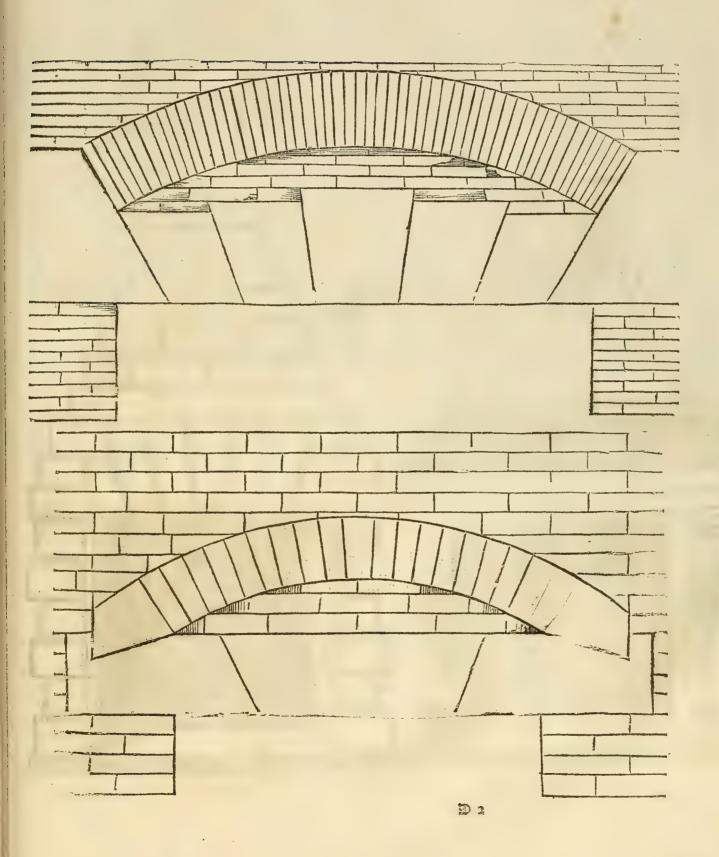
I is faid, that light prefernes memory, whereby oftentimes that is made, which workenen would not have made, if it had not beene made before in some other place, and so, at some times, you thall so in a Court or elsewhere a side of a Mall, that shall have nepther Doze nor Alindows in it, and yet it is well set on the this ride maner and booth kind of worker by which invention, a workeman may beloe himselse: In which places a workeman may set I mages, or other reliques of Antiquitie. Douching the measures and proportion thereof, I will not set it downs, so I leave it to the workeman so, to beighten or make broad, as occasion serveth.



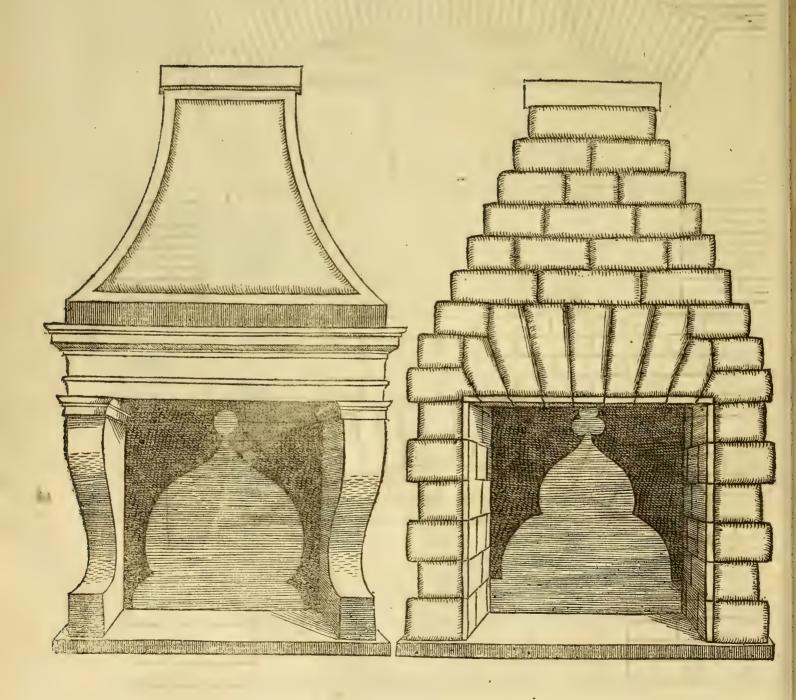
The fourth Booke.

The fift Chapter. Fol. 14

De that the most part of the Supercilies or Architeaucs, as we call them, that are let over Tates or other things, by reason of the inivenes (if homes be not of a good bignesse) may yield to the waight, whereby in time, they breake and veray, as you may six in many places: Therefore you hall, although it beein great vistance (so that the should been on the sides be strong) make such works of pieces, as hereunder are in divers wages set volume: which, with and vould, will be very strong; and the heavier the waight is above, the longer it will last.



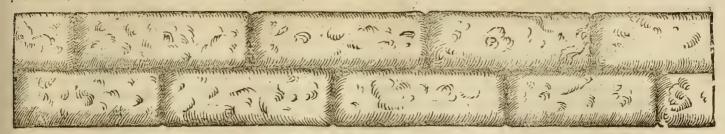
Ithough that in Victuuius writings there is no mention made in what maner men in ancient times made places in Palaces and common houses to make are in, yet men find in olds buildings some thew of Chimneyes, to give a way to boyd smoke, neyther can I find by any workeman the truth of any such matters: neverthelese, for that men many yeres suce have bled, not onely to make fires in Palles and Chambers, for their ease, but are also wont to make divers ornaments in, and over such places; and so, that I intend in this Boke to speake of all the Dinaments that a workeman may have ease to be in building, therefore I will thew some formes of Chimneyes or fire places, after the Thusan maner, as halbe needfull in such buildings: the one delicately made without the wall, the other rusticall worke, made within the wall.



The fourth Booke.

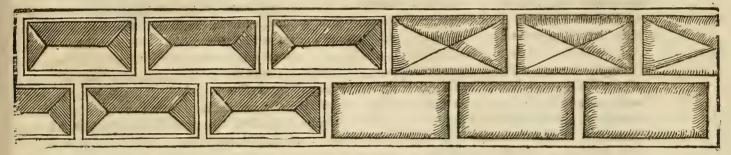
The fift Chapter. Fol, 15

The first radicall works were made in this manner, that is, pieces of stone roughly between out; but the tograing together were propositionably made.

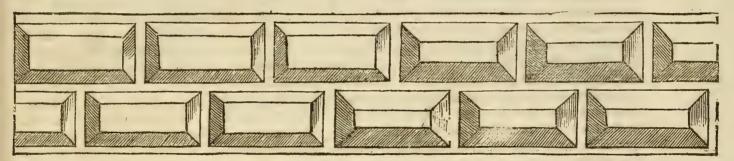


After, they denided the Cones in more proportion and Chew, with flat like, and for more beautic, and for ornaments fake made thefe croffes in them.

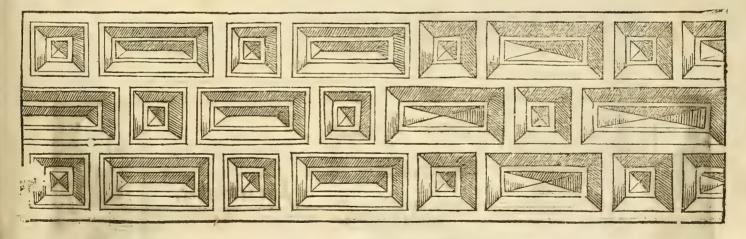
Dther luothemen brought in lurought Diamonds, and made them decently in this manner.



And in processe of time, things aftered: workenen, for flat Diemonds, let flat tables, and rayled them somewhat higher, as in this Figure is to be sens.



Some other workemen bled more differences and læmelyer worke, nevertheleste, all such workes have their original from rusticall worke, which is pet commonly called, Works with populs of Diamonds.



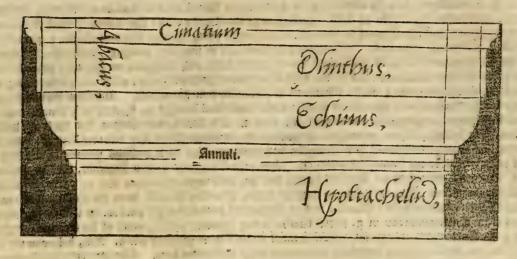
Hiere endeth the maner of Chuscan worke, and now followeth the order of Dorica:

The maner of Dorica, and the Ornaments thereof.

The fixt Chapter.

He Ancients (as we have heard) considering the state of their gods, ordained Dorica worke, and dedicated the same to Inpiter, Mars, and Hercules: but we build Temples, and dedicate them to Christ, Paul, Gregory, and such holy personages, that were not onely professed Souldiers, but also valiantly and boldly lost their lines, and shed their bloud for the faith of CHRIST. All such belong to Dorica, and not to their gods onely, but to men of armes, and strong personages, being of qualitie more or lesse: for whom, if a workeman make or build honses or palaces, they must be Dorica: and the nobler the man is for whom such worke is done, the stronger and statelyer they ought to be; and the more effeminate that they are, the more slenderer and pleasanter the building shall be, as I will shew when time scrueth, But now we will come to the maner of the worke. Vitruuius | peaketh of this Dorica worke, in his fourth Booke and third Chapter: but touching Bases of Columnes, hee speaketh thereof in his third Booke; although some are of opinion, that he speaketh & meaneth of the Bales of Corinthia, for that they have bene much vsed on the Corinthia Columnes, and Ionica. And some also thinke, that Dorica Columnes had no Bases, having respect to many ancient buildings; as the Theater of Marcellus, one of the fayrest workes in Italy, being the middle downewards Dorica: which Columnes had no Bales, the body of the Columnes resting vpon a step, without any other support. There is at Carcer Tulliano the signes of a Doricall Temple, the Columnes whereof are without Bases. You may also see in Verona an Arch tryumphant, of Dorica worke, where the Columnes are without Bases. Neuerthelesse, for that workemen haue in sormer times made the Corinthia Bases in another maner, as I will shew hereaster: Therefore I affirme, that the Bases Atticurga, which Vitrusius, in his third Booke, so nameth, are the Dorica Bales: and this weefee, Bramant hath observed in his Buildings which he made in Rome: which Bramant, being the light and Inventor of good and true Architecture, which from Antiquitie to his time (being vnder Pope lulius the second) had beene hidden, we ought to beleeue. Then this Base of Dorica shall be the height of halfe the thicknesse of a Columne: the Plinthus the third part of his height: of the rest there shalle foure parts made; one shall be for the Thorus aboue: the other three shall be set in 3. euen parts: the one for the Thorus aboue, the second for the Trochile or Scotia: but the same being deuided in seuen parts, one part shall be the vppermost lift, and another the vndermost. The Proiecure or bearing out of the Base, shall be of halfe the height, and so shall the Plinthus of each Facie hold a thicknesse and a halse of the Columne. And if the Base standeth below our fight, the corner vnder the vppermost Thorus, (being of it selfe darkened) ought to bee somewhat lower then the other. But if the Base standeth about our sight, the corner about the nethermost Thorus (also of it selse darkened) (hall be greater then the other. Thereto also the Scotia, darkened by the Thorus, in such case shalbe made more then the measure appoynted. And in such cases the workeman must be judicious and wary, as Vitruuins would have him to be elearned in the Mathematicall science, that doth study his Booke.

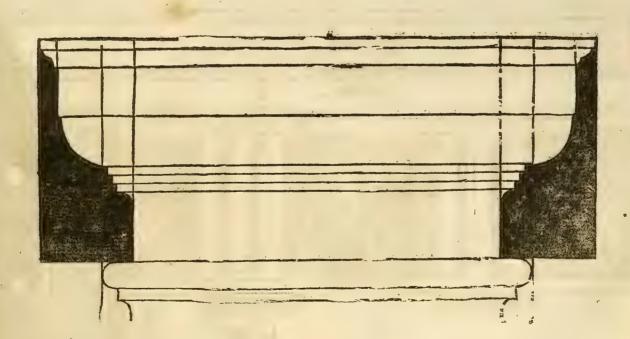
Torus Superior.	
Scotia Supercitium, Sine trochili	us,
Scotia 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3 3	
Plinthus.	



Po for that Vicrouius hath denided this order of Dorica by models, making the Columne of two models in thick nells, and the height with Capitals and Wales of 14. Hodels; so then, the height of the Wase is a Woodel: the bodie of the Columne is 12. models; and the Capitall one modell, which is 14. models in all: The height of the Capitall hall be denided in 3. parts, whereof one shall be for the Plinthus, or Abacus, wherein also the Cimatic is to be vodershood: the second, the Columne with the Annulo: the third, the Popotrachilo or Frase, which Popotrachilo shall bee in thickenesse the Art part less then the Columne below. The breath of the Capitall in the popermost part shall be in each Facic 2. Podels and a sixt part: and this is according to Virousus writing. Although Jam of opinion, that this place is falsifyed touching the Projecture, which, in effect, is very lame, in respect of that we see in Antiquities; therefore, after this Capitall, I will make another after my santasse, with the particular measures thereof, better described, for that Virousus woeth it to briefly.

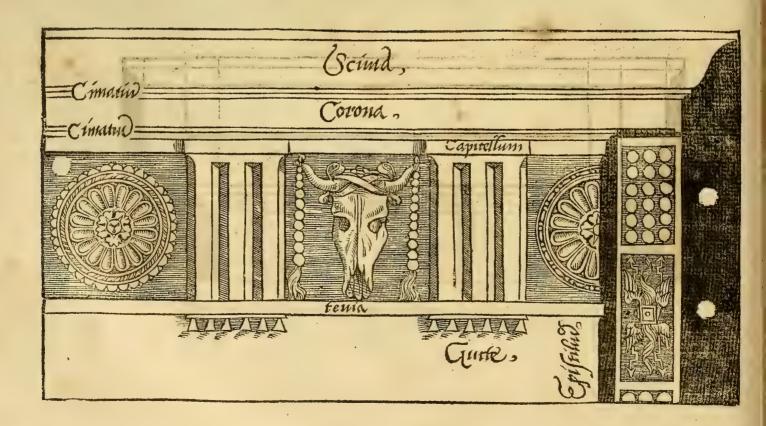
The Capitall being decided into 3. parts, as Flayd before, Flay also, that the Plinthus or Abacus should also be decided in 3. parts, one part for the Cimatic with her kule, Lift, or Fillet: but the same thicknessed conided in 3. shall bee the Lift, and the other two the Cimatic. The Echinus shall also be decided in 3, parts, and 2, third parts being sor the Echinus, and the rest sor the Annulo, which shall also be decided in 3, parts, giving each of them one. The Frese shall bee as the others. The Projecture of each part shall be like the height: and so doing, it shall bee made by more cere

tainerules, better, and more easily for their.

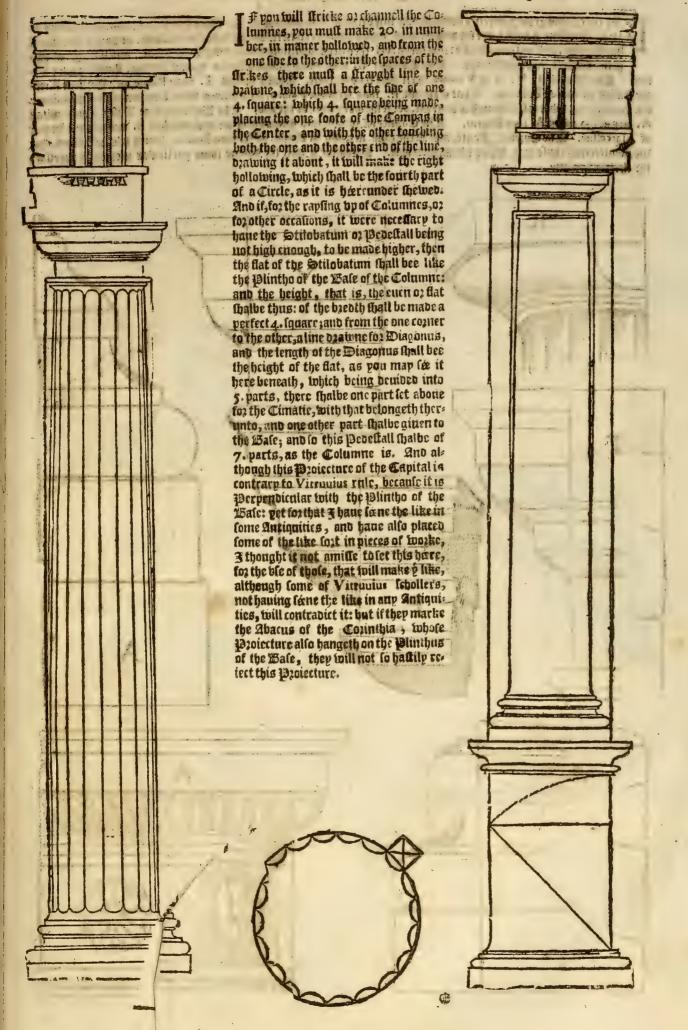


Of the Dorica

Pon the Capitall you place the Epititia or Architrane, the height whereof hall be one Podell, and venided in 7 parts, one thall be the Tenia or Lik: the Guites or small Liks where the Tenia (which Virtuoius nameth Sub tenia) are in all, the firt part of a modell: which height being denided into 4 parts, the 3 parts thall bee the Guites, and the other the Lik. The Guttes thall bee fire in number, hanging where the Arightphes. The beight of the Arightphes or Arightphes hall be one Podell and an halfe, and the breath one Podell: which breath denided in 12. on exther floc there thall be one left for the hall be the flocence or pollowings in the middle. And from the one Trigliphes, and 4 for the Channels or hollowings in the middle. And from the one Trigliph to the other, there thall be the thace of a Addell and a halfe: which space thall be right 4. square (by Virtuoius named, Pettopha.) In which spaces, as you please, you may set, cut, or grave, Ore heads, both Dishes; and that, not without secret signification. For in ancient time, when the babelexuing solke facrificed Oren, they also been differed their Capitals; the height whereof shall be one firt part of a Podell. About the Trigliphs or their Capitals, the Corona must bee placed with 2. Cimaties, the one about, the other balous and they both sogether denided into 5, parts, 3, sor the Corona, and two for the Cimaties. But the height of them all, shalle of halfe a Podell: not the Corona, you must place the Social two for the Corona shall be of 3, parts: two be in one Podell: in the ground of the Corona, right about the Trigliphes, the Guttes were orderly set, as you see them in the Figure hanging bester. Also, between the Trigliphes are cut Fulmines, that is, swinged lightning: or you may leave the spaces bare. The Procedure of bearing out of the Social must be like the beight thereof: caen so, each part of the bearing out of the Corona shall have their Procedure like theight. But the more Procedure the Corona hall be shered when time servet, both in Figure and

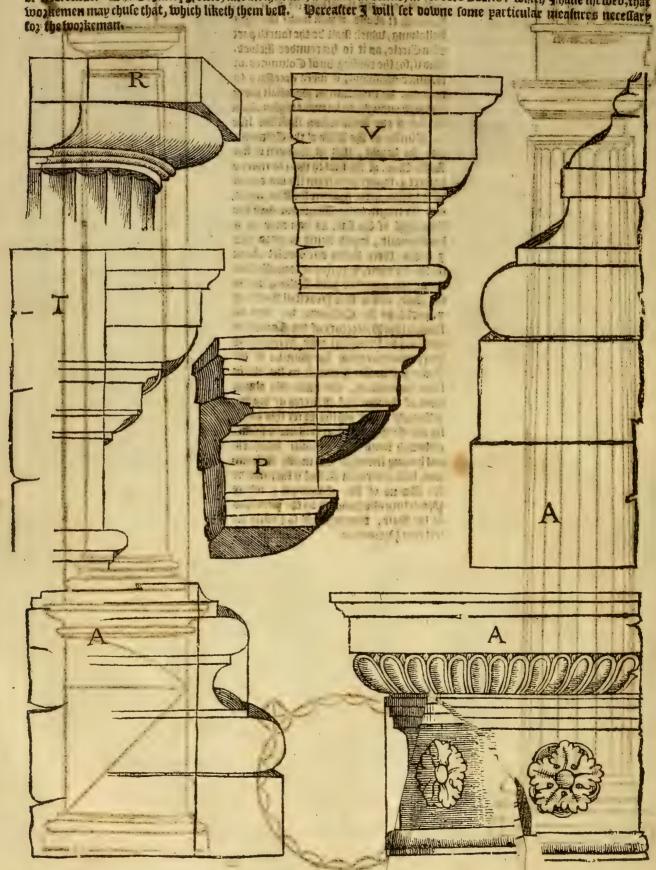


The fourth Booke, The fixt Chapter, Fol. 17

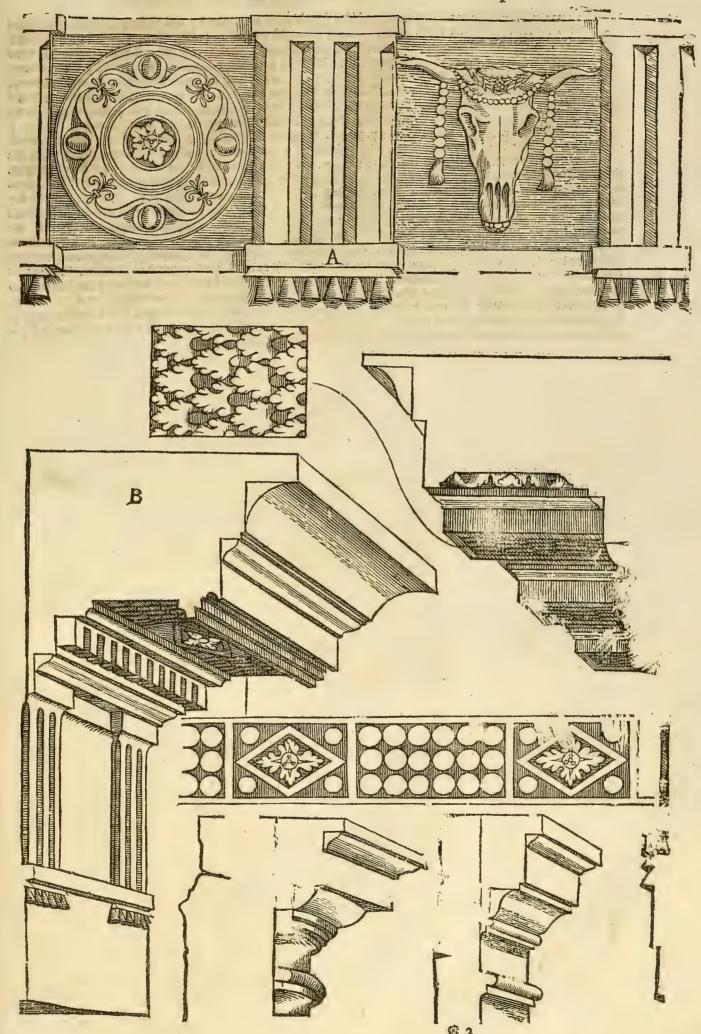


Called Tonger laxif of Of the Dorica rised thruch will

De that I smo great dissertice betweene the westings of Victories, and the things of Rome, and other places of Icely; therefore I have here set so we some some, which are yet extant in works to be some; which, although they bee of simpliforms, without numbers or measures, yet they are proportioned according to the great, and with great dillegence reduced into small some. The Capitall R. was sound without Rome by on a Litting, flanding once Tiber. That Capitall V. is in Verona, in an Arch tryumphant. That Capitall T. is in Rome, in a Dorical Comple, called Al career Tulliano. That Capitall P. was sound in Pesaro, with divers other commendable Antiquities: the bearing out whereof, although it be great, yet it she weth well to the eye. The Basements, or Bases, and Capitall A. are at Rome in Al soro Boario. The Cornice, Capitall, and Imposts of an Arch marked B. are in the Theater of Marcellus. The Cornice, Frese, and Architrane, are also in Rome, in Al soro Boario: which I have the web, that workemen may chuse that, which liketh them ber. Pereaster I will set bowne some particular measures necessary

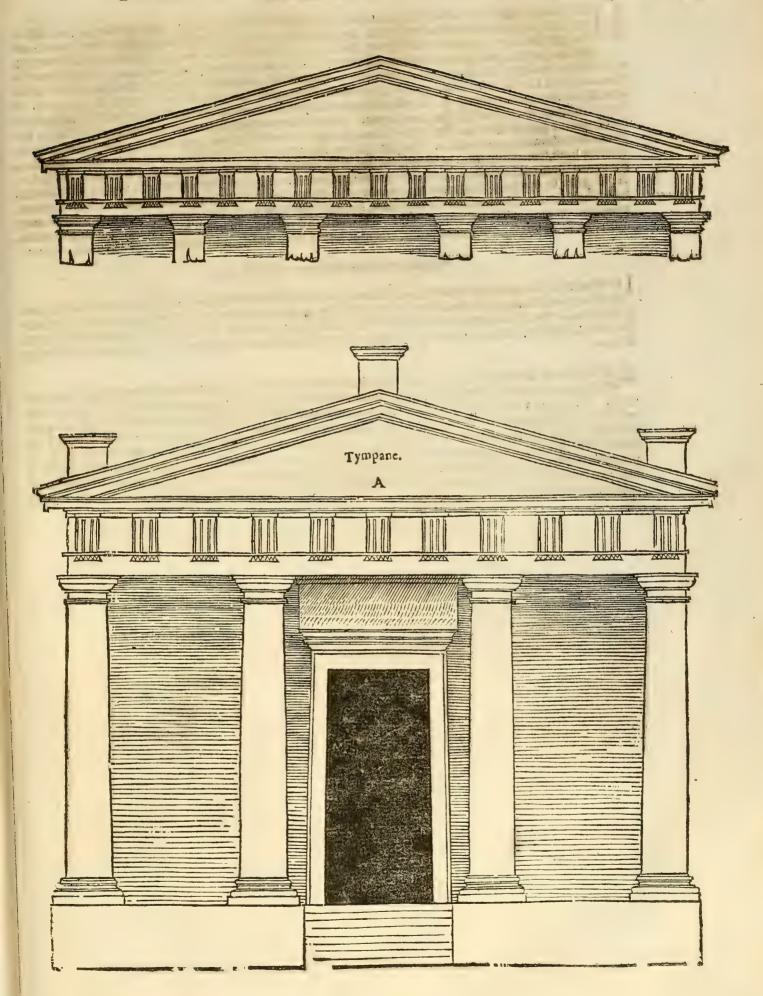


The fourth Booke. The fixt Chapter, Fol. 18



Of the Dorica

Be parts of the Trigliphes and Wethophes being in this order buprepared, and pet dery necessary, I will take paynes to deslare to wellas Ican. First, although Vitruvius affirmeth, that the Models of the worke Peralti los, viz. of fire Columnes, may be diffributed and benided into 35. parts: pet I find not, that the parts may fland fo, for this cause, that giving the middlemost inter. Columne 4. Porthophes, and the other spaces 3. the lago num ber will not make the whole: but, as I conceave, if you let 42. as you may fer and reckon in this Rigure following. as also in the worke Thetrustilos, that is, of 4. Columnes: the Boke saith, that the Forefront of the whole worke should be deuided into 23. parts, which, I affure you, cannot kand so, if you will give the middle space 4. Dethophes, and the other two eche of them 3. But, by my advice, there should be 27. as you may se in the Figure following. Then, if the principall of the Temples be devided into 27. parts, the Columnes shall bee 2. Dodels thicke, the middlemost inter. Columnes thall be of 8. Models, that is, the thicknelle of 4. Columnes, and the inter-Columnes belives, that be each of 5. Models and an halfe, that is, two and a quarter, and a quarter and halfe: and so hall the 27. bre distributed. And above each Columne his Trigliph being fet, & the Trigliphes devided with Pethophes, according to the rule afore layo; then the middlemolt space hall have 4. Wethophes, and those on the fides hall have 3. The height of the Cas lumme, Capitall and Architraue, ec. Chall be also made according to the rule; but the height of the Falligium or Genell thall bee the ninth part of the length of the Cimatic, that is about the Cozona, letting the measures buser the A. bp wards to the bindermost Cimatic of the Cozona B. The Acroteria of Pedestall marked A. upon the Fastigiam shalbs halfe the height of the Fastigium of Benell, that is, of the even of flat, which Vicrouius calleth Timpanum, and they Mall be as broad as the Columne is aboue, and the middlemolt mult be an 8. part higher then the other. And tog that this Dooze or Gate is of Dozica, and is hard to be buderflood, therefore I will the fo in the bell fort I can, both in their ting and Figure. Vieruvius faith, that from the Pauement to the Lacunary, that is, from the ground of the Gallery, to the rose of the same bnder A. must be devided into the parts and an halfe, and two parts shall be for the height of the lights: fo farth my Author, in my opinion. But for that a man cannot to well in a small Figure explains the particular measures, 3 will make it moze greater and perfecter in the next leafe.



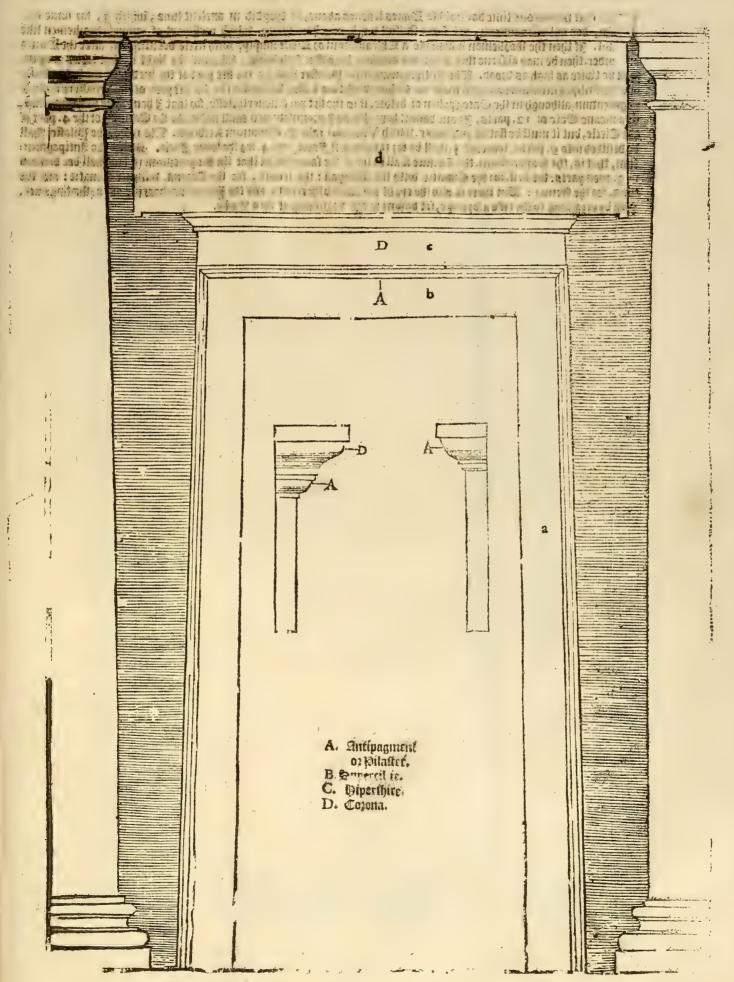
Of the Dorica

Auing made (as is before layd) three parts and an halfe from below opwards, 2. parts shall bee for the height of the light, which height being devided in 12. one part shall be the bredth of the Antipagmentum or Pilaster, and the light shall be 5. parts and an halfe broad: but if the light onder be of 16. fout, the Pilaster shalls lestened a 3. part in the oppermost part: and the same Pilaster shall also be made thinner a 14. part aboue. That Supercitie or Architectus shall be of the same height, in the which the Cimatium Lesdium with the Astragall is to bee made: which Cimatic shall be the 16. part of the Supercitie, I meane the Astralogus Lesdium, as it is shewed in the Figure A. It semeth, that the Author meaneth onely the Cimatic about the Supercitium; but as it is save in some Antiquities, therefore it is so made, in regard of the Antipagmentum. Upon the Supercitium, in sead of a Freele, you shall set the Property perthyrium as high; in the which, the text sayth, men cut the Cimatium Doricum, and that Astragalum Lesdium in the Scima Sculptura, which is consuled. But here I let my selse to votersand, that the meaning of the Author is broken, where he sayth, Sima Sculptura: he would have sayd, Sime Sculptura, that is, without cutting or graving; and that is, Cimatium Doricum, together, with the Astragalum Lesdium: the proportion whereof standeth in the Figure marked A. D. Pow, sor that the text saith, that the Cimatic of the Corona shalve of like height of the oppermost of the Capitals, which being so, then the Corona shill be very great: to which (according so the Authors meaning) I have given as much Projecture as the height of the Supercitie is. Although such Crownes will never be handsome or samely in worke, nevertheless, to intreat of the Ornaments, I thought soo so set to downe my opinion herein, and to she wit in Figure.

Corrections of the aforefayd tert, by &. Serlie.

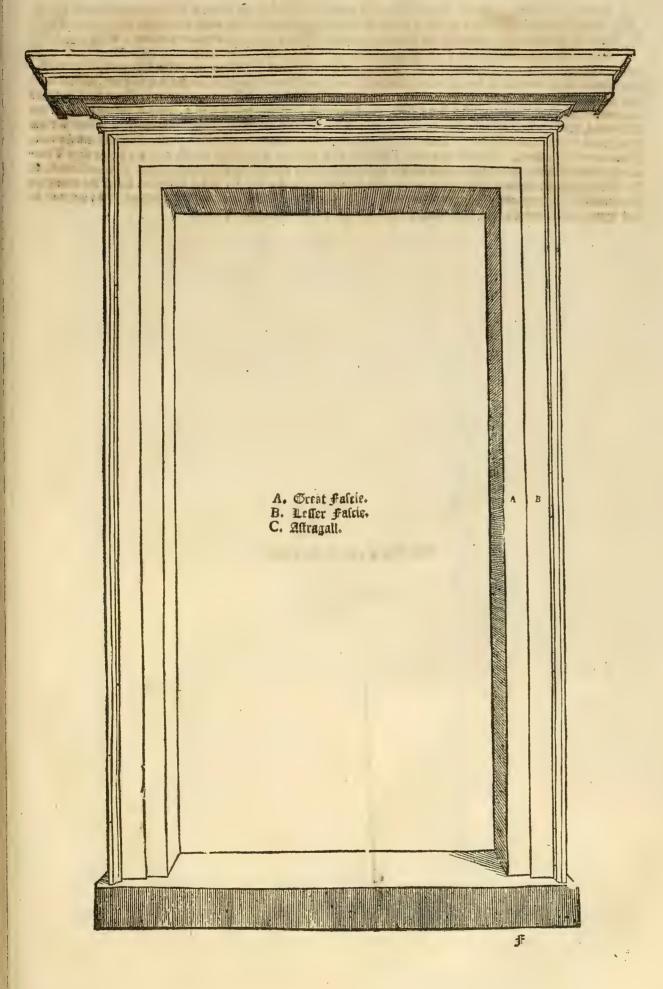
I Have peruled Victuuius writing nierer, and with more deliberation, where hee speaketh of the Cimatic Dorica, and the Altragalo Lesbium, in the Sima Sculptura: and I find, that Sima Sculptura is meant of flat cutting, rising very little: now, for that I have found many such like in Antiquities, viz. where the Altragals, Leaues, and Egges, schaue but small or little Projecture or rysing by, therefore I set this for instruction of Translators, to be corrected touching Dores.

A Po for that our Authorhath set this correction of the Cimatic and Alfragallhere, wherein, in my opinion, there consider the great matter, I thinke it not amilie to helpe him a little in this matter touching doores, wherein consider much. For where Victurius saith, that you must decide the part from the Pauement to the Lacunary in 3. parts and an halfe, it must be understood, about towards the Timpanum marked B. and then the doore would be well, and the Corona would be like the Plinthus of the Capitall. Pow, for that the text is so different in other places, as in the middle of the Podels, whereof Casarianus sayth, that he hath found 3.024. sorts; so it is to be escared, that this also is not well bundersood. Thus much I have (with your licence) thought good to set downe here, that the building should not be left upperfect, as our Athorough. For although he set nowne the Figures of more dones, yet her heweth not how they shall stand in the Building asortage.



Of the Dorica Hook Americant

De that men in our time doe not die Dozes lestened aboue, as they did in ancient time; which I, so some reasion, doe not discommend, yet some skilfull workeman have many, which most part of common inorkemen like not. It then the workeman will make a Chiromatam or Doze simply, with little beautisping, after the Dozica order, then he may observe this order and measure hereaster following, whereof the light or that which is open, shall be twice as high as broad. The Antipagmentum or Pilaster shall be the sixt part of the bredth of the light without the Antipagmentum you must make an Ochine with two Lists, which shall be the sixt part of the Pilasters or Antipagmentum, although in the Gate, spoken of before, it is the sixt part: neverthelesse, for that I have sain in Antiquities, in a meane Gate of 12. parts, I have done it here also, as I promised: you must not make the Colinas of the 4. part of the Circle, but it must be slatter and lower, which Virraums calleth, Cimatium Lestium. The rest of the Pilaster shall be devided into 9. parts, whereof 5. shall be so; the greatest Facie, and 4. so, the lesser facie. About the Antipagmentum, that is, the Supercitium, the Comice shall be set of the same height that the Supercitium is, and shall bee dembed in 3. even parts: the sirts, so; the Cimatic with the Astragall: the second, so; the Corna, with her Cimatic: and the third, so; the Scima: But there is also the eyght part added thereunto, and the Projecture bearing out or showing over, shall be according to the rule asosessay, set down in the beginning of this Boke.

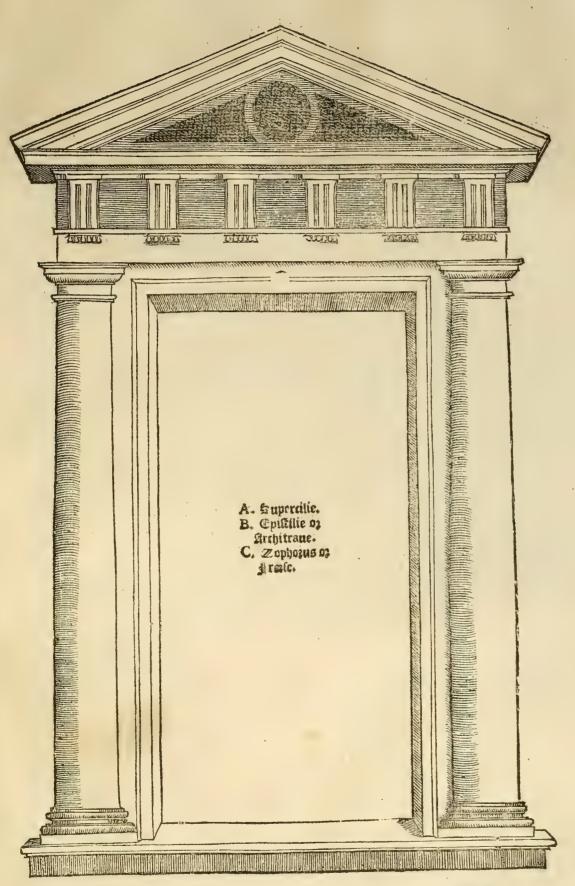


Of the Dorica

A though that in the Dedor of Dozica Virrunius makethmention of one Dozoce Bate encly, and darkly inough (in my opinion) as I hewed before, I thinke it requifite, that men chall not onely vie one lost of Dozes or Sates, but also of divers losts and fachious, to beautific a piece of works, and to please divers minds: Therefore, when a man will make a handome Bate, he may follow this Figure: that is, to set the brooth of the Doze twice in the height: and the Polaster must bee made of an eight part of the light, and the Columnes of the thro part of the brooth; which chalbe set of the work in the height: and although it be more then the measure set down, get it is not falls, because some part is made by in the wall: also some Antiquities vie it, which in such cases are not overcurious. Upon the Columnes you most set the Architeaus as high as the Pilasters or Supercitie. The Frése chalbe 3, parts of the thicknesse of the Columnes, by on every Columne there chalbe Arightphes set, and from the one Arightphes fet, and from the one Arightphes and such spaces devided. The other particular members, as Base, Capitall, Fráse, Arightph and Counice, follow the rule assessay. Pow, so that some Fastigues, Frontispicies, Coverings and Genels, are higher then Vicunius sets them downs, their common rule chalbe, that you dende the Counice from one corner to the other, as from A. to B. in 2, parts, and the halfe chall hang downewards, trayght by the Lead to C. and then the one foot of the Compasse set upon the C. and the other soft of the Compasse on the corner A. do do the other soft of the Compasse on the sounce of the Cornice B. that dopper part of the Circular line, shall be the due height of the Fastigium or Genell.

The fourth part of the Circle.



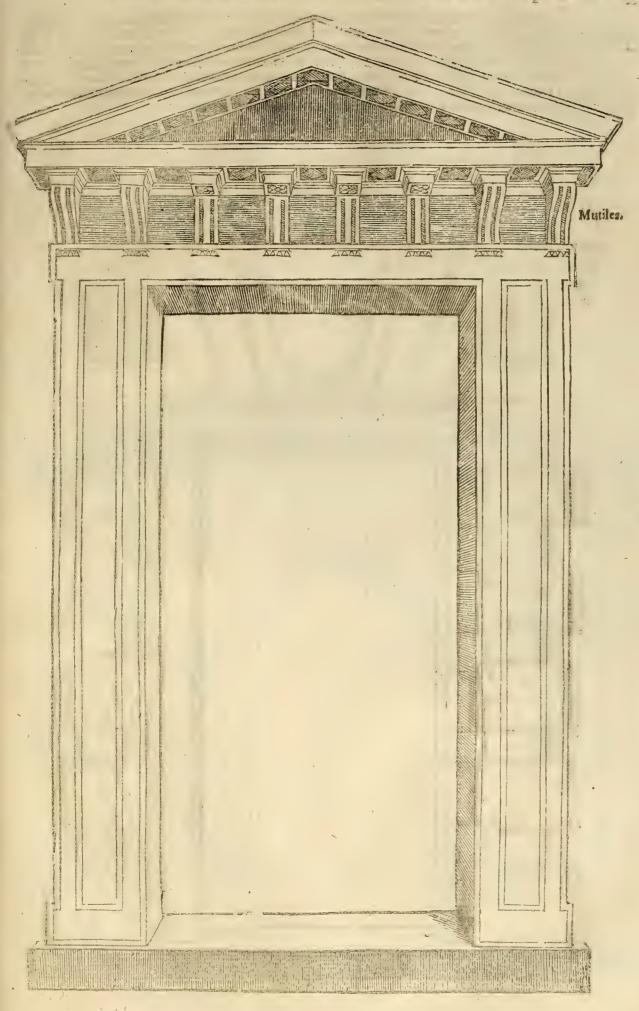


Of the Dorica

Attration oftentimes is better and more extended, then perfect timple forme in her owne nature therefore it is the moze pleasing, when a piece of worke is made of divers members and parts, although of the nature, os you may percepte in the Figure following, wherein there are Arigliphs and Autiles, all mone oper: which, in effect, F neuer faw in any Antiquities or writings. But Belchezer of Sience, one that read and fought out all Antiquities, may, peraduenture, have fone some, or at least himselfe was the Innerton thereas, placing a righther above the Dooze, where they beare least aresse, and the Poutiles above the firms part of the polaters, which beare all the warryt of the Palligium, and in my concept, lámely, and was much commenses by Clement the fenemy, whe, alteredly, was a man excellently fane in all Artes. This part thall have the light double propertience ; but the fillance thall be the y. part of the height, and the Supercilles the halfe thereof. The breath of the Arialophes and Politics, is the halfe of the Supercilles, and the height a double breath, making 2. Puttles over one which is and the height a double breath, making 2. Puttles over one which is and the height a double breath, making 2. Puttles over one which is an in the Arigh property over the Doze : the spaces thall be all 4. Square. About the Putiles and Arighthes, pour must set the Capitallog Sibsons: the hoight or thicknesse whereof, Chalbe a 4. part lesse then the bredth of the Trigitish, and the Chinasie the g. part of the Character the The height of the Cozona with her Cimatie, halbe as broad as the Trigliph is and the Driver and the decima atts as much the bear ring of the Corona before, thall bee as much as the space from one Abacus to another, that in the ground there may be perfect foure squares: But the Projecture or ouce-bearing both on the right band and on the left, Calbehall's to great as before. The Projecture of the Seima and the Cimatic, thall be early according to their priest. What Falligiam in the highest part, thall be a fift part of the widenesse, from the one comes of the fremain the right bird, in the other.

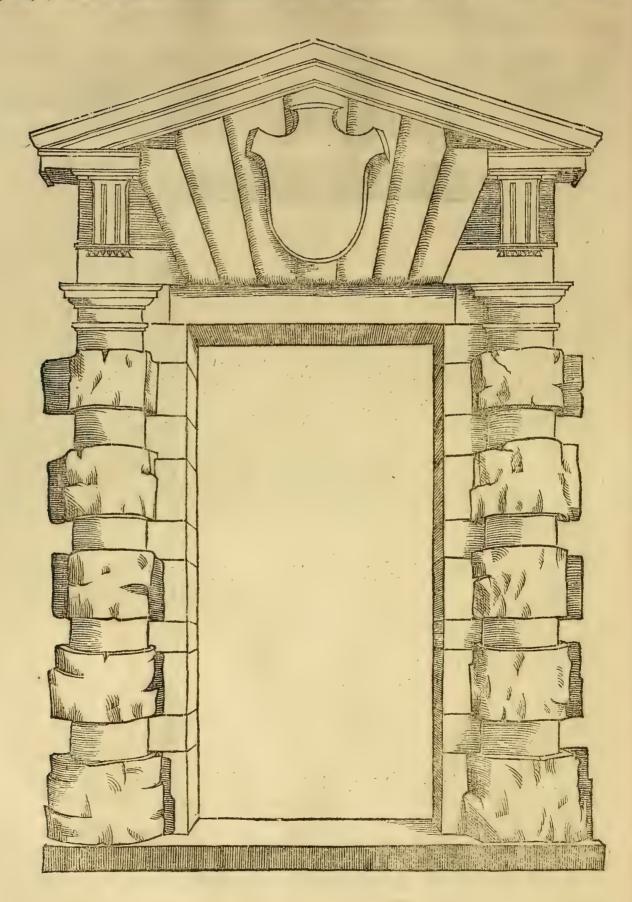
The fourth Book.

The fixt Chapter. Fol.23



Of the Dorica

Lithough a man may make divers kinds of Gates in Dozica worke, ret for that at this day men court after novelties, especially, when they are made by rule and reason, although the Columne, Freese and other members are mired with rustical Building, yet herein you may see forms and salvion: and whereas I have sayd, that a man should be rustical and boxish works in Forts and Fortresses, now this may serve so a change, but not without, so; receiving of that in them, see. The light thereof is also double in height: the Columnes two times so broad as the Pilasters, being 14. Podels high, with Capitals, Trigliphes, Fastigium, see. Let the Reader doe his pleasure surface herein, so, me thinkes there considerablittle herein, and there is inough sayd as before.

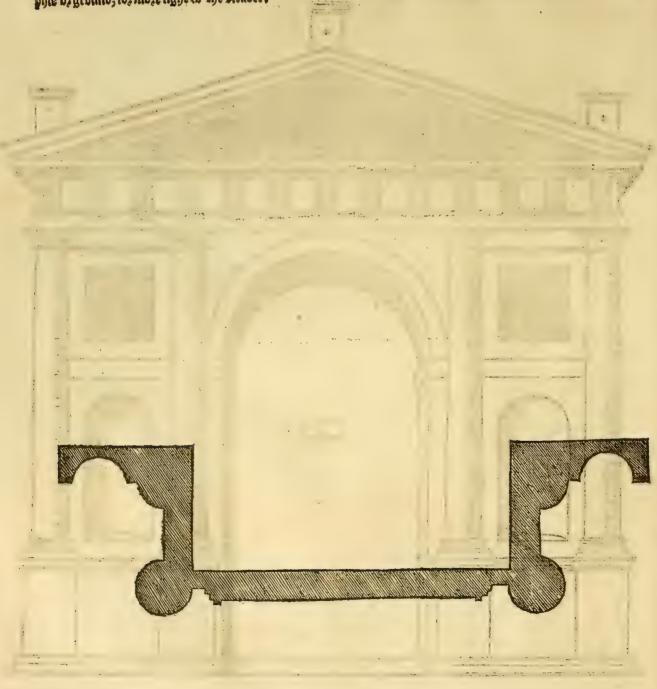


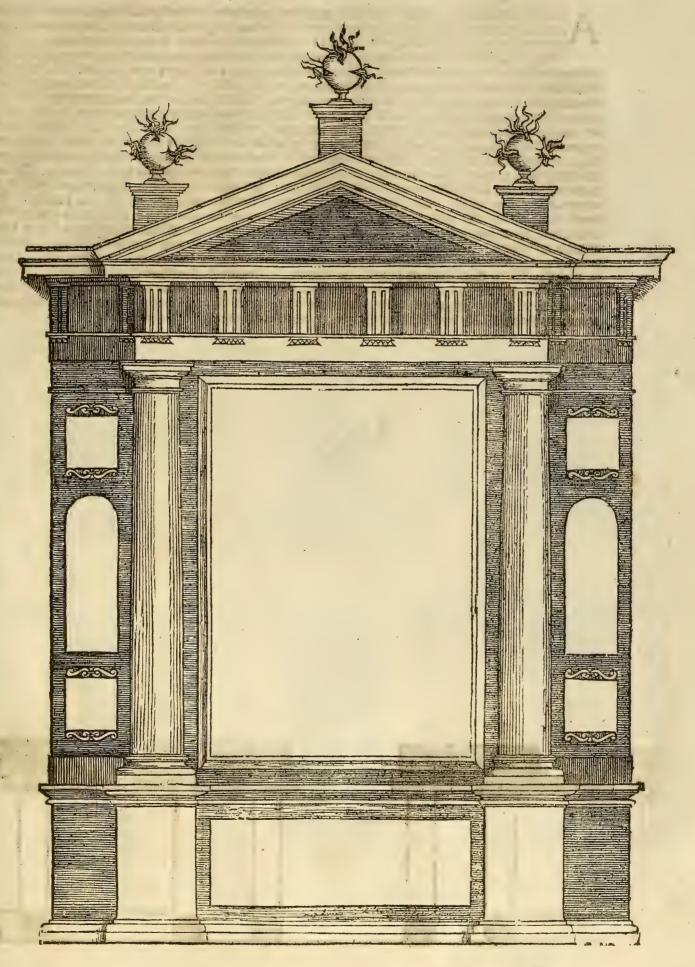
The fixt Chapter, Fol.24.

Dings, as of Columnes, Pedeckals, Epikkiliums, Zophorus, Cornices, Sotes, Alindowes, Piches, & luch like things. But, after that I determined to augment and enrich this Adumne, in the wing divers facies or fore parts of Colifices, Temples, Palaces and Poules, &c. And for that, when as the Columne Kandeth byon the ground, they are commendable; yet oftentimes it falleth out, that men have not their Columnes thicke ineugh, nor long inough, as they defire, to that it is necessary to place Pedeckals under them: therefore I have made this order following, the proportion whereof thall be as followeth; that the indenesse thall be double in the height: the Pilaster with the Arch, thalbe a 12. part of the widenesse: the Columne as thicke agains: the inter-Columne halfs the widenesse of the light or Boxe: the indenesse of the Piches, 2. Columnes thicke, and 4. in height: the Pedeskals, 4. Columnes thicke in height: his breakh, and the rest of the Solumne, with the Bale and Capitall, thalbe 9. parts high: the Epistitium is halfe a Columne thicke: the Brigliph of the same breath, and twice so high with the Capitall. The Trigliphes placed as you see them, the Corona and the rest of the members shalle made as is before shewne. The height of these Devels somewhat exceed Victualis writings: but I have seen such an other, somewhat higher, in Antiquities, being made of the six part of the Corona in length. The Acroteria shalbe of height and breath like the Columne above, without Comice: and the middlemost a sixt higher, as also the Columnes a 9. part, being made sail in the wall.



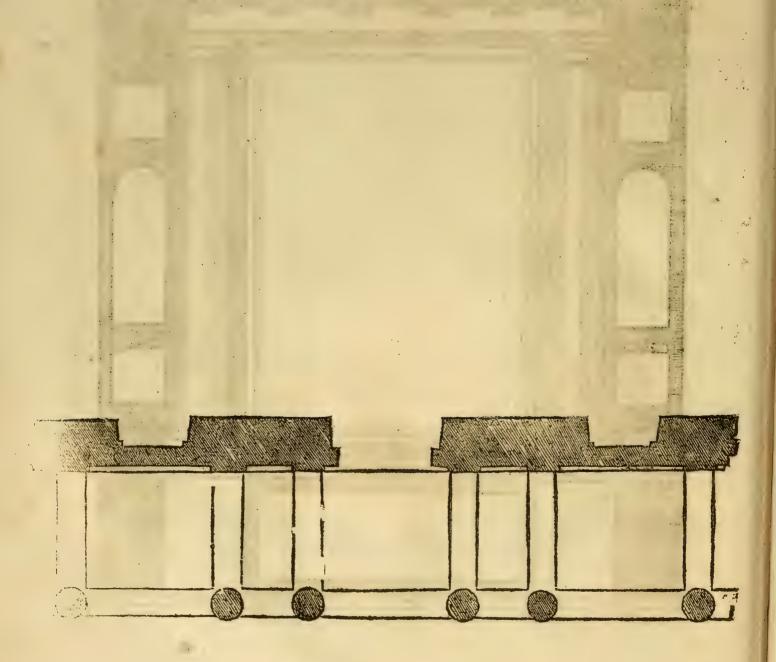
Bis Figure following, may be bled by the learned workenian for divers things, and may bee altered according to the accidents that thall happen: it will also serve so a Painter to beautify an Altar withall, as men at this day dos in Italy: it may also serve for an Arch tryumphant, if you take away the Basement in the middle. Likewise rou may beautifie a Gate withal, leaning out the wings on the lides: fometimes, for fetting facts a Mindolv, a Diche, a Wabernacle, of luch like things: which proportion thall be made thus, The opennette of wivenette thall bee deutoed in 5. parts, and one of them thall be the thickenette of the Columnes: the Facies of Lift round about thall be chalfe a Columne thicke. The height of the light thall be the thicknelle of 7. Columnes, and the Base and Capitall together, of the thickenede of a Columne, and in all, thall be eyght parts high. That pedellall fhalbe 3. Columnes thicke in height, the breath or forepart like the Plinthus bnoer the Columne. The inter-Columnes on the fides thall be one Columns thicke, and in the Corners shall stand the fourth part of a Columne: the wings on the sides, wherein the Piches are, Mall be of the thicknelle of a Columne and a halfe, but the Richesa Columne broad, and 3. in height. The Architraue Mall haus the halfe thicknesse, and the Trigliph also as broad, but the height without the Capitall Call bee a 4. Square, and two 3. parts; whereby, placing the Trigliphes on the right fide, and on the left, right about the Columnes, and betweine both 3. Trigliphes, and 5. Wethophes moze: the denilions thall rightly come to be 4. fquare in the spaces. The Cozona and the Frontispicie, and all the other parts, as well below as aboue, thall be made as is taught in the be-And for that the Arigliphes on the fides differ from Vierunius dectrine; pet, notwithfanding, I haue fane them in Antiquities Cand boon the corners, the workemen may, at their good pleatures, make them in worke, or beare them out, as occasion thall ferue. Further, I had no meaning to let any grounds of platformes in this fourth Booke, for that it is intended to be intreated of elsewhere; pet such forefronts as are hard to be binder flood, a wil let the Achnogram phie or ground, for more light to the Reader.

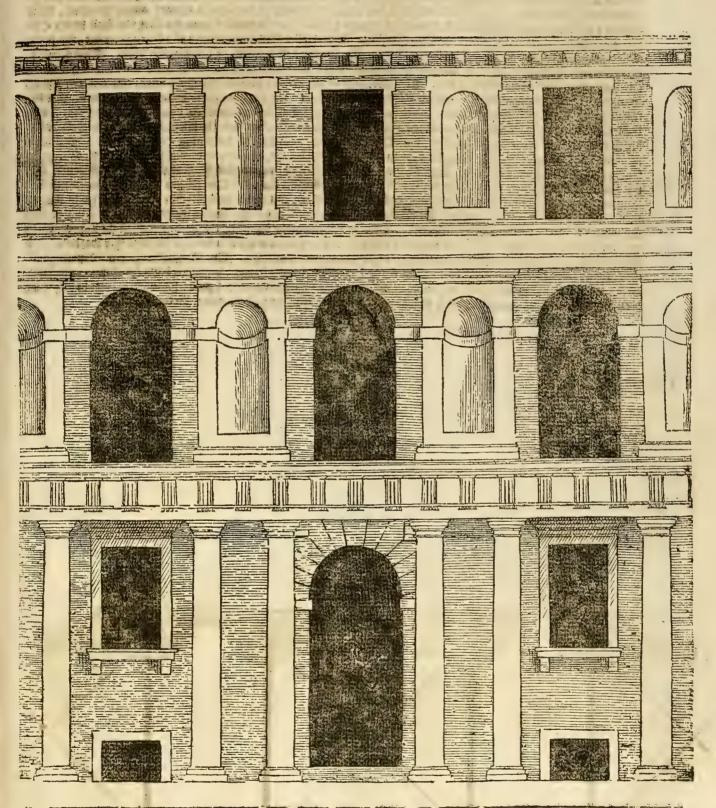




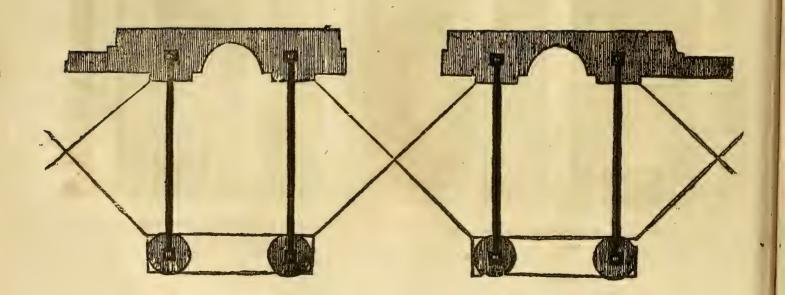
Of the Dorica double and

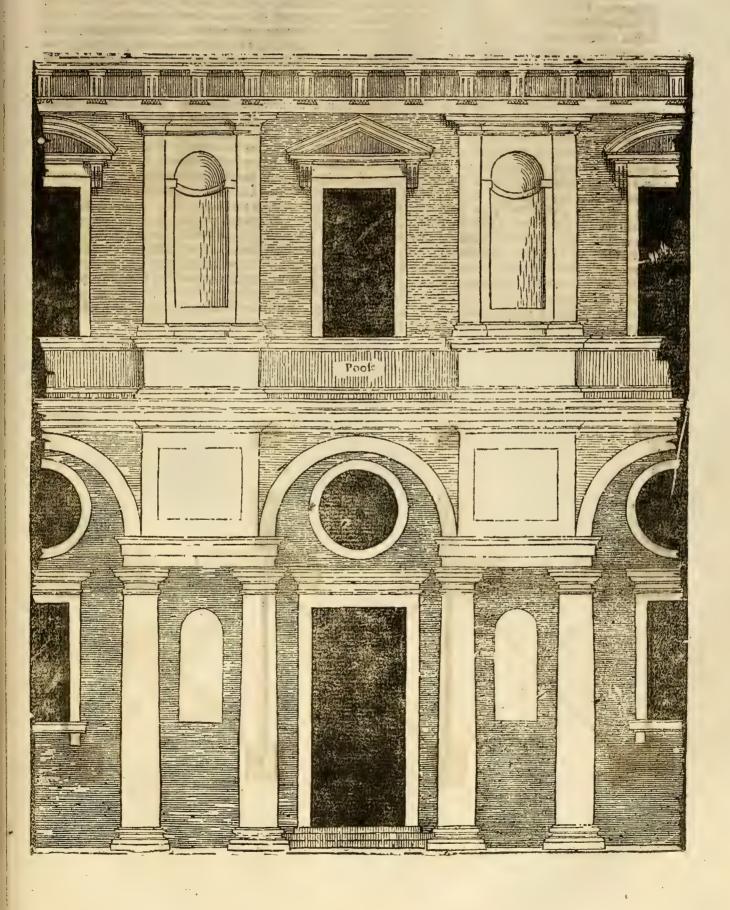
Atheugh in Antiquities, as farre as is found, when brothemen had placed the Spidilia boon the round Columne, thep let nothing elle but the Fallingium byon that, tiling the fame of ber in Charches and Temples, and not in any other buildings: Penerthelette, Faill rol amit to let rowne feme maner of Houses without Arches: fog if you will make Arches with their fourefguare Willers and round Columnes before them for beautifying of the worke, faking to make much light in your Callerte, the Pollars with the Acches with hinder a great deale of light: Then if you will fet the Arches onely bron the round Columnes, that were altogether false, so, that the foure corners of the Arch would furpalle the roundnesse og body of the Columnes: therefore ? intend, to make feme Houses and other Buildings without Arches, both of this order, and also of the other. This that! therefore be made in this maner, that the greatest inter-Tolumne thall be the thuknesh of foure Columnes, and the finalless of one and an halfe. The height of the Co lumnes hall be of nine parts, with Bafes and Capitals: the Architrane, Frede, and Comire, ec. thall be made according to the former rule: the widenesse of the windowes are of two Columnes thicknes: the height a four equare and two third parts: and their Pilallers one firt part of the light, having the Cornice above, like the Capitali. The tore thall be of the breath of the Columnes, and seven in height: and so thall the lights of the windowes, and of the doozes, bee all one height. The Trigliphes and Wethophes thall bee deniced, as von may perceine. The fecond flory thall bee lefte or thorter by a tourth part, according as Vitrumus gineth counsell: so also, that the Architrane, Frese, and Cornice been fourth part leftened: the windowes thereof, with the Pilatters, thous beens The ornaments in the Piches shall Cand in Perpendicular, with the Columnes: and the hele broad as the loweff. lowings of the Diches hall be as broad as the inter-Columnes: their heights thalbe of two foure fquares and an halfe: the third flogy fhall be fhoster a fourth part then the fecond: The Architrane, Frefe and Counice accordingly: but being together devided in thee parts, one Chalbefor the Architrauc, the second, for the Frese and Butiles or Wogdiliums, and the third, for the Comice : Pouthall find the particular measures hereof after the Composita: the windowes shall also be as broad as the lowest, but the Piches thall be a fourth part lette: the rest you shall liabily find.



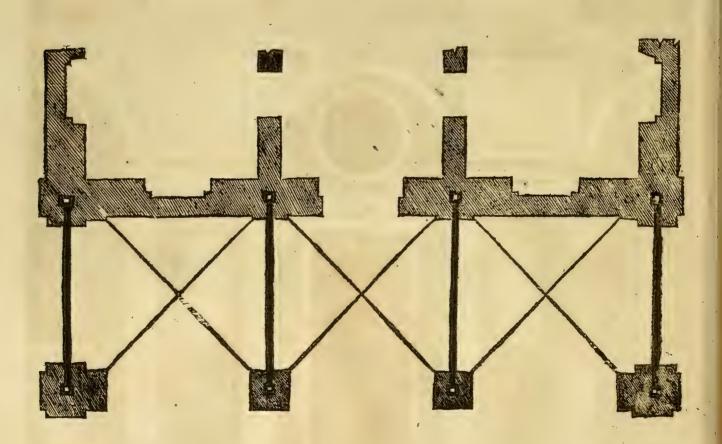


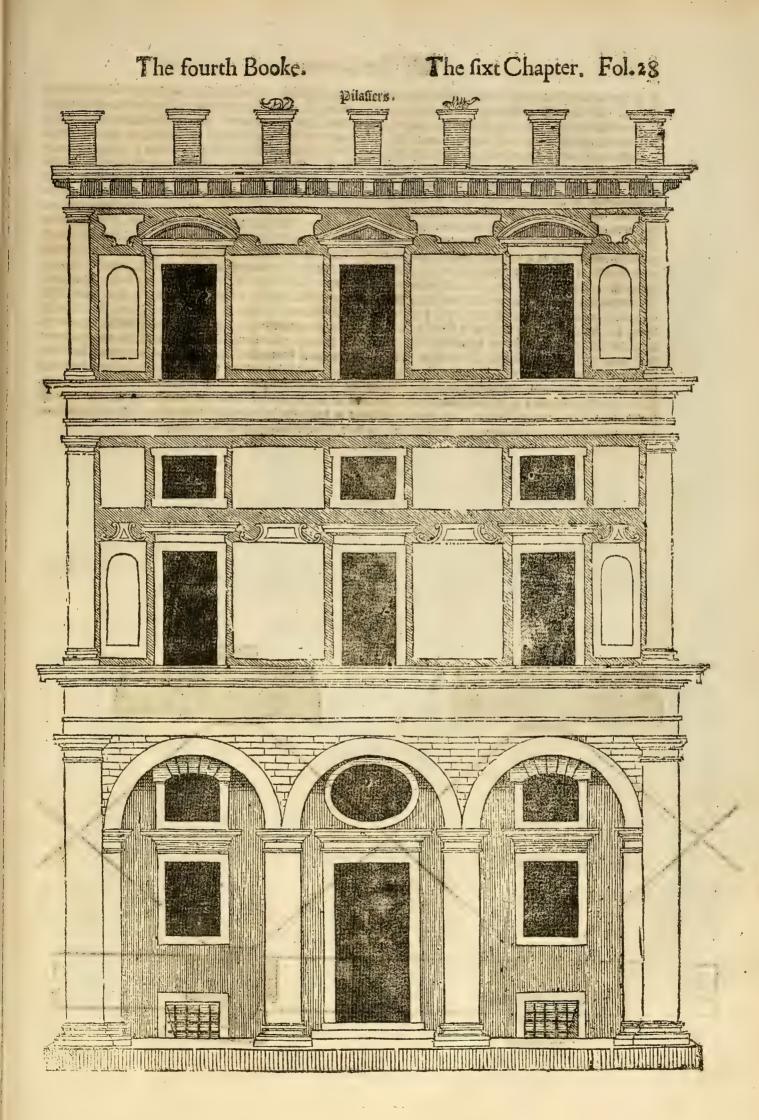
A though in the Thulcan Dover, in the Pacie 13. I have thelved the like invention, this, noth ithianding, differeth: for that this Gallery would bee round rofed, and where the Arches are, the croffings would be made as von fer in the ground. And for that the Columnes cannot behold the fibes, alwayes gluing out, therefore about the Columnes, you thall lay or fasten Fron bindings, in the sides, as you fe it in the platforme, but they will latt longer, if they be made of braffe. The proportion of this Facie fall be made thus : The greatest Intercolumnes thall be 4. Columnes thicke, and the least two. The height of the Columnes, with Bales and Capitals, Hall hold 7. times their thickenesse. The Spissium Hall bee the foureparts of a Columne thicke: about the which, there hall be a halfe Circle made, the bacaoth thereof halbe halfe a Columnes thicknesse: bpon the Arch you shall fet the Coswice of the height of the Epiffilium. Betweene both the Arches there fhall be the maner of a window made, the wide melle whereof thall be like the Intercolumnes bnber it: and the Lift or edge, so broad as the Arch. That Cauct or Trochile, and the Cchine aboue the windowes, and part of the Counices, Spall, neuertheleste, bears out somewhat aboue the windo wes, for to beautifie the same. The widenesse of the Dozes thall beet two Columnes, and one fourth part. The Pilalter og Antipagmentum, Gall bee a firt part of the light: the bright of the light Mall reach to the Supercitie, int boder the Capitall of the Columns: which forme of Capitals thall follow about the bores and windowes. The light of the windowes thall bee in breadth two Columnes in thicknesse: but these thicknesses aforesayd, in these cases, are to be understood as the Columnes fall out. The length of the light shall be a source square and a halfe: The Piches thall also be of the same beight. The Role aboue, or the second Stage, as you will terme it, shall be eless or shorter a shall also be of the same beight. fourth part, Deuided in this foat: The Podium og part brefthigh, of one Columne and a balfe in thicknede. The reft thalbe benited in five; one of them thall be Architraue, Freie and Coinice. The Piches with the Dinaments Gall fand in Perpendicular abone the windowes, betweene the Arches, but thalbe in bredth fine parts : tino parts hall be the Columnes, the rest the Riches with the Pilasters. The Comice abone the Piches chall be the breath of one of these Columnes: and the Bales, the halfe breath thereof. The windowes betweene the Piches, shall in the light contagns one fourth part leffe then the Doze, and of Double height: but of the reft of the Danaments (for that this worke is fomewhat mired) you thall find further fatisfaction in the Jonica and Cozinthia. The Wrigliphes in this composition, betwirt the one and the other, will not make their Dethopes right foure square, because I have set the Trigliphes a bone each window, and as many ouer every of the Diches, as you may fe in the figure : wherein, if there be any thing wanting in the mediare, or elle what, 3 alwayes referre my felle to the rule fet bowne in the beginning.



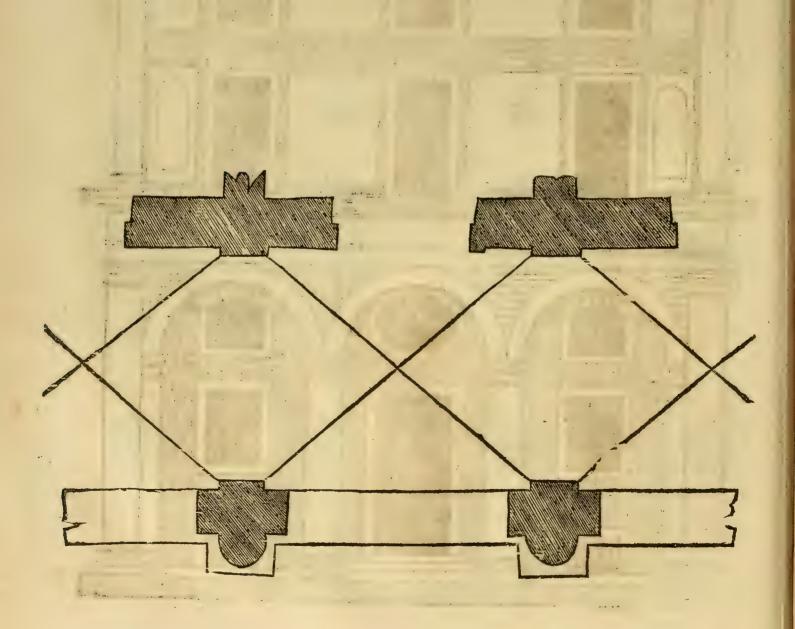


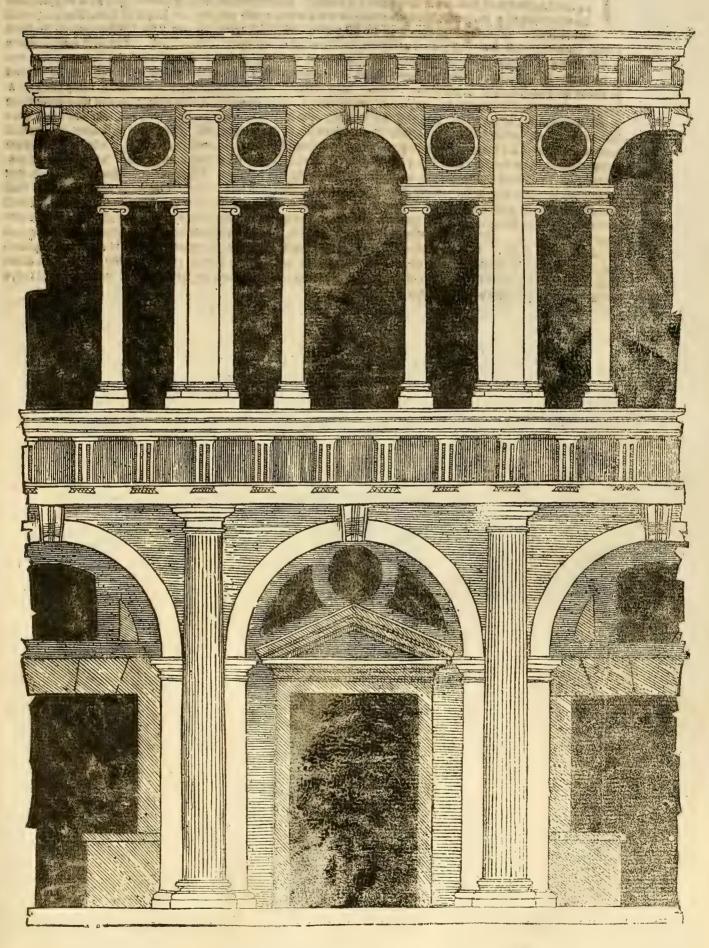
Dathat fometimes, some men will have altogether Arches and Galleries, and for that it is confused worke, to place Arches boon round Columnes, peta man may make feurelquare Willars binder them with Bales and Capitals. like the other. And although this house is whole, which is but little for a man that hath a great living, pet you may let it fouth in 5. Arches, also in 7. Arches. The Denillon whercof may be, that each Intercolumne may be of the thicknesse of foure Columnes. The height of the Columnes with Bales and Capitals of fire parts : and abone them the Arches to be fet of the breath before, of halfe a Columne: the spennelle thall bee of double proportion. About the Arches pou mult place the Architraue, Freie, and Comice: the beight of them all Chalbe of 2 . Columnes thickneffe: and being benided in 3. parts and a halfe, one part halbe the Architraue, halfe a part for the Frefe, and one part for the Cox nice: for the other part, you thall follow the rule aforefayd. The doze thatbe two Columnes outward: the Pllatter, the Art part of the light: but the Comices of the doze, and the windowes, thall have the height of the Capitals. The wine power falbe a Columne and a halfe bearing out : and their length or height, shall be taken in Diagonall maner. The comer Columnes Chalbe as broad as the other: but they thalbe of 8. parts and a halfe high. The fecond flory about this, halbe a fourth part isfe: the corner Columnes, with Architeaue, Frese and Cornice, lessed accordingly: The windowes about the Arches, with the Pilatters thatbe as wide as those below: but the height of the 2. four equares, and the Frale above them, thall bee as broad as the Supercilium: the Comice allo as much: The small windowes a bous them are made for two purpoles: The first, the Romes being high, as they thew outwardly, will make the chamhere and other romes much lighter. Becondly, for necedity a man may make hanging chambers in them, and then those liabts will ferue to god purpole. The third Rozy halbe leffe then the fecond a fourth part : and the fame being benided in 3. parts, one part thatbe for the Architraue, Archie and Cornice: and that part denided in 3. one part thatbe for the Architrane and Frele, and the third for the Cornice: and in the Frele, the Putiles and Wogdillions thathe decided, as poul is them. The lights of the windowes shalbe as the others, but they shall bee a twelfth part higher, because they are further from the light : the Pilatters, Freie and Comice, fhalbe like the other. The Frontispice and Arches thall bemade, as I have layed, in the dozes and gates of the Deder of the Dozica: for beautifying, or to place another rowof Arches in it, you may fet Acroteries or Bilafters bpon them, which will paffe well in the making of their fire places, 02 chimnepes for anopoing of Imoke. The spaces betweene the windowes, that remayne white, are left to bee paynted, as the workeman will, or at the pleature of the owner of the bonte. But for more fecurity of this building, it halbe necedary to place thefe Fron bands in it, og at lead, ouer the Gallery, as is taught befoge.





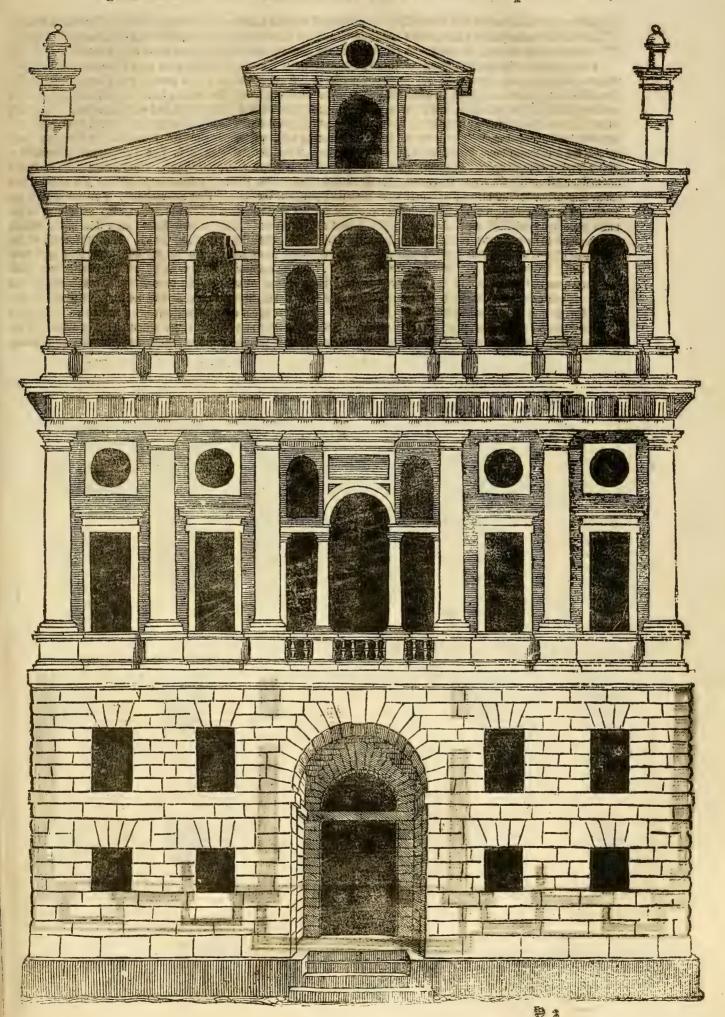
A the famous Towns of Venice, because houses frant nevetogether, they are foxed to make their lighte as they may, so that their Boulding differethmuch from that Building of Icaly: notwith Canding, the workeman may give them light inough, observing Antiquities, which thall be thus made and devided: You thall benide the widenelle of an Arch in 2. parts and an halfe: whereof one thall be for the breath of the whole Billar: the thickensife whereof thalbe the halfe, the round Columnes allo as much : the height of the Arch thalbe of one 4. fquare, and two 3. parts : you may also make them of two 4. squares, heightning the refl accordingly. The zinpost or Capitall under the Arch, shall have the halfe thickenesse of the Columne, according to that which is shewed before, of the Theater of Marcellus. The Dooze hall be of the Columnes thicke in wicenesse, the height of a foure square and two 3. parts: the Pllatter of An. tipagmentum walbe of the 8. part of the light: the Cozona Galbe like the Capitall: but the Scima being fet opon it, you thall make the Falligium as is before fand, and about it give more or leffelight, as the house requireth. If the building stand in a field of an open place, you make flops, tobich shall well fall out with the building abone the Columnes, the Ex pidilium mult be fet of halfe a Columne thickenesses the breath of the Trigliphes also as much: the height shall be made moze or lette, at the workemans will, that the spaces may be 4. Square; whereupon you must let the Cornice of a 6. part higher then the Epillilium : the particular parts and measures, you hall make according to the rule before set bowne. The Cory abone thall be a 4. part leffe, making a Plinthus boder the Columne, of fuch a height, as the Proiceture of the Comice beareth: the reft muft be devided in 5. paris, one part thall be the Architraue, Freife, and Comice, (which, as before is taught) (hall also bee decided in their parts. The Columnes which uphold the Architrane, shall bee nine parts high, the letter Columnes which behold the Arch, are thinner then the rest a third part: the spaces in the middle, under the Arches Gall bectwice to wide as the fides: to then, the Coinices being placed boon the Columnes which beare the Arch, and the halfe Circle made by to the Architrane, also, the eyes or holes besides the Arch, then it will bee erceding light: and where there wanteth a Chamber, you may that the middlemost lights, and the fives thall ferue for windowes. Penerthelelle, this ogder being observed both without and within, it will not fand much amiffe; fog the place that up, thall be for a Fire place or Chimney, which ought alwayes to bee made betweene two windowes, like to a mans tace, where the windowes are the eyes, and the Chimney the note, which alwayes draives the imoke.



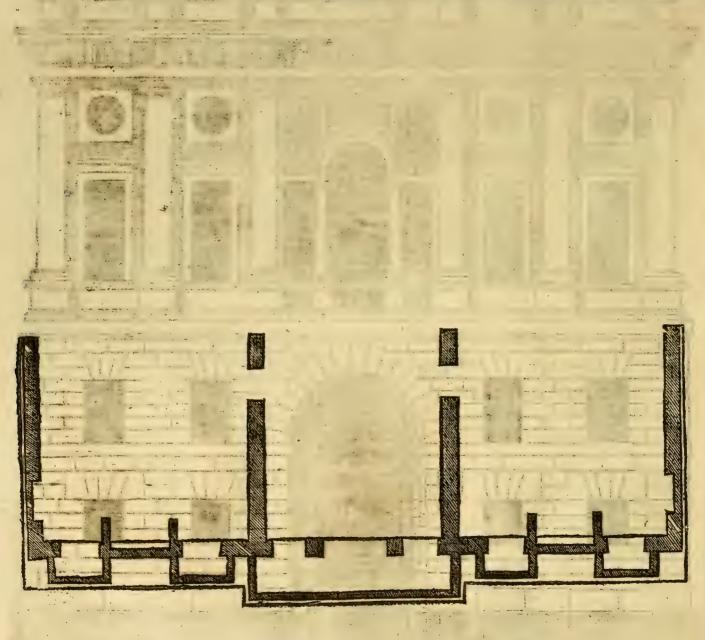


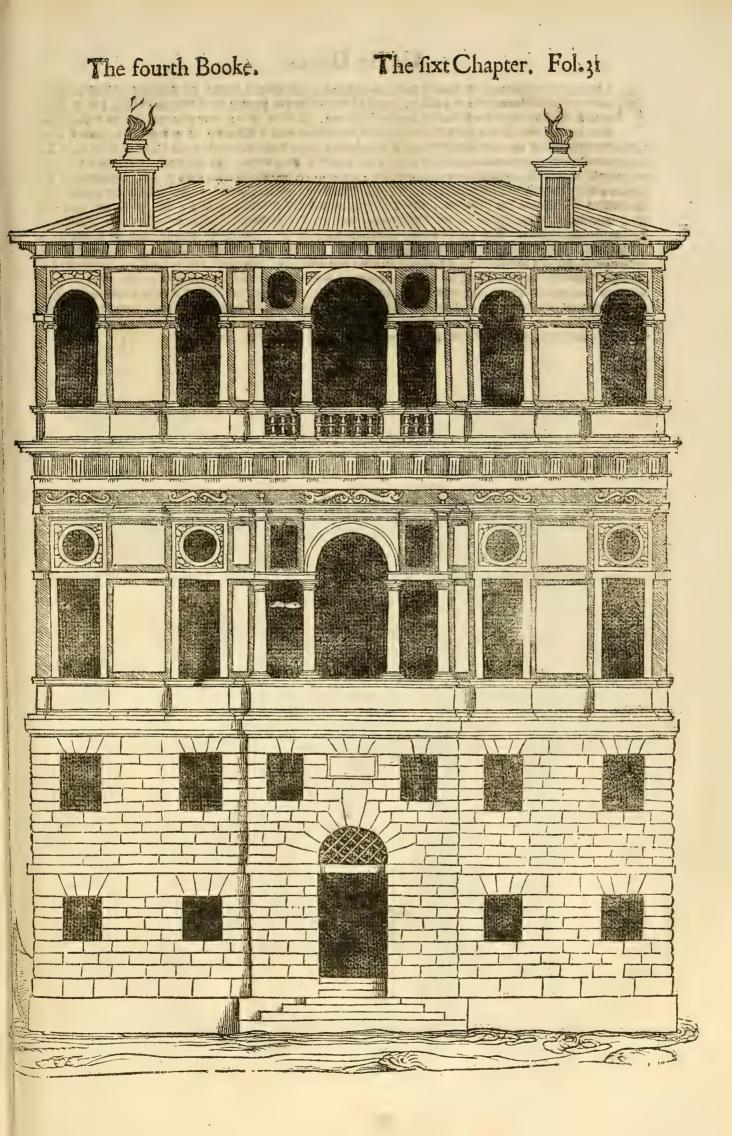
D benice this prefent Facie, layth the Author (los otherwise he maketh no preface) you thall devide the bredth in 14. parts, and one of these parts thall be for a Columne: the middlemost inter Columne thall be of 6. parts, and the other each of 3. parts: the windowes thall be of a Columne and an halfe: the height of them, two 4. louaces The Pilatters Mall be of the firt part of this light: the windowes in the first flogy are of the fame bredth: the nethermost, thail be a perfect 4. square, and the other of a 4. square and an halfe. The post of Gate shalbe 5. Columnes wibe, that the Columnes may hauc a fall foundation : the height of this Bate is a 4. fquare, and of two 3. parts: the Arch: Cones, and the rect, you chall see sufficiently in the Figure: from below bnoer the Arch, botill you be about the Facte, chall be 2. Columnes thicke. And although that all other Coxies or buildings, being one Cory as bone another, would alwayes bee thostened a fourth part : pet in this cale, (by my aduice) for that the compartition of the Columnes, being about this rusticke worke, and that the rough worke should not take too much place when it is of sufficient strength, it is requisite that it should bee of the same height. About the first order, as you shall make a Poolium of a Columne an halfe high, whereon you mult fet the Columnes in ofter (as it is taught) the beight without the Podium Hall be decided in 5. parts, whereof 4. Hall bee for the Columnes, the other for their ornaments, whereof the Arigliphes Halbe decided, as you lie, observing the rule aforland. The middlemost Halbe dealt thus, that the small Columnes thall be the halfe of the greater, and the middlemost inter-Columnic thalbe as broad againe as those that Kand on the Rocs, which thall be like eyes of the windowes. About the windowes, to make more light, you thall make the eyes, and about the smallest spaces in the middle, you shal make that you fe here in the Figure, for to accompany the same eyes. And although there rest particular parts, you shall alwayes sake them forward, where you shall be assured to find them. The third order or story, and that which belongeth thereunto, shall also be made less a 4-part; but the windowes as broad as the lowest, as also their beights, and all other things, you may easily find with the Come pale. The rayling op in the middle without the Frontispicium, hall bee halfe the third order in beight: for the rell, a workeman may adde and diminish at his pleasure.

The fixt Chapter, Fol.30



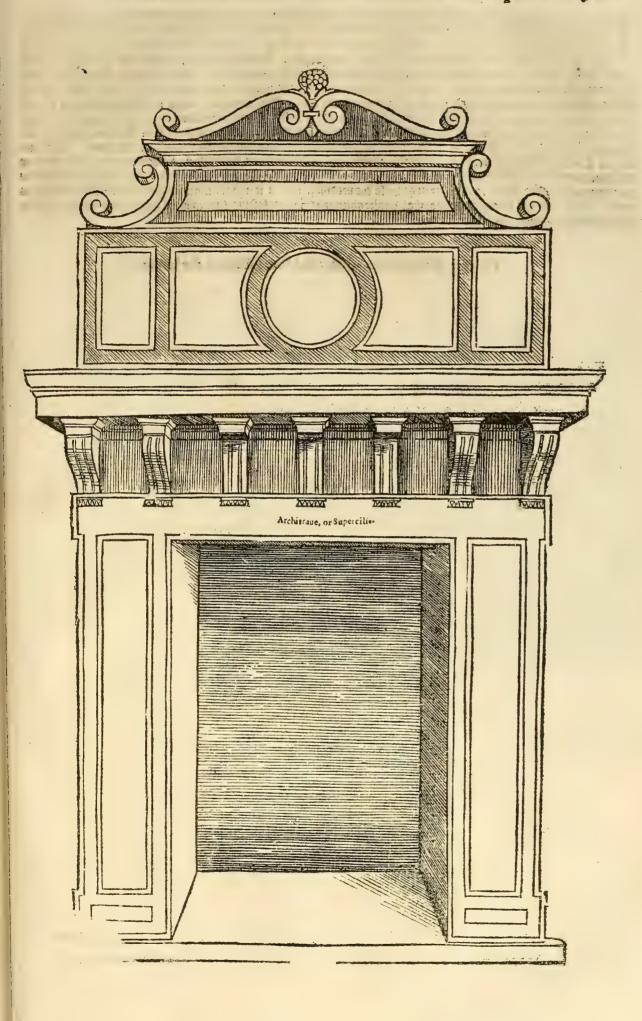
Close, Thane the wed in two figures, how to make the Facies of forefronts of Boules after the Aenetians maner: but for that in such works men would willingly have some places bearing out, which are, for the most part, made ouer the water, for fresh agre of the water, whereon the mod part of buildings have their fagrett forefronts or Fas cies; as allo, to le the tryumphes oftentimes made there in Boates and Ships : to which purpole, the layd bear rings or inttyings out forue well, and yet neverthelette, are unfamely things, and have no other supporters but the Donoilions : Bow, such things as have not their foundation frongly layo and made, burt the walles of the house of building, whereof ancient workemen were very carefull, and made no fuch bearing out, but onely Cornices: therefore Flap, if a man will make any fuch things in any building with good adulce, it is necellary that the first wall spould bee to thicke, that it may fland fo farre out as the flat of the bearing out requireth, as may bee percepued in the round: and for that the middlemod wall Candeth out more then the fides, if you will not make it fo thicke, then you may make a Arong Arch within, to behold the middlemost, although it be hollow and of small weight. Whis bearing out, is to bee binder (tood about the Pacies of the rufficall worke: which being made, then the compartement of the Pacies thall bee about this, so that the middlemost part shall be of the portions, and the sides of the and an halfe, I meane within the walles, as the ground theweth. The height of this fecond order or Corp, thall be like the bodermod, according to the rules aforelayd: and first, you that make the Postium of an indifferent height, to leane byon: then that which refleth thall be denived in five parts, one of those thall bee the Epitilium, with the rea of his parts. The twidenesse of the middlemoft part, must be thus: the opennesse with the Arch must be as great againe as the sides, and the height down bled; so the Architraues being set open the Columnes, so, the verbling of the Arch, all the Windows shall bee open a rome: likewise also, so, more commoditie of light and comment, the eyes of the Windows shall bee made. These examents, together with many other things, if a man, in regard of cost, will not make them of Wardle, as of other stones, they may be let foorth with painting. The third order or story shall also bee a fourth part less then the second: and so every other part thereof accordingly, following the rule asoraspo: and although the Jonica be set betoge the Dozica, which ancient ivozimen fametime have done, you Hall find the proportion thereof hereafter in his place.





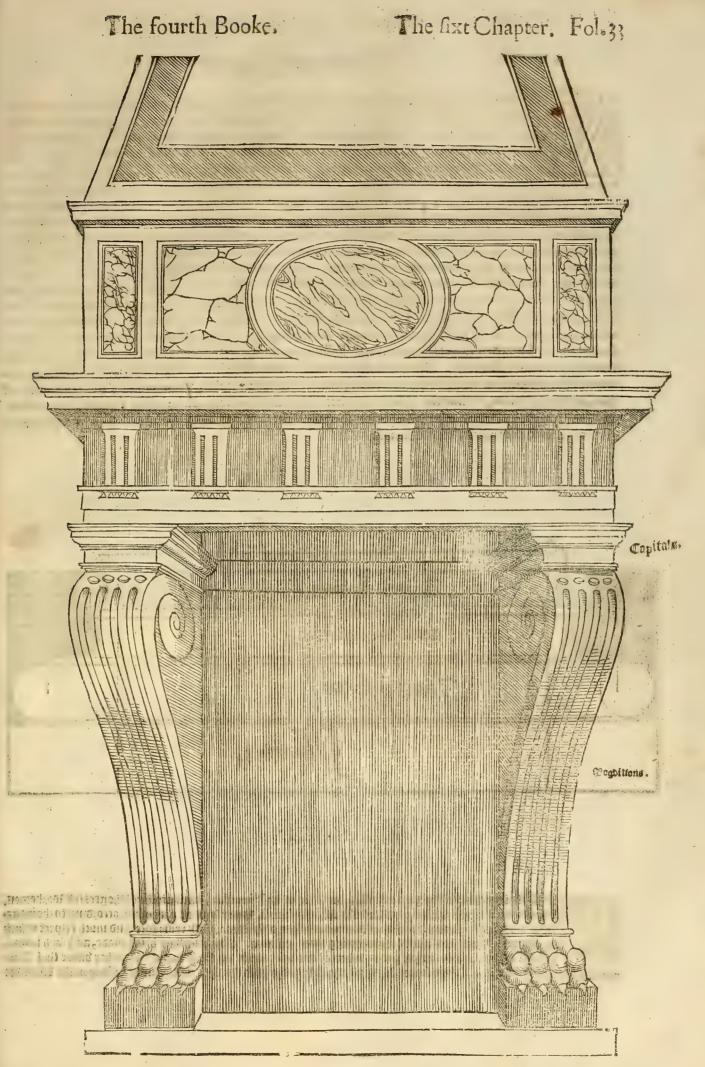
shed dina

Athough the workeman hath sence to many inventions in this Dorica worke, yet they will not further himsormanism of Chimneyes: but I will set two sorts thereof here in Kigure, one indifferent whole, s in the thickeness of the wall, sor a small round Chamber or Poule: the other, sor a greater place without the wall, drainne with Pogotitions: sor if a small Chamber should be cumbred with a Chimney, it is requiste to make it wholy within the thickness of the wall, and the beight of the opening being made, according to the situation of the place, shall be devided into source parts and an halfe, and shall be the bredth of the Pilaster, but the Architrane shall containe the halfe: the Tenia or List, going round about, shall bee a secuenth part, and all his other Lists of the same bredth: the Trisliphes and Mogotitions, shall be halfe the bredth of the Architrane, but their beight pour shall take in this manner, that the Outsels stand about the Pilasters, and the Architrane, but their beight pour shall take in this manner, that the Outsels stand about the Pilasters, and the Architrane, but yet the Methopes or spaces between the Mogoditions, shall be become of the Architrane, but yet the Methopes or spaces between the Mogoditions, shall be for the Capitals of the Architrane, but yet the Methopes or spaces between the Mogoditions, shall be for the Capitals of the Cimatic and Decima, shall bee so high as halfe the breath of the Trigliphes. The Corona, with the Ociona; of the other you must make three parts, one for the Cimatic with the List, the other shall be for the Scima with the Corona; of the other you must make three parts, one for the Cimatic with the List, the other shall be for the Capitals of the Erigliphes in the ground of the Corona, may be sourcequare, for that, if men will stround about it, they may have their place of sight. The Projecture of the Scima with the Cimatic, shalbe made like that height which Cambeth aboue, at the discretion of the lovekaman. But if the Chimney be bery small for a little roune o



the Atvaction, is appropried, the lame height, from the ground op to the Architrauc, hall be devided in 4. parts, one part for the Architrauc, Friese, & Comice, their parts being made according to the rule aforesays: and whereas they hew greater, that is, because men so them underneath, the bredth of the Bodiglions shall be the 7. part of their height: the Capitals the halfe of that bredth, and shall be devided as it is said of the Doricall Capitals: some lessen the bredths of these Godiglions underneath the foorth part, that the foote of them may give out a source part, so that the plinthus doner the soote, is as droad as the oppermost part. But if you will make such Podiglions all of one bredth, I would commend it in a great worke, for that the undermost drawing to the wall, a going from our sight, lessen themselves: so that the part which receauch the smootened drawing to the wall, a going from our sight, lessen themselves; so that the part which receauch the smootened drawing to the stand well in a great height. You may set it down the sirst Cornice higher or lower, as you will, or according to the stration of the place. This build ding of Chimneyes may be made in great some: but if you will make them small, then you shall devide the height from the Pancement to the Architraue in 5. parts, inhercos one shall be for the Countee: the bredth of the Podiglions shall be the minth part of that height, the Capitall of halfe the bredth: and thus it will be more seemely in an modifierent means forme. This I speake by experience, so that I have observed this greatest measure in small sources in making of Chimneyes, but they prome to great.

The end of the Dorica order: and here followeth the Ionica.



Of the order of Ionica, and the Ornaments thereof.

The Seuenth Chapter.

Itruuins speaketh of Ionica, in his fourth Booke and 1. Chapter: and as I also said, the ancient Pagans tooke this kind of worke from women, and ascribed it to Diana, Apollo, & Bacchus, &c. But we that are Christians, having a Temple to make of this worke, we will dedicate it to such Saints as are of nature, eyther weake or strong: so likewise, common workes are sit for peaceable people, men, neyther great workemen, nor all too simple in workemanship:

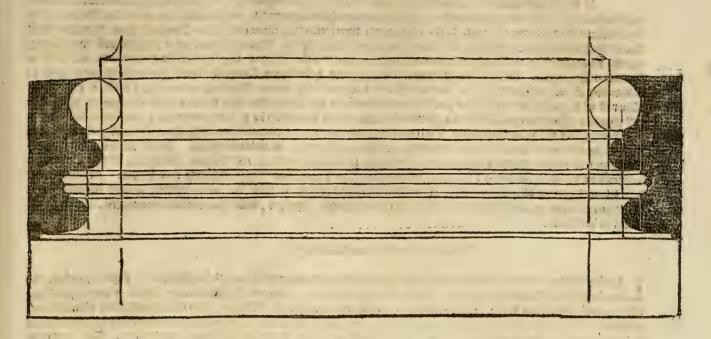
and tuch workemen are fittest for such worke. Now let vs come to the measures: the Ionica Columne, by a common rule, must be of 8, parts, with Capitall and Base: although that Vitrusius sayth, it must be of 8, parts and an halfe; so may men sometimes make it of 9, parts and more, as some indifferent workemen haue affirmed. But this, I say, shall be made of 8, parts, which must hold his thicknesses be looke, and so shall their Bases be of halfe the same thickenes, which Vitrusius setteth downe diligently, in the 3, Booke, and in the third Chapter of the same Booke, in this maner, that the Base aforesayd, must be of halfe the Columnes thickenesses, but the Plinthus must be of the third part thereof: which Plinthus taken of, you shall make sequen parts of the rest; whereof three shall be for the Thorus, and soure shall be for the two Scoties or Trochiles, with their Astragals and Lifts, so that each Trochile must have his Astragals. The Astragals shall be the eyght part of the Trochile, the Lists halse the Astragals. Although each Scotie with the Appendances are all of one height, yet the vndermost shall be greater; for it shall shoot out vnderneath, to the outcermost part of the Plinthus. The Proiecture on eyther side, shall be one eyght part, and one fixt parts to that the Plinthus on eyther side shall be one fourth part, and one eyght part more then the thickenesse of the Columnes. Now, for that the Cincte or List is suppressed by the greatness of the Thorus, I am perswaded that it ought to be made the halse greater then the other. Observe in all the members and parts with discretion, as should be vsed in the Dorica.

4		H
	Thorus superior, Superciliums 5 Conia sine reodribus,	
	Coria siur reodrilus,	
	Torus inferior,	
	Plinthus,	

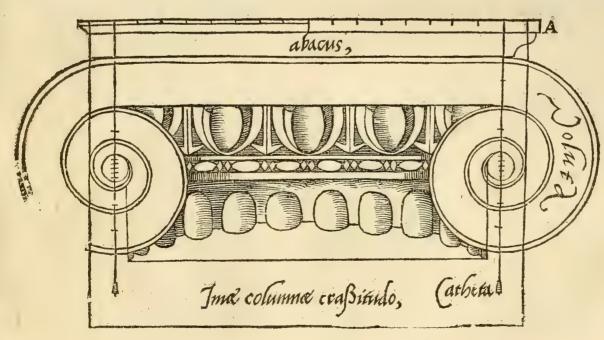
DK that the Base of the Jonica Pillar, written of by Virruvius, contenteth not the greated tookemen, because the Thorus is very great, and the Altragall small, vnder so great a member, according to the indges ment of expert workmen, that have often times disputed the same, with reverence, and much respect of such an Author; I will frame one here according to my opinion. The Plinthus being made, as Jayd before, the rest shalve denided in three parts, whereof one part shalve sor the Thorus: the other vnder that Thorus one of them sor an Astragall, the Cinthe the halfe thereof. The Cinthe or Supercisic onder the

The seuenth Chapter. Fol, 34

Thoras, mult be as broad as the Allragall. The rest is for the Scotie or Trochile: the other three parts that rest, shall also be decided into sire parts: one for the Astragall, one halfe for the Cinthe, and the bindermost also the like: the rest is for the Scotic comming at bindermeath, as is before alleaged.



Pe Zonica Capitall thall bee made in this maner: the height thall be the third part of a Columne, and the former part of § Abacus the bredth of a Columne in thicknes: to it also mult be added the 18. part, which in the whole, thall be ninetiene parts, but inwards a part and a halfe: at either end the line Catheta mult be drawne, which thall containe 9. parts and an halfe, which is the halfe bredth of the Capitall: one part and a halfe thalbe for the Abacus, which Corners you mult make like the right or left tive, for both are ancient: the 8. parts that are hanging before the Abacus, thall be for the Holutes. And for that it would be troublefome in this small Figure, especially to set downe before your eyes the numbers, therfore in the Leafe following, I will thew it better in great, and therewithall the maner halve the Arickes in the Columnes, with the Figure of the tide of the Holutes, and of the Capitals. But if the Columne be of 15, foote downwards, then I referre you to Victuuius, touching the same, in his third Booke and second Chapter.



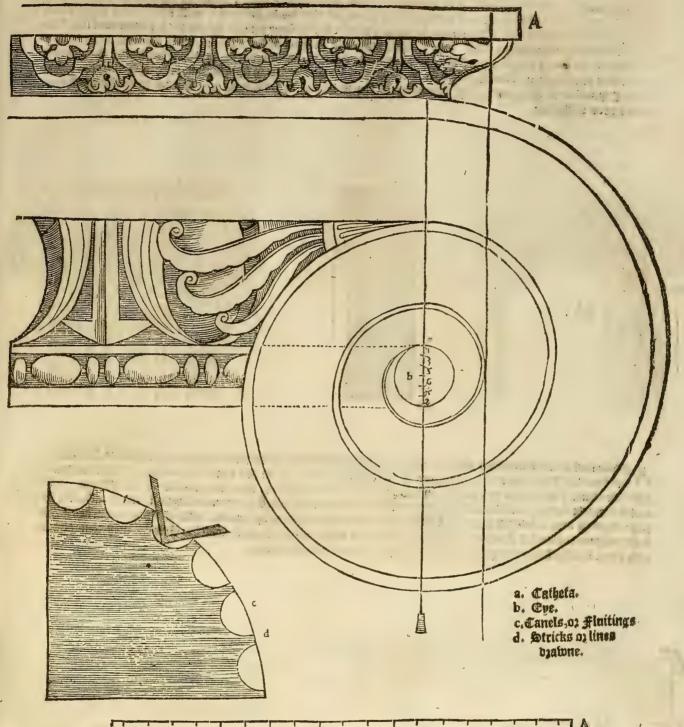
DEP the Capital of this Jonica is made, you must make the Molutes, which thall bee made by the line. called Catheta, which wee heere call, The right Lead : and when you leave the Abacus boderneath foure parts, then the first part thall be for the eye, and so there yet refleth this parts from the eye downewards; and fo in all, they make egght, as is before fard: the eye thall be beuided in fire parts, and the numbers let therein, as it is here fet downe; then place one foote of the Compas boon the poput I. and the other fot buder the Abacus, draws ing netherward, bp to the Catheta, to the enght part; then letting the same fote of the Compage stand, bring the other foot of the Compasse to 2. and draw it bewards againe to the Catheta. Then hold the foot of the Compasse there, bring. ing the other fote to 3. dealving it then bownewards againe to the Catheta: keping that foote there also, bring the oc ther byon the popul 4. then drawing it againe to the Catheta, holding the Compatte there, the fact will come boon 5. to bratving about, Doe like wife to 6. and then it comes to that with the eye, there you may make a roofe, if you pleafe. The rell of the particular members you hall easily find with the Compatie. The Arickes of the Columnes, which wee call Chanels or hollowings, thall be 24. in number, and one of them thall be 5. parts: whereof 4. thall be for the Guttes or Chanels, and the 5. for the Lift, by Virrums called Strir: and to from one five of the flat of the Lift to the other, you hall Draw a Grayght line, the middle tobereof hall be the Center of the hollowing out. But if the workeman please fometimes to make a thinne Columne to thew thicke, then there mult bee 28. Arickes: the Abacus of this Capitallis as broad on the fides, as before: which fides are proportioned according to that, which is land before. Friendly Reas Der, I have layo this Molute, according to my simple binderstanding, because Viccunius writing is hard to binderstand, and which is more, promised the same Figure in the last Boke, together, with divers other ornaments, which Boke is not to bee found.

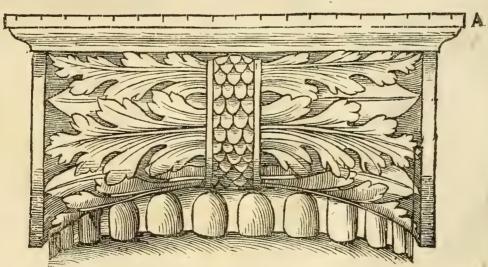
S. Serlii vpon the speach aforesayd.

Duing Reader, there are many things which cannot fully, from popul to popul, bee thewed in Figure, whelse the workeman must helpe himselse by practile, like as the Cincte or band of these Tolutes: which (if the Capitall bee very great) will kand well: if the breath contagneth the fourth part of the eye, and if the Capitall bee of indifferent greatnesse, then it must be made of a third part of the eye; but if the Capitall be small, then it must be ethe halfe of the eye, alwayes at the workemans discretion: sor I have same it so in Antiquities, although they differ. The thicknesse being manked about, where the Abacus, then you must place the Compasse a little below the figure 1. Grom about the Catheta downewards: then agayne, you must place the Compasse a little about the figure 2. drawing your line from be-

neath bowards to the Catheta.

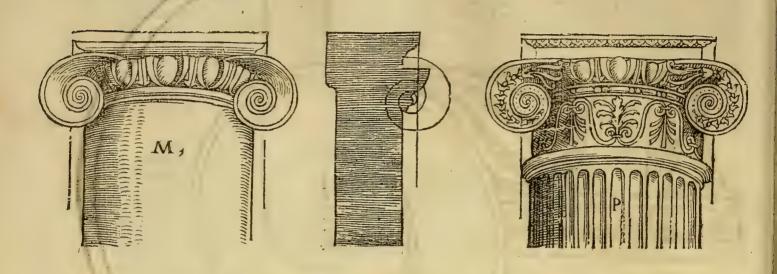
How, whereas I have layo, that the last Boke promised by Vicrouius, is not found, by meanes whereof, divers optimions are spread abroad touching the same, some affirming, that in Vicrouius time, there were many diskissalished men (as there are now also) having better fortune, then goe understanding: (others) that presumption, lister to unstail sulness, beareth such swapen among common workenen, that understand not themselves, it is thought, that Virrunius resuled, or at least, would not publish it, in regard of the unthanksulvess of such as neglect god learning. Some also affirme, that it was too hard a matter sor him to place them in figures; which I can hardly indge to beethe mind of such an Author. But whereas some affirme, that this last Boke was so pleasing and acceptable, in regard of the figures there at large set out, and he being ouce carefull in looking unto it, was robbed thereof, among other riches and treas sures, by unskissally least persons: this I believe best, is as warre, which is enemy to all good Artes, subject, at this day, is especially to be laurented, sor that men by the figures, might have made diversities of works in the right maner.



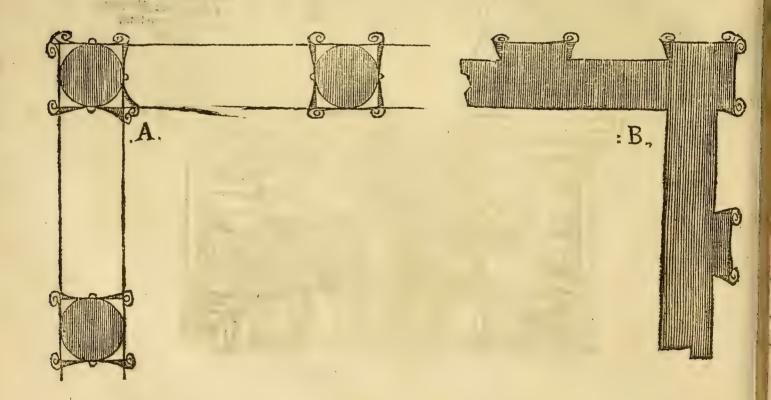


in finite Books

Pave declared hereafter, according to Virrainius writing, how to make Jonica worke, as farre as my learning thall ferus. How, I will thew how tome Antiquities in Kome, of that worke, are made, yet flanding. The Capitall M. flandeth yet in the Theater of Marcellus, twhereof I will let down fome general measures: the forehead of this Abacus is like unto the Columne below. The Holutes give out a firt part of the Abacus, and so farre out as the halfe of the Abacus; the height of the Capitallis a third part of the Columne below, but for that some workemen thought that Capitall to be but barely set foorth, they have added the Fress which you see in the Capitall, unto it, making the height of the Capitall of 2. third parts, of the Columnes thickenesse below, which Capital is at this day to bee seene in Rome, with others of the like.



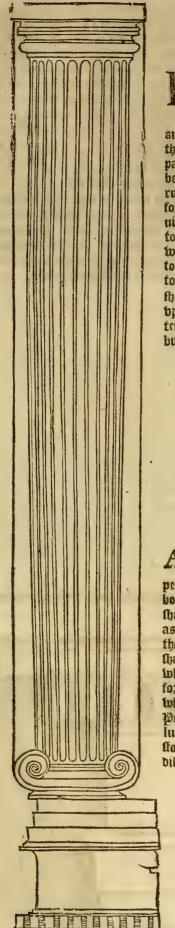
A po for that it may sometimes happen to the workeman, to make a sourcequare thutting with Jonica Capitals, so that some workemen have erred in placing of the Molutes; to helpe or case you of that errour, it shalbe needfull to make the corner Capitals, as you see them in this ground; of such Capitals, there was the like sound in Rome, which caused many to sudy, where it was made, in such maner, sor it was called, The consused Capitall; but at last, after long disputation, it was concluded that it had so in an open corner, shutting by the order of the Columnes marked A. But if the workeman have sat Columnes to place against the wall, in this Corner, that the Tolutes may come alike on both sides, the workeman may place shem, as in the ground B. is set downe.



The seuent h Chapter. Fol 36

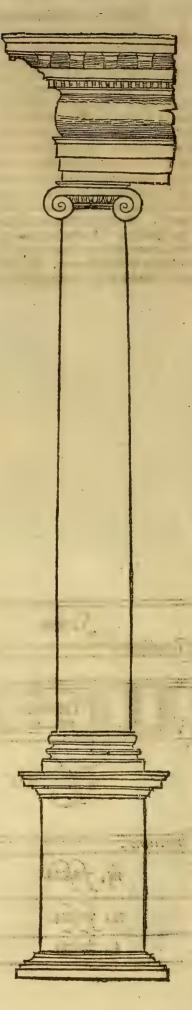
Be Epittilium or Architrane is made thus: If the Columne be of 12. to 15. fote high, the Architrane Halbe the haife of the Columne beneath: if it be of 15. to 20. fote high-then it halbe beuided in 13. parts: one halbe the height of the Architraus; and from 20. to 25. fote, the Columne thall be devided in 12. parts and a halfe: one part Malbe given to the Architrave: If the Columne be of 25. to 30. fate high, then the Opitilium Wall be the twelfth part of that height: If the Columne behigher, you must increase the Architrane moze: for the further it ascth from a mans light, so much more it leseth of the greatnesse. The Architrane being made of his one light, and denided in 7. one shalbe the Cimatic: the Protecture thereof, also as great. That which is over, is denided in 12. the shalbe given to the first Facius, source to the second, and five to the third. The thicknesse of the Architrane budge, shalbe like the Columne aboue, in the thinnest part : but the thicknesse of the Architraus aboue, thatbe like the thicknesse of the Columne below. The Zophozus or Freic Wall have the measure according to the length of the worke: but if there be cometobatto cut or grave in it, then it mult be made a fourth parthigher then the Architraue: but if it be made playne, without cutting og graning, then it mult be a fourth part leffe. The Cimatie mult be fet bpon the Frese, which mult be the fewenth part of the lame Freele; and the protecture also as much. About the Cimatic mult the Denticules be place ced, in beight, like the middlemost Facie: and the Projecture like the height. The breath of their termust be double in beight. The interculting or hollowing betweene the teeth, shalbe a third part lesse. The Cumatic is the sirt part of the Bentile. The Corona, with the Cimatic thereof, is the greatnessed the middlemost Facie. The Projecture of the Cozona, with the Denticules, is as much as the height of the Frese, with the Cunatie. The Scima is an eyght part higher then the Cozona. The rule og lift thereof thall be a firt part, and the Pozoiecture like the beight. Also our Author affirmeth, that all Cophores or corners will frand well, when their Projecture is like the beight.

	Scinua .		
imatum ;			
Cimatum.	Denticuly,		
- (matium,	fascia	Epifti.	
	fascia l	น้า พกร	



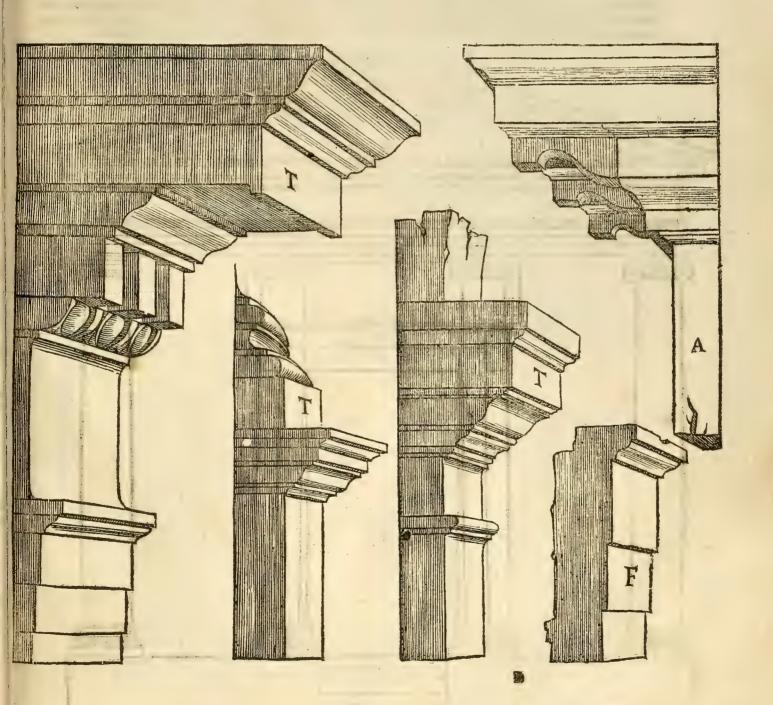
De that the works of Rome differ from the waiting of Victuuius, 3 will frame another Columne, whereof the Architrane, Frase and Comice, thall be the fourth part of the height of the Columne: which 4. part deulded in 10. parts, thie Mall be for the Architrane, devided after the rule aforelayd: 3. for the Freele, and 4. for the Cornices: which 4. hall bee des nived in 6. whereof one thall be ginen to the Denticules, one to the Cimatie which upholoeth the Butiles, and two to the Potiles and the Cozona; the reft to the Scima. The Proiecture of all, thall beat leaff as much as the height: boon such a Cornice was found written, A Sante Sabina, at Rome, in a building of the order of Jonica.

A Po if sometimes it be necessary to rayle by Columnes, being not compelled or pinched by any thing thereabout, then the proportion of heedefal shall be thus; it shall be as broad before as the Plinthus of the Columne: but the height of the flat of the Pedestall shalbe a fouresquare, and a sourch part: which deutoed in sixe parts, one shall be for the Base, and one for the Cornice, which in all is eight parts: so shall the Pedestal be of eight parts like the Columne. This must alwayes be undershood in common, that it is left at the discretion of the workeman.



The seuenth Chapter. Fol.37

Preason of the great difference, which Isinde in things of Rome, from those which Virrunius writeth of; therefore I have here thewed some of them, that are belt knowne at this day, extant in Rome to be seen in works. The Cornice, Frese, and Architrane marked T. is in the Theater of Marcellus, in the Jonica order, about the Dorica; the Pilaster with the Base thereupon, also marked T. is in the same order, whose the Jonica Columns. The Cornice for the impost of an Arch, also marked T. is of the same order, and byholdeth the Arch. The Cornice with the Hutiles marked A. was found at S. Adrians, and S. Laurence, in Rome. That Architrane marked F. was sound in Nel Friulle: which Architrane, sor that it had three Facies without Astragals, I sudge to be Jonica. Pere is nothing said of the measures hereof, sor I have diligently reduced them from the great into the small: which measures are ease to be sound with the Compasse.



A Libengh that the Thirematum Ionicum, that is, the boose by Virrunius described, in my opinion, not propositioned to antivere the building (as it ought to do:) therefore I will speake thereof, according to my knowledge: I say then, that Virrunius writing is not right, touching the height of the light of Thiromatum Woricu, viz. from the Paucinent to the Lacinary, there were z, parts and an halfe made, and two parts thereof were so, the height of the light, where the torona was very high, as also of the Worica. But there followeth per another errour, viz. making the Gate or doze 5, parts high, letting three parts thereof below, as Virrunius saith, also lessened in the opper part, like the Worica: then I sinde, that the widenesse thereof below, as Virrunius saith, also lessened in the opper part, like the Worica: then I solumnes, with the measure which Virrunius hath set down in his 3. Hoke, as I have set it down here in Atgure, that thorkemen may set the correspondence of this Bate or Woore, with the Temple thereof; which, in my opinion, is not sust, sor this cause, sor, if the doore of the Worica, which order of Columnes is lower then that of Jonica, hath she height of 2 sourcesquares, and a little more, I say, the Jonica dores, whose Columnes are higher, aught to be higher also tight, then the Worica. But it is not so much, according to Virrunius Booke, which sayth, 5 parts in height, and 3 parts in breath; but let all this bespoken with reverence of so great an Author. Peverthelesse, taking the parts in Virrunius Booke, which may be to some purpose, I will make another Figure thereof, without lessening it abouter but he that so his pleasure will lessen it aboue, observed the Worica, order.

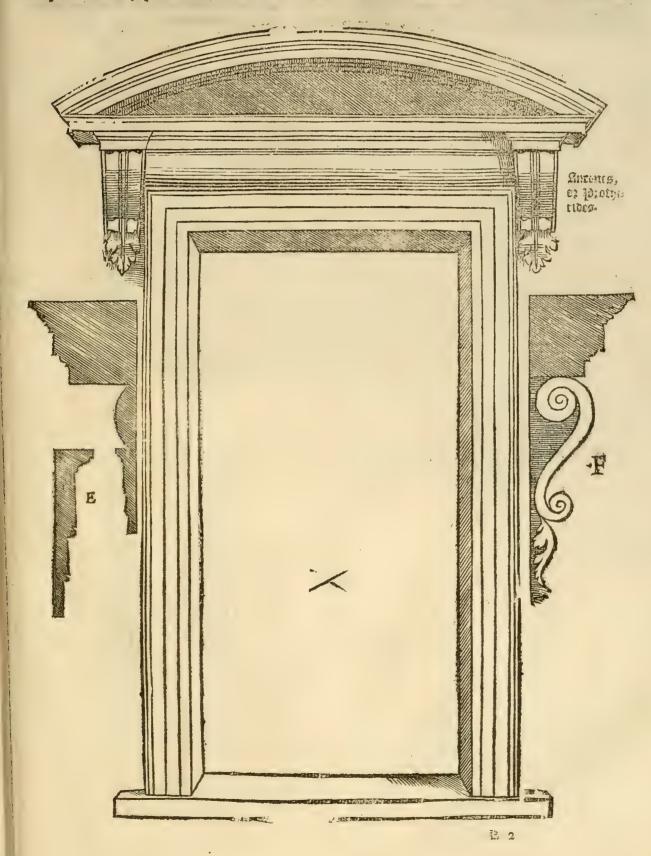
The Translator.

What Virrunius layth, touching the height of the light of the Doze or Gate of this Dozica building, there is sufficiently spoken; but touching the wideness of this Gate or Doze, where he sayth, that the height or openness thereof hould be devided into two parts and a halfe, and the widenesse thereof, to have one part and a halfe: It may be (as it is in other places) that the place is fallised; and it may also be, that it is a quarter two much: for if it be made of 10. In height, and 5. in breath, the light then being of 2. sourcequares, would be creasonable, so the Intercolumnes were as indee as from the Dozica: so it is of source Diameters, and this but of the Columnes wide, and the Antipagmentum would not be darkened; so that leaving out but a quarter, this building would thereby be made perfect.



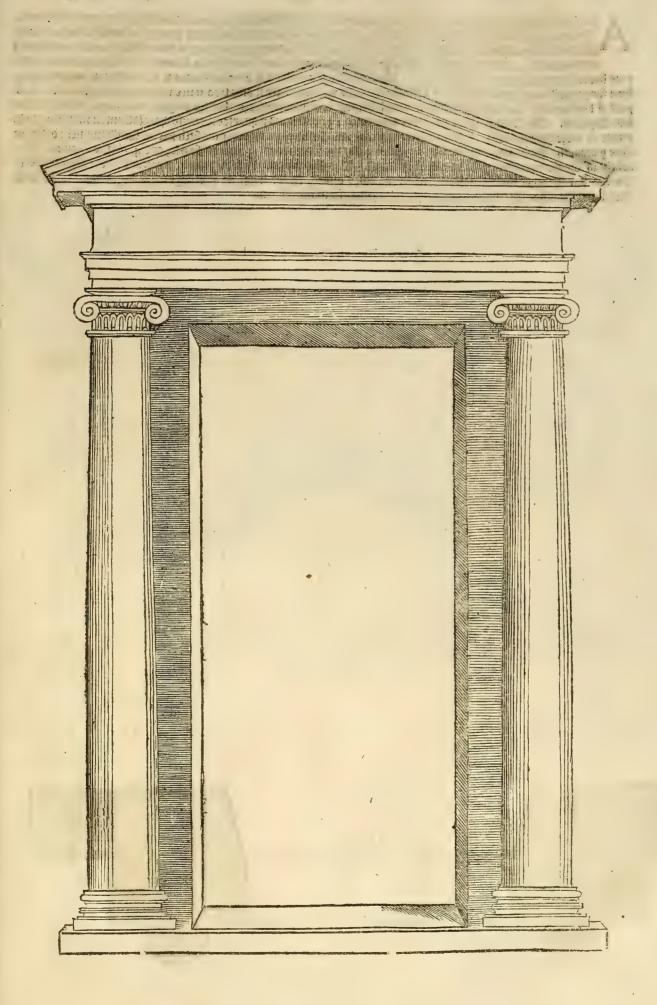
The seuenth Chapter. Fol 38

Pay, that the light of this voice ought at least to be of 2 fouresquires high, the Antipagmenth of Pilaster Chalbe the 12: I part of that height, made in such maner as is said of the Epissium Jonicum, thereto the Astragals Chalbe added, as it is she were in the Figure E. It a workentan will cut any thing in the Frese about the Supercilium, then it must be a 4, part higher then the Supercilium: but if you leave it plaine, it must be a fourth part less. The Cozona, with the other members, shall be as high as the Supercilium, decided as you set in the Figure F. The Ancones of Brothirdes, shall be broad aboue, like the Pilaster, but in the nether part, like the height of the hanging light, shalbe lessened sourth part, from the which the leaves hang, as you set in the Figure F. That part of the Circle, in sead of the Fastigium, shalb have his height made in this maner; with a Compasse you must reach the two corners of the Scima in the uppermost part, and one foot of the Compasse sinking to the point of the crosse, with the other soot, the part of the Circle being drawner, shalbe the height, which will be the third part of a Circle: which maner of making of not making of a Fastigium, shalbe alwayes referred to the pleasure of the workeman; it may also ferue so windowes.

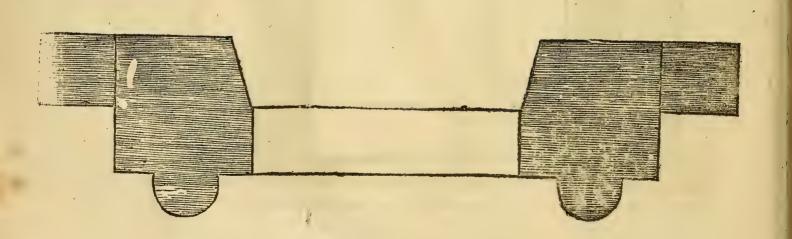


I be light of the Sate following, is more then of double proportion, viz. of two four elquares and a quarter; the flat of the Pilasters chall be the 8. part of the bredth of the light, and the Columnes chall be twice as thicke: the same Columne chall be lessened abone a sixt part: the height chall be of 9. parts, with Bales and Capitals, according to the measure asoresaid. And although these Columnes hold a part more then the rule asoresayd, yet it is not there fore trueth, so that the 2. third parts sand onely without the wall, bearing no other weight then the Frontspicium: surther, if by any accident these Columnes chould exced 9. parts, yet were it not to be blamed: so they are onely set so an ornament, being made fast in the wall. The height of the Architraue chall be like the Supercilies over the dozes the Frese chall be cut, and shall be made higher, as is before: if it be not cut, you may lessen it so much lower: the Cornice shall be higher, like the Epissilium or Architraue: with the other parts you must handle, as it is said in the beginning of this order. The Frontspicie shall be referred to the will of the workeman, either to make it higher or lower, by any of the asoresayd rules. By this invention, a workeman may helpehimselse in many things, making the light high or low, as need shall require; as sometimes of a sourcequare, or of two third parts: but if the workeman bee not other wise sompelled, I should best commend the double proportion, that is, of two sourcesquares.

The sewenth Chapter. Foliss

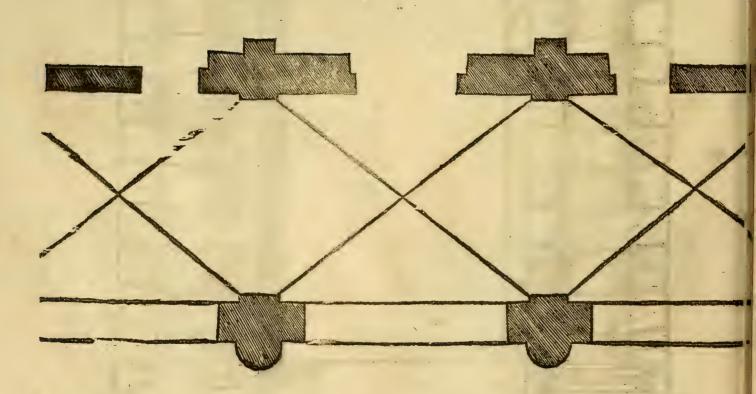


Libough I have let this rusticall Gate in the order of Thuscana, and not onely in many places applyed it to the Thuscana, but also mired it with the Dorica, yet I have placed it here with the Jonica: although it is not therestore to be set in all buildings that are made after the Dorica, neverthelesse, to good intent and purpose, as without in the countrey, in such a case also, it is not to bee discommended in a Citic or Tokene, for a Parchants or Law yers house; in which places it is tolerable. But in what place sower a man will make it, in a maner of bearing over, then the proportion of this worke shall be thus: the light up to the Arch shalbe two sourcesquares, and the Pilaster the 8. part of the breath of the light: the Columne shall hold the fourth part thereof, but the height shalbe 9, parts with Bases and Capitals. The Arch of the halse shalle decided in 13, parts and a quarter, because the middlemost stone shall hold a quarter more then the rest. The Architrane, Frese and Cornice, are together the sisth part of the Columnes: of which three pieces, the workeman shall make 11, parts: 4 for the Architrane, 3, for the Frese, and 4, for the Cornice. The height of the Podium shalle she breath of the light. The Cornice and the Base, may be taken out of the aforesayd Stilobato: but the other Base, Capitall, Architrane, and Cornice, shalle made as it is sayd in the beginning. The Architrane, and the other that bind the Columnes, you may see in the Figure.

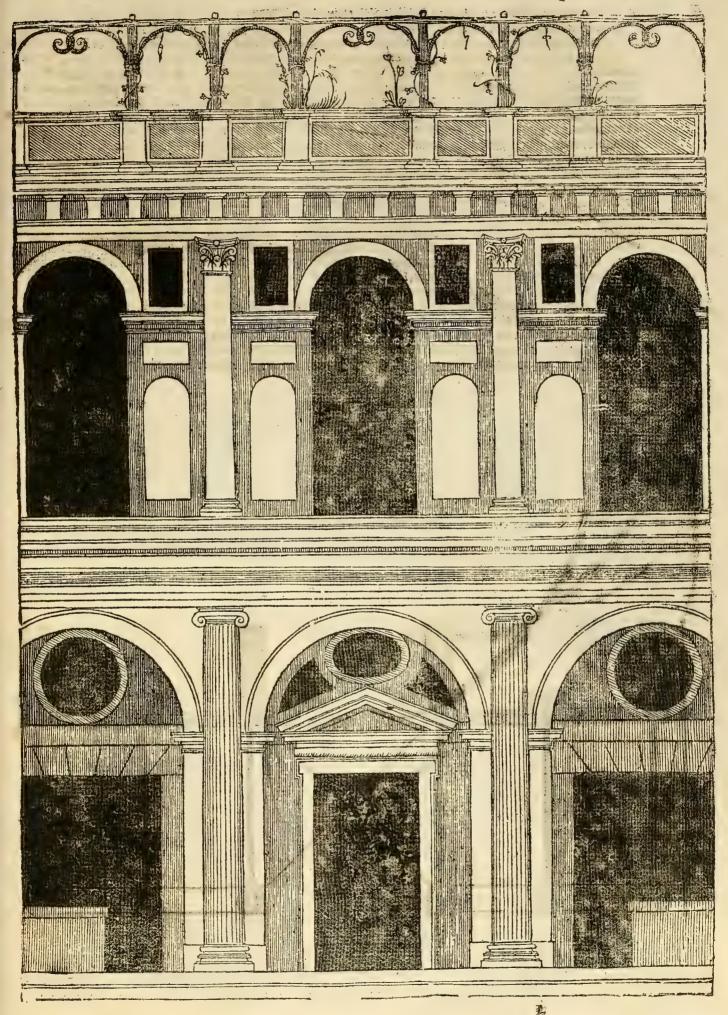


The seuenth Chapter. Fol. 40 The fourth Booke.

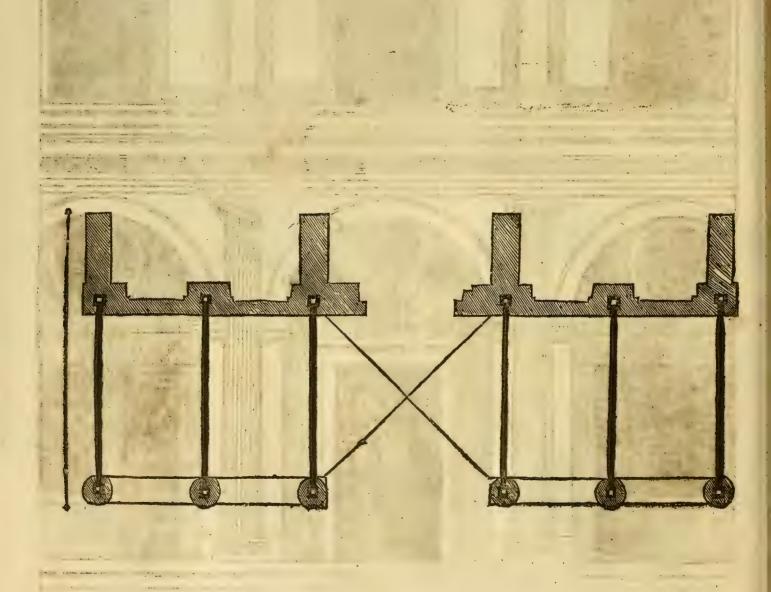
Uthough the height of this Arch is not of double proportion, as the most part of those which I have shelved, ref it is not falle, but is made by good discretion, for that it may some time fall out, that in the compactition of a facies. byon occasion of any necessary height, and to make the Arches bucquall, which should be so to place the principall gate in the middle, which in such case should not attagne to such height: but if we be not constrayned by any nes cellity, I more commend the double height, then any other proportion. The widenelle then betweene one Pilatter and the other chalbe 3. parts, and the height 5. but afterwards the widenelle being devided in 5. then the whole Pillars which fand befoge the 2. Pilaffers, haue 2. parts, and the thickneffe of the Columnes fhalbe of one part : the Wilaffers thall each of them be of halfe a Columne in thickneffe: like wife the Arch, and the Impost which beholdeth the Arch, are of the fame beight made, as it is the web in the Theater of Marcellus marked T. The Columnes thalbe 9. parts high, with Bales and Capitals, made according to the rule, in the beginning of this Chapter let downe: the door in the middle fhalbe halfe the widene fe betwene the Bilafters : the beight halbe found in this maner : The Bilafter bes ing made of the firt part of the light, the Counice like the eyes of the Ampolt, placed about it, and the Drima boon that, making afterward the Frese the fourth part less then the Antipagmentum, then the height will find it selfe, which will be litt'e leffe then two fouresquares. The Frontispice shalbe made according to a rule set dewne in the Dorica: the Architrane, Freie and Comice Chalbe made in height, of the fourth part of the beights of the Columnes, by the rule as foresapo. The Story abone halbe lower by one fourth part: so hall the Architrane, Freie and Cornice bee of the fift part of that height, which shalbe the fourth part of the height of the Columnes: but touching the verified the partie cular members, you thall find them in full measure in the Dider of Composita. The windowes being made with Arches, thatbe in breath like the doze: likewife the Pilatters and the Arches, but their beight halbe two fourefquares and a halfe, which is to give more light in the chambers. The Columnes thalbe flat, and one fourth part thorter then the lower. The bredth of the Biches bet wone the Columnes and the windowes, is one Columne and a halfe, the bright of foure Columnes thicknesse. Thus of any parts or members that bee relling, you shall find meanes to make them by the prefeription of the aforefard rules of that order: for of this Torinthia, you shall find the measure in the beginning of that order. Aboue this Cory, he that will, may make a walking place, well defended from water: and that the height of this Podium were of reasonable height to leane boon, og to rell boon with a mans armes, these Factes would bee a great beautifying to the building, anomuch case to the inhabitants.

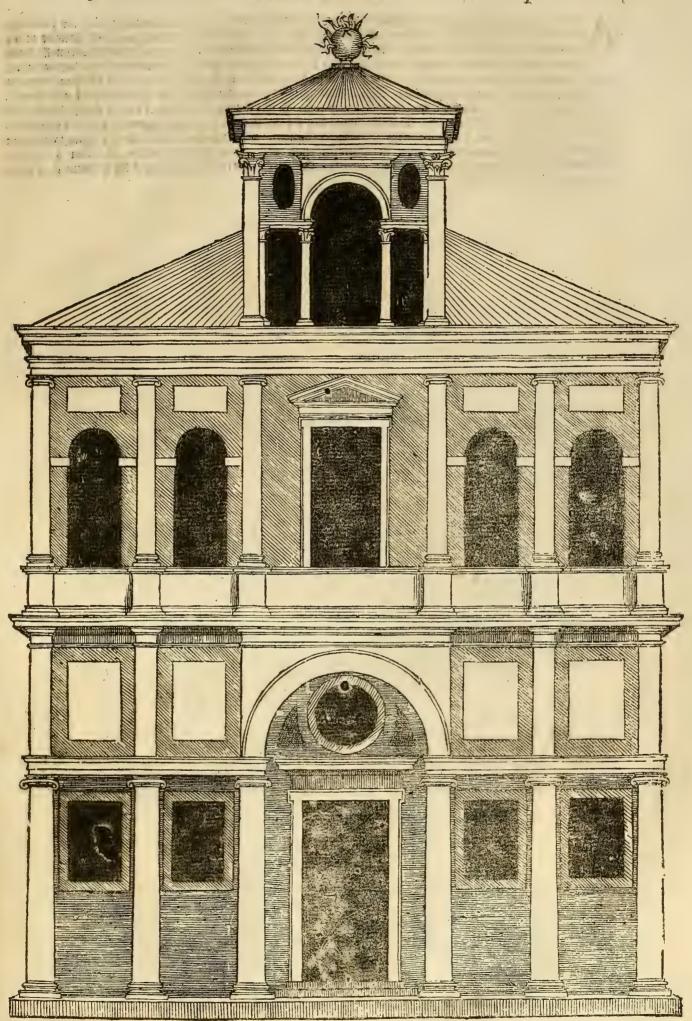


The seventh Chapter. Fol. 4?



Ometime, as is favo, a workeman thall find a great number of Columnes, but to low, that they will not reach bigh inough for his worke, if he cannot helpe himfelfe therewith, and apply fuch members, to ferue the building which he hath in hand: therefore if the height of the Gallery rileth higher then the Columnes, then in the middle of the Facie you may make an Arch, being ppholoen by the Architrane, which Halbe abone the Columnes, which Architrane shall bee the Impost or opholoing of a round rose. But where the Arch shall be, there shall be a Crociere, as the workeman may le in this ground; and for Arenathening thereof, let there be Fron or mettall barres layo ouer, as it is taught in the Dozica Dedcr. But the deniding of this Facie Chalbe fuch, that the middlemost Intercolumne chalbe of 6. Columnes thicknesse: and the height of the Columne, with Balcs and Tapitals shalbe of 8. parts: the Architraue holdeth as much as the Columne is in thicknesse above: like wife the Arch: above the which the workernan hall make a Coinice, which height thall hold a fourth part moze then the Architraue, without the Thozus buder, with the Lift: which Counice thall also ferue for a Capitall boon the Willars, about the Columnes, and thalbe of the same bredth that the Columne is abone. The Intercolumnes on the fives thatbe of 3. Columnes in thicknesse: the height of the doze halbe fo, that the Architrage buter the Arch thall ferue for the Cornice about the Doze, changing partly her members, Under the Comice there Malbe a frese let, which thalbe a fourth part lette then the Architraue, the as it is figured. Supercities with the Platter of the fame beight. But as much as thalbe buder the Supercities, to the flayers, of that halfe, the bredth of the light thalbe made; and so the light thalbe of two fouresquares. The windowes thall frand as the eyes of the voze fland, and their wivenesse shalbe of two Columnes thicknesse, but the height shalbe taken in Diagonall maner: the fecond Doder of Story Malbe a fourth part leffe then the first, the Podium being taken of a reasonable height, that which refleth halbe devided in 5. parts, foure whereof hall be for the height of the Columnes, the other for the Arthitrane, Frese and Comice, obseruing the given measures of such a Store. The breath of the window in the middle, is with the Antipagmentum as wide as the light of the doze, but the light Malbe double in height: in the Draments as bone, workemen may follow and observe the rule set downe. The windowes on the sides shall be like those that stand bes low, and their height like the greater: the rayling by in the middle about the fecond flozy, thall also be a fourth part lefte then the other, and sucry part thereof lettened accordingly: for the light thereof, the order of the lowell flory is obserwed: but the making of this third flogy, og the not making thereof, is at the pleasure of the workman.



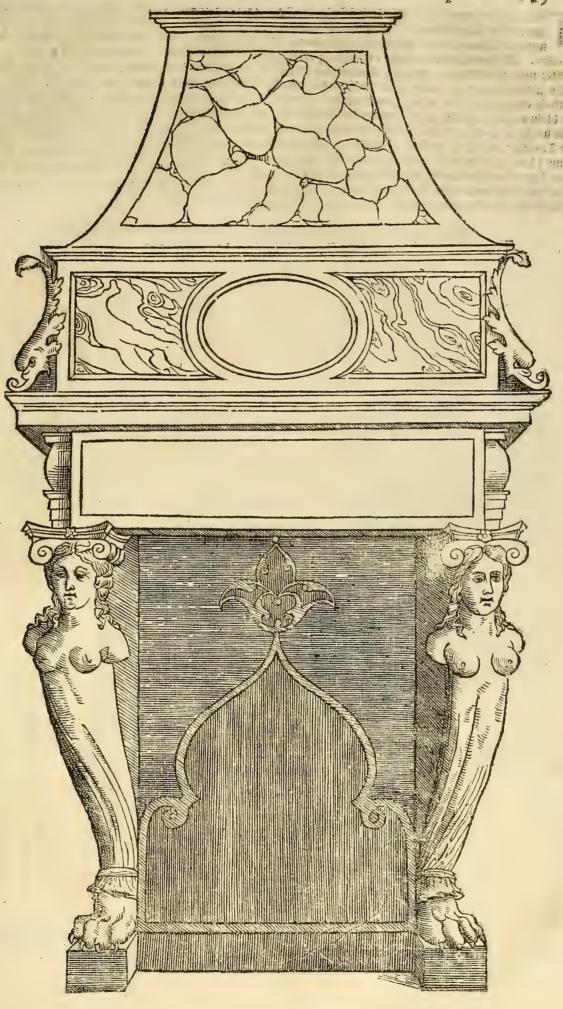


Of the Ionica

wit is sald in the beginning of this Booke, the maner and order of the Ionica being mode after the Feminine kind, it is so like wife a material thing, that having a Chimney to make of that order, we must, as neve as we can, make some thew of that sepectherein: the proportion whereof halbe thus, that he high to the openment, which the ground of the Chamber or Pall, to the Architrane, eyght parts high, and that that we cording to the placing of the Columnes, which that be such like, monters or strange formes (as we call them) made in this maner, which that serve do Mogditions. The Architrane, Frese and Cornice, that we the fourth part of the height, as it is before sayd. The table by on the Capitals, which concret the Architrane and the Frese, I sidge, that ancient workemen have bled to finde more space to write in, and also, so that they were destrous of novelties: which table, whee ther it be made or not made, is referred to the will of the workeman. The second order, with the Dolphins, is made for two causes, the one is, to make the mouth of the Chimney, which doeth receive the smoke wider: the other is, to make a piramical sorme, making the necked the Chimney in a Chamber, but it is still at the will of the workeman, to make them more or lesse, and at all.

The fourth Booke,

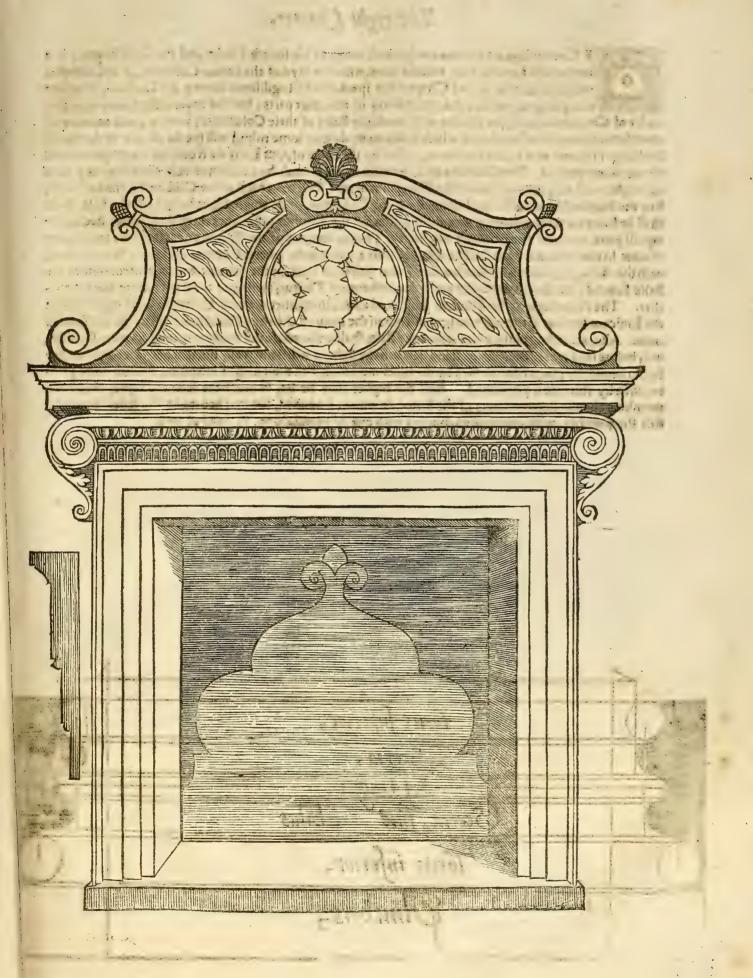
The seuenth Chapter. Fol. 43



Of the Ionica

That the fire, which is enemy tomens eyes, may warms the rector a mans body. The widenesse of this Chimney is a full four esquare: the Pilacter chall have a firt part of the widenesse: the Cimatic the seventh part of the Pilacter. Of the rest you may make 12. parts, 3. chalbe given to the first Facie, 4. the second, and 5. the third Facie: and so; more beautifying, a man may also make the Astragals, as you set them here in the soes. The height of the Columbia that the charestaire or hollowing, and the other for the Cohine, with the Astragall and List, the third chall be given to the Molutes, which thall hang on the soes like the Cimatic, but the leaves shall hang downe as low as the Architrane. The height of the Corona, with the two Cimatics, and the Scima, are like the second and third Facie, together with the Cimatic: but the Projectore of Corona, Cimatics, and Scima, each of them hold as much as the height. This like torms you may make the Pilasters of the 8. part of the widenesse, so will they be much more securely of themselves. That part made over so an Ornament, is also at the workemans will, so this Chimney is to sand in the thicknesse of wall, so that this Ornament, of this Order, would secue so a window or doze.

Here endeth the Ionica Order of building : and there followeth the Corinthia,



Of the order of Corinthia worke, and the Ornaments thereof.

The eyght Chapter.

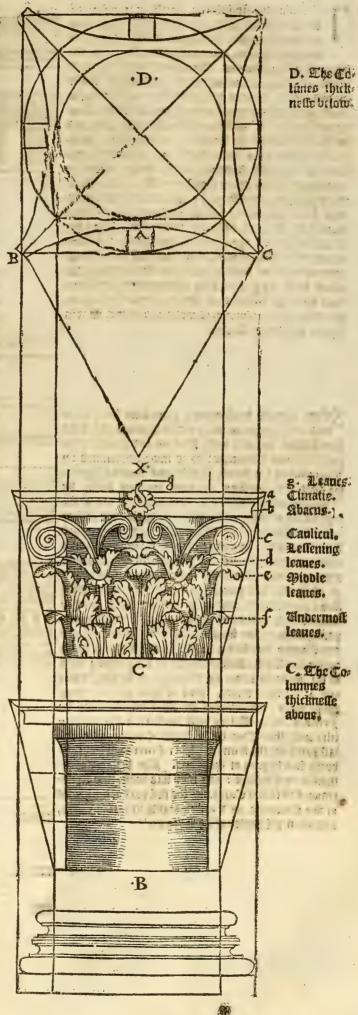
F Corinthia worke, Vierunius speaketh onely in his fourth Booke, and the first Chapter, in a maner as if he would say, that the same, which is sayd of the Ionica Columne, is in Corinthia worke: and in his second Chapter hee speaketh of Mogdilions among the Coronas, therefore not gluing any other rules or measures of the other parts; but the ancient Romanes vsing this order of Corinthia much, (as also the rest) made the Bases of these Columnes, with a great number of members or parts full of worker of which Bases to set downe some rules, I will speake of one of the sayrest buildings in Rome, that is, the Pantheon, called by the name of, Our Lady de Rotonde, fettingdowne all the measures thereof. The Columne of Corinthia worke is made by a common rule, confisting of o. parts in height, with Capitals and Bases: the Capitall whereof, shall be as high as the Columne is thicke below. but the Base shall be of halfe the thickenesse of the Columne. Of this halfe, or height of the Base, there shall be foure even parts made, whereof the one is for the Plinthus, the other three shall be devided in five equall parts, whereof one part shall bee for the Thorus aboue, but the Thorus ander shall be a fourth part thicker so that which resteth shall be deuided into 2. even parts, whereof one part is for the Scotie below, with the Astragall, and two Lists or borders: that Astragall shall be the fixt part, and each list or border the halfe thereof: but the lift or border under the nethermost Thorus, shall bee a third part more then the o-The Projecture of the Plinthus shall stand about in another order of Columnes, making them like the Ionica order; but if the place be beneath vpon the ground, then the Proiecture shall be like the Dorica order. Allo, according to the place where the Bales shalbe placed, so the workeman mult adde or diminish, as is before fayd: for as these Bases stand beneath the fight, it will stand well; burif it bee placed about the fight, then all the places that are vied by the other members, with their feneral distances, shall be made greater, then by this rule is prescribed. And the higher they be set, so much the lesse and sayrer seeme the members therein the workeman of the Rotonde was well aduited, for that hee made the Bales about the first story within, with two Scoties, but yet with one Astragallalone, in stead of two.

2_		
	forus superior, Scotia,	
	2 di tragali:	
	Scotia, sine Trochilus Torus inferior,	
Commence of the Commence of th	Plinthus,	

The fourth Booke,

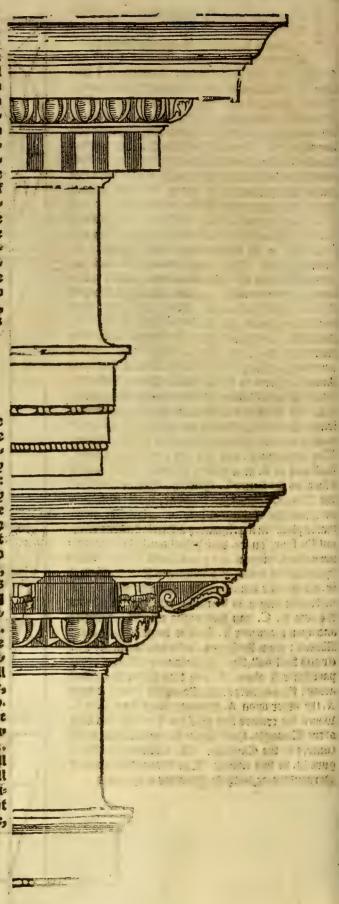
The seuenth Chapter. Fol 45

De derination of the Capitall Cozinthia, was from a Dayd of Counthia: but for that Vitruvius in his fourth Boke and first Chapter Describeth his petygræ, whereof 3 will not trouble my selfe to speake of, thus much I will fay: If a workeman had a Temple to make for the Mirgin Mary, og any other Saints that were Mirs gins,03 Boules of Sepulchers for persons of honeff life and conversation, then a manimight ble this mas ner of worke. The height of this Capitall hall bee like the thickness of the Columne below: the Abas cus the leventh part of that height. Df the rell there Chalbe thie parts made: one for the leaves below; the other for the leanes in the middle; and the last to, the Molutes, as we may call them. But betwene the Molutes and the middlemold leaves, there is a space left to the leffer leaves, from the which the Mointes grew. The Capitali marked B. Chall bee bnberneath like the Columne aboue: bnder the A. bacus, there is a Cintha made, the height whereof Hall be halfe the Abacus: of which Abacus, three parts being made, one thatbe for the Cimatic with the Lifts, and the rest for the Plinthus. Under the foure comers of the Abacus, the greatest Colutes aremade: and in the middle of the Abacus, there is a flower as great as the Abacus is thicke, buder the which the least Molutes Halbe made; bnder the great telf, and also bnoer the smallest Wolutes, the middle leaues that be fet, be fluid ne the which the least icaues thall grow out, and out of them the Tolutes fpring. The middlemost, and also the undermost leavies, thall each be 8. in number, Canding betweine each other, as the figure C. theweth. The widenesse of the Abacus, from poput to poput, halbe two Diameters of the Columnes below: which Diameter Malbe placed in a 4. Iquare, a a Circle drawne with out the fouresquare, which thall touch the soure coas ners: then, without this areat Circle, another foures Iquare being made, and venided in Diagonall, that is, croffe wife, those lines will thew to be two Diameters in length (as Vicruuius teacheth.) But from the line B. C. pon hall make a perfit Triangle: and bpon the corner X. Mall be to make hollow the Abacus : from the spaces, betweene the great Cir. cleand the small, there thatbe foure parts made, one part that rest aboue A. and thie Chalbe thus taken away: the one fote of the Compatte being let bpon X, the other bpon A. drawing about from B. to C. where the croked line thall reach on the two fides of the Triangle, there halbe the termination of the comers of the Capitals. The crample is in the figure D. in this maner. The Abacus Hall come in Perpendicular, with the Plinthus of the Bale.

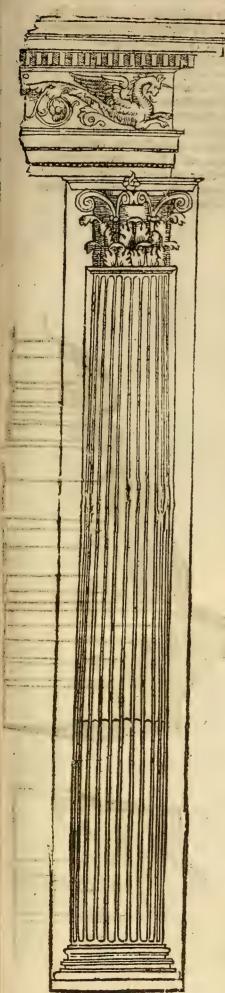


Duching the Architraue, Frale and Cornice of the Counthis, as I have land in the beginning of this Chapter, Victuuius letteth bolene no measure thereof, although he setteth downe the oziginall of the Putiles, which may bee made in all maner of Comices, as tree fe in Antiquities : but to proceed orderly and not to leave Vicrouius writing to much, 3 will fet the ornaments of Jonica in this Chap. ter, adding thereto the Altragall in the Architraue, and an Echinus under the Crowne, as some Arch-Archi tects in Kome hane bone. So I lay, when the Archie trave is made as it Candeth by the Jonica, buder the middlemost Facie, there Chall be an Aftragall made of the epatt part of the fame Facie, and bnder the oppermost Facis allo, one of peyaht parts of the land facis lozought with Lead, as you fe : after that, lohen the Freele is let with the Eimatie, and thereto the Denticules with the Cimatic, then you must place the E chine about it, of such height as the field Facie is, the which with the Projectures and cuttings, Chall thew moze then the middlemost Facie: aboue the Cchine. poumult fet the Corona, Cimatie, and Sima, as it is layd in the Jonica Deder.

Some Romith workemen , prockding with more boldenette, have not onely placed Echines aboue the Denticules, but also made Putiles and Dentiles tonether, in one Comice, which is much condemned by Victuuius in his fourth Booke, and fecond Chapter: for that the Dentiles represent certains teth, by Vitruvius called Afferi, and the Pogoilions are for the supporting of other ends of wood, by the sayo Author called Cantery: which two kind of beames may not fand together in one place; and I, for my part, could never endure Dentiles and Dutiles in one Comice, although Kome aboundeth therein, and diners places of Italy also: but proceding orderly in this worke, I find a generall role, that is, that the tright of the Co. lumnes with Bales and Capitals, thalbe denided in 4. parts, whereof one is ginen to the Architeaue, Freie and Comice, and fach a beight agreeth with the Dozie ca: the fourth part Halbe devided in 10. parts: 3. Mall be for the Architrane, as aforefayd, 3. for the Friele, and 4. for the Cornice. But of those 4. there are 9. parts made, one thall bee for the Cimatie aboue the Freie, 2. for the Echine with the Lift, 2. for the Due tiles with their Cimatie, 2. for the Corona, and the 2. last parts for the Sima, with her Cimatie, which shall be the fourth part of the Sima. The Proiect of all thall be as aforelayd: you may also make this Architrane, Frale and Cornice, of the first part of the beight of the Columne, as Vicrunius layth in his fift Boke, and fenenth Chapter of the Theater.



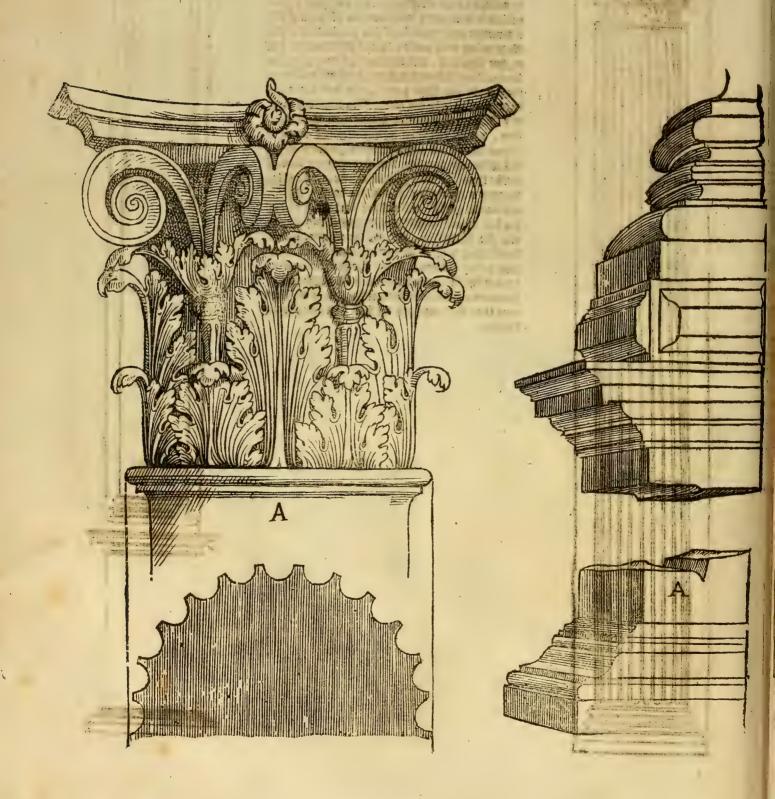
The eyght Chapter. Fol, 46

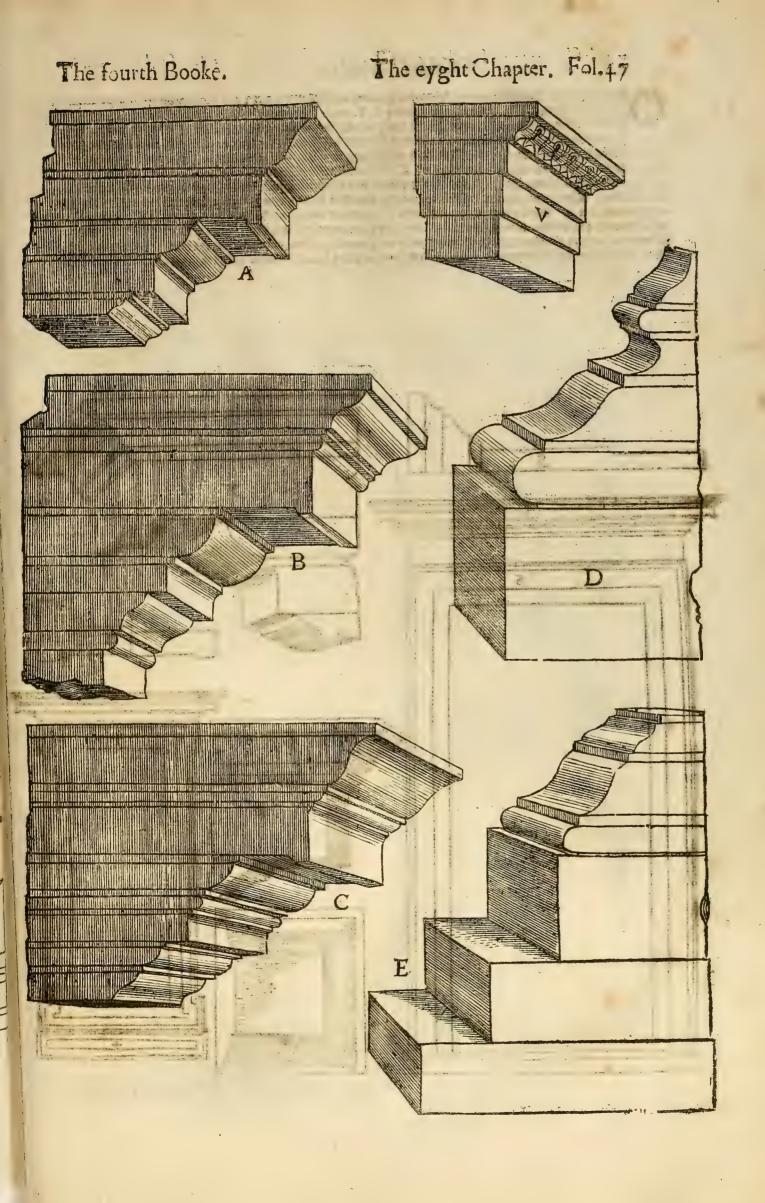


Be lectening of the Counthia Columne shall be made, as it is say bot the other: and allo thereafter as the height is but of 16. foote bownewards: it Malbelettened aboue the firt part, by the rule afticlate: and if it bee firthed or thankled, then you shall make it like the Jonica; but from the third part netherwards the cartting or hollowing thall be full as you fee it in the Figure on the flock. The Cozona is with: out Qutiles, whereof the Architrane is halfe the Columnes thickenelle: the Frale, for that it is cut, is the fourth part moze then & Archiceaue:and the Cornice without the Cimatie of the Freele. is as high as the Architrane: the height of all to gether is somewhat lede then the lift part of the Columns: neticrthelelle, if the Pozoiecture of the Cozona bee well mabe, then it will thew to bee higher then it is, and thall bee lette wayaht byon the building: wherefore, that the failful workman may chuse out those parts, that best serne his turne, that he may not exceed Vicuuius doctrine, and the good Antiquities, which meir, by his wais ting, acknowledge, if by any accident this Columne had nied of a propositioned Pedelial, being not let by any occasion, then y proposition thereof Malbe thus: the bredth thalbe benided in 3 .parts, tohereof 2. parts thall bee for the beight, that is, one fourth parts, and 2. third parts, (3 mesme the flat) tohich height thall be denived in 7 parts: one for the Bales, one for the Cornice abone, which thall in all be 9. parts, proportioned according to the Columne: but of the particular menibers of the Bales and Comices, I will hereafter their moze, with some Antiquities, inhereof men may take forth measure as thall best forue their turnes.



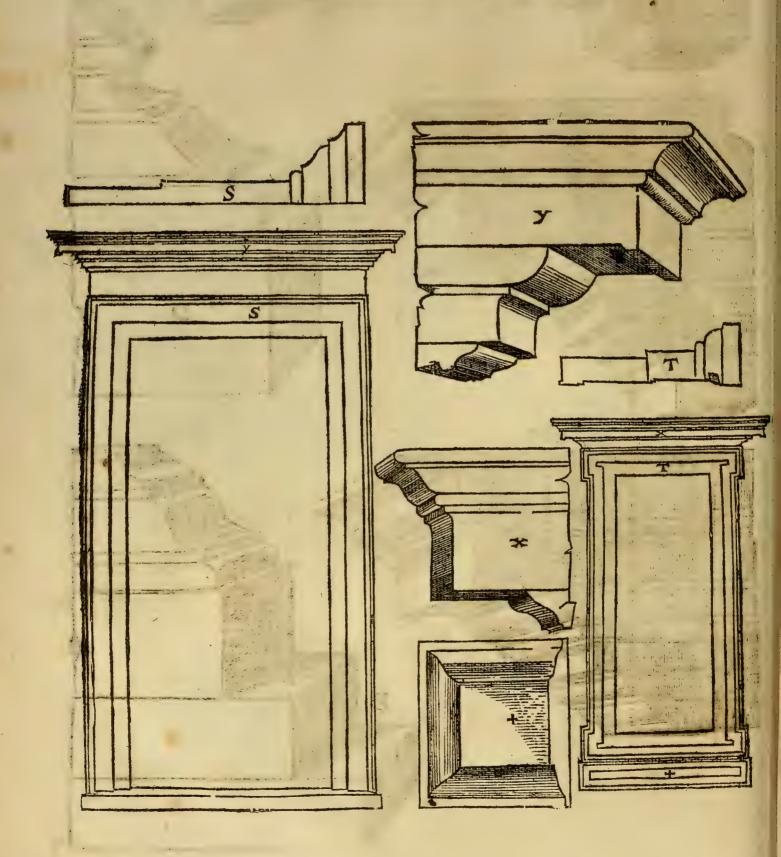
A spong other Antiquities of the Cozinthia, which are tene in Italy, I thinke the Pantheon of Rome, and the Arch tryumphant, at the Hauen of Ancona, are the fayzest and best to be some: of which Arch; the Capitall hereunder matked A. is with great care proportioned after the great; which height is contrary to the writing of Virrunius: neverthelesse, it had good correspondencie; it may be, that Virrunius meant, that the height of the Capitall should be one Columnes thickenesse without the Abacus: but the tert herein is fallssed, so, that I have not onely sound this Capitall, but others more of such proportion. The Columnes hereofare chaneled, as it is she wed here: the Pedesall with the Base doponit, is a member of the same Arch; also proportioned in the small: the Cornice hereunto added, was sound at Al foro transcorio in Rome: that marked with A. is very handsome, so, a Cozinthian Cozuste without Pogodisons: that marked with B. is a little sayrer; but that with C. is the unhandsomess, because of the double parts, which have no good grace from the Cozona dosonewards: and also, so, that the Cozona, upon so much Cozusce, hath so small Projecture. The Wase of the Pedesall marked D. in my opinion, is very sayre, and also the Basement with E. I thinke hath beine a thing that hath continued in some building: which things, altogether, men may applie to the order of Cozinthia; and in the Inica Phanelement with E. The Architrane V. is in Verona, in an Arch tryumphant, which Facies standed contrary to Virrunius writing; yet I have set them here to shew such a discremence.

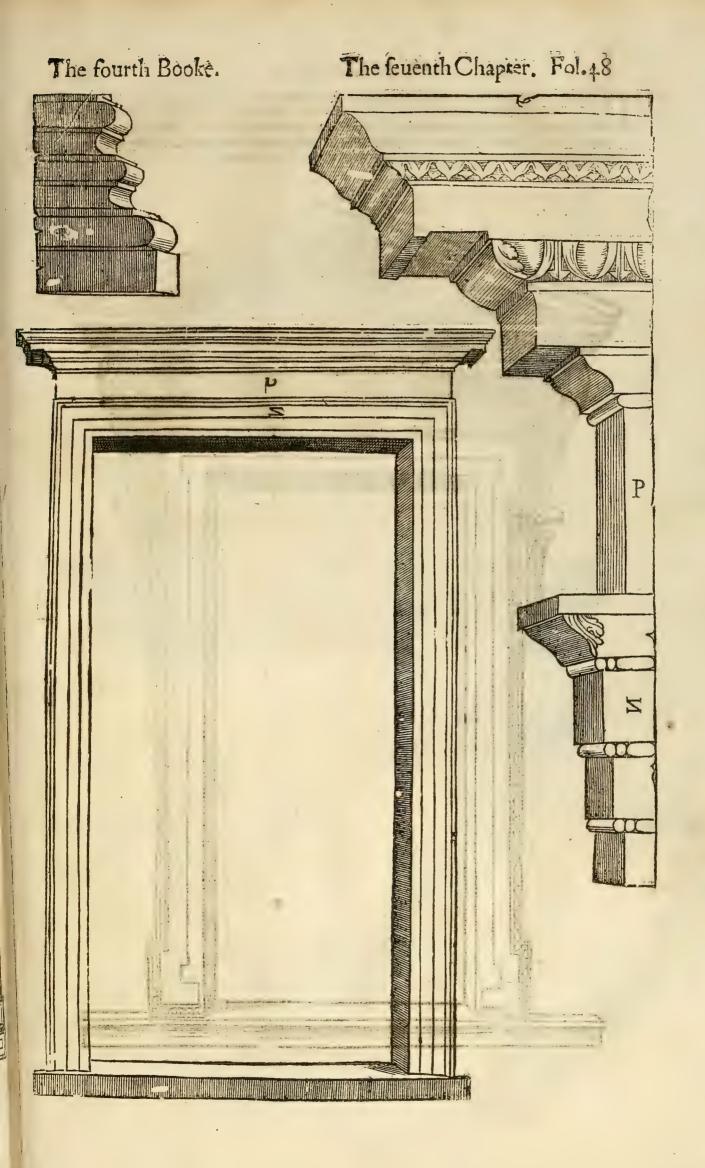




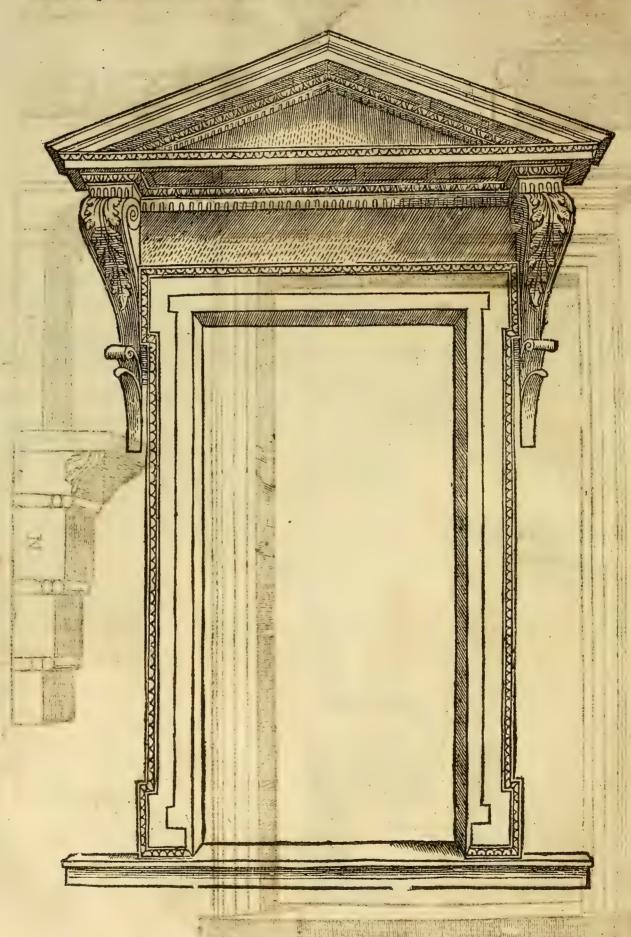
Fife doores of Carinthia works, Victuoius speaketh nothing at all; but I will speake of the Antiquities which are pet to be seen. The Gate or doore marked S. Y. is at Twok, be not the River of Avienc, in a round Temple, made after the Counthia maner, which doore is lessed about the eyehtenth part. The height is about, 2.

4. squares: the rest of the members are proportioned after the great. The window T. and X. is in the same Temple, and lessed about the the doore: the Pilasters or Antipagmentum are all proportioned, which a man may find with the Compasse. The doze following, marked P. Z. is that of the Pantheon in Rome, also Corinthia works; which is 20. ancient Palmes broad: the height 40. And it is sayd, that the Antipagmentum is all of one piece, and I also have seen no other. The Antipagmentum of this doore is the bredth of the S. parts of the light thereof, and in the sides it is of a good thickenes. But so that you cannot see the first, without sains a part of the sleep, therefore it seemeth to such as looke on it, to be broader then in effect it is. And this doore, because it is so high, comes in Perpendicular, and is not lessed as the other associators all the other members are proportioned according to the greatacts. The Wale about the Tate, is like that of slat Columnes about the Erse order, which I have set downe by the Corinthia.





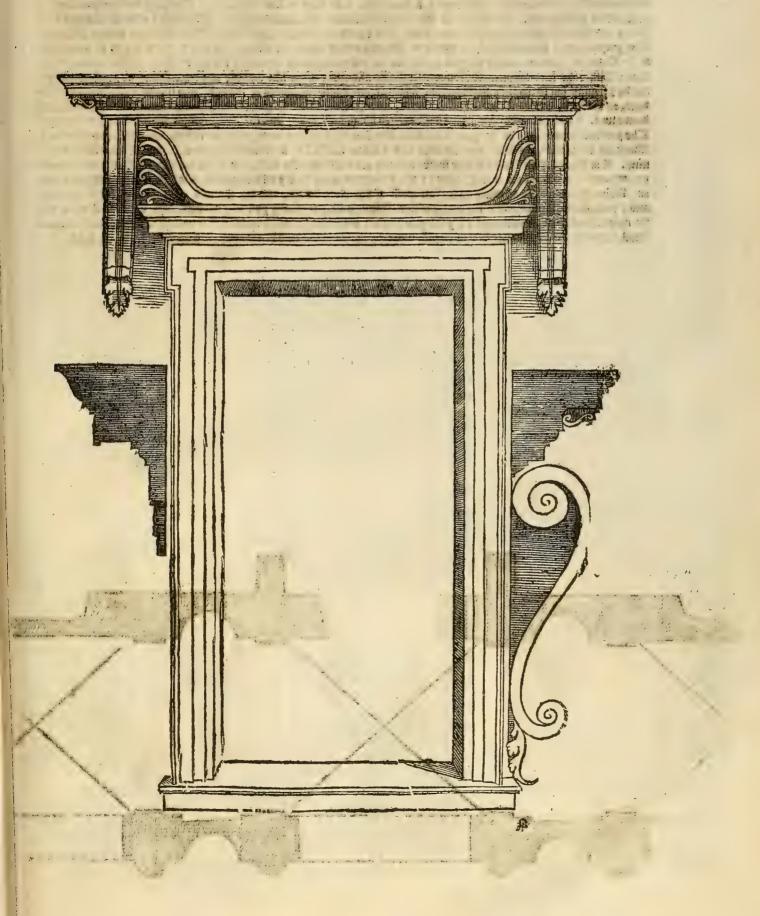
The dooze hereunder let downe, is at Palestina, and is Cozinthia: the widenesse is 2. sourcsquares: the Antepagmentum or the Pilaster is broad the sixt part of the widenes, decided in maner assessate. The Sophoze or Freise is the fourth part more then the Supercilie. The Cozona and the rest, are like the Supercilie, decided as you see in the Figure. The Prothyrides or Ancones, with that which is byon them, hang so slightly or losely, as you see. The Frontispicie is made, as in the order of Dorica, in the second Facie, is sayd.



The fourth Booke.

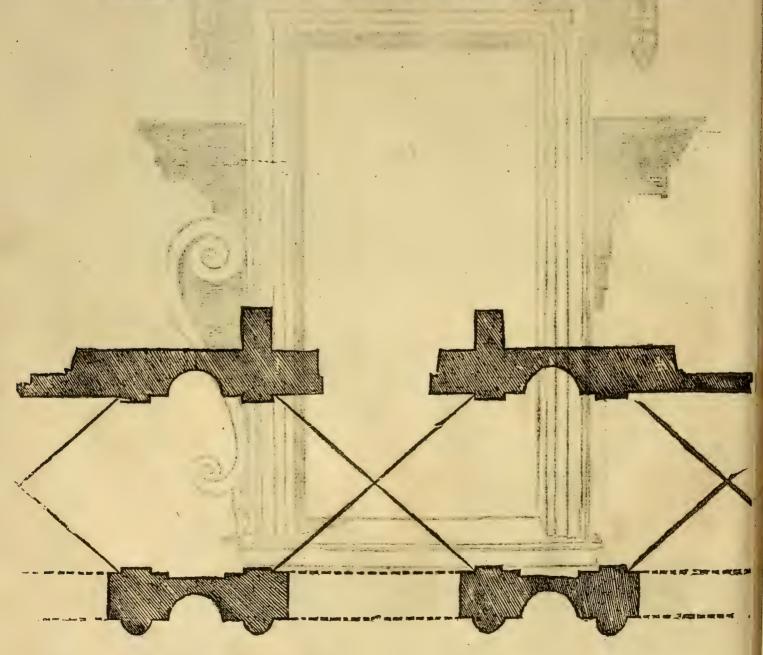
The eyght Chapter. Fol. 49

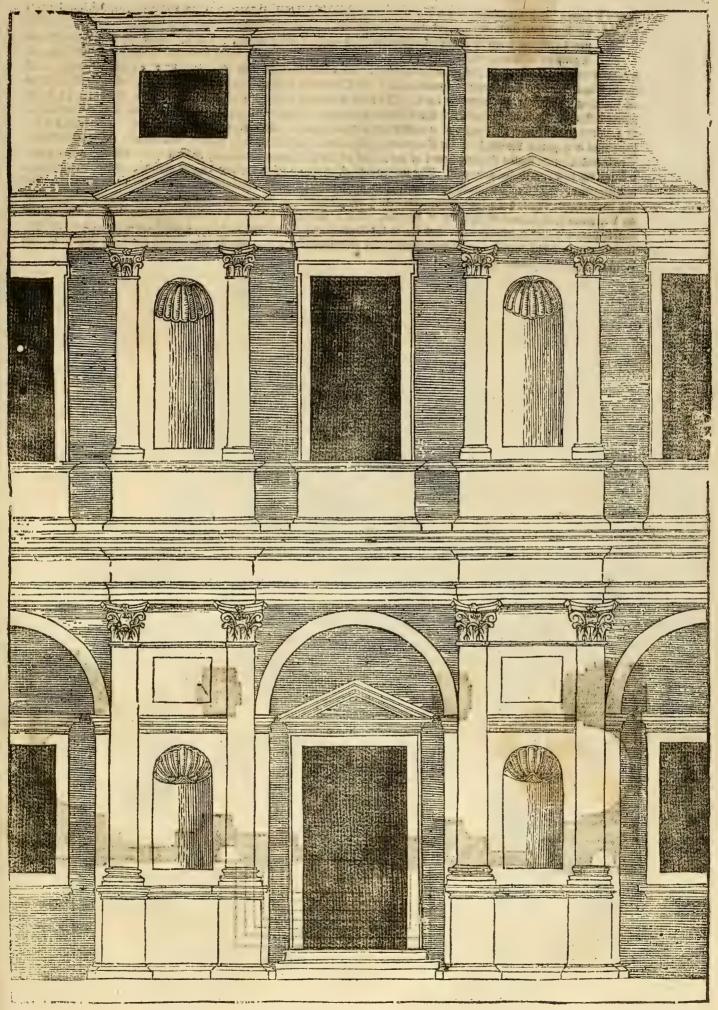
A L'tholigh this Done differeth from all the other, that eiler Isaw in any Antiquitie, neuertheletie, it is bery pleasing to the light, and theweth well: which Dooze is without Spoleta, about halfe a mile without the way, in an ancient Demple, made of the Cozinihia maner; of the proportion and particular members, I will say nothing; to the that saileth nece, may find it with a Compasse:



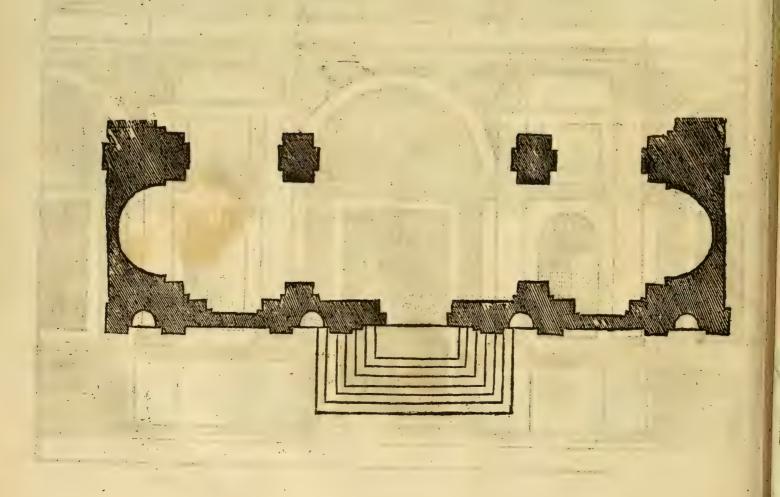
Of Corinthia

F this Dider of Colinthia, which is pleasing but o all men, I will make more forts of bullvings, fetting downe come generall rules, to latifie those that take pleasure to read this worke: and for that ancient workemen, in times pall, that defired to make their things frong and everlalling, made Willars (wherein the Pilatters are choled) which beare op the Arches of a great thickness, for that cause, the Forefront or Facic ensuing hath the Pillar (that is, the whole body) as broad before as the widenesse of the Arch is; but the thicknesse is x. fourth part less. The thickenesse of the Columnes shall bee a sixt part of the Pillar. The Piches between the Columnes are 2. Columnes thickenesse in breath; their height is somewhat less then 2. somesquares. The height of the Pedestals of 3. Columnes thicknesse. The height of the Archsbalbe made of 2. sourcesquares. The height of the Columnes with Bales and Capitals, Chalbe 9. parts and a halfe. The bredth of the Arch with the Wilatters, Chalbe of halfe a Columne. The Impost which beareth the Arch, Chalbe of the same height, made, in maner, like that of the Theater of Marcellus, in the Deder of Jonica: which Impost hall scrue for a Cornice abone the doze; but the height of the doze shalbe made thus : Ander the land Comice, the Supercitie Calbe also made of the like beight, and from thence downewards there halbe 2. equall parts made to the Stavers; tobereof, one shalbe the bredth of the light, and the wife the Cornice of the Doze, us the eyes. Mall come with the windowes, and the Cimatic of the Dedefall Mall also come in like fort winder the windowes. The light of the windowes that be taken Diagonall wife: and the Antepagmentum a firt part of the light. The particular members of the Debestall, Bale and Capitals shalbe made, as in the first part of this Deber it is lavo. Mone the Columnes, the Architrane, Frale and Comice Chalbe let, devided in luch maner as is thewed in the beginming. The height of the fecond Story halbe a fourth part leac then the first, any all the members lesened accordingly, as you map le and measure it in the figure: the elevation above this I elseme not for a whole Story, but much lower: the height thereof is as much as the widenesse of the Arch below, and the Counice which serveth for Architrane, and Freie, halbe the fift part of the height of that Store, which measures you may take from the Capitali Dorica: and for more Denament, a man may fet a facigies aboue: but fetting it in the middle, it would hardly agree with the two final abone the Diches, unless the ran round, whereby the worke thould be changed, and thew better to the light.



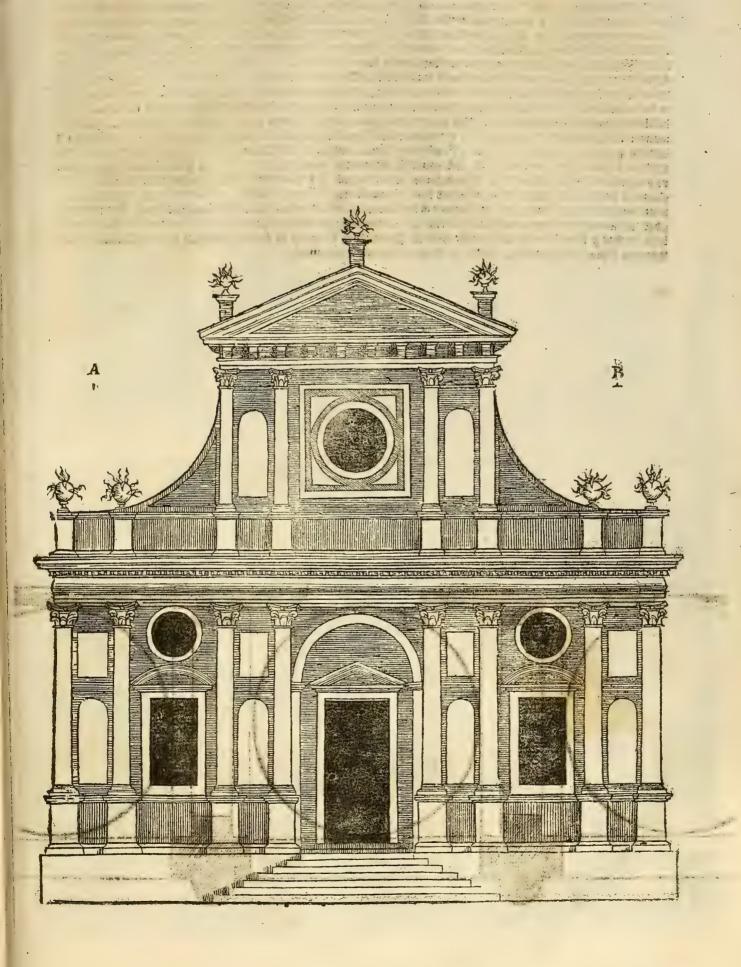


beits in the parts and an halfe. The middlens that be all behalfe a Columnes that be inferented to the fourth part of the Picale and and a halfe. The height of the Poechall is 3. parts and an halfe: the height of the Columne, with Capitall and Bales, is 9. parts and a falle. The height of the Poechall is 3. parts: the height of the Columne, with Capitall and Bales, is 9. parts and a falle. The factorace, fresse and parts and a falle. The indoores, and the first and a falle. The height of the Poechall is 3. parts and a halfe. The indoores, with Capitall and Bales, is 9. parts and a falle. The height of the Poechall is 3. parts and a falle. The windows, Piches and other conaments, a man may conceause in the figure and measure. The score halbe a fourth part the parts half parts, as 3 says of the members lessend acceptingly: but the Architraue, Frésse Comice, halbe placed in 3. equall parts, as 3 says of the other. The Fakigies halbe made, as Vienus hath theweof in the order of Poeca. The 2. soes that sand of the other. The Fakigies halbe made, as Vienus hath theweof in the order of Poeca. The 2. soes that sand of she other. The Fakigies halbe made, as Vienus hath theweof in the order of Poeca. The 2. soes that sand of she other. The Fakigies halbe made, as Vienus hath theweof in the order of Poeca. The 2. soes that sand so, beautifying and bybolding, shall be ethe fourth part of a Circle, whereof A. and B. is the Centers and about each arch that partet the Chappels, a man may set such the supermostrate to the nethermost.

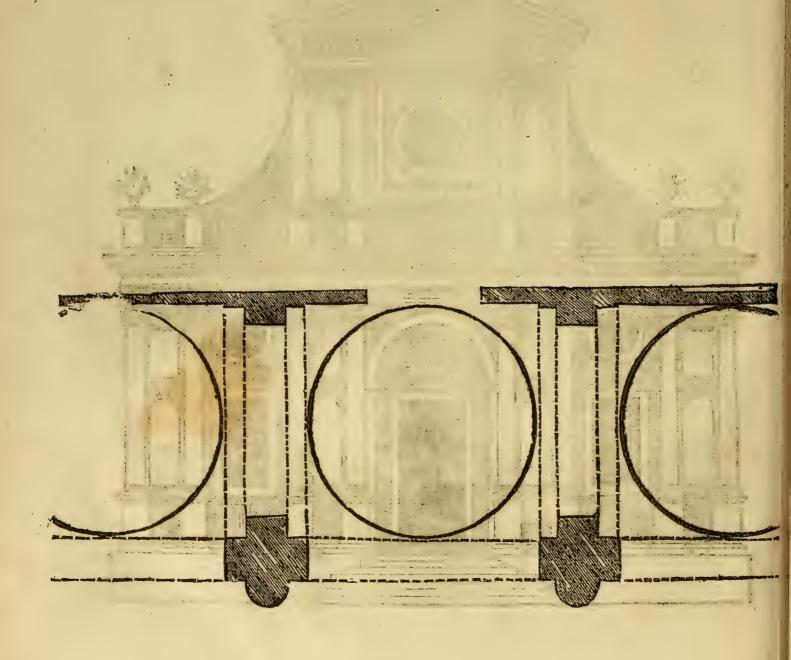


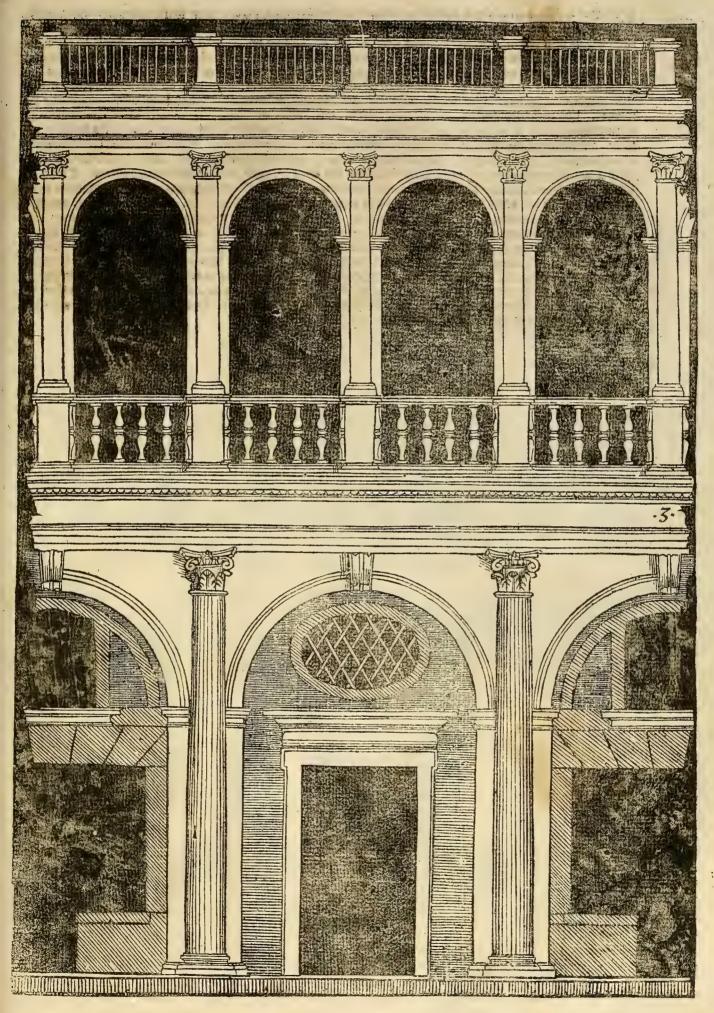
The fourth Booke.

The eyght Chapter, Fol.51



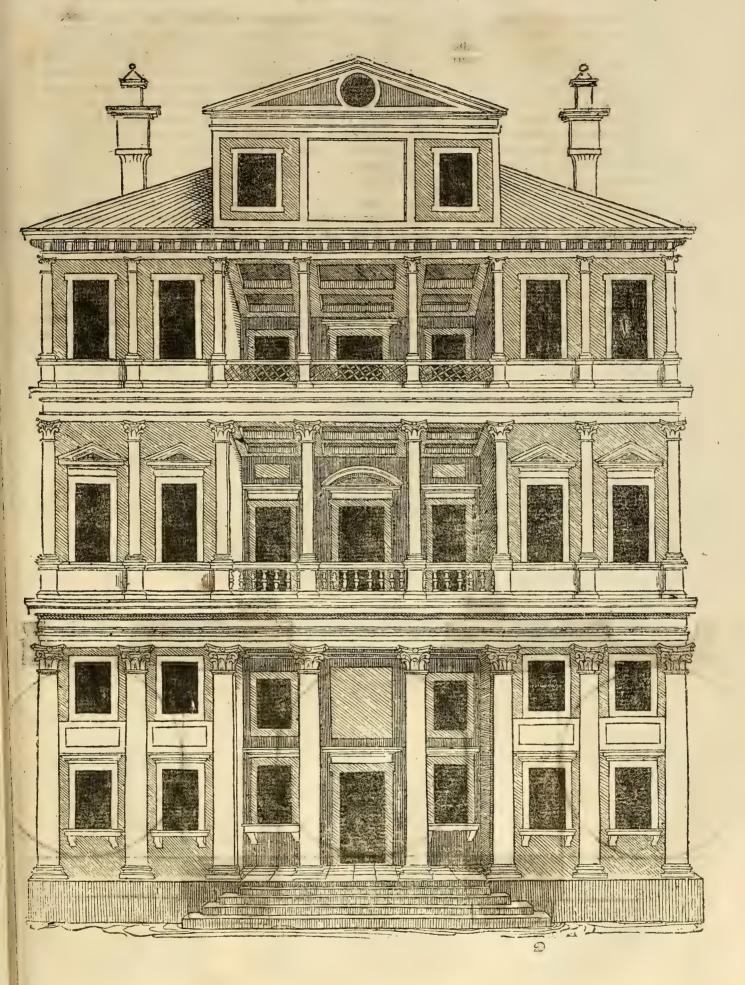
De deviding of this worke enfuing thalbe thus, that the Pillar thalbe the third part of the wicenesse of the Arth. but the thickenede of the firt part : the thickenede of the Columne also as much. The height with Base and Cas pital of ten parts and an halfe: the Arch, Pilatter, and import of the halfe Columne: the measure of the Inivolt a man may take from the Dogica Chapter, altering the members: the fame thall allo forue for a Comice abone-the dooze, and for supporting of the windowes about the thops: the height of the Arch (for sometimes boon occasion, a man thall be forced to have it to low as you lee) thall be of 3. parts in the bredth, and 5. in height; and the dwie also thall have the same proportion. The Antepagmentum thall be the first part of the light, and if the workeman will make the beight of the Arch of double proportion, the doore also will be of fuch proportion; but the Columnes Monto ned a great flore binder th Bales, with which things ancient workemen holpe themselues. The height of the Architrane, Frase, and Coanice are of 2. Columnes thickenelle, as it is faid in the first part of the rules, og in maner of fome Antiquities afores thewed. And for that the space under the Arch to the soller, which is even with the flat of the Counice, thould be to great to make croffewife, in fuch cafe my adufce thould be, to make an Arch right behind the Columne, and to make each fpace kettlewife, as you fæ in the ground. The height of the fecond flore halbe one 4. part leffe then the first, decided in this maner: the Podium hall becas high as the thickeness of two of the lowest Columnes, and from thence verbards hall bemade 3. parts, one for the Architraue, Frase and Chanice, and 4. for the Columnes: the Arches with the Pilakers thall be of halfen Columne; and for the rest, you that observe the general rule: and if the Pacie standard in any place or market, as it is thewed by the winkels or thops, it will be easte and comely to make a leaning about the oppermot Coanice: but for fatety from rayne, inow, and froft, aboue all other things, it shall bee requisite to make a roofe or pauce ment well closed and leaning fozward, because of the water: but it will be furer, if it be conered with lead. And although good workemen condemne and thun the letting of a Columne in an emptie place, which I also commend not, neverthe leffe, for that 3 haue feine the like matter bpon the Borticus of Pompey in Rome, but made after the Dorica maner, therefore I have prefumento fet the like, if it may ferue any mans turne.



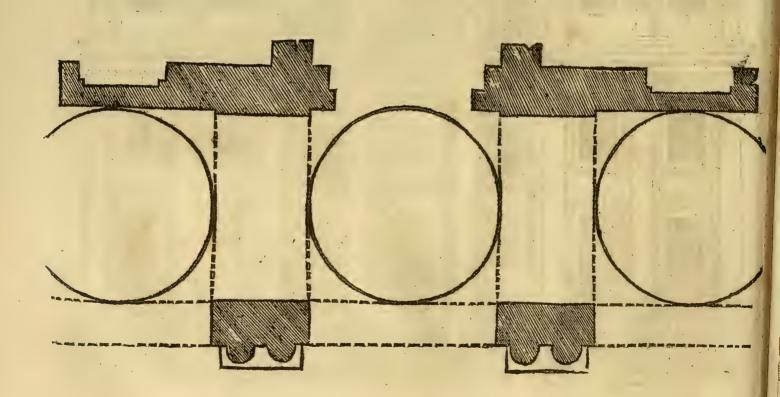


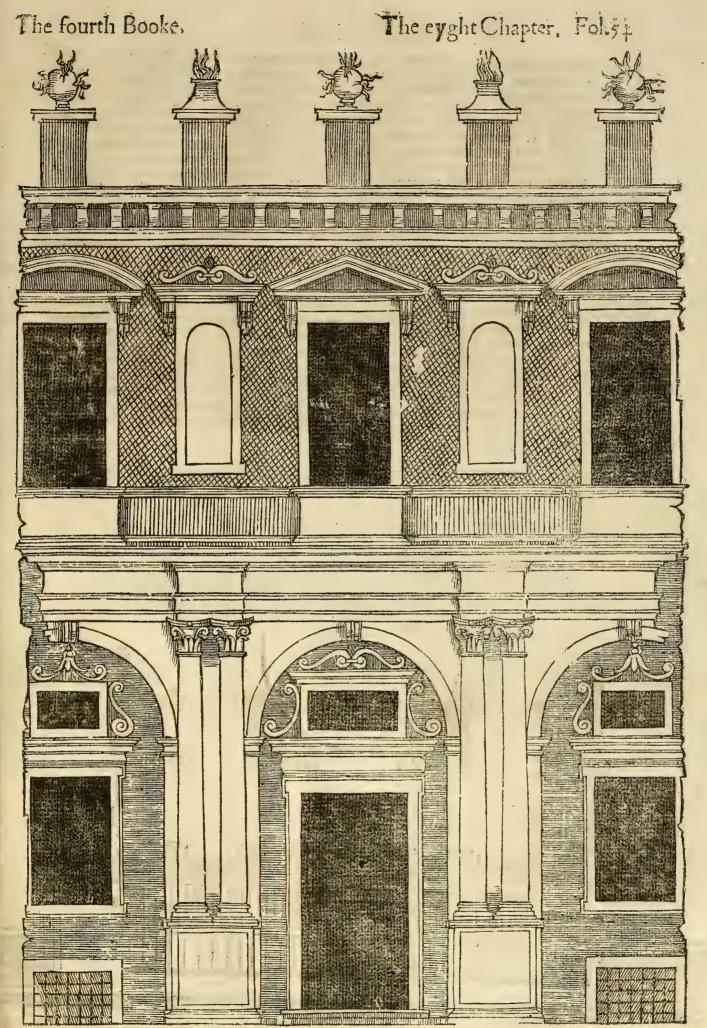
 $\mathbf{F}^{\mathfrak{D}_2}$ that the Venetians, in their buildings, ble much Corinthia tworks, and also many windows and Positiums, therefore 3 have made one here, which is full of windows a Poditiums, a have also made Story boon Story, which is more commudious then bearings out and leanings over are, and the building will have a better thew; for that all the things which a man may la within, will be famely. The Compertition of this Facie thall be thus: The bredth thalbe dentited in 30. parts, and one of those parts thalbe the thicknesse of a Columne: the middlemost Intercolumnes thalbe of 4. but all the relt of 3. and fo the 30. parts that be diffributed. The beight of the Columnes that be of 10. parts & a halfe, with Bales and Capitals. The Architraue, Frale and Comice Chall, together, be the fift part of the height of the Co. lumnes. The members chalbe deupded, as afozelayd. The light of the Mindowes are a Columne and a halfe wide, all in Perpendicular from the top to the bottome: but the height of the first windowes are of 3. parts broad, and 4. high: and those that chall kand byon them, have their height in Diagonall maner. The widenesse of the Doze chalbe of 2. Columnes : and the height 4. The Antepagmentum, with the Supercilie, Freie, and Coanice, thatbe benibed, as it is favo of the other befoze: and fo thall the Cornice also of the Doze be, as the windowes below are. The fecond Store thatbe lower then the first the fourth part : but the leanings with the Balusters being made, as high as a wine bow is broad, the rest of the height chalbe denided in 5. parts: one for the Architrane, Frese and Cornice, and theother 4. for the Columnes, with Bases and Capitals. The beight of the windows chalbe of 2. sourcequares: with the reft of the Danaments, you mult voeas I hane layo of the like: and allo the Doze of the Gallery halbe like that below. The third Stoan halbe leffened more then the fecond one fourth part, and every member proportionably, onely, the height of the windowes, they shalbe of 2. fourefquares, and rather higher then lower, because the height of it selfe lelleneth: The elevation also in the middle, Halbe the fourth part lellened, as it is land of the other. The Architrane, Freile and Comice are the fourth part of that height. The Falligium Halbe made, as it is land of the Dozica Temple: and if there remayneth other measures, you must alwayes turne to the first rule. Decennoer & will fet no that ground: for the Werspectives of the Balleries thewall clearely.

The fourth Booke.

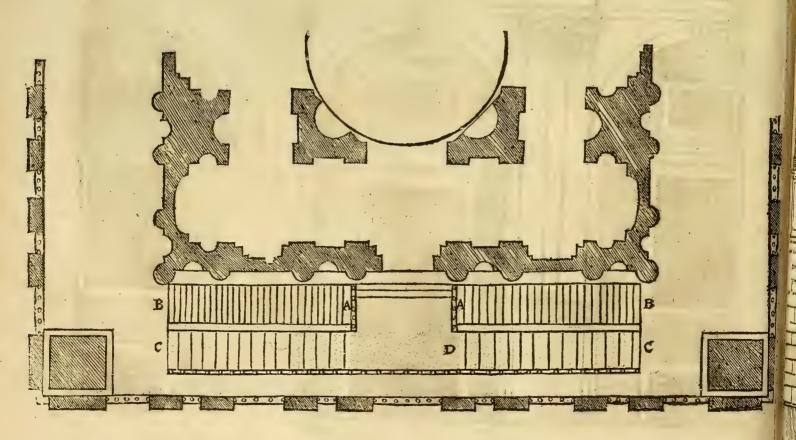


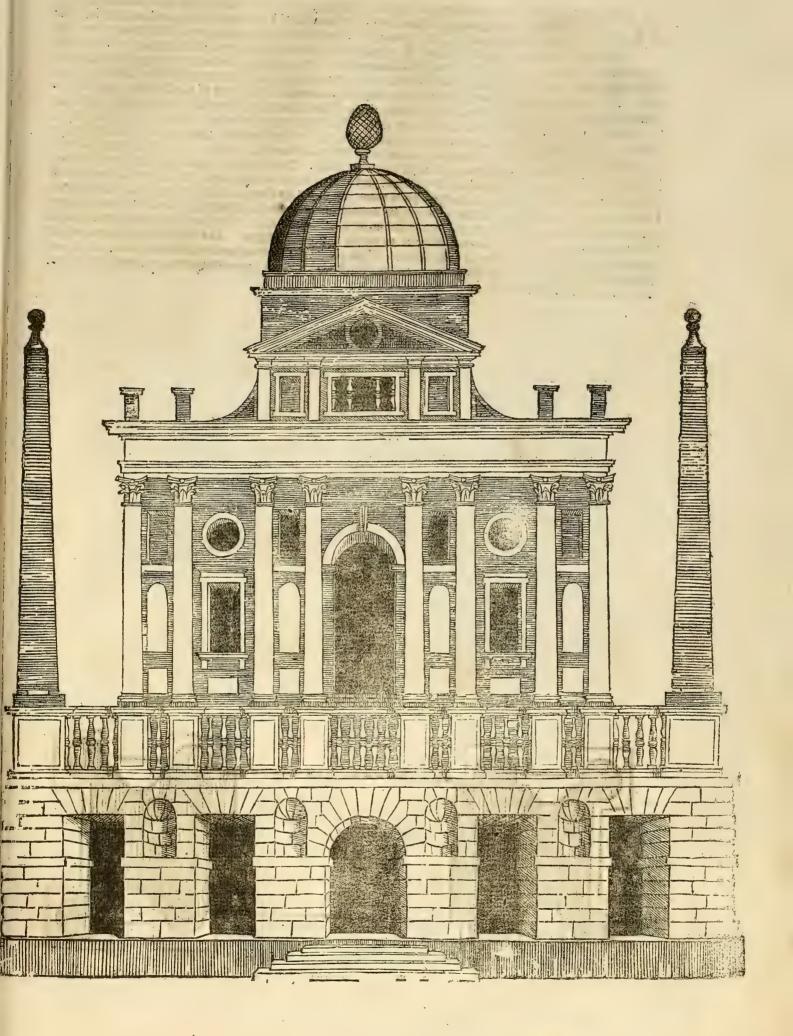
D Have at other times layd, that the twozkeman thall have Columnes inow, but pet to thoit, that form they will not forus his turne, buteffe the industrie and comming of the workeman bee fuch, that he can helpe him seife therewith. The composition of this Facie Chall bee thus, that the wodenesse of an Arch Chall be of double beight in bredth: the Willar thall be halfe the fame widenette before: but that Willar being made in the parts and an halfe, one part thereof halbe the thickenesse of one Columne: The inter-Columne of a halfe Columne: and so much also the Pilasters and the Arch hold. The height of the Pevesals, without the Plinthus boder them, shalve as much es the whole bredth of the Pilaster, the members being devided, as I have sayd of the Pedestals of Corinthia. The bright of the Columne, with Bales and Capitals thalbe of I t. parts, and that that not therefore be falle, for it is let fact on a frone, more for synament, then for upholding of any waight. The height of the Architrane, Friele, and Cornice thall be made of the fourth part of the Columnes, and in Perpendicular the Columnes thall beare out all the members without the Cozona or Cima, which will goe right through without crookening; for good Antiquities bled to doe for and Bramane alfo, the light of Architecture in our age, made fuch a house in Kome, called Beluedere. The widenesse of the Doze, Galbe of foure Columnes thickenelle, and fwice as high. The Antepagmentum, Supercilie, and Freie, Gall bee made to, that the Comices, which behold the Columnes, thall force also about the boose, and also over the wins powes. The widenesse whereof thall bee of the Tolumnes thickenesse, and the bright of fine. The lecond Story Mall be leffe then the first, the fourth part : but the whole height being deutded in 6. one shall be for the Podium, foure for the spaces of the windowes, and the other for the Architrane, Frese and Cornice, denided in such maner, as you thall see it in the order of Composita. The widenesse of the windowes are in Perpendicular to the nethermost; and the breath twice in the height: the rest of the ornaments, as windowes and Pickes, Chalbe done as in this Jonica Bate is thelved, which being wought with more lively nells and flourishings, will been Corinthian works. The bredth of the Diches with the Wilasters, Chalbe in Perpendicular about the Columnes, but the widenesse thereof, being Deutded in 7. Lue Chalbe for one Piche, and 2. for the Pilatters. The beight Chalbe of 3, breaths, because they Cano farre tran fight, whereby they their thoster. The Pillars about the Cornice are made for comment, and allo for commoditie, to make Chimnepes of lome of them.



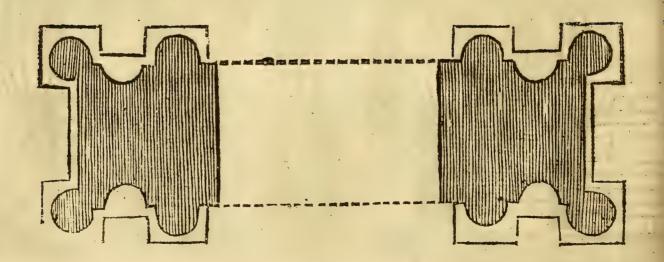


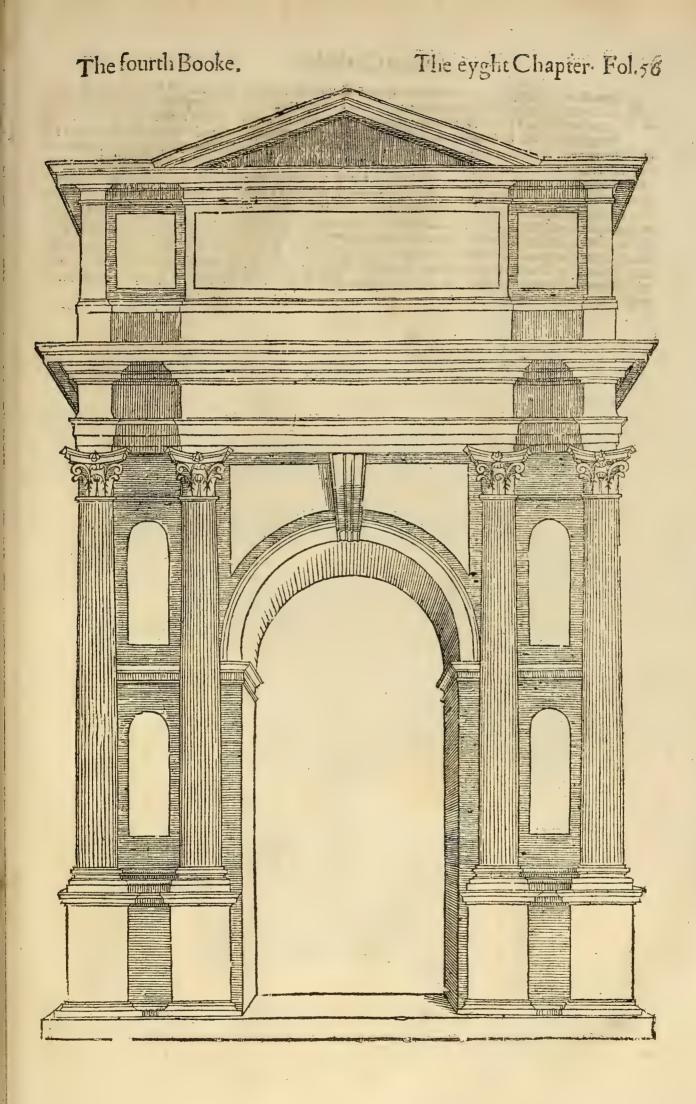
Pings that are made for common ble (although they are placed in all proportion and measure) are much commens Ded; but not admired. But things that are not bled, if they were made for some causes, and well proportioned, thall not onely beccommended of mold men, but also wonder at. Therefore this building following, which representeth a Temple, Chail first be made of firong rusticall maner, as you fe, and of such height as the place and lituation requireth; but it mult not be higher then 2. mens length: Dn which flat or Pauement, a man chall goe boon, beginning at the Kep A. Canoing within the entrie, and going by to B. then it chall bee flat where the Temple chall hausa broad walke, with a leaving round about. The which Temple Wall bee elevated from the walking or Baus ment, till you come about the height of the podium, or leaning, 3. Keps more: and to come to that, you must goe byon the fep C. to the flat D. which Chalbe the height of the Podium, with another leaning, which Chalbe higher then the lowell. And from this flat, to the Pauement of the Temple, the land this flee fles widenelle of this Facie thall be devided in 24. parts, and one of these parts thalbe the thickeneds of the Columne. The middlemod inter-Columne Mall have 4. parts: those that Cand on the cides, where the windowes are, Chalbe 3. parts: and where the Piches Chall be, they thall each of them have a part and an halfe, fo thall the 24. parts bee distributed. The fame Stilobato, as is without at the Poolium, thall also bee made under the Columne; of which Pedestall, the height without the Plinthus, the Bale Chalbe 3. parts. The height of the Columnes, with Bales and Capitals, Chalbe of 3. parts and an halfe. The Architraue, Froile, and Comice, Malbe a fourth part of the Columne, as it is land of others: and the members also deuided in 4. losts, the widenelle of the Gate halbs 3. parts, and the height 7. parts and an halfe, which is about 2. foure fquares and an halfe: and this is done, for that by reason of the diffance, they seemed those roams light, then these that are below. The widenes of the windowes thalbe one part and anhalfe; but the height thalbe inve then 2. four efquares, because of the land Mortening. Whe bredth of the Piches Malbe one part, and the beight of i. bredthe for the same reafon; the order that the Falligiom holdeth, Malbelike the Pedellal in height, and the Cornice the fourth part of the lago height: and the other, where the Bettell or Lanthome rifeth by, is also of the same height, which thall be so much more then halfe round, as the Pooice ture half couer the Comice. On the 4. corners of the Comple, for the more beautifping, you may make 4. Wiramides: the height whereof (without the Stimen) thall be as the eyes are at the beginning of the Falligium: and the Scima like the Falligium: which Falligium Halbe made by the like rules, as are spoken of before, of the Temple of Dozica. The parts bider the Temple, Chalbe for certaine Deatozies, called Confessionals, whereof Thane fone many bnoer the high Altar.



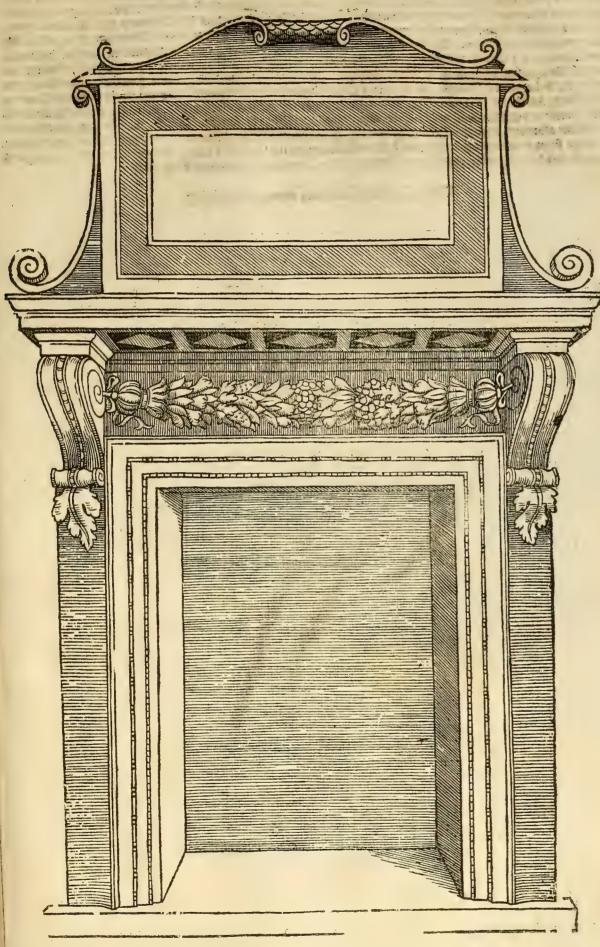


Athough in thele our dapes, men make no Arches Troumphant of Warble or of other Cones, neverthelette, when and great personage entereth into a Towne, they be to make Arches troumphant so, to welcome him in, which they let in the fayzest places of the Towne, adopted and painted in most curious maner. Therefore, if you will make an Arch after the Counthia maner, the proportion and measure halbe, that the light halbe of two foures fanares, and one firt part: the thickenesse of the Columnes thall be the 5. part of the wivenesse of the Dooze or light: The height of the Beveffals thalbe of thie Columnes thicke : and the beight of the Columne fhalbe of ten parts and an The Epillilie, Sophore, and Cornice, are together the fourth part of the beight of the Columne: and fo from proper the Arch, to brover the Architrane, there chall hang a role of two Columnes thickenesse in height, and the lestening thereof bader, thatbe drawne up to the Center of the Arch. Mouching the particular members, as the Bedeffal, Bale, Capitall, Architranc, Frese, and Cornice, you shall observe the rule before set downe: the brooth of the Arch, with the Pilaffer, Galbe halfe a Columne. The inter-Columne mult be of a Columne and an halfe. The Diches are a Columne broad, and the height thee, for a Canbing Jinage to be placed in them. The height of the fecond order chalbe made thus: the Columne without Pedelial, Chalbe let in the opper part in the Cornice in the parts, and one of those parts Chalba the height; but of that height there halbe foure parts made: one halbe the Countie aboue; the dividing whereof, may be drawne out of the Chapter of Dorica, altering the members. The height of the Bales fand elevated about the Counice the thickenelle of a Columne below, and that is, for that the Protecture of the Corona barkeneth the rell of the Bales netherward. The Cornices shall give out, as you fee them in the Figure. The height of the Falligium shall be made by one of the rules fet downe in the Dorica. This prefent Figure doeth partly refemble the Archat Ancora: but with areat renerence, in regard of such a worksman, I have brought the measures into one generall rule, that suery man may easily put such measure in ble.



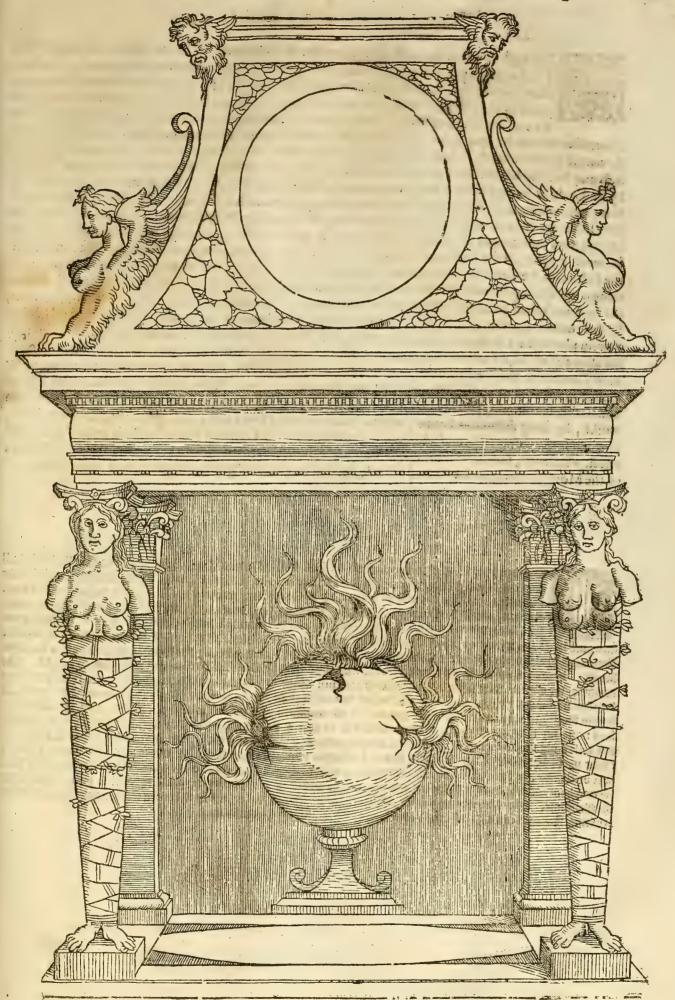


ments: but it is navfull to speake of the opnament of a Chimney, because of the vaply bse thereof, so that a man connot be e without it: for not onely in great, but also in small Chambers men bse to make fire, where, in such araight places, they set such Chimneyes within the wall, whereon a man may make divers opnaments after the Copinthia maner. But if you make them in this some, then the widenesse must be taken, according to the struction of the place: and the Pilaster hall be made of the sixt part of the widenesse; but of the epght part the worke will be samelyer: the which Pilaster or Antepagmentum, together with the Supercitium, shall be denyded like the Architrave of the Counthia. This fress above, because it is graven, shalve made a fourth part greater then the Supercitium. The Comice, together with the Capitals of the Putiles, shall have as much as the Supercitium, and the same devided in the disaster, but beneath, which reacheth down to the opening, they shalve one fourth part smaller; and bove, shalve like the Pilaster, but beneath, which reacheth down to the opening, they shalve one fourth part smaller; and bove, shalve man. To make or leave the opnament above, there considers not much therein: and this invention shal serve not onely so a Chimney to beautific it withall, but also so a doore, or other things, and the Frontispicie thereon will agree well with it, when you be it so a doore.



Tha Pall or agreat Chamber there is a great Chimney required, proportioned according to the victame, the inhich neweth a great conneyance; therefore, if a man will make the Podiglions sufficient for such a bearing out, here must make two places on the Coese but in such a case (Imeans) he chould make two flat Columnes, and before them round Pillars, not close to the other, in such maner, that between them both the place for the Columnes must be, and in this from a mayo, of the Lowne of Corinthia: therefore I have placed a mayo here, in sead of a Columne; the beginning breath of the opening, being made according to the place, the height shall be devided in nine parts, and one of those parts or the Pillar shall be of the same proportion, observing the measure before set votines. Apon the Columne, the Architer shall be of the same proportion, observing the measure before set votines. Apon the Columne, the Architer shall be said and such a Columne that the said that the said the said the said the said the content of the Columne that the said the said that the said that the said the said the said the said said the said said before the Columne and said the said, and specially before the Cate or Moore of a Courf, or place of tryumph, and such likes

The end of the Corinthia maner of building.



The maner of Composita Building, with the Ornaments thereof,

The ninth Chapter.

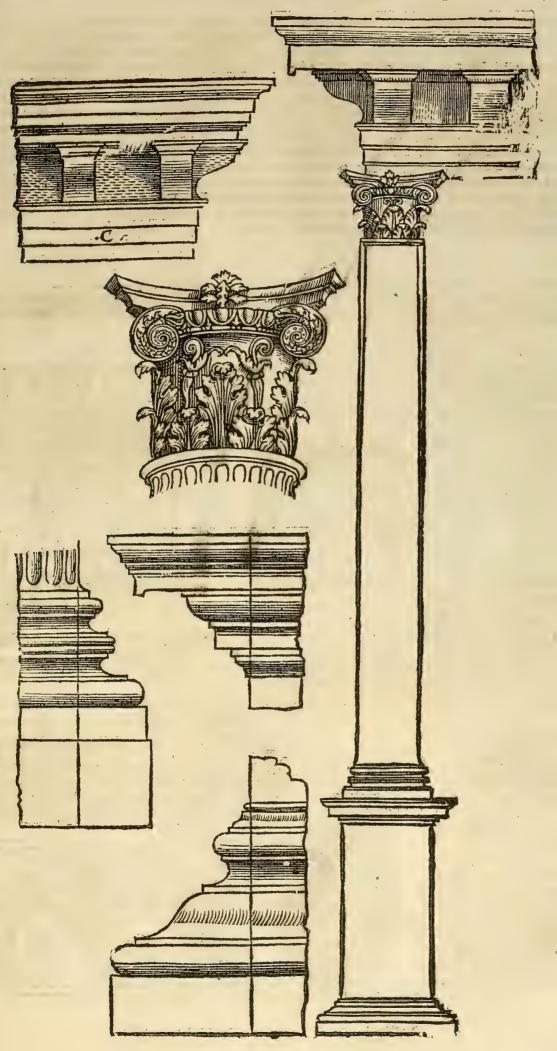
Lthough Vitrunius speaketh of soure maner of Columnes, as Dorica, Ionica, Corinthia and Thuscana, giuing hereby vnto vs almost the first and simple maner of ornaments of Architecture: neuerthelesse, I have added one to the sayd soure, as (almost) a fift maner of Pillar, composed of the others aforesayd, moved the reunto by the authoritie of Romane worke, which we may see with our eyes. And, in trueth, the workemans for elight ought to be such, that

as occasion serueth, he may make many things by the sayd simple and compound worke, respecting both the nature and the subject. And therewithall the workeman sometimes (to whose judgement many subiects may be referred) shall be abandoned and left by Vitrusius counsel, that could not conceaue all; whereby he should be brought into a straight, and compelled to do, as he seeth case: (I meane) for that Vitruuius, in my opinion, speaketh not at all of this Composita, by some called, Latina, and by others, Italica; which the old Romanes, peraduenture, being notable to goe beyond the invention of the Greekes, finders of the Dorica, after the example of men, and of the Ionica, resembled to women, and the Corinthia, after the forme of maydes, of the Ionica and Corinthia made a composition, piecing the Volute of the Ionica, with the Echino in the Capitall Corinthia; and thefethey vied more in Arches tryumphant, then in any other things: which they did with good forefight, for that they tryumphed ouerall those countries, fro whence the fayd workehad their beginnings : and so they might well at their pleasures, as commanders ouer them, fet these orders together, as they have done in the great building of the Romish Coliseo. And having therein placed the 3. orders one vpon the other, viz. Dorica, Ionica and Corinthia, they placed Compofita aboue them all, which, by euery one, is called so: although, as men may perceyue, the Capitals are almost Corinthia. But it was an excellent judgement, in my opinion, of them, that having placed this order in the highest part of the Colileo, which being farre off from mens fight, men should have seene, if they had set the Architraue, Freese and Cornice of the Ionica and Corinthia about the Columnes, that such worke, by long distance of time, would have prooued bad: but placing the Mutiles in the Freese, they made the worke rich, and it holpe the Proiecture of the Corona; and withall, it wrought another effect, which was, that the Architraue, Freele, and Cornice, seemed to be one Cornice alone, by meanes of the Modiglions that were let in the Freele, for that they seemed great, obseruing their proportion.

He height of this Columne, Composita, thall, with Base and Capitall, be of 10. parts: the Base hall be of halfe the Columne thickenest; and it chall bee made Cozinthia, with the measure set downe by the Cozinthia: and this is yet fane in the Bate of the Arch tryumphant of Tieus, and Vespasian, in Rome. You may make the Columnes chaneled. as you doe the Jonica, and fometime like the Cozinthia, make the Wolntes somewhat greater then the Caulicoli of Cozinthia: which Capitall you see in the Arch asoper lapo, and is let downe here in Figure: for the Architrane, Frescand Corona, if it stand farre from mens light, then the Architrane Chall bee as high as the Columne is thicke aboue: the Frese, wherein the Putiles are, Chall bee of the same beight. The Cimatte of the Putiles Mall be of a firt part: the Proiecture of the Putiles Malbe like the height. The height of the Cozona, with her Cimatic, holdeth as much as the Architrane, and that benided in 2. parts, one hall bee the Corona, the other the Cimatie; the Proiecture thereof, thall be like the height: and this is a common rule, although that in the Figure enfuing, marked C. you may fee the members and measures of that, which is in the Colifeo asoze lago: and for that this Columne is the Acaderest of all others, therefore the Pedestall ought to bee femelier then the res, following the common rule: the height thereof thelbe a double breoth, that is, flat, and of that height there thall be epoht parts made, one for the Bale, and one for the Scima : but of the particular members you may take the crample here on the side, in the Figure; which, altogether, are proportioned according to the Peveltals of the aforesayd Arch tryumphant: and so, being a Columne of ten parts, the pedelfall chall also be ten parts in it selfe, proportioned after the Columne. And although men make all Pedestals in Perpendicular, get in Achens, a most ancient Lowne, there are some, that are somewhat lessened in the opper part, which I viscommend not.

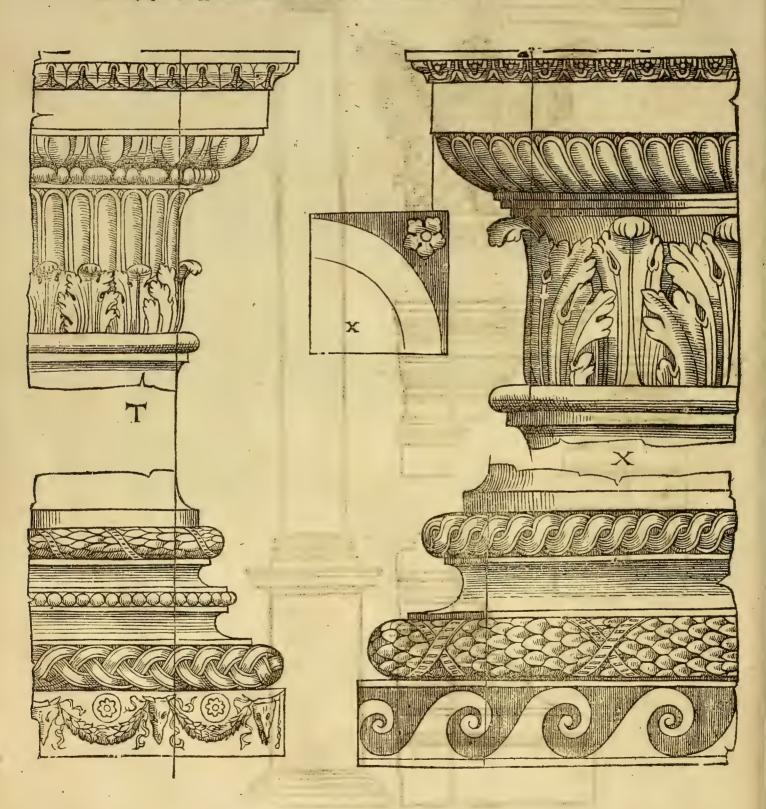
The fourth Booke.

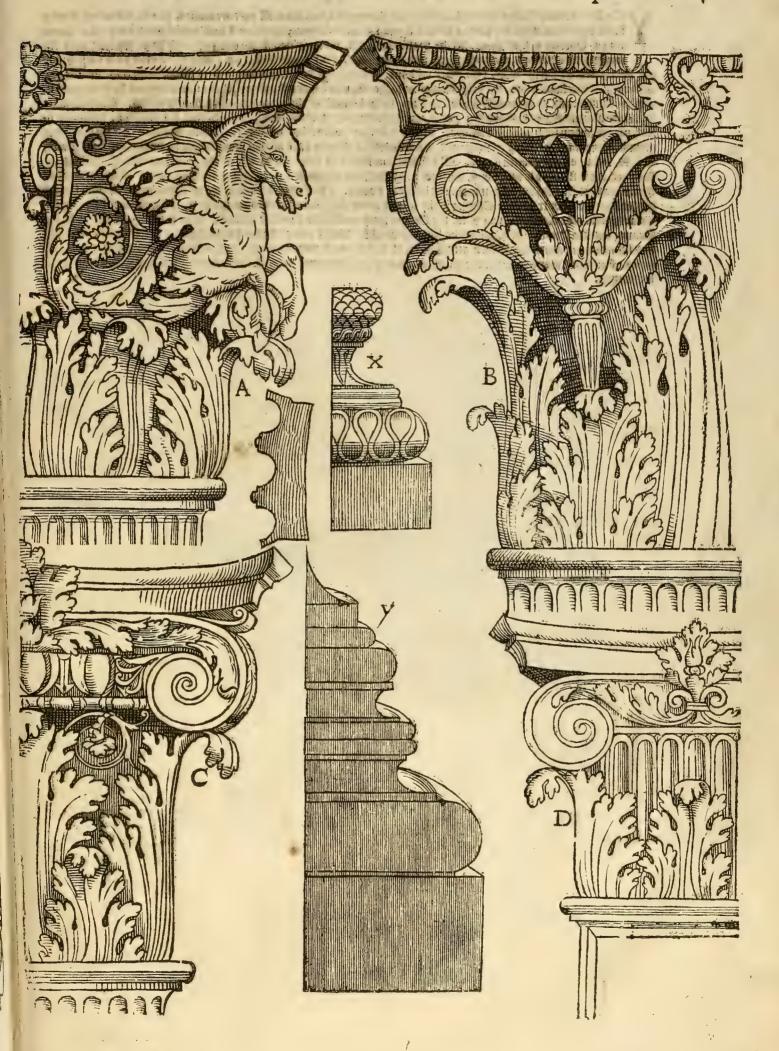
The ninth Chapter. Fol.59



Of the Composita

Income and composed, so, that the workeman may chuse out of them such as he thinketh will serve his turne best. The Capitall hereunder set, marked T. is composed of Dorica, Ionica, and Corinthia: the Abacus and Cimatie is Dorica: the Tchine and Strike, is Jonica: the Aliragal and Leaves, are Corinthia, as also the Bale with the tino Thorns, is Dorica: but by the 2. Scotics, and the Aliragals, as also, because of the beautisulaesse thereof, it specked to be Corinthia; which things are in Tresevere in Rome: the Capitall X. and also the Bale, are of 2. kinds, Dorica and Corinthia. The Abacus of the Capitall, and also the Bale, is Dorica; but the Bale, we meanes of the livelinesse of the worke, may be named Corinths, and so are the Leaves of the Capitall of Corinthia: but so, that the Abacus is source square, and all the other members round: therefore you shall cut the Rose boder the Abacus in the 4. corners, as you se it in the Figure. The Capitall A. with the monstrous horse, in place of Caulicules, may be called Composita, and is in the Basico del foro transitorio. The Arikes of the Columne are different from others, as you may see them beside the A. The Basic X. is Composita, and is in Rome; the Capitall is mixe Corinthia, and is at the 3. Columnes, beside the Colises. The Capitall C. is composed Jonica and Corinthia; and is in an Arch tryamphant in Verons. The Capitall D. is in the same Arch, on some stat Columnes. The Basic Y. is Composita, with the Astragalus, which standers bypon the oppermost Thorus, and is of Antiquitie in Rome.





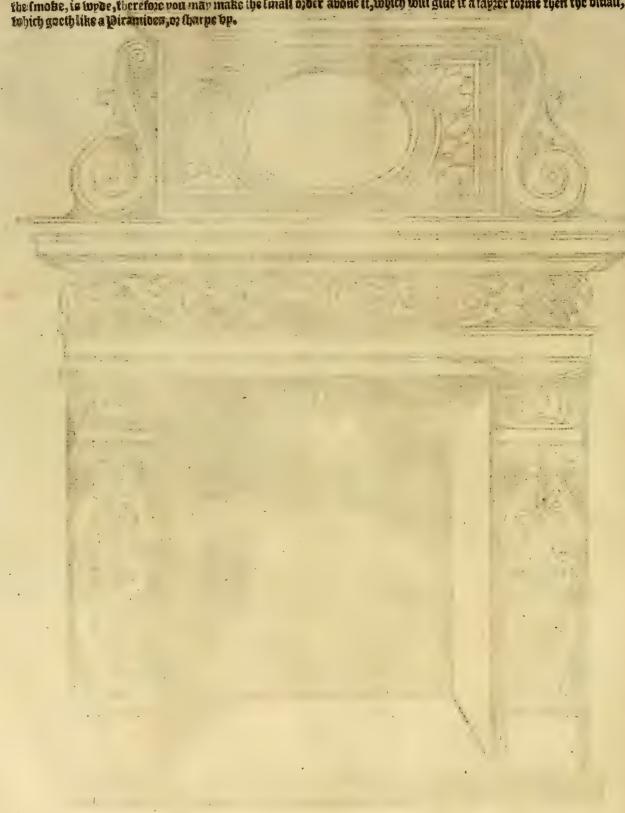
Of the Compositation of assemble ad I

Dulánot many Arches freumphant made of Compolita, and the moli part are made of pieces, taken out of other buildings: neverthelette, having thewed a generall rule for them; therefore I will not set downs any other invention of Edifices of that kinde: for the provident worksman, as necessitive requireth, may helpe himselfe with the inventions aforesayd, changing them into Composita. But I will we've two orders of Chimneys of each lost of works; the one within the wall, a the other without. This Chimney, which should kand cleane within the toall, if you will make it in a small place, the height salbe no higher then to a mains shoulders, that a mans eye and sight may not be burt by the sire; and the widenesse shalbe according to the bignesse of the place wherein it should bee set. The height by to the Architrane, shalbe devided in 4. parts, one shalbe the bredth of the Antepagmentum or the Pilaster, wrought in such maner as you set it heere set downe. And in this Composita, (because it is freer then the other) I have made this Pilaster dery much differing from the rest, neverthelesse, taking a part of this invention from an ancient stole, which is at S. Iohn de Lateranes in Rome. The Architrenessalve of halte the bredth of the Pilasters: the Cimatic of the sixther part, taken between each the Facies. The Freie, and 4, for the second. The simulation shalbe made of a halse part, taken between both the Facies. The Freie, because it is cut, shalbe made the fourth part higher then the Architrane; the Cornice is the height of the Architrane, and there halbe 7, parts made of its 2, so the Cimatic buder the Cornice is the Lorona; and one for the Cimatic thereof. The 2-that remaine, are for the Second as and the Projecture of all shalbe like the height. But if you make the Pilaster of the sixt part of his height, and the other members diminished accordingly, it will be much more semily, and specially, if the worke we of small some. For the other members diminished accordingly, it will be much more semily and specially, if

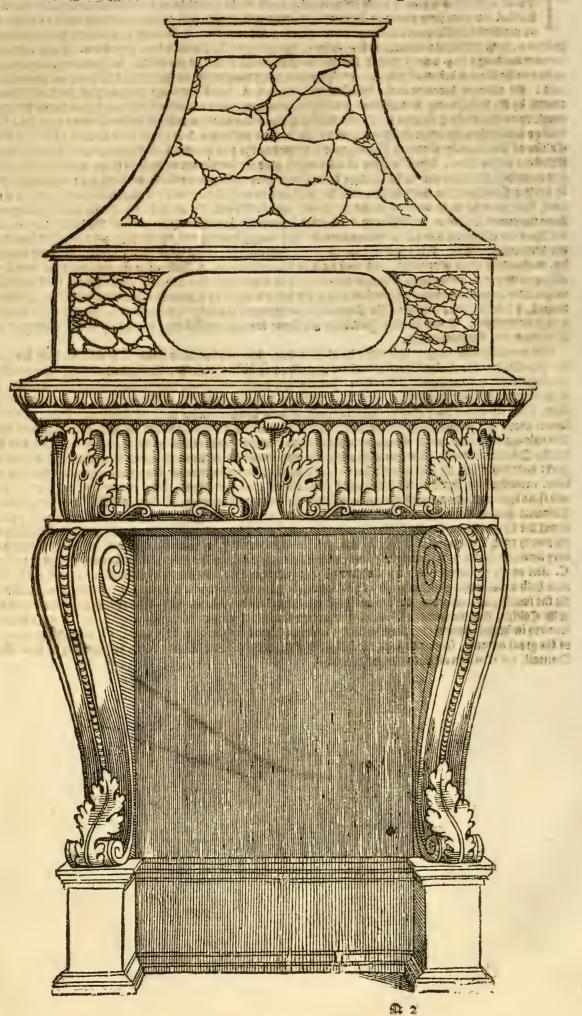


Of the Composita

Pan may make other ornaments of Chimnepes of this Composita worke, s in divers formes as this, because it is more licentious then the other maner of building: and for a changing of the other forme, you may also make this by this rule. The beight of the Architrane being of a reasonable mans stature, you hall devide the same in 8. parts, whereof one chalbe for the breath of the Woodglions or Kolles: Virtunius calleth them Prothyrides. The beight of the Pedeckals chalbe as high as if they were to sit byon. The order about the Podiglions, which holdeth no rule at all, chalbe two parts and an halfe of the breath of the Podiglions. And so that also I have saye, this maner is will have some the leaves and other parts, shalbe referred to the workeman. Den may also sometimes set the Porica and the zonica, and sometimes the Cornethia about the Podiglions; and so that the summell, which recepueth she smoke, is wode, therefore you may make the small order about st, which will give it a sayrer some then the bluall, which goeth like a Piramides, or sharps by.



The fourth Booke, The twelfth Chapter. Fol. 62

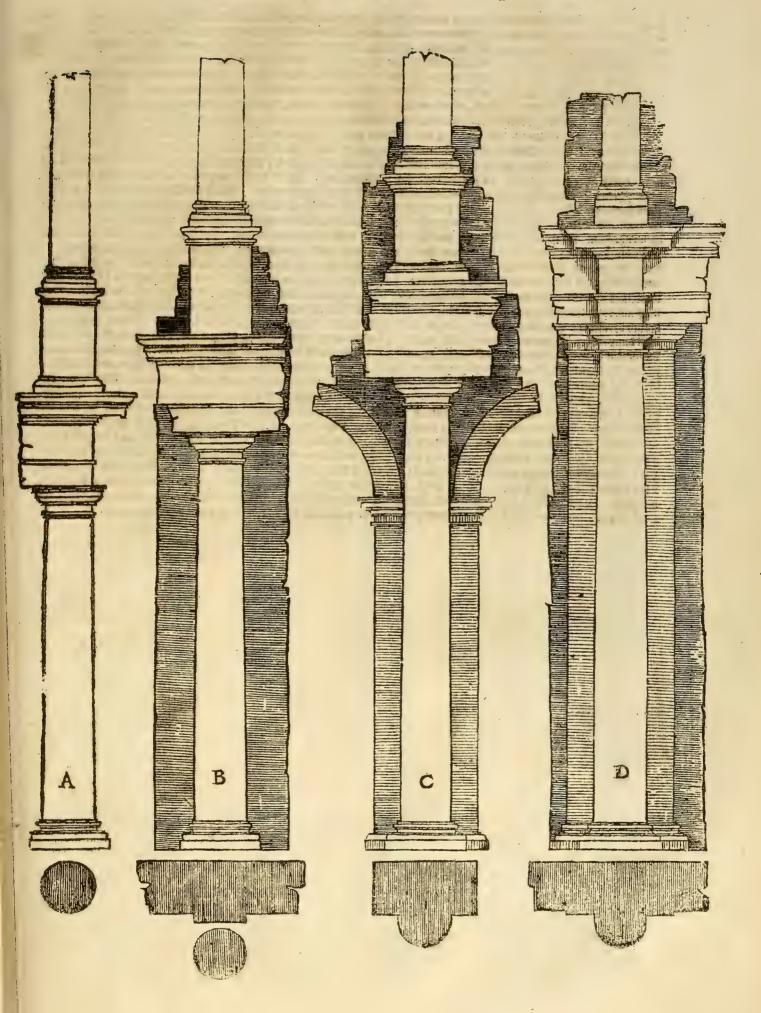


Of foure maner of Simmetries.

De Mornenan is to bave a great indocment, because of the dinerlitie of composition in Dramments of buildings. for that there are some places in Architecture, of the which there may, almost, certaine rules be given, for they are no accidents that bappen contract to our opinions, for every day we la fome Columnes, that with their different politions, thew different measures in themselves, according to the places where they frand. These alterations are so made in buildings in 4. wayes, that is, letting the Columnes almost in an Infale, without any companion to belie it epther on the fides or behind. These certagnely beare a great weight, and in their height they goe not about the aforesays rule: the example bercofis in the first Columns marked A. but if you place them against the wall (though they bee round) by the which being boortfolden and holpen, a man may make another thicknelle higher about the lame : the example thereof is in the Columne B. De also deawing along two third parts from the wall, there may vet a thicknesse or wall go higher then the other, for that you le the like in some buildings, that rise to nine thicker e a halfe, and mod in the Colifeo of Rome, in the Doder of Dozica, as it is thewed in the 3. Columne C. but they are more holpen when they have Pilaffers on the lides, which bearing all the waight, give the workeman meanes to make the Columnes moze famely, and to flender, that they may be fand rather to be placed there to fill a rome for beautifying, then for firenath. Fou may also to drate a Columnet two third parts out of the wall, and on each fide let halfe a Billar, which will helpe the Columnes to well, that you may make another thicknelle abone: and in this case, the Architeane, Frase and Cornice may beare out bpon the round Columns, yea although it were flat, because the halfe Pillars would hold the Architrane, ec. on the sides: but bean one Columne alone, it is vicious to make such worke bearing out, for the other parts besides should be abandoned without any helpe. This crample you see in the Columne D. But when the Columnes have any weight to beare bp, without the helpe of another, and thall have fit Intercolumnes, it thall not be the not mete to except order, yea, although they have Story boon Story to beare by: it is reason that they should be made better, that the worke may be moze durable: and although the Pedestall be a great helpe to rayle op Columnes neverthelesse, if the Columnes be high inough, I would thinke it better if the Columnes had them not, specially in the lowest Stozy, but in the third and fourth Stozy with reason. Podiums and Pedestals also serve to rayle op Columnes, which the old Romanes observed in Theaters and Amphitheaters.

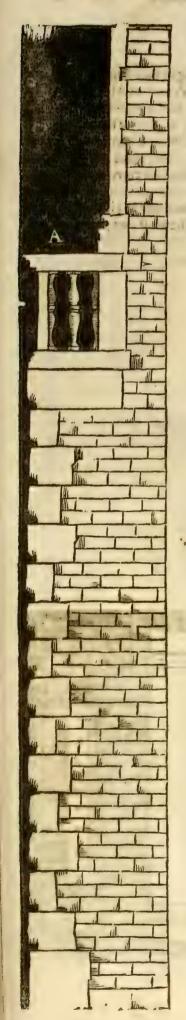
But touching the fetting of Columne boon Columne, there are divers reasons: The first is, that the Proiecture of the Pedelials of the Columnes placed abone, Goold go no further out, then the thickness of the bracemost Columne, and this thould be a most certagne reason: but for that the second Story thould lessen much from the first, and would ferue no more for any other Story, confidering the great leffening enfuing, another reason, and more to the purpose, is this: That the flat of the Pedeffall ought, at leatt, to be in Perpendicular with the Columne below, and to fet the Co. lumne aboue this Bedestall, lestened a fourth part from that which standeth boder, as well in thicknesse as in beight: fo this rule agreeth with that of Viceunius in Theatrum : which figure is about the Columne A. and if you will not less fen the Columne fo much, then you must make the oppermost Columne as thicke as the nethermost is in the oppermost part: but in this case, the flat or mally part of the Pedelfall would be broader then the nethermalt Columne is thicke below: nevertheless, those of the Theater of Marcellus worke that effect. The crample bereof is in the Columne B. and these this reasons are probable inough. But the ancient Romanes, in the great Colice of the Colice, made the Columne Jonica, Cozinthia and Composita all of one thicknesse; and the Dozica, under all the other, they made thicker, about the twentieth part. And this (in my opinion) they vid by god adnice: for if they had ledened all the Columnes the fourth part, one about the other, the last, in so great a building, by reason of the great distance, would have the week bery small, which we now for to be of good correspondence, by reason of the height. The thewing of this is in the Columne C. And as the Columne abone the Columne D. is lefte then that which flanoeth loweff one fourth part : for that, if a man hath a reasonable house to make of 3. Stories, so I would not thinke it amille, that a man thousaletten every Stories rie the fourth part, according to Vicrounus advice: but if the building be high, then you were better observe the Dider of the Colifeo, that the Stories Doriea, Jonica and Corinthia, may each bee about one height, but the Story aboue increaseth in height about the fift part: and this is so (as 3 haus sayd) because of the great distance: which part, by meanes of the great distance, seemes to be of the height that the rest are: and although that the thewing of these Columnes is Dozicall, pet it is so in all forts of Columnes.

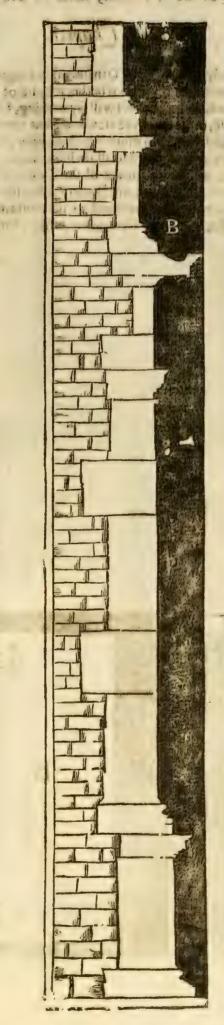
The fourth Booke. The ninth Chapter. Fol. 63.

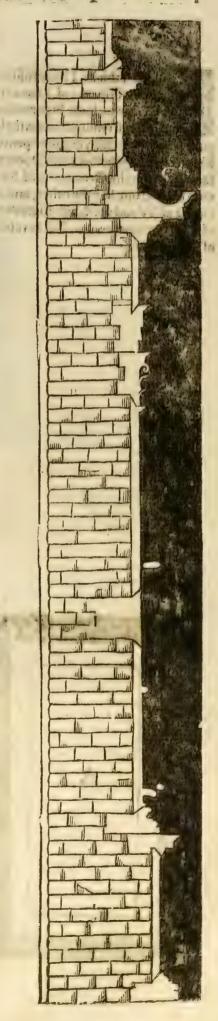


Of Bricke.

Aning spoken of so many and divers D; naments of Cones, it is requisite, that I should also she wholv they are to be Land placed in worke, and specially, when a man is to mire hard flones e bricks together, which requireth great diligence and Arte: for that bricks are like flesh in a pace of worke, and hard Cones like the bones to unit and hold them together: which two things, if they be not well and fallly bound together, they will, in time, decay: and therefore the foundation being made in such maner as the place affordeth, it is requifite, that the provident workeman (bould make ready all the hard stones, and also the bricks, with the rest of the stuffe belonging thereunto, and so should come to lay and iogne the hard Mones and the bricks together, all at one time: and it is requilite, that the bard flores should be fet so farre with in the wall, that although there were no moster to hold them together, pet they (hould, of themselves, fland fall in the wall: which boing, the worke will be arong and continue bard. The crample hereof is fane in the other five, by the figure A. where it is also thewed, how a man may make places breffigh, without feare. And if you have Devetals with Columnes to let byon them, where hard and lost Cones are mired together, if the hard Cones be not well in ned with the fost, as pon le in the figure B. the worke will not continue long. And if the Columnes be of diners paces, some of them (that is the least) shall goe depe into the wall, to hold the other the laster. But if the Columnes bee of one pace, then they would fland, at leaft, a third part within the wall, but the Bales and Capital's must enter much more into the wall, and about all the Cozona and other Coznices, which beare farre out from the wall. The innermost part that is buttongot, mult counternayle that which is without, that it may beare it felfe: but if at the same time a man will make any worke or facie byon the flones, then it is requifite, that the workeman, before he begins to lay any worke as bone the ground, should make ready all his Conces, together with the other Cuffe belonging thereunto: and so laping and knitting the flones with the bricks together, I far, that he shall one well to fet some of the flones so depends the wall, that they may hold the other paces together by force, topning well in, as you fait in the figure C. that in time they may not ryue and breake alunder one from the other. But that the wall, made of bricke, thould not linke, and linking, should breake the thinness parts, by reason of the waight aboue, it is neccessary to have bricke well burnt, and morter well tempered, a between the some little morter, a tool layd and to gned one byon the other: And about all, such works would not be made by any force, nor weight upon waight, to be packt in halfe, but you mult let it reft formewhat from lay to lay: for if a man wil worke in batte, and fet great weight boon it, it is most certagne, the wall will finke, and the Cones being not able to beare the waight, will breake; but if it be made with lepfer, then the little will be as it thould be: ne nerthelesse, I would alwayes wore commend the worke that is wholy bound in the wall, then that which is is need to gether or concred; and specially, in my opinion, men fould not make them in walles that fland outward, for that the houses which have been made so in sommer time, by ancient workenien, and were covered over with Parble and other fine Cones, are now fane all without stones befrze, and nothing but the wall of bricke, that and behind them, Standeth Mil: but those buildings, where the hard Cones are bound and iopned into, and with the bricks, are yet Cande ing: neverthelesse, if you will make such worke simple, I thinke this the farest war, although some workemen, in others places of Icaly, have made some building, with simple walles, leaving places in them so hard stones to be put in, and after, at another time, have put in such Danaments: neverthelesse, for that such this age are not well fallened in the wall, but in a maner hackt, you may in many places in the paces faine, and enery bay more and more decay.



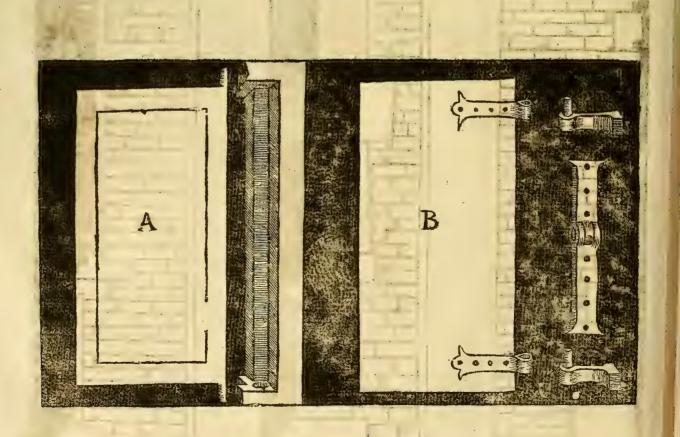




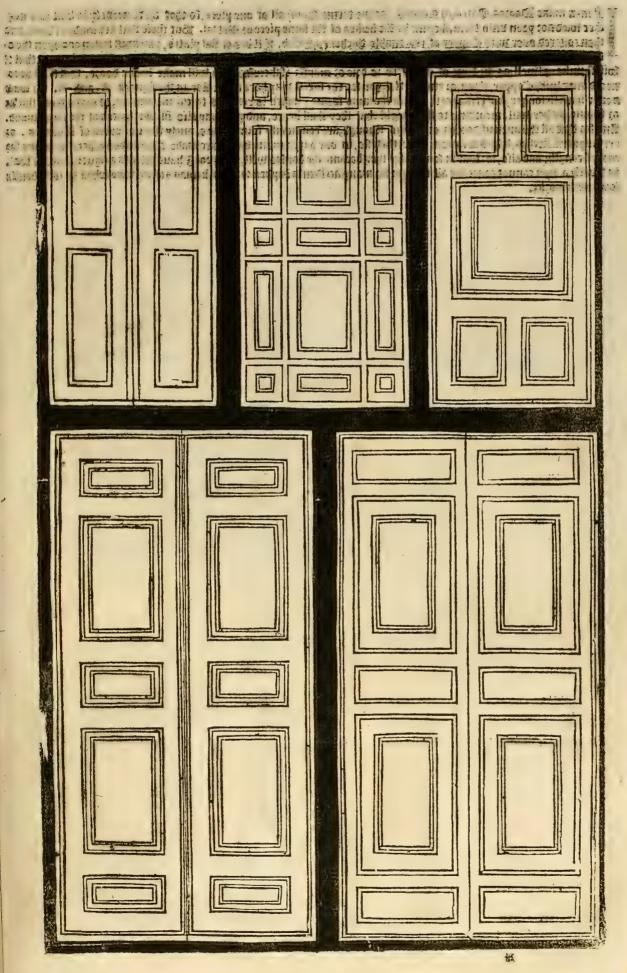
Of Doores of Wood, and of Metall,

The tenth Chapter.

I will speake of Doores that shut the houses: whether they be of Wood or Metall, I will set downe some Figures thereof; of the hookes I will say nothing, for all the world knowes them well enough: neuerthelesse, those that were yied in ancient time, as you see them in the Figure A. were easilyer to be opened and shut, then those which are now yied in all Countries, as in the Figure B. But whether these Doores are of Wood or Metall, their Ornaments shalbe made in such maners, that the sayrer the Ornaments of Stone are, the Ornament of the Gate also shall be correspondent, that they may be one like the other; and to the contrary, if the Ornament bee slender, then you shall make the Doore of Wood or Metall thereaster, which is to be referred to the workeman: and to give you a shew of such Ornaments, you shall here see sine maners of Ornaments, which, for the most part, are taken our of Antiquities.

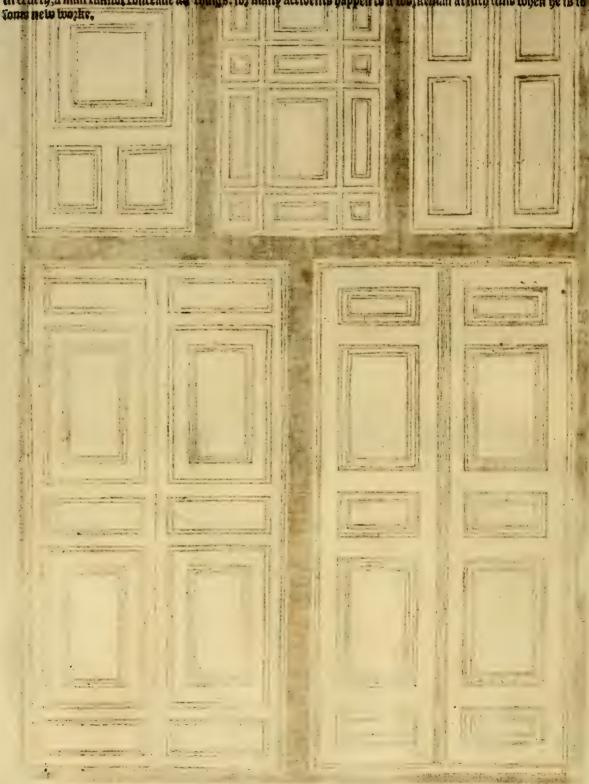


The fourth Booke as 1000 to 20 man The teath Chapter, Fol. 65



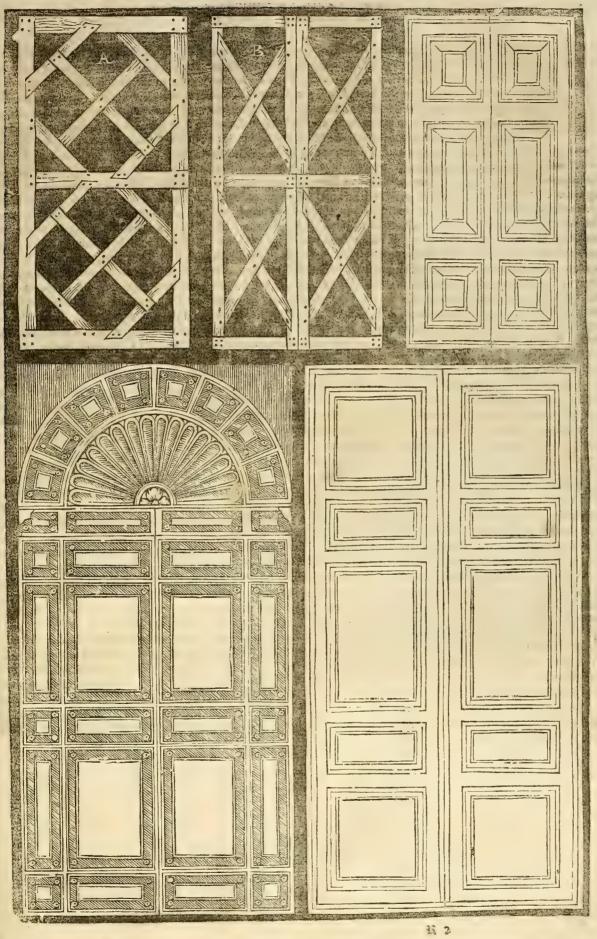
Of the Frames of Doores 2400 in druot on T

I ther twodnes you will them, they make the hokes of the same piece or Pettal. But those that are made of wood, and then coursed over with Copper of reasonable thickenes, which, if it ber est dat plates, you must saken one byon the other, and yet, although they be well somed a pind, or napled towether, neverthelette, the nature of wood is sach, that it will shainke or swell time of the years is due or moyel: if therefore you will make such a doore, that shall be concerd over with Copper, Pron, or any Pettal, you see the surest way here in the soc, in the signres. A and B. so, wood mener wareth longer, but remayneth still in the same some; which is reserved to the workeman, to make them thicke or thinne, as her will, according to the waight that they shall be are, and you may also sill the spaces of the same wood. And so that all the ancient doores or goings through are commonly sources are inade round above, peraburature so, are treatly, and also, so that in some cases they become the houses well, whereof I have she we a figure, and so that, in trueth, a man cannot conceave all things: so, many accidents bappen to a we keepen at such time when he is to benise some new more.



The tenth Chapter, Fol.66

The fourth Booke.



Of Ornaments of Pictures within and without the houses.

The eleventh Chapter.

Hat I may not leave out any kinds of Ornaments, whereof I give not some rule for instruction, as well in Pictures as other things, I say, that the workeman ought not onely to take care of the Ornaments of stone or marble, but also of the Paynters worke, to set out the walles withall; and it is requisite, that he should prescribe an order therein, as Surveyor of all the worke; for this cause, that some Paynters have beene workemen good inough, touching the handling of their worke, but for the rest, of so little understanding, that desiring to show their skill in the placing of the colours, have disgraced, and sometime spoyled a Story of a house, for want of consideration how to place the Pic-

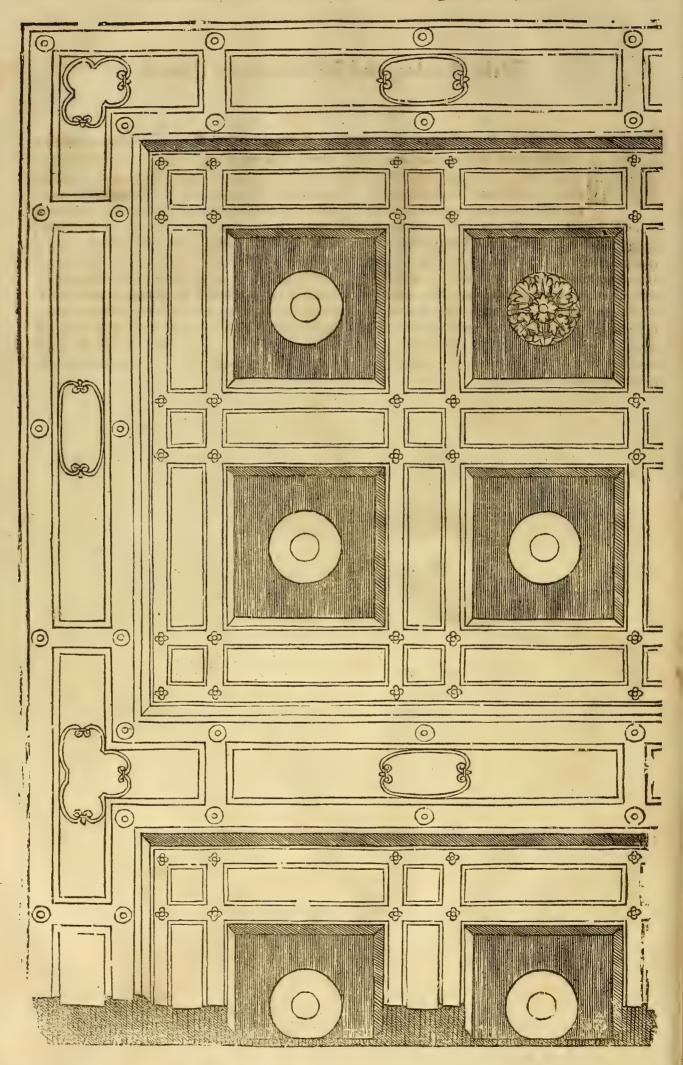
Therefore if they have a Forefront or Facis of a house to paynt, it is certayne, there is no opennesse to be lest, whereaver or lantshap is to be made, for those breake the building; and of athing that is massy and close, they transformed into an open weake forme, like a rumous and unperfit building. Also there should be no personages nor beafts coloured, vnlesseit were to trim and decke doores, wherein there are mens personages: burifthe owner of the house, or the Paynter, defire colours, that the worke may not be broken nor spoyled, a man may couer a backled wall ouer with cloth, and therein paynt what he will; and also, after the maner of try amphs, a man may hang on the wall Garlands, and ftrings of Leaues, and Fruits, Flowers, &c. and also Shields, Trophees, and such things as are to be flirred : but if you will payne the walles with firme matter, then you may fayne things of marble or other stones, cutting therein what you will: you may also beautifie some figures in Niches, with metall, and so the worke will remayne firme, & worthy commendation of all those that know good worke from bad. And the Author rehearseth diuers excellent workemen, whome (for breuitie fake) I will omit, that onely vied to payne nothing elfe but white and blacke in houses, and yet so excellently well, that it made men wonder to behold them. A man may also, with good reason, make and set forth certayne openings in walles of lodgings, round about the Courts, and make ayre, lantshaps, houses, figures, beasts, and such like things, as hee will in colours. Also, if a man hath Chambers, Halles, or other places, about the ground within, to paynt and let forth, then a Paynter, in maner of Architecture, may make openings to see through them, as the place is: for about the fight a man must make nothing but ayre or skyes, roofes, high hilles, and the vpper part of houses: and if you place figures also about the sight, a man must see under them, and not the ground whereon they stand. And if the Paynter will make a Hall or any other, or further roome perspectively, he may, ouer the going in, with order of Architecture, make it to shew further then in effect it is. And this, Balthazar (a man excellently well learned in Architecture) did, in beautifying the Hall of Angustin Gnyse, a Marchant of Rome, where, in that fort he set out some Columnes, and other Architecture to that purpose: so that Peter Arctin, a man also skilfull in Paynting and in Poesse, sayd, that there had not beene a persiter Paynter then he in that house, although there is worke also in it of Raphaele owne doing. And when the walles are paynted, and if you will have the roofe also done, then follow the steps of Antiquitie, making things that are called Grootes, which, for that you may make them as you will, shew well therein, as Leaues, Flowers, Beasts, Birds, and other mixed matter. If a man maketh any clothes or apparell of figures, or which are made fast on them, therein a man may doe as he will. But if a Paynter will make any figures according to the life, in a roofe of a house, then he must be very skilfull, and much exercised in Perspective worke, and very indicious to chuse such things as are fittest for the place, and rather heavenly flying things, then earthly things, with such Arte, that he must shorten the figures so (although they bee monstrous) that when men stand a convenient distance off from them, they may resemble the life. Which thing is excellently well made in Lorette Mantue, and other places in Italy, by divers workemen: yet skilfull workemen in our time have shunned fuch shortening, for that (in truth) it is not so pleasing to the eyes of the common fort of people. Therefore Raphael Darbin, whom I will alwayes name Divine, for that he never had his fellow, (I fay no more) in this thing, as men judged of him when he was to paynt the roofe of Augustin Gnyse his Gallery, shunned shortening as much as he could: for when he came to the highest part of the roofe, and there meant to make the banquet of the gods, heavenly things, and such as served to the purpose for a roote, taking away the harshnesse of shortenings, fet forth a cloth of azure colour, made fast to the strings or Garlands, as if it had beene athing to bee stird, and therein made the banquet so seemely and so workemanlike, that the Gallery was rather esteemed for a preparation to a tryumph, then a playne paynting made vpon a wall. Therefore the workeman, that ought not to be vn kilfull in Perspective worke, should not indure, as being Surveyor over all the workemen in the building, that any thing should bee made therein, without his counsell and advice.

Of flat Roofes, and the Ornaments thereof,

The twelfth Chapter.

Libough in the Netherlands they we not to decke the Chambers in the Roofes with woodden worke, newertheles, when a house without is made wholy after the old maner, it were write that the Roofe should not be agreeable, as also the Bedsteeds, Bankes, &c. And which is more, I would say, that each place should be sluffed and suted within, with things sitting to that which it she well and if a man will beautifie it with Paynting, it must be ewell done, and conformably paynted, according to the greatnesse and distance thereof. It ought also to be made of light and browne colours: and in the middle of the sield you must set a gylt Rose: but if a man will colour it, then the field must be blue, as piercing, but the Roses must be bound with some works or branthes, that they may not seeme to hang in the ayre: and the Cornices which close with four square or other fields, must be well gylt, or beautifyed with the same colour: but if so bee the Roose is not high inough, then you must make the worke thinner and smaller, as also the paynting: and that you may understand it, I have set two sigures to she wyon, which, notwith standing, are all one: the one of bare wood, the other paynted, as I sayd before. And this Order I observed in the Roose of the great Librarie in the Palace of Venice, in the time of the Prince Andreagriti, because the Roose was lower then it should be, in respect of the widenesse and length of the Hall, and I made it of thinne worke, for the reason aforesayd.

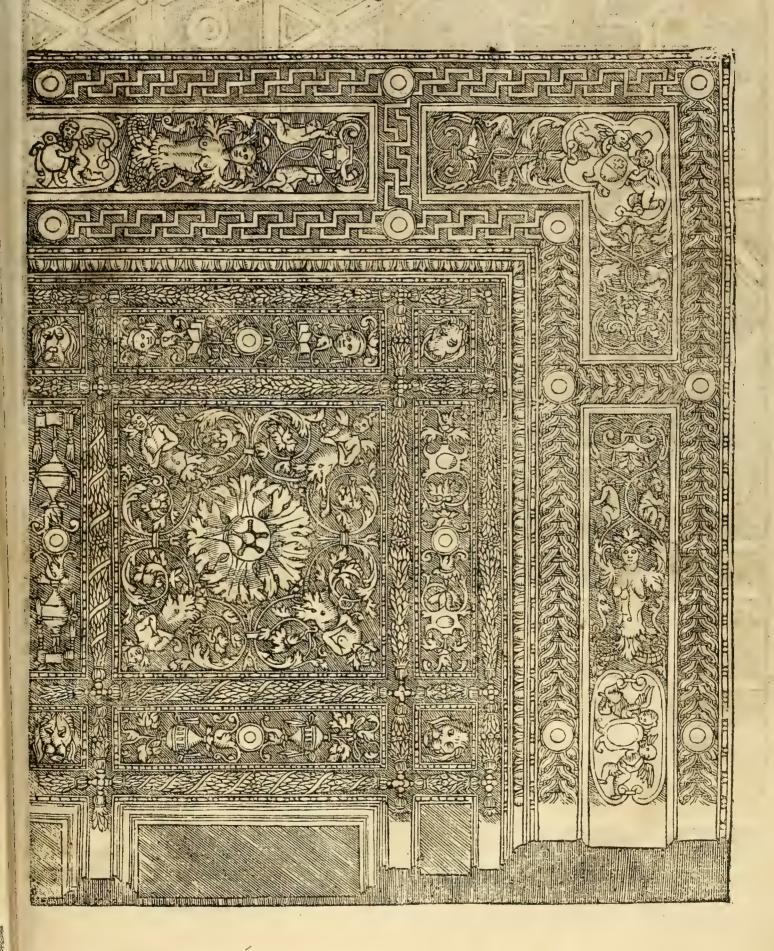
The Timber worke of the seeling aforesayd,



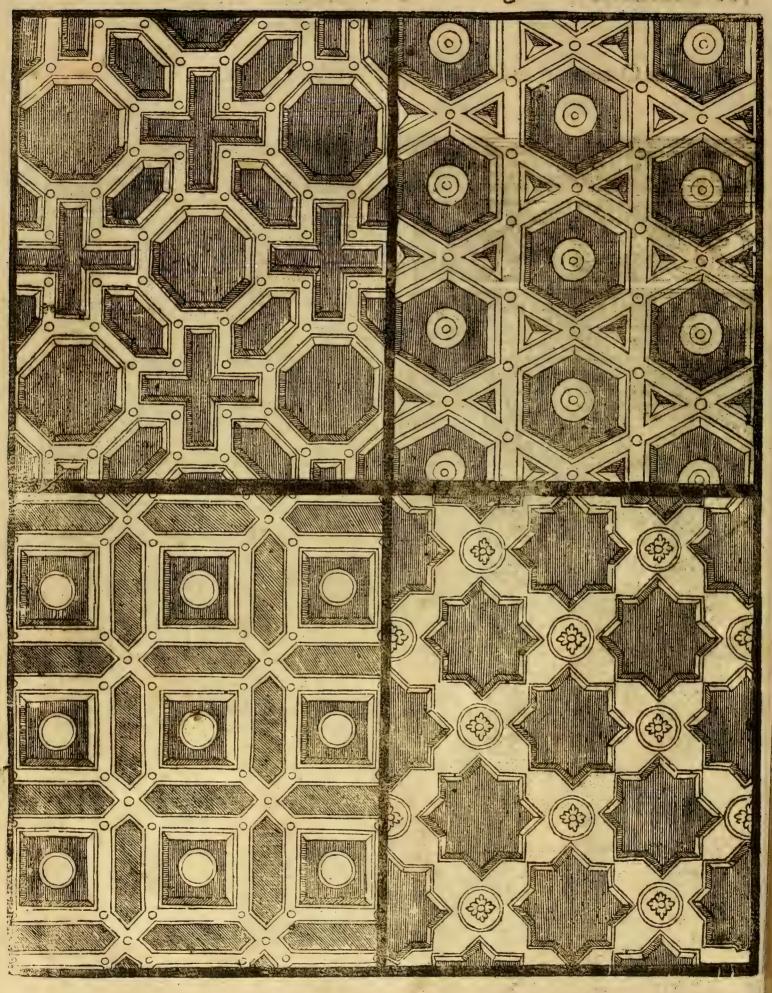
The twelsth Chapter, Fol. 68

The fourth Booke.

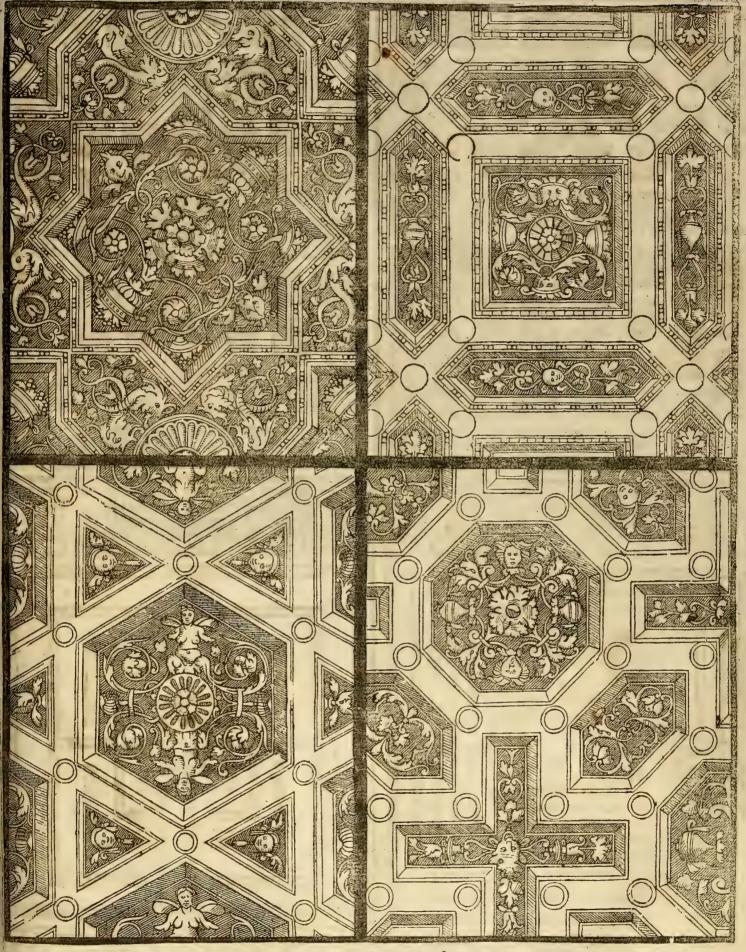
The Ornaments and Garnishing of the same worke,



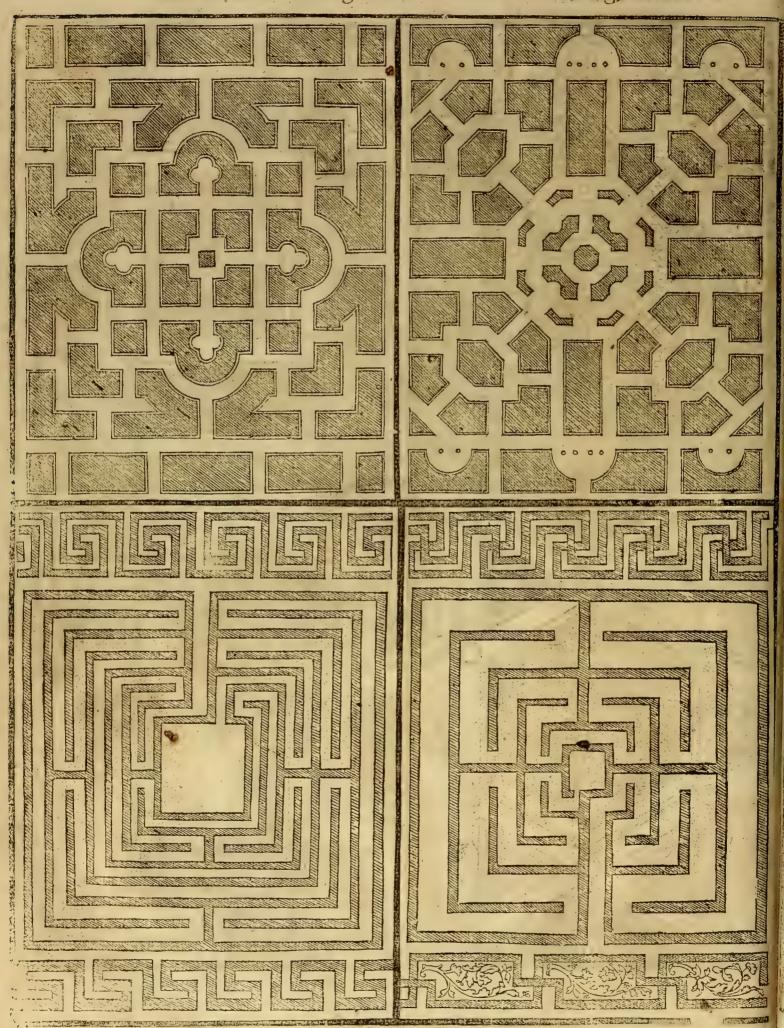
Another maner of Sieling.



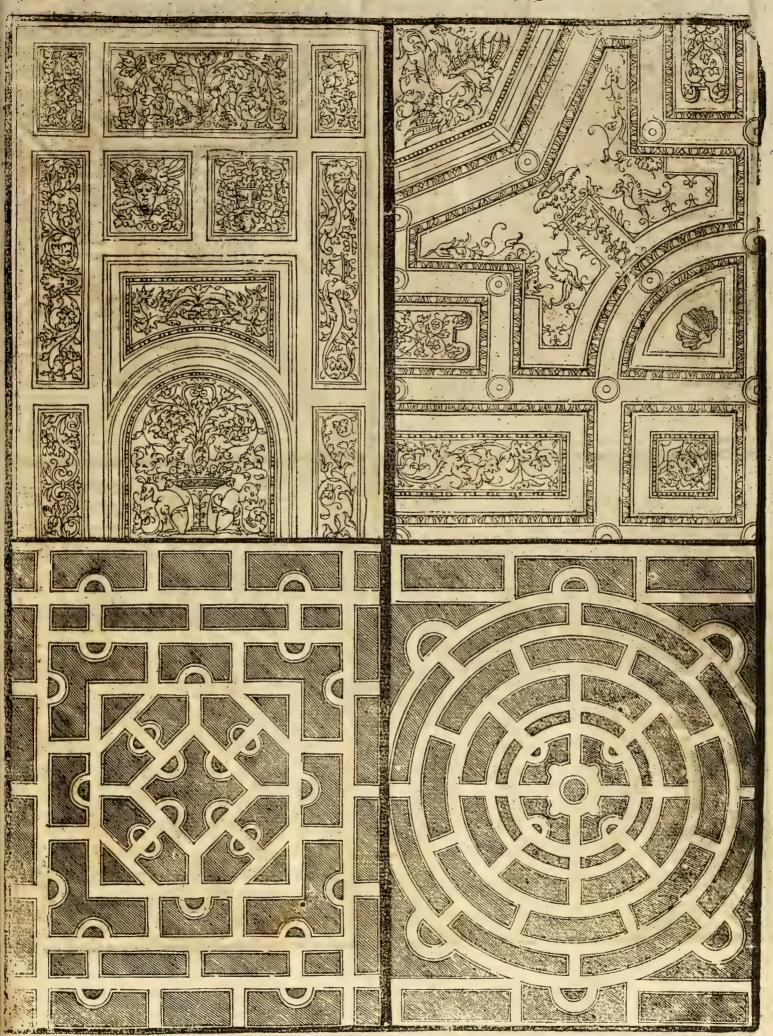
The twelfth Chapter, Fol.63



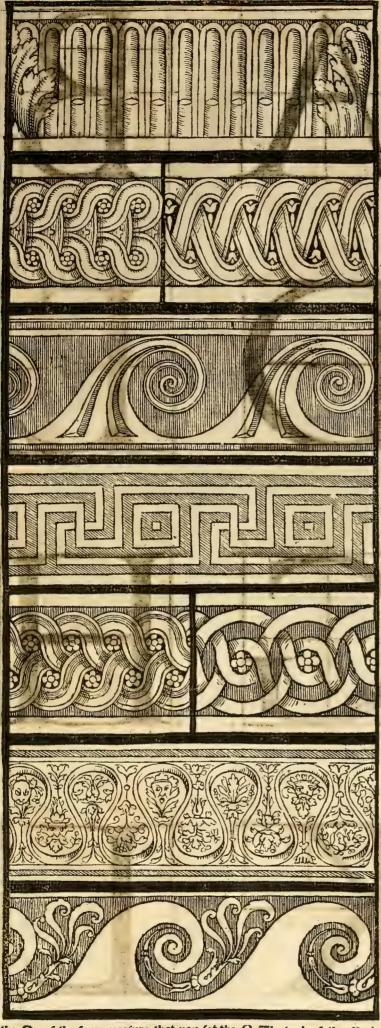
The Garden, being an Ornament to the Building,



therefore these Mazes and Knots, are set in Figure.





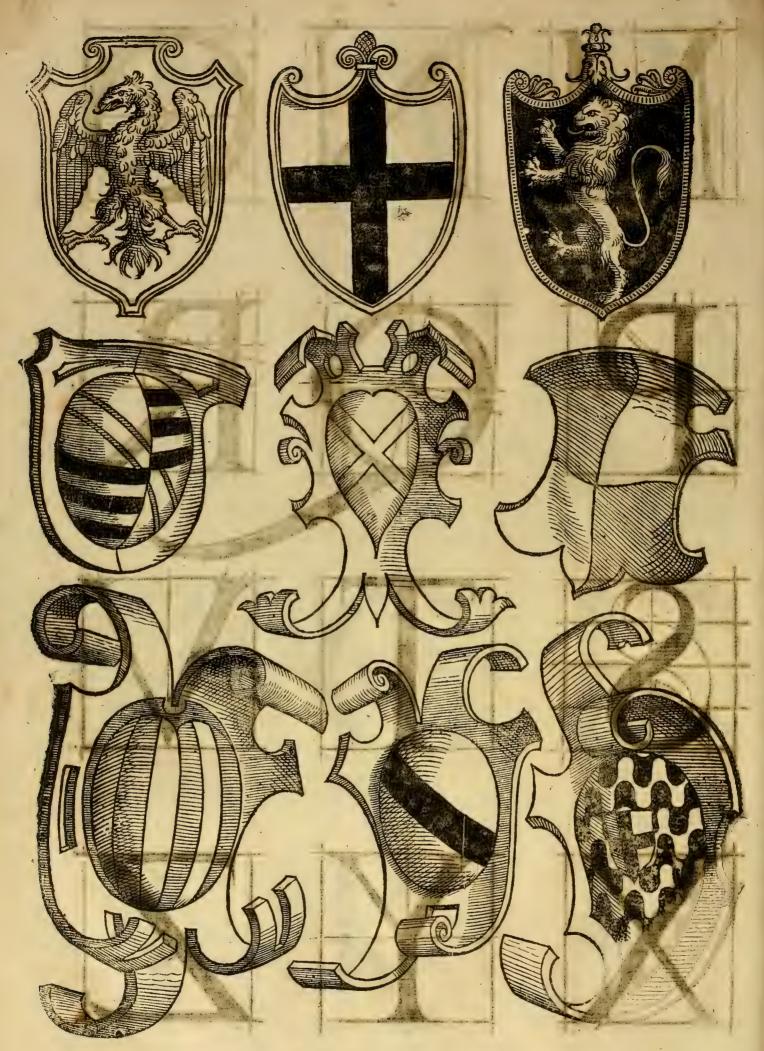


Aftly, our Author speaketh of Armor, to their how a man thall make, colour, and place them, according to fate, workemanthip, or nature i that thereby a man may percepue of what Cocke or fro Whence it is decined: for, saith he, weelse that in former times men made e figured Princes in their maielly, Bilhops in Pontifical Mobes, Captagues armed, and every man in fuch habite, as bell fitted his calling and condition. And to be will have men to make a colour armes, that are to be fet bp, bpl on,03 before honfes, with beats, birds, ec. gold, it metall bpon metall, nor colour bpon colour. But for that workenien here in this Country make no Armes after their owne pleafures, we willet them palle, ein place thereof let downe a figure of Letters, the which the workeman bath occasion many times to cut, or place abone Bates , Dozes, in Fraces, and other tables, therein to fet names, titles, venices, 02 other superfectipitions, at the plea fure of the owners, og to know a Palace, of any o ther common places of office of otherwife. Penerthelette, for that here there are rolling workes (str fill the place, I will let the Figures of the Armed which he hath made after & Letters, that the Boko nay bee complete. The workenian, hauing no mowledge of learning, thould be much troubled, to lake farre and nære for one that Mould write henifoz him: and although that he hath them in writing, neverthelesse, for want of knowing the proportions, they may be spoyled in working, and so bring his worke in contempt; as also those that Dreiv them for him: Therefore, although they are brawne by Lucas Patiolus, Geofry Tory, and Al. bertus Durer, who, neuerthelelle, agree not all to. gether, therefore I will fet thefe bereafter boinne for a common rule, following our Author, who (lets ting palle all supersition) hath brought the Columnes & Debeffals into a bue meafure: bp whole authoritie, I hould almost fay, that a man may make thefe letters greater or fmaller, according to the orders of Columnes; but to write the Simetry, or not, of I may not vigreffe to far out of the way, I will follow Victuuius, where hee fapth, that a Jonica Columne is 9. parts high, and by thewing of viners Authors, this forme of Letters is also found in Jonica, and fo I leave them of 9. parts: and whether a man would make them by Come thia or Composita order of 10. parts, it would not be amille, for as the Corinthiais molt vico for the Acndernesse, so these Letters, so, the most part, are made of 10. parts : by the Dozica and Thulcana, they are made of syght. By that reason thereof, it were not much to bee contenunco, confidering the groffenelle of the worke; also, according to Viruvius writing, a man map alter the Simetries, as it is lufficiently thewed in other places : for byon fonie occasions, they are greater e fmaller, yea, and thew altogether falle to that they are. To learns eally to make their letters, first, you must make a perfect fourefquare, and fet it in as many parts as pou wil giue bnto y letters: but if thep be of 6.7.8. 9. 02 10. parts, morcor telle, the finallest braucht thall be the third part of the thickenette, and the croffe daught the halfe. The corners thall, at leaft, haire as much Projecture as the thickinelle of the letter taken with the Compane. But although one letter is within the fourciquare, and the ot or without, you may lie in the figure, where you may fet the Compaffe to braw the round: you may fet

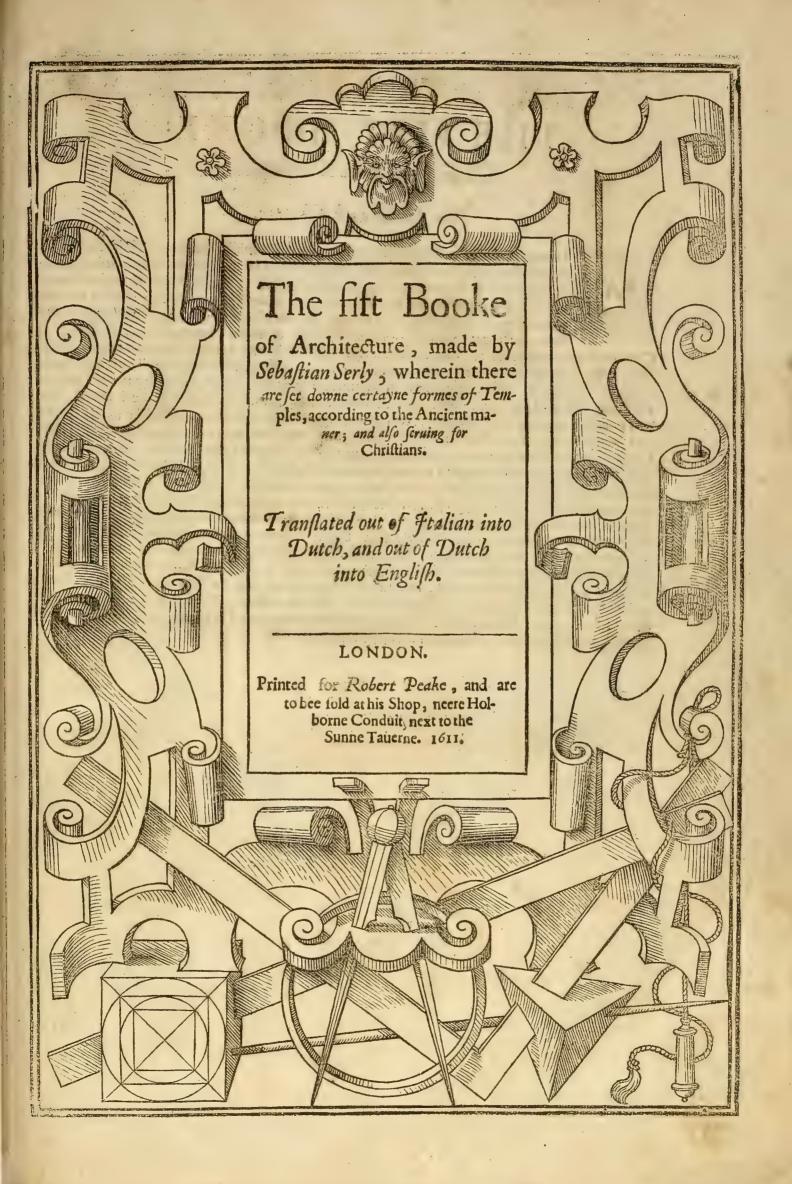
the O. of the same measure that you let the Q. The tayle of the Q. is a quarter and a halfs of a sourcequare, and finckes a halfs fourcesquare; some make it shorter. I will not upholo these letters to be the bea, but every man take them he like the bea; it is also no need to take so much paynes with every small letter; but it salls hout often times, that a man is to make them a sot, ex sire, more or leas, high; which a man shall never bring to good passe, without following a sure proportion.



ed of med all ledge on



The end of the fourth Booke.





THE FIFT BOOKE:

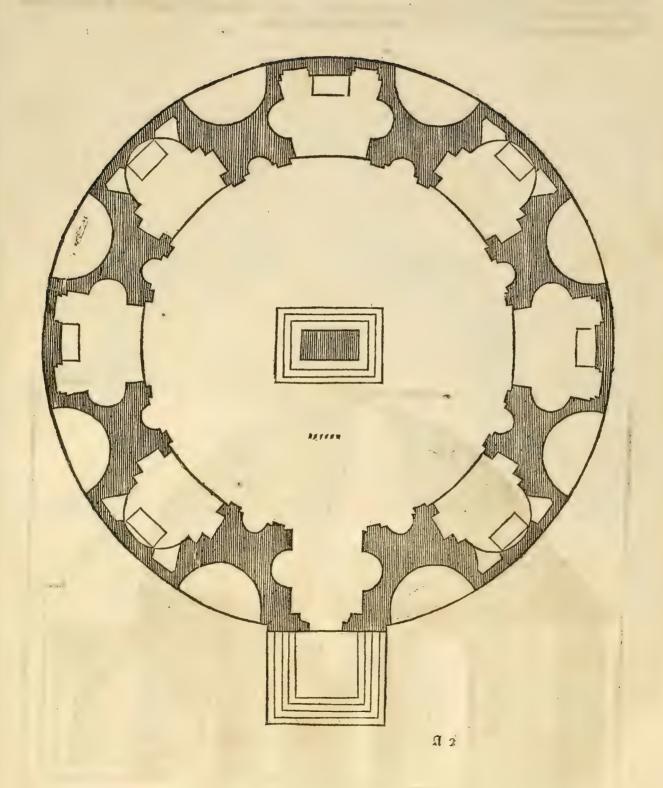
Of diversmaners of Temples,

The foureteenth Chapter.



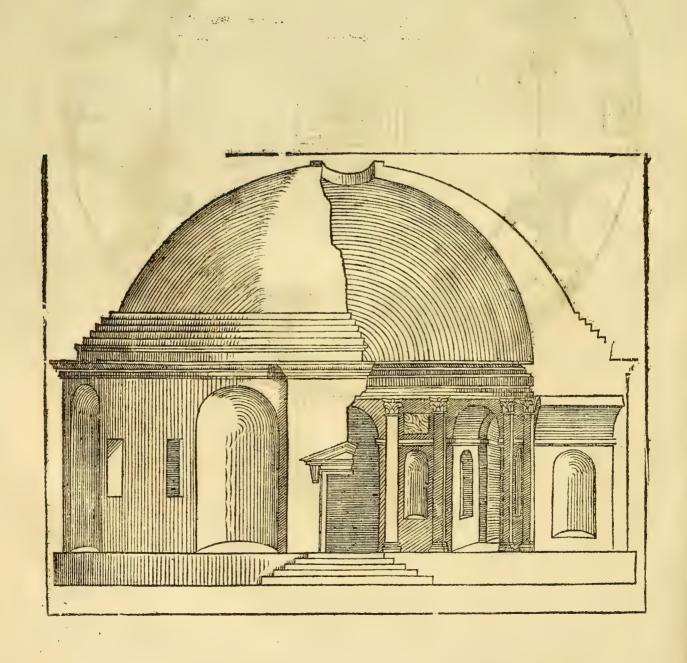
Lthough wee fee and find divers formes of Temples and Churches in Christendome, as well ancient as moderne, yet for that I have formerly promifed to shew some Orders there-of, to accomplish the number of my Bookes, therefore I will intreat of them, and set downe twelve severall maner of Temples, with their grounds and measures: and for that the round forme is the persitest of all others, therefore I will begin with it: but though in our time, whether it be by reason of small devotion, or cruelty of men, there are no more great

Churches begun to be made, and that men finish not them which in former time have beene begun, therefore I will make mine to small, as they may passe in reasonable maner, for that with small cost, they might in short time be made. The Diameter of this ground shall be as long as high, according to the Figure of the Circle, that is, of 60. foote. The thicknesse of the wall shall be the fourth part of the Diameter, that is, 15. foote, that a man may easily make the Chappels within it; which Chappels shall be 12. footbroad. The Niches betweene the Pillars shall bee foure foote broad: the other in the Entrie, and of the three Chappels, shall be fixe foote and a halfe broad: and to spare charges of stone and lime, the great Niches shall be made without the Chappell: the bredth whereof shall bee 15. foote. This Chappell is elevated from the earth at least five steps; and if it were higher, it were not amisse: for the earth in time riseth, so that men goe downeward into many old Temples and Churches, whereunto, in former time they ascended vpwards: but this Stayre would alwayes be vneuen, according to Vitruuius writing, speaking of Temples, where he fayth: that as a man'with his right foote begins to clyme vp, he may, with the fayd right foote, step vpon the pauement of the Temple. Touching the foundation, a man cannot fayle, if hee maketh it deepe and broad inough: but the least bredth that a man can lay, is this; that a man should from the Diameter of the thickenelle of the wall, make a perfit fouresquare, and the Diagonus of this fouresquare shall be the bredth of the foundation under the wall. And so, I thinke, Vitrumius writeth, where he speaketh of foundations. But touching the Stofes of foundations, in fast or hard ground, and also in watry ground, Incede not shew it here, because eucry man knowes it.



Of divers formes of Temples

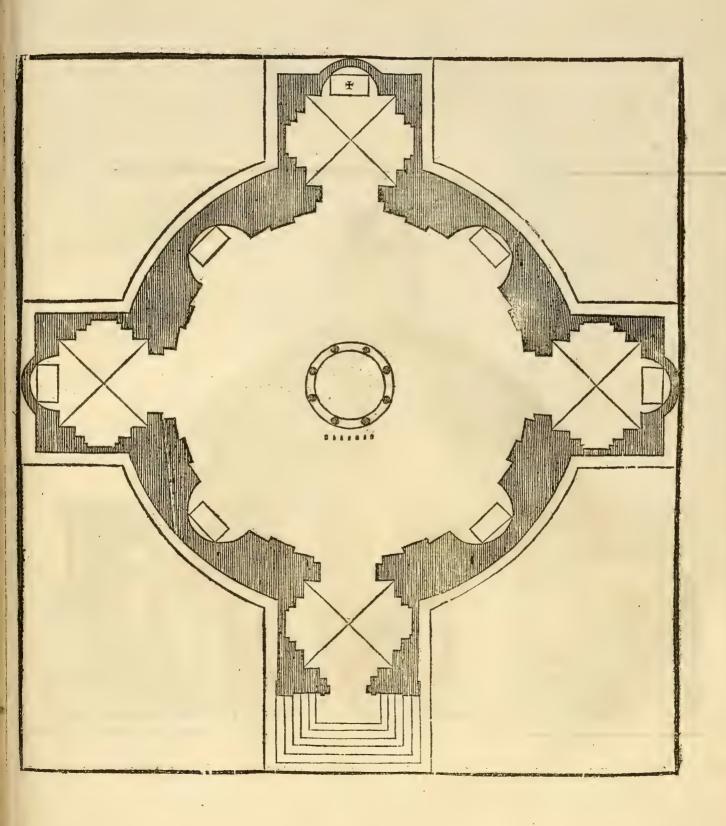
Auing theweo the ground of this round Temple, this Figure theweth the body of the Temple, both without and I within, so, that it is purposely made broken, to se both. The inner part of the Temple is made after the maner of Corinthia. The whole height from the Paucment below, to the Rose aboue, is 60. soot, whereof 30. soote are so, the Rettle 02 round roose: the rest netherwards, shall be devided in 5. parts and an halfe; whereof one part shalke so. Cornice, Frase and Architrans. The source parts and an halfe resting, shalke the height of the Columnes, with Wases and Cspitals, whereof altogether, you shall finde the particular measures in my fourth Booke, in the Corinthia. The Riv ches betweene the stat Pillars, shalke 10. soot high: the other shake of 15. soot high. The hole about the Roose, shalke the security part of the wideness of the Diameter of the Temple: aboue, byon that hole, there may bee a Ranthome made, soot with glasse, or it may be left open, whereas there will come in light inough to the middle of the Temple, so that the Chappels have light inough at their introduces: the top of this Temple will bed bee concred with Lead: the Cornice without, shall stand like that within, but much greater of members, because it sandsth in the weather. Conche ing the Doores, you sind them sufficiently set sowne in my fourth Booke;



The fife Booke.

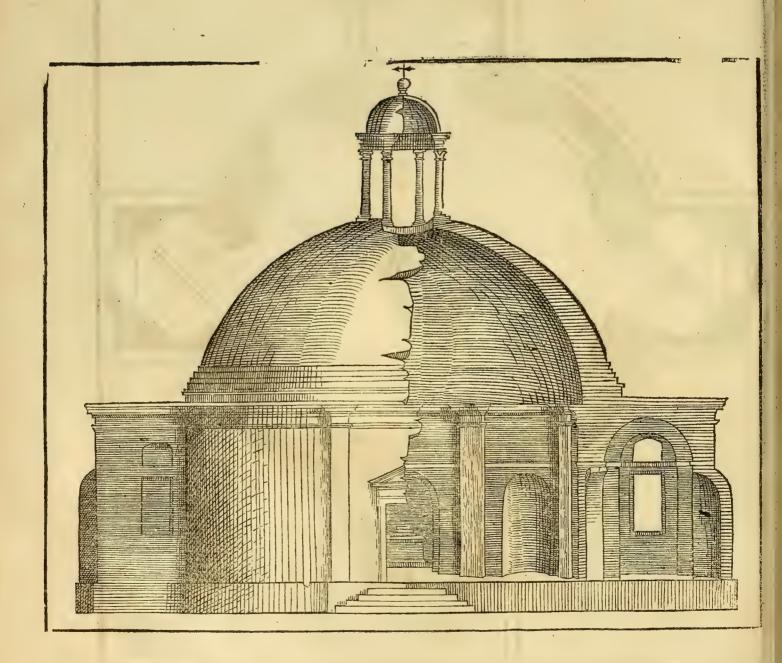
The foureteenth Chapter, Fol.3

Athough the ground of this Temple following is round also, yet it both an alteration by the four e bearings out, which are the Chappels, and also the going in of the same fathion. The Diameter of this Temple is 48. sot; the thickenesse of the wall is a seventh part of the Diameter. The Chappels are 14. sot in sour square, with out the Piches. The other 4. Piches or small Chappels shalve 9. so the round out the source Chappels have their light on the stoes, but the light of the Temple above in the Goose, shall be wide the sist part of the Diameter, with a Lanthorne open it, as it is sayd of the other: you shall goe by to this Temple also with successfures, and so that the somers without the Temple lye alwayes soule, I shinke it were not amissed on make a sour square wall about it, as high as the going by, that people may not so easily come to it.



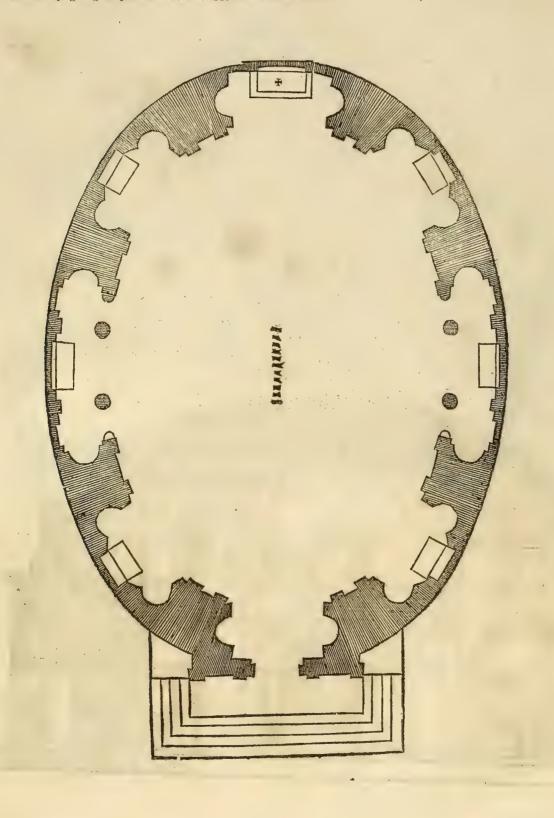
Of divers formes of Temples

The halfe chappel kanding byzight (whereof the ground is on the other side) which sheweth as well with in as without, because it sameth as it is were broken. The height within, is like the Diameter, that is, 48. for. The halfe chall be so, the halfe round roose, and the hole about so, the light, as I say before, shalbe wide the site part of the Diameter; whereon there shall be a Lanthorne, made with glade, as the Figure sheweth, and the Roose without, coursed with Lead, or other surfe. From the Koose netherwards, the Connicement shall be made of two sot and an halfe high, somed like Impost of the Arch of the Theater of Marcellus, in the fourth Booke and the security Chapter, Folio 37. and shall serve sor Capitals, whilese it be the Plinthus with the Cimatic, which shall serve sor Corona. The Pilasters are broad 4, sot can halse. The great Chappels are 21, soot high. The smalest Chappels shalles 13, soot and an halse high, halse round about. About those 3, sourcesquare Chappels, and over the going in, there may be stated ours, somewhat salling downs, to book the water: a man may also make steps within the thickenesse of the wall, to goe by, and an yron or some rayle, to rest or leans byon. The Temple may be concred with such sufferas may best be provided: but Lead would be the surest.



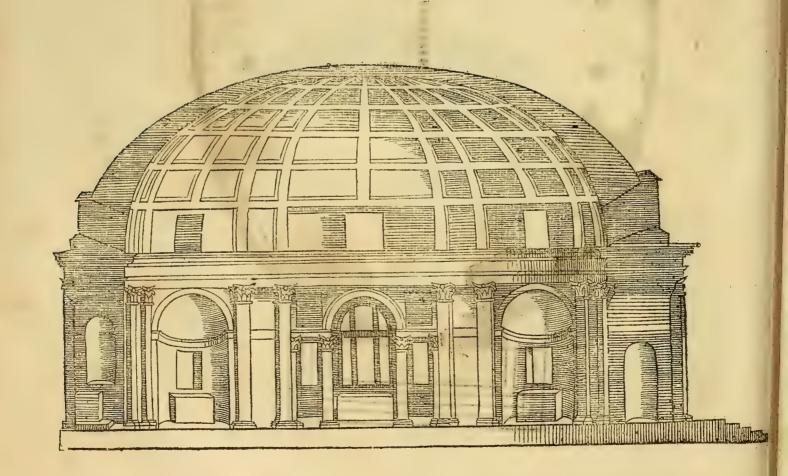
The foureteenth Chapter. Fol.4

A Fter the round Figure, which is the perfected, the best are the Duale, that is, like an Egge; therefore I base made a Temple of that fashion: which Temple shalle 46. foot broad, and 66. foot long. The thickenesse of the wall shall be 8, foot, within it the Chappels shall stand: and although they be not to large, yet a man needs not cut them ost. The wideness of the 2. greatest Chappels, holds 20. foot and an halfe; within the which are two Piches, each 4, foot broad. The Columnes shall be a foote and an halfe thicke, and the halfe Columnes accordingly. The spaces between the middlemost Columnes shall be 7, foot and an halfe: the other shall contayne 4, foot and one fourth part. These two Chappels shall each of them have 3, windowes: the middlemost shalls 6, foot wyde, and the other on the sides each three foot. The Chappell with the high Altar, shalle 10, so there chappels shalle a halfe Circle, 10, soot wyde, having the like Psches also, and a window of 4, soot wyde, about the Altar. And so that this Chappell hath light inough of it selse, it might suffice for the whole Temple: but to make it lighter, there may be windowes made about the Chappels. This Temple shall also go by fine steps: the doore shalle size foot wyde, and shalle beautised with 4. Pillars, after the Corinthia maner: the going in Salve like the Chappell with the high Altar:



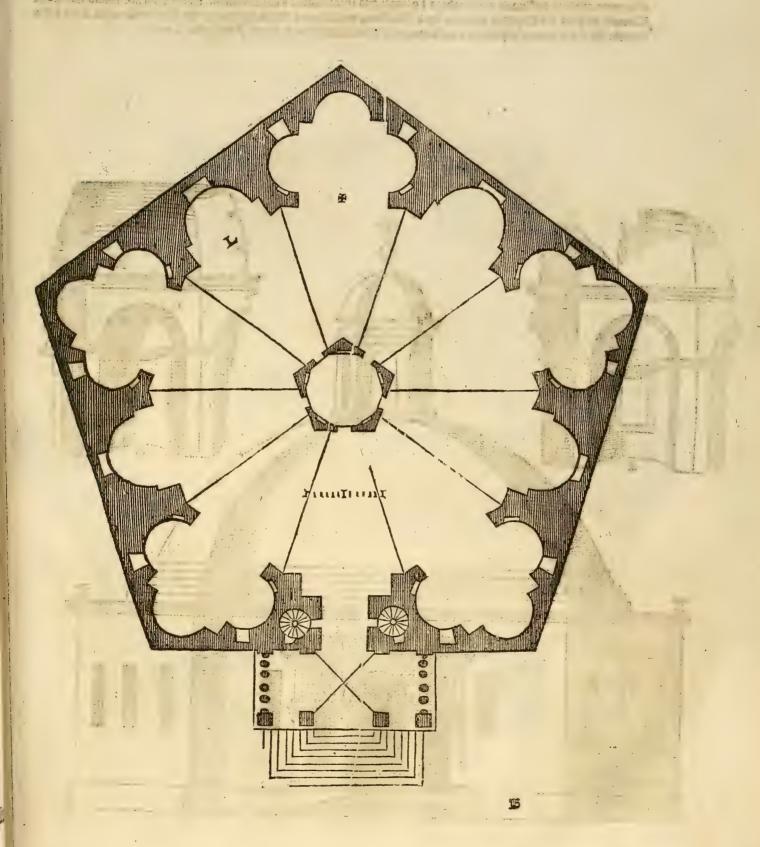
Of divers formes of Temples.

rs broad, that is, of 36. foot: from the Paucment, till you come about the Cornice, it halbe 23. foot: which height deuted in flue, one part halbe for Architrauc, Fréde and Cornice: the other 4. parts thall bee for the height of the Pillars, which separate the Chappels. The particular measures hereof you know in my fourth Booke, in the order of Cornitia; for that this Temple is made of such works. The height of the round Columnes thalbe 12. foot. The Architraue, that holdeth op the Arch, is 2. foot. The Gate (as it is sayd in the ground) thalbe beautified with foure flat Pillars, of such some and measure, as those that fland within the Temple; and also with such Cornicements: the Gate or Dooze thall have an Arch Canding byon two Pillars, between the stat Pillars: the Kooke of this Temple may be beautified, as you sait in the Figure; and richlyer also, which is best and so the windowes thall bee preserved well prough.



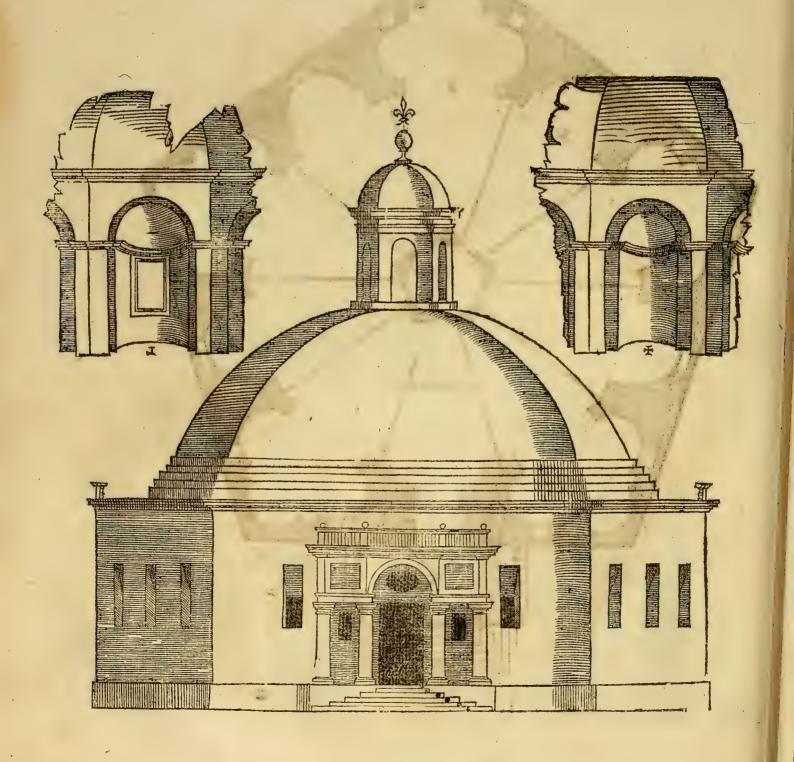
The fist Booke. The foureteenth Chapter. Fol. 5

Lithough this forme is flue cornerd, which in Bailving is not so handsome, therefore within I have made it of ten corners. The Diameter of this Temple is 62, foot long: the Diameter of the Lanthorne is 12, sot: the flue great Chappels are 15, foot in four equare, without the three Piches, which are ten foote wide. The small Chappels are 15. foot broad, and goe 4. foot into the wall, to the halfe Circle, which is, 13. foot wive. The great Chappels thall have two windowes, and the small one: the widenesse of the doores is 7. sot and an halfe. The Ballery without, Halbe 10. foot broad, and 24. foot long. The 4. Willars thereof, Coalbe 2. foot four esquare. The middle mont space between the Pillars, Hall be 10. foot, and the other 2. spaces that be 4. foot. The sides of the Gallery shall have a leaning place made with Baluffers: In the fides of the Bates, there thall fland 2. payze of winding flayes, to goe op opon the Postall, and also round about the Temple. This Temple is 9. foot elenated from the ground, and it may be made bollow uncerneath.



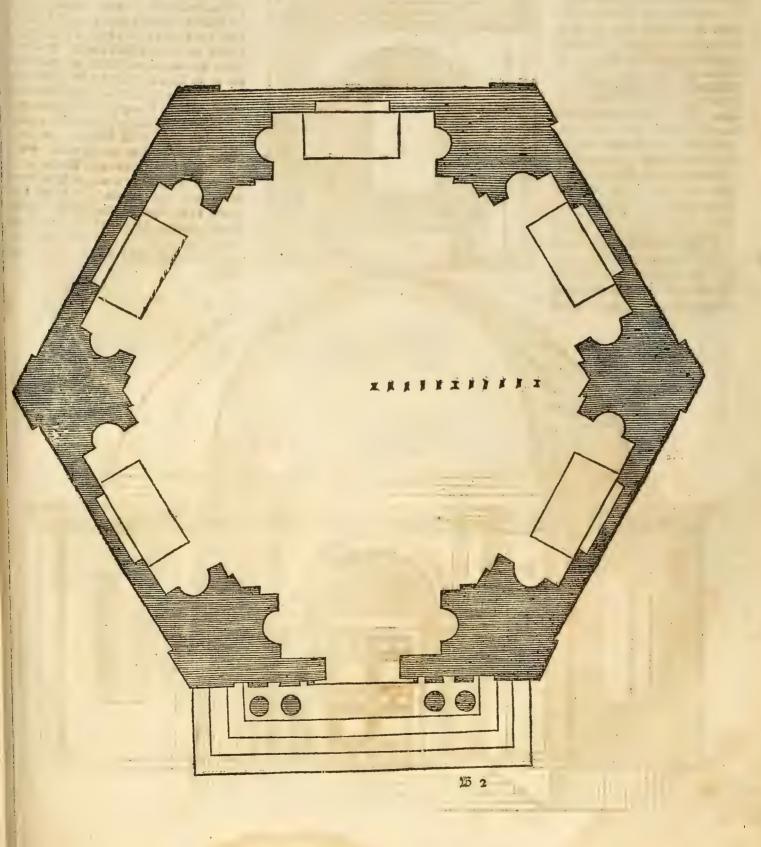
Of divers formes of Temples

Athough this Temple is thut, yet I will thew the measure within, it is as high as broad within, that is, 62. fort. The Lanthorne is also as high as broad to the Cornice: the Roose is of halfe a Circle. The roose of the Comple is also halfe a Circle, high z 1. soot, the rest netherwards. The Cornice thall baue two foot and an halfe, somewhere the Impose of the Theater of Marcellus, in the fourth Booke, in the order of Jonica, warked T. Folio 37. This Comice thall be let without, like the innermost, but greater. The fouresquare pillars of the Portall, are 14. foot high, with Bases and Capitall, Dorica. The Architrance is halfe the thickenesse of the height of the pillar; about the Arch, the Comice is the fourth part less then the great, but of the same forme, and thall serve sor Capitall byon the Pillars. Abone this Comice, there shalbe a place brest-high, made with Iron Belusters. The two pieces about this Temple, show the Chappels within: and that with the crosse, sheweth the greatest Chappell, whereof the light is 25. foot. The other piece marked L. sheweth the lesse Chappell, which is also 25. sort high: the Pillasters that separate the Chappels, are three sorts for broad: the height is 19. soot: and there shall be a Cornice made, which shall goe round about the Temple, serving sor Capitals byon the sayo Pilasters; which forme shalbe made after the Dorica Cemple, but a little altered: the Comicement, byon the Lanthorne, may be made with Architrane, Freese and Cornice.



The foureteenth Chapter. Fol. 6

Degrand of the Temple following that be fire copiers, being in Diameter 25. kote: and the wall 3. kote thicke. The widenesse of the Piches is 2. kote. The Doze of the Temple is 5. kote wide, about the with bouble Pillars, which are a kote and a quarter thicke. The going by is 5. keps, or more if you will; yet vinemen. Tach Chappell hath a Mindow, of foure kote and a halfe broad, which will bring in light inough, although there be no Lanthorne. On the 6. corners without the Temple, there shalve stat Pillars made, of 2. kete and a quarter broad, comming out a little. And if you would make the Temple greater, and for want of kones you could make it no thicker Columnes: then you might make it Corinthia, or Zonica, or Dozica, if you will: and then you may helpe your selfe with Perchals:

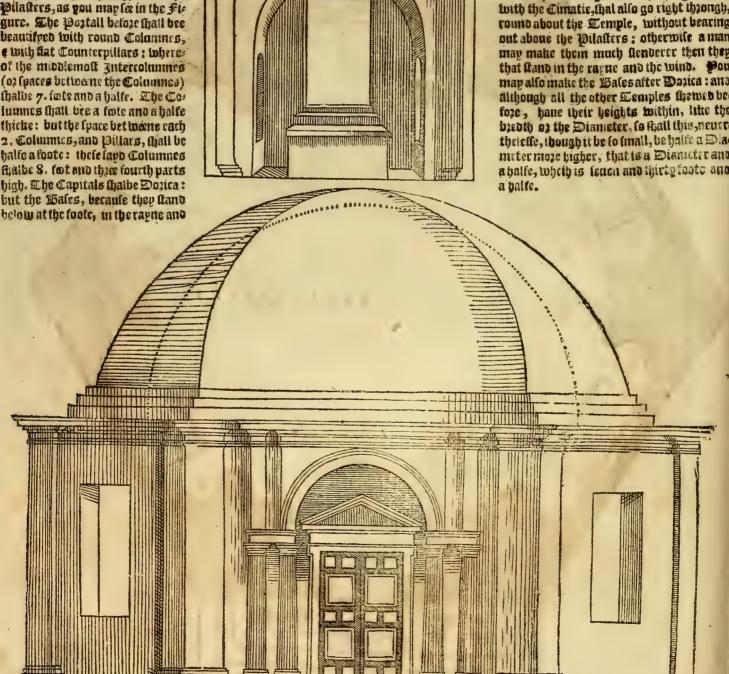


Div I have the wed the ground of the S. cornerd Temple, 4 must them it transing viright, and also describe it, as well within as without: for although the Temple be whole closed by, but I have let a Chappell about over it, to

le it within, for that they are all fine of one forme; and the going in allo is of the same forme. But louching the cutermost part, 3 lap, that the beight from the panes ment below, till pen come aboue the Cornice, Chalbe I 8. foote. The Comice round about the Wemple, Mall be made of a foote and a halfe: but the members of the favo Comics thalbe made according to the Chap. ter of Dozica, forthatit Chall allo ferne foz Capitall upen the Wilafters, at the 6. comers. Aouthing the Plinthus with the Cimatie, for that it Mall ferue for a Cozona, it thall go but right through about the Bilatters, as you maple in the Fie gure. The Postall before thail bee beautifped with round Colomnes, e with flat Counterpillars : loberes of the middlemost Intercolumnes (02 spaces bettoeine the Columnes) thalbe 7. fote and a halfe. The Columnes thatt bre a fote and a halfe thicke: but the space bet mene cach 2. Columics, and Pillars, Hall be halfe a foote: thefe land Columnes Highe 8. fot and the fourth parts high. The Capitals Chaibe Dozica:

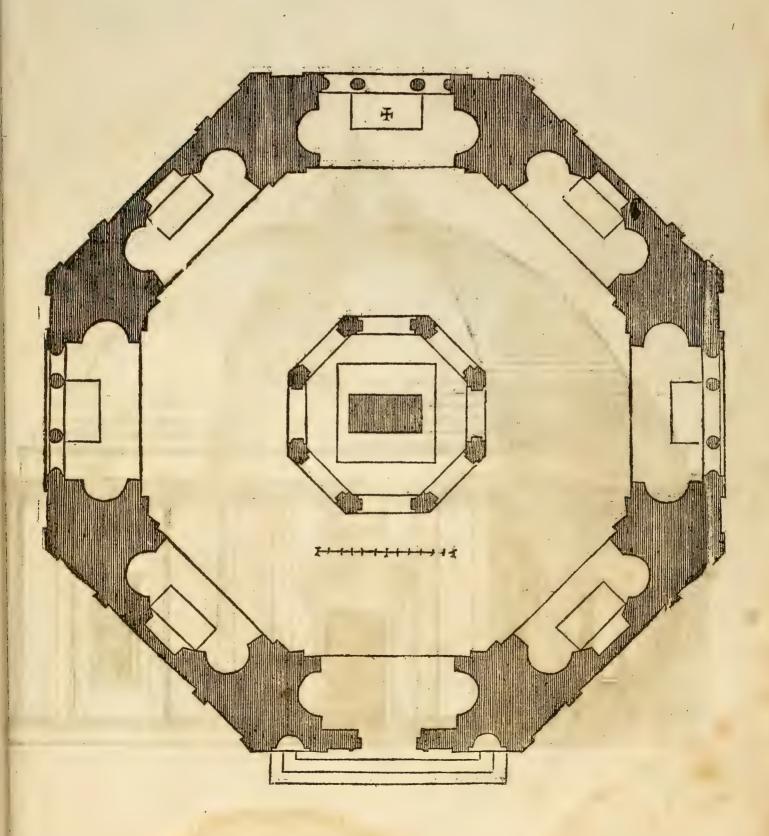
the twind, and also to that they hould bee the Bales for the flat Pillars, and the great Pillakers, going about the Temple on all flors, therefore they halbe made Tulcana. The height of the Architrane hall bee a foote, whereon the Arch hall kand: and the Booze halbe adopned as you fee it in the Figure. The going in halbe 3. Keps at the leak. The Koofe hall be

covered with a thing, which in those Countrepes laffeth long, and is easy to bee had, otherwise it were best to be of Leab: and this is touching the worke without. To speake of the inward part, it is sayd, that I. Chappell ferneth fog all: the bredth of thefe Chappels hold each of them 10. fot: and in height 13. fot and a halfe, and enter 4. fot into the wall: on each five they have a Piche, which is 2. fot broad : aboue the Als tar there is a window, which is 4. fot and a halfe broad: and 7. fote bigh. The Cornice within the Aemple hall Kand of the same beight that the outermost both, and shall also bee of the same figures: foz the Plinthus with the Cimatic, that also go right through, round about the Temple, without bearing out aboue the Wilasters; otherwise a man may make them much denverer then they that Cand in the rappe and the wind. you may also make the Bales after Dopica : and although all the other Temples theweb befoze, have their heights within, like the breath or the Diameter, lo Hall this, neucre theielfe, though it be to small, be halfe a Diametermoze higher, that is a Diameter and a halfe, which is fenen and thirty foote and a balte.



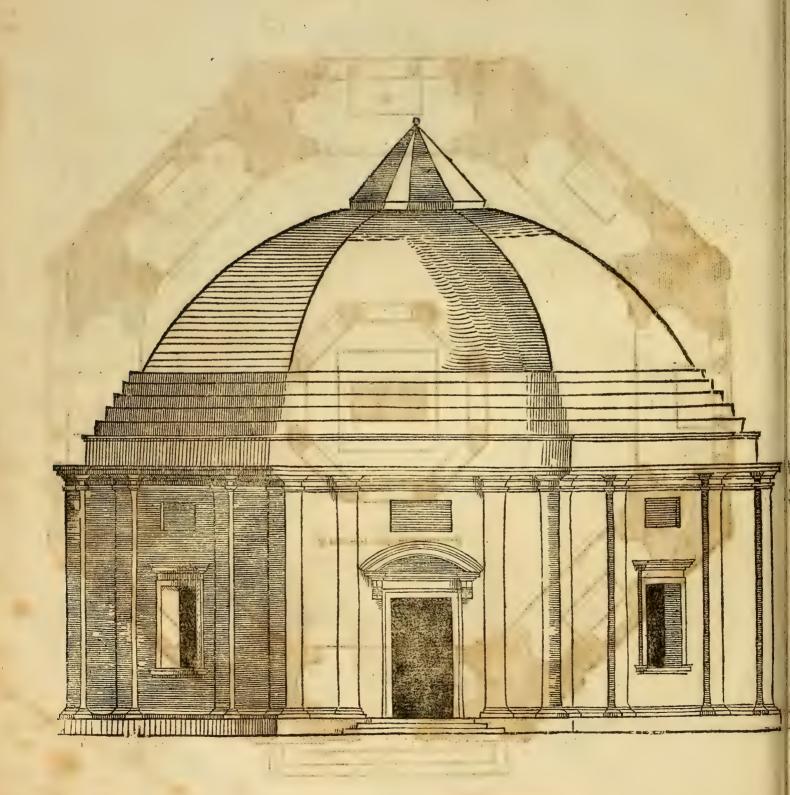
The foureteenth Chapter. Fol.

Lithough those assistand, and some Temples following, have no Steple so? Wels to hang in, as the Christians ble to have; nor any Tellries, nor other places so; men to withdraw themselves in: yet they must, nevertheles, he handsomely made without, but so, that men may go through the Temple into them: all which subjects and inventions that not want in my other Booke. The ground of this Temple is 8. quare: whereof the Diameter within thalbe 43. soote: and the wall 8. soote. The Chappels are 12. soote wide, and said 5. soote within the wall. The Chappels are of halfe a Circle, and the other 3. with the going in are 4. square. Cach Chappell hath 2. His ches, which are 4. soote broad. The 3. windowes in the halfe Circles are 4. soote broad: the other 3. with the Columnes are 11. soote wide. The Doore is 5. soote wide. In the middle of the Temple a man may set an Altar, concrete with a Tribune, upon 8. Pilasters. The Diameter hereof chalbe 12. soote long: and if you will make this Temple greater, you may make it more sets.



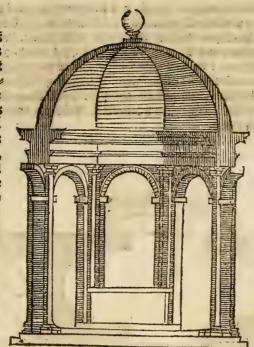
From the highest created the S. square ground, asoze set volume, and is the sayd Temple as it is without.

A from the highest created the hypermost part of the Cornice, it is 21. sote and a halfe, which is the halfe of the invermost height. The Cornice shall consagne 2. sote, volumed as in the Chapter Dortes, and shall also beare out over the Pilasters, without the Plinthus, as in the Figure. Pon shall also set a simple Bale underneath thick sourch parts of a sote high. The venth of the Pilasters at the corners, shallo of 3. soote: and those that stand inwards shallo but 2. so to be dead. The Dore is 5. so to wide, and shalle 13. so to and a halfe high. The Dramments of this Doore you sind in the fourth Boke, by the Jonica, Folio 38. The maner of the wide nesse is sufficiently sine in the Figure: if you will have more light in the Temple, then you may make a hole abone, and that to bee conercd with glasse, paynt-wise, agaynst the rayne.

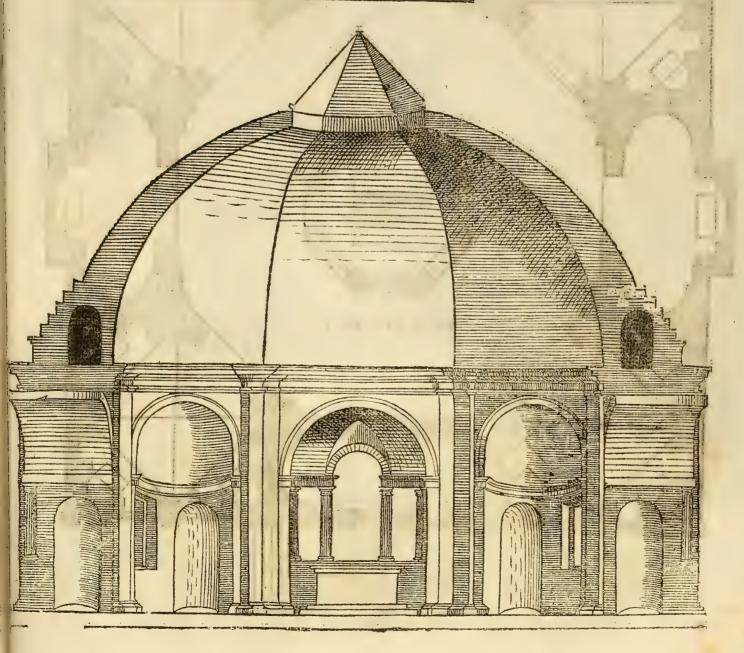


The foureteenth Chapter, Fol. 8

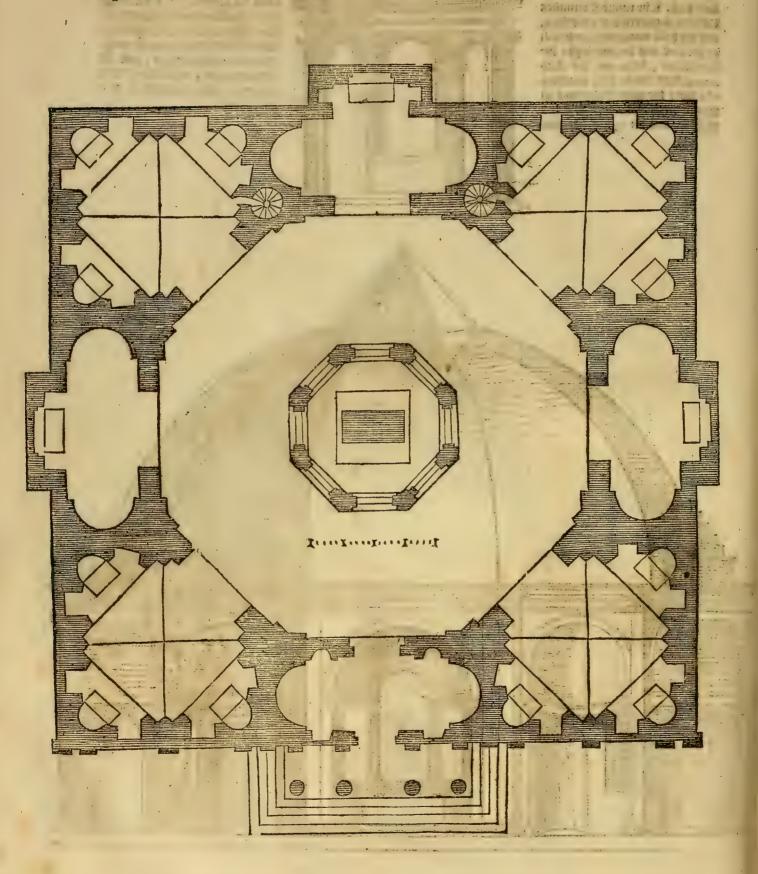
A Crosding to this innermost Dithographie, the Comices and Pillars are of forme cheight like the innermost: from the Cornices optwards, the roofe is a halfe Circle: the 3. greatest Chappels are rooft with Arches, and are 18. foot high. The round Columnes halbe their quarters of a fort thick, and the halfe accordingly, and shall be fire foot and an halfe high: the Architrave, whereon the Arch comes, shall also be their quarters of a foot: the inter-Columnes in the middle, shall be foure foot and an halfe, and on either side two



for and an halfe. The Chappels of halfe a Circle, thall also be i 8. foot high: the Piches of all the Chappels thalbe tenfoot high: the Tribune that should kand in the middle with the Altar, is figured abone: and from the ground to abone the Comice, it is 18. foote high: the Comicement thereof is the fortherest is so, the Pillars, where, on the soes, you may make Pilasers with Arches, and all Doice worke, as well within as without. The Tribune is of a halfe Circle.

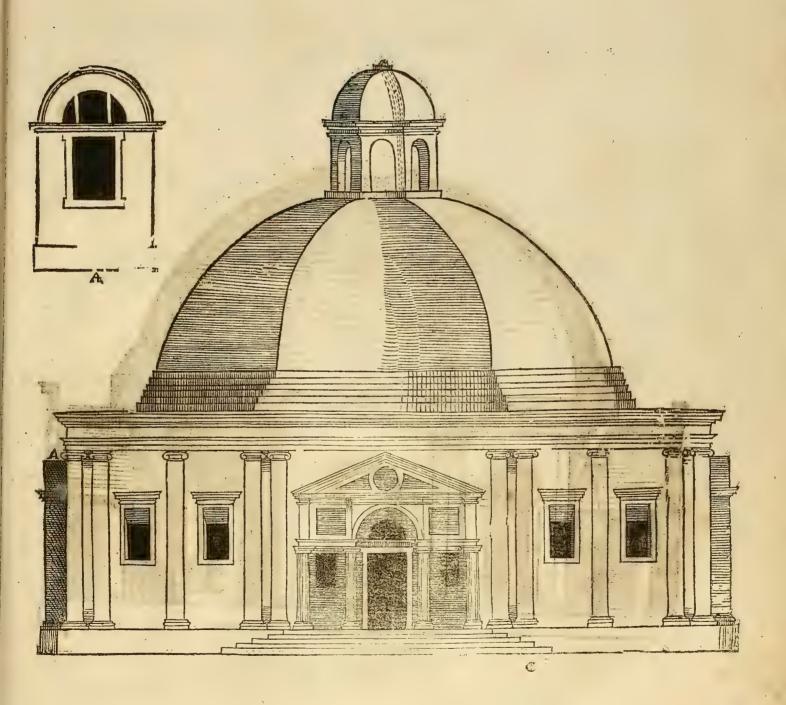


At though this ground without is four equare, pet within it is 8. comerd, whereof the Diameter within is 65. foot, and the wall 16. foot. The going in of all the Chappels, is 12. foot, and the wall there, is 3. foot and an halfe thicke. The corner Chappels chalbe 16. foot four equare within: the Piches with Altars, halbe 12. foot broad: the 4. open, and two blind windowes, chalbe 3. foot and an halfe: the two letter Chappels chalbe 22. foot long within, without the Piches. The Piches Chalbe 10. foot broad: the windowes chalbe 6. foot wide: the Wortall without, is 27. foot long, and fine foot wide: right over against the flat Pillars stand round Columnes, which are one fot and 3. quarters thicke. The doore is 6. foot wide: the Portall within, is almost like one of the small Chappels. You may also set a high Altar in the middle, with a Aribune, whereof the Diameter is 20. soot: the Pilasters are three soot and an halfe thicke: the stat Pillars at the corners are three foot broad.

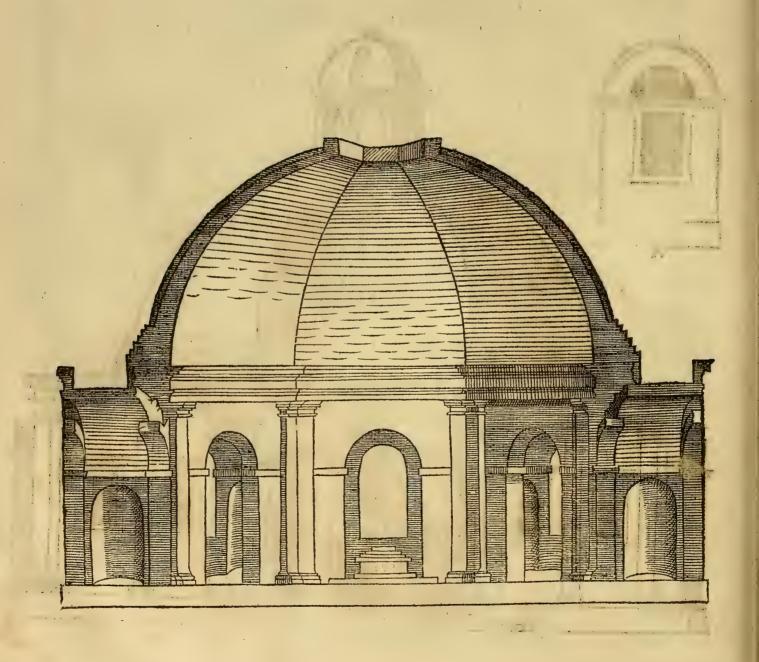


The foureteenth Chapter, Fol.9

Disis the Dethographic of the aforefayd ground, of the eyght cornerd and four equare Temple, which is the Figure as it is without, whereof I will describe the height: and first, from the Pauement, to the highest part of the Cornice, it is 22. foot and an halfe: the height thereof denived in sire parts, one shall be for the Architrane, Frese and Comice, the other sine parts are for the Pillars, which being two foot and an halfe broad, yet they are not to long, because they stand two together, and little rayled by. The measure of all together, you may snot in the order of Jonica, in the fourth Booke. Above this Cornice standed the Tribune, whereon there shall stand a Lanthorne, to give light into the middle of the Temple, whereof you may easily snote the measure, with the snall stand a Lanthorne, to give light into the middle of the Temple, whereof you may easily snote the measure, with the limit foot that Candeth in the ground. The round Columnes before the Postall, shalbe 13, soot high: the Architrane is a foot: above the Arch, the Conice shalbe the thickenesse of a Columne below, devided as in the Capitall of Dorica. The Frontispicie riseth to the Architrane of the Temple: the going by is of sine steps: the small sigure marked with A. is one of the Chappels without, which comes three foot out of the wall: the windowe subsect is 10, sot high, before the light above the Cornice, and above it is halfe round, covered as you see.

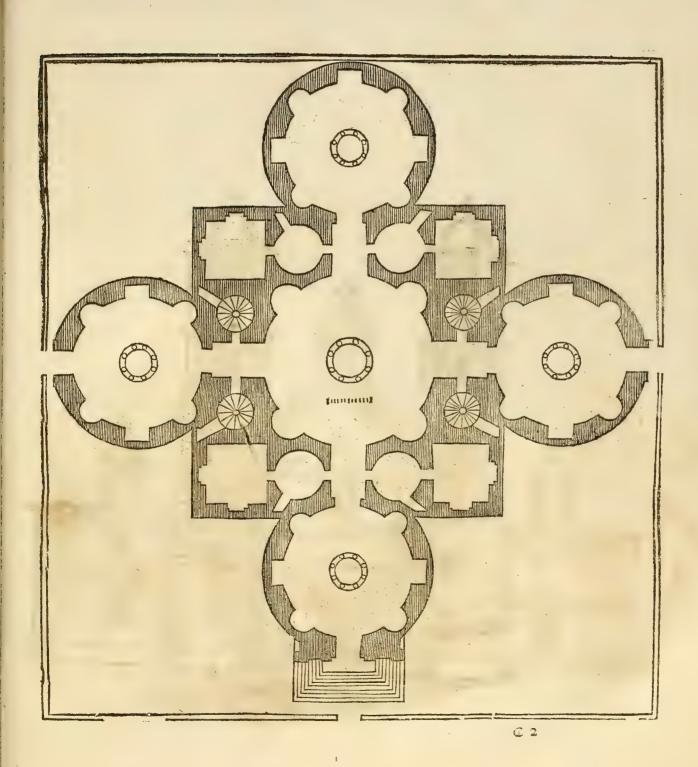


Div A haneshewed the ground and Dethography without of the Temple in sourcequare, I will also describe the 8. comerd Temple within, set it here beneath in Figure. And here you see how men going up the Stayles which are sigured in the entry of the ground, go up to § sayle walks. The height of this Temple within is almost like all the Temples before set downe, and also which are sound in Antiquities, that is, as high as decad, which some is taken out of the Circle. The round Koose, as soft the halfe Circle, occupied the one halfe, and of the other halfe downewards there shalls so parts made, whereof one part shall be soft the Architranc, Fráse and Counice, which shalle made after the Dozica: the other 5. parts are soft he wall with the Pillars, which also are 2. soote and a halfe decad, like the outermost, but so Capitall and Base, like the Dozica. The measures both of Capitals, Bases, Architranc, Fráse and Counice, you shall also sno in the asozesay fourth Booke, in the Deder of Dozica. The bearth of the going in of all the Chappels is 12. soote: but the height of the sayd Chappels is 24. soote. The 4. greatest Chappels which stand in the counters are 14. soote within, sourcesquare, with their Pilasters, with Arches byon them. The height of all the Piches, as well of those that are 19. soote broad, as those of 12. soote, shall all be 13. soote high. The Lanthorne shall hold 13. soote in Diameter: and the rest the Architector shall easily snow with the small foote.



The foureteenth Chapter. Fol.10

Hisground flanding hereunder may be named crosse wise, whereof the principall place in the middle containesh 48. fot in Diameter. The 4. Piches, with the 4. goings through, are each 10. so the broad; but the goings through are 15. so te long. The source small Temples hold in Diameter 36. soote; and their Hickors, and Mindowes, (wherein you may place Altars) and the Doores are each five foot wide. The 4. places within the 4. convers, may be dwellings so; Priess, 4 other Church Officers, and are 16. so the sources quare: about them, you may place source to withdraw themselves. This whole sourcesquare, without inclosing the innormal round Temple, contagneth on all the soc. The principall going in shall have 9. steps, and the Obore may also bee greater then the other two in the soc.

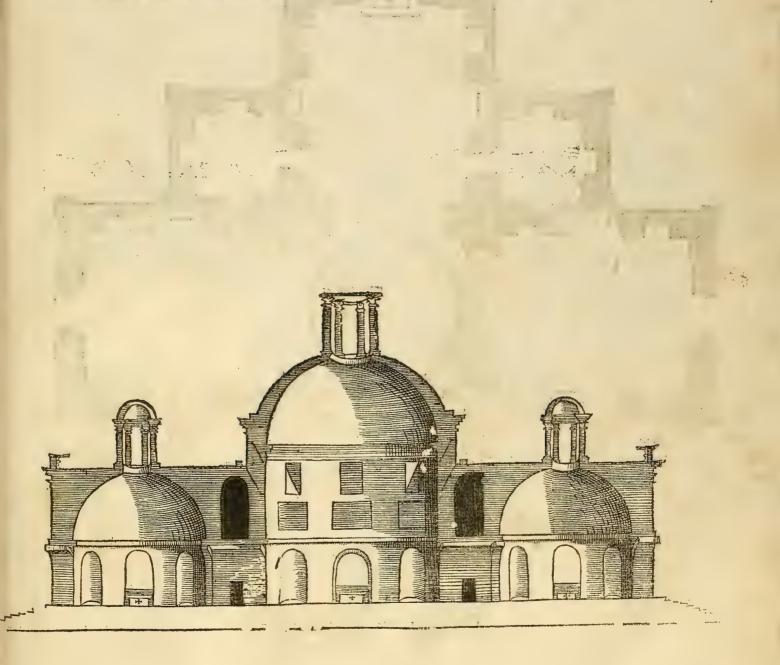


Kom the ground before thetwed, here kandeth the Drihography of the kayd Temple with one of the fides that is before, although a man kould ket them out allkoure, at least three, in this maner. The height of the first Story, beginding at the highest kep of the going by to the depermed part of the Cornice, shall all inclose the which height, devided in 6. parts, one halbe for the Architrane, Frécle and Cornice, and this shall inclose the whole Temple round about. From this first Cornice, to the second of the middle Temple, it shalle 13. koote: of this height from shall make 5. parts to here of one shall be for the Frécle, Coinice, and Architrane. The same great part of the Cornices shall also serves to hear of the 4. least Chappels: which Lanthornes within shall containe 8. store in Diameter. The 3. Droer against the 4. Towers shall have but a flat Facie, right like the soote of the greatest Lanthorne which standeth by done the round roose. The sayd Lanthorne within shall hold 10. seote in Diameter; and the height without the Nettle stone shalle 15. soote: this height devided in 5. the one part shalles for the Cornicement of this Lanthorne, and the so ther shalles Cornicement: and although that from this Cornicement netherwards, the Droer of the Tewers stands not bery handsomely, because they are socced to yield to the Cornicement of the Temple; get according to Antiquity, it is a fault to be borne withall. The uppermost parts, which in no soft are typed to any thing, shalle as high as the trickeness of the soft sayd Adwers. The 5. part of that height shalles so the Cornicement, and the real, soft the Columnes, made after the Jonica. About the Cornice the leaning place shalle made, with the round roses, as you see.

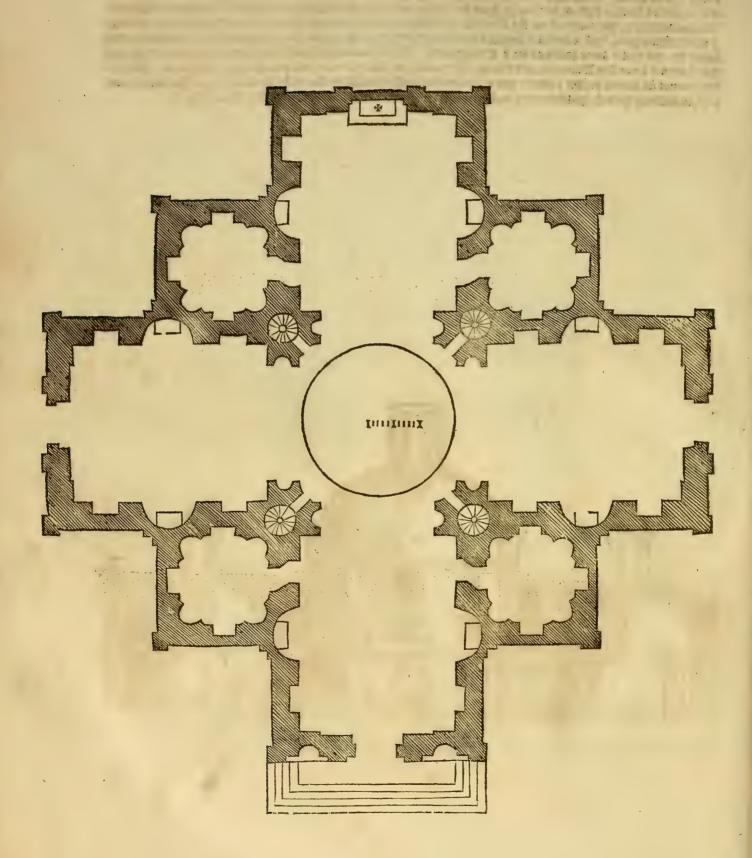


The foureteenth Chapter. Fol.11

Gercunder followeth the Dethographie of the aforefand Temple within, that is, the halfe of the 2. Temples, And I Tog that the middlemost Temple should receive moze light then from the Lanthorne, as the other also one by the windolves below, it is requilite to make the Cognice without higher then the innermoli, that a man may, almost receive the light perpendicular wife, as you may consider it in the Figure. From the Pauenient, to the highest part of the Cornice, it shalbe 44. foot. The Cornice (because there are neyther Columnes nor Pillars about) a man may make baltard, and at his pleasure, soit hanc not much bearing out, that it may not take away the fight of the roofe. The Cornice thalbe a foote and a halfe high, and may bee made according to the Capitall of Dorica. The height of all the Diches are all 15. foote: about the Diches, there Chall a Facie goe round about the whole part of the Temple, as well the small Temples as the great. About the Facie the halfcround rockes of the 4. Chappels shall stand. About thefe 4. Chappels there that be a playue, made a little hanging, to cut off the water, with a place brethigh round about. lobere, by the Stapzes, a man may go through to the Towers: and if that this Temple Candeth in any open place, then there will be a faire walke about it; you must be carefull that you let no know lye byon it, for it toketh in and hurteth the roofe. The Doores on the fives haucallo 9. fteps, although they ftand not marked in the ground: and as thefe and the like houses stand so high, or not so high, from the earth, a man may well make them places of denotion, or other wife. We fix commonly, that round about the Churches all corners lye full, which is bucinil for fanctified places: therefore I would thinke god, that it hould be walled round about as high as the Ceps, that it might not be fo ready for people to ace in, and that it were hallowed for a Church pard. The Towers that Mould frand behind in this halfe, because they if and not beon this Diameter, and allo for leffe cumber, for that men may conceive how they are placed; therefore they are not let downe in this Figure: and what there wanteth more, it is referred to the discretion of the workeman, toho, inbuilding thereof, thall find many accidents which a man cannot wite nor remember all at once.



Athough the aforefayd Temple is the word to be ecrotes wife, nevertheleste, this that is heere set down is much liker: and first, I will speake of the first going in, which hall serve so; all the rest, so that they are all of one forme. The indences 30. soot, and the length 37. soot. The wall is seven soot thicke: in the mode, on either side, there are two Piches, which shall each of them be tenne foot broad. The Doore is eyght foot wyde: the going through, to goe into the Circle, is 22. soot suyde. The Pilasters there, are seven foot thicke: the Riches, soure foote. Within the Pilasters the sayres shall stand to goe by, and that the Pilasters should be the faster to beare the Tribune, in the soure corners, behind against the Pilasters, you shall make these eyght cornerd Chappels, of 18. so in Diameter, and the wall is soure foot thicke. The Piches, Doores, Windowes and blind windowes, shall be sue foot wide. The corners of the Temple without, have their stat Pillars of the ket broads the going by is of sue seys.

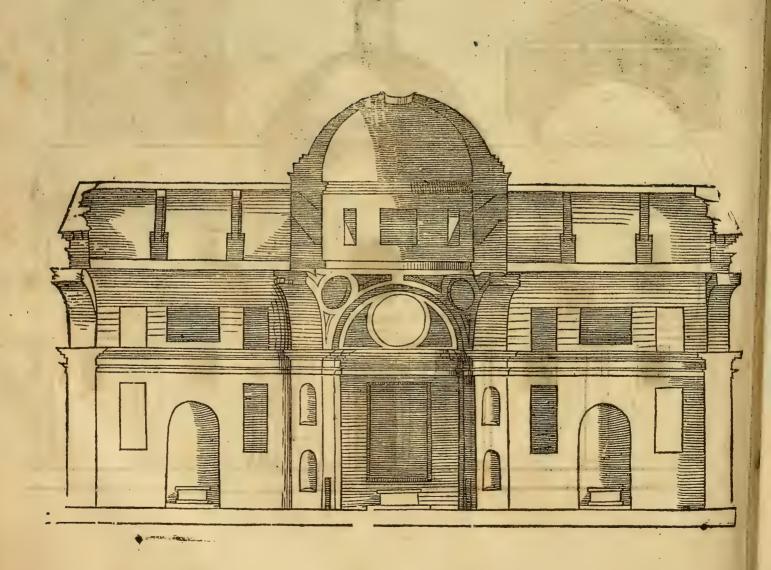


The foureteenth Chapter Fol. 12

The Dethographic without of the source cornerd crosses Temple, is hereunder set downer, and is 44. soot devad at the going in; and the height from the ground to the Cornice is 30. soot: the Cornicement is sue foot: the rest resters the Holders, which height should be Jonica. The second story is 22, soot high: which height shall be decided in sire parts, one chalbe soot the Cornicement, and the other side so, the Cornthia Columnes. These two stories the Temple shall have, subcreed you shall have the measure in the sourch Booke. The roose shalls 10. soot high, but here in the Land where it bloweth, rayneth, and snoweth much, it may sand much higher. Showe the opper part of this Frontispicie or Roose, there shall be a Cornice of two soot, whereon the Rettle or the round Goose shall stand, having a Lanthorne open it, which is 10. soot high, without his cover. The part marked C. sheweth the cover or rose with in, and the other marked L. sheweth one of the 4. cornerd Chappels: and although these-3. Cops, sor a going by stand onely to this Doore, they should also be made to the other two doores on the sloes: and the sprannent of the boores, you shall sind in the asoresayd Booke, in the order of Jonica.

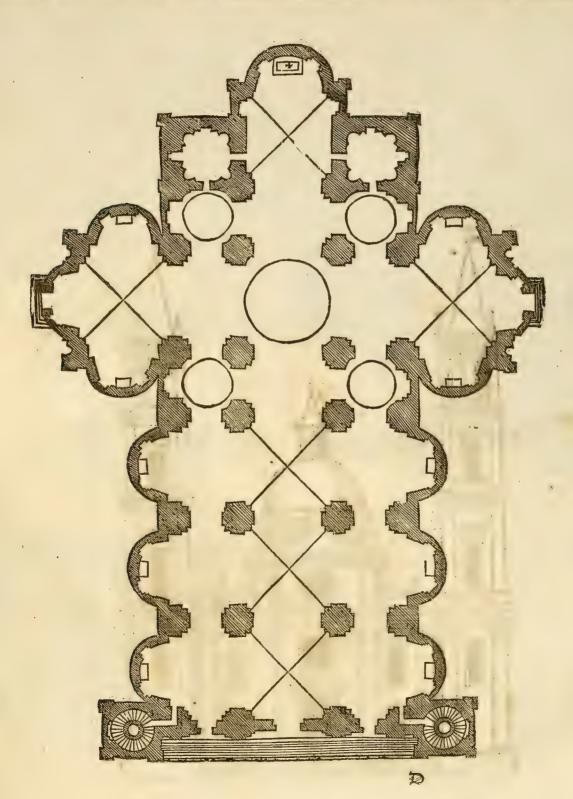


Lauing thewed this fouresquare cross Temple without, now here sollowes the part within, as is it were Diames stressed, cut even in 2. parts. And first, speaking of the middle whereon the Aribume standeth, there is from one of the Tomers of the Pstallers, to the other, 30. soot. From the pavement below, to the highest part of the Comice, it is also 30. soote. The height of this Frése, Architrane, and Comice, is 5. soote, and this shall goe round about the Remple within. Apon this Comice the Arches restivibility beare by the Aribume. About the Archesthere is a great facte; and from theme dywards it is 15. soote high. The Comice shalls 2. soote: but shall not beare much over on out, not to let the roose. From this Comice netherwards, to the Facie, there shalls 8. drawing windowes made, of 7. soote, sourcesquare, as you see it in the Figure. Abe Lanthorne shalls 5. soote wide. From the pavement, to the hole of the Lanthorne, it shalls 77. soote high. The place where the high Altar standesh, is right over against the principal going in. In the great sourcesquare there may be an Altar Table set: and about it shere shall be a great round window, as also about all the 4. Doores. I need not write any thing of the second side: sor by the ground and this Figure you may easily conceaue it. And although I say nothing here of Towers, yet there may 2. at the least, bee set as bout the Chappels in the corners: also, as in many other places it is shewed, the workeman, by on good occasion, may alter some things: sor although that in Islay, and here in these Countryes (where the sum chineth much) men descressed in weather, may, according to the struction, make the windowes great, and give more light to the Temples, without beaking Describer, as it is sayo in the south Sooke of the Unnetian houses.



The foureteenth Chapter. Fol. 13

incle, fouresquare, sue cornerd, sire coinced, cyclit cornerd, and crosse wise, not onely after the maner of the Ancients, but also serving for Christians, in such sources as are at this day made in Italy, and else where, subsection I thought 3 had sufficently performed my promise but for that Temples or Churches are made here in these court thought 3 had sufficently performed my promise but for that Temples or Churches are made here in these court tries crosse wise also, like Raphaels ground (of S. Peters Church in Rome) in my third Booke, therefore I will set two or three more of that some here, therein following the maner of the Ancients. The greatest going through, or walke in the middle of the Church, is 30, soot wide: the three Chappels of halse Circles, besides the 2. smallest walkes, are 25, soot wide, and shall standsomewhat without the wall. The Diameter of the Tribune is 36, soot: the source small Erisbunes, or cound Koses, are in Diameter 21, soot, but they shall not come out of the roose. The crosse worke hath a doze on either side, and the 3, halse Circles are each of them 25, sot wide. The hindermost halse Circle, where the high Aitar standeth, is 31, sot wyde. Besides the Luier, there are two eight-corner destries, being 21, soot in Diameter. Besoze, at the greatest going into the Temple, is the middlemost doze, 12, soote wyde, and the 2, small dozes 6, soot. On the sides, the Towers are 27, soot wyde: within the sayres, there sands a wyde gate to draw up the Belsi And although this Temple hath many steps or stayres, you may make lesse.



Dis is the Dethographie of the ground aforciand, whereof the first Comice standeth 62. soot high: which height devided in sire parts, one part shall be so Comice, Fráse, and Architraue, and the rest shall be so, the stat Pillars, which shall be seed that Pillars, in shich shall be seed to be done in the shall be seed to be so the state of the state of the state of shall be beautisted with some workes, as you see in this Figure, taking the particular measures out of the Dorica order, in my sourth Booke. The elevation or rysing up in the middle, shall to the opper part of the Cornice be 25. soot; and the Cornice thereof shall be the fourth part less then the other Cornice where it, made after the some of the Dorica Chapter. The Frontspicie is sistene foot high, about it stands the court or the kettle, with this Lanthorne upon it, the measure whereof, a man may take out of that before. Below, upon the first Cornice, besides the muddlemost bearing up, you shall make a Basement of sine foot high; about that Basement, you must place the two Towers, which are 42. soot and an halte high, making the Cornice the sourch part less then the other, somed after the Dorica Chapter. The third order shall be the sourch part less then the second, and the Cornice thereafter: the fourth order shall also be a sourch part less then the third, and the Cornice there after. The places dress high, about these Cornices, shalle source sout of my fourth Boks.



Philip make the Part I amount the same

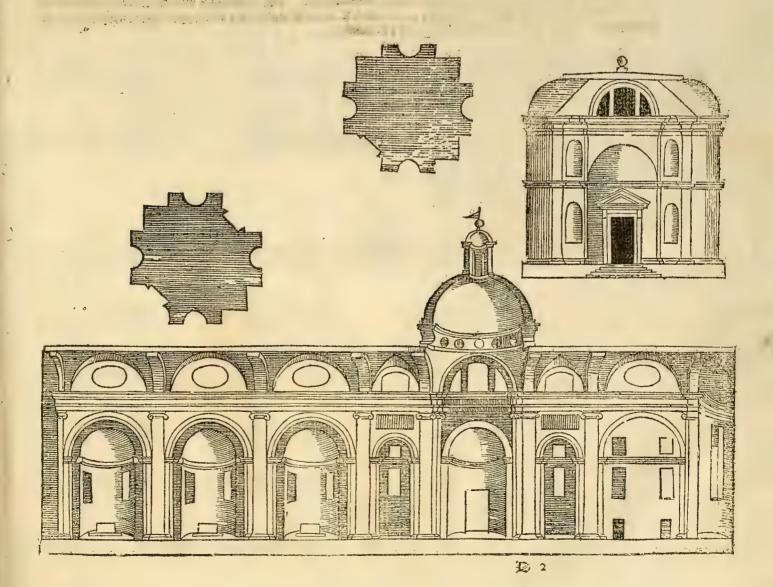
Charles The Agreement of the Agree

. .

Market Committee Committee

The foureteenth Chapter. Fol.14

ground: but here I will speake of the beight. The Counce thall stand high, so as great as the vitermost that is, the sixty art of 52. sot, but shall end after the Jonica maner. The stat willars that also be Jonica: the Ampost which beareth the Arches, shal also be Jonica; whose some, touching the measures, you shal sind them all together which beareth the Arches, shall also be Jonica; whose some, touching the measures, you shall sind them all together orderly in my south Boke: all the Chappels shall have their light of themselves, as you see. About the Chappels, the Kose shalle broken like a Hone, therein so make an onall round hole, that it may yield more light: and that the Tribune may have more light then from the Lanthorne, you shall, from the cover bowards, make a Frese with a List, and therein also make cound holes so, light. This small closed figure, standing alone, about the Temple, sheweth one of the slow doores of the Temple, in the crosse whose, whereof the doore is 10. soot wode, and 20. high. The Architeaue, Freese and Cornice, bnoor the cover or Roose, although the Pollars are broken after another maner, with the List of the Portall, shall neverthelesse agree with the Cornicement that goeth round about the Temple. And although it is not here seems how that the swalke between the Pillaters and the work is, and how that the smalless walke is not so high coosed, nor the some of the small between the Pillaters are not shewed, yet the workeman may imagine it by the ground: so, be that undertaketh such a piece of worke, must not be bushisses.

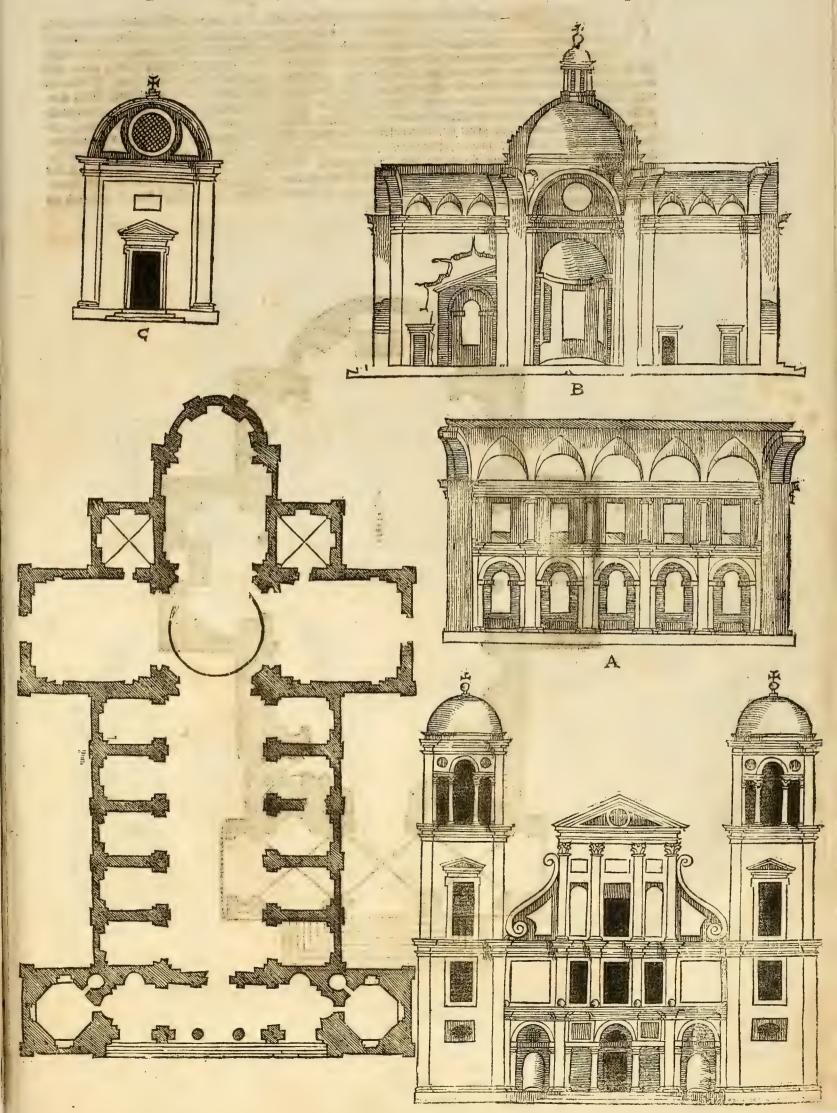


Dis Temple following is 30. twice wide in the middle. The crosse worke, and also the Aribune, together with the high Auier, shall each of them contagne 30. sot. The Arches which bears the Aribune, shalbe 24. sote wide. The Pillars on the sides, where the Piches Kand, shalbe 5. sote broad. Cach side of the Crosse worke is 38. sot long, and shall each of them have a Doze. The part before the high Avier, towards the Altar, is 4. square. The Pillasters with the Piches, before the halfe Circle of the high Altar, are 5. sote broad, and kand from other 24. sot. The Piche or halfe Circle is 23. sote wide. In the 2. corners on the sides of the high Avier, there are 2. Tearies, which shalbe 17. sote wide in 4. square. From the Aribune to the principall going in, thereshall kand 5. Chappels on eptherside, which shalbe 15. sote within 4. square. The walles between both shall bee 4. sote thicke. The windows shalbe 6. soote wide, and there Altars shall stand. The wall at the Dozes shall bee 4. soote thicke, and on the sides where the Piches sand, 3. soot. Here before there shall come a Ballery of 14. soote broad, and of 68 soote long. The Piches shalbe 8. soote broad. On the sides of this Portall the Advers shall sand, and shall stand as broad out at the sides, as the crosse works. The Diameter within the Advers is 18. soote; and although they be 3. square, they may also be made 4. square. The winding Stayres stand in the thickenesse of the wall.

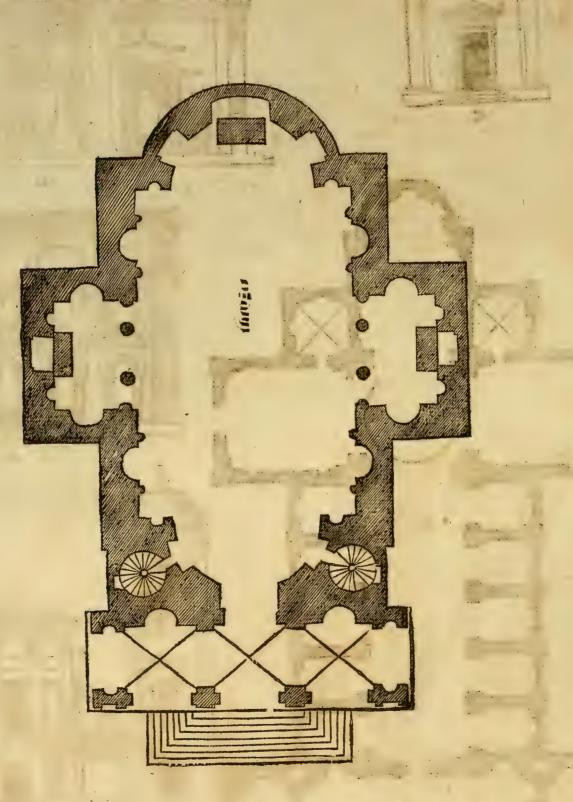
Touching the rayling vozight of the layo Temple, first I will speake of the Poztall, which with the helpe of the lourth Booke, and through the ground, you may find the particular measure of this Dider. The Poztall about halbe flat without roose, to take no light away in the Temple. From the Paucinent, to the top of the Coznice which goeth round about the Temple, it shalbe 47. soote high. The Architrane, Frase and Coznice, are 5, soote. The 2. Dider contagneth 37. soote: and their Coznicements shall be a south part less then the other: the same beights and Coznices shall also serve for the scoon Dider of the Towers, and shalbe a south part less then the second Dider; and the Coznice shall also sellen the south part: about there shall sand a small rising or elevation, whereon the Bettle shall rest.

The Figure above the closed Temple, marked with A. theweth the inner part of the 5. Chappels. The height from the pavement to the opper part of the Comice is 27. soote: the Comice halbe 4, soote thereof, made like a Capicalle Dozica. The other oppermost Comices halbe as high as the outtermost; and between this sirst and the second Comices, there shall Jonica stat Pillars stand; between them the windows shall beemade. The other sigure above that asozesayd, marked B. she inech the Aribune, the Duier and the sides of the crosse works, with the open and the blynd Doozes. Through the one side (which was purposely broken) you may see the Actives within. The Comice but der the Arches, which beare the Bettle, is like the other Comice which goeth round about the Temple. The Comice which is above the Arch, and comes under the Bettle, shalbe bastard. The Lanthorne must bee made according to the other Lanthornes asoze she wed. The other part marked C. is one of the Doozes on the sides, and is in that maner concerd round. The Dooze is 9, soote wide, and 18. sootehigh.

The foureteenth Chapter Fol. 15

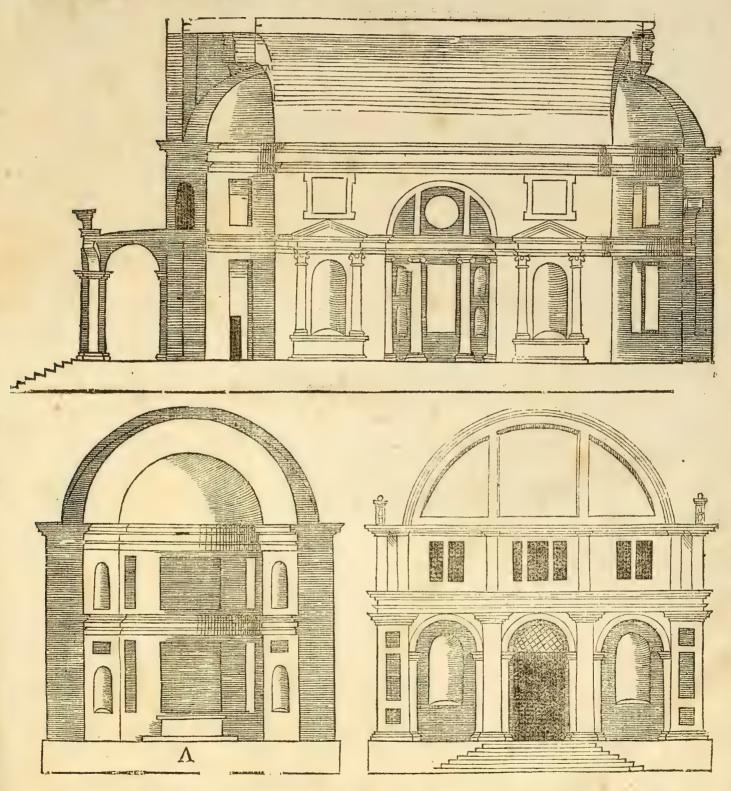


Athough that in the Petherlands there are very fayze Temples made, as the mader in these vayes is, not onely with three Iles or walkes in the body, but also fine: my meaning is not to write of such great Temples, sor that cach' Towne hath her chiefe Church: but these are onely to make such Churches in places, where, by chance, the Churches are decayed, because in these dayes, men could hardly make them by agains in great sorme; and to this end I set this last signing here, which is playner then the other. It shalks 35 foot wroe, and 54 foot long. At each end before and behind, there shall stand halks a Circle of 24 foot in Diameter. This halks Circle where the bigh Altar Kandeth, halh two windows, each 6, soot wroe. The doors to enter into the Temple, shalks 8, soot wroe. In the cross of the Temple there shall stand two Thappels, being 18, soot long, and 12, soot broad. The windows behind the Altar shall be are soot wroesall the great Piches are also see soot long, and the small three foot. The Columnes are two soot thickes the inter-Columnes in the middle, are 6, soot, and the other on the slose are 3, soot. The 4. Piches within the body, are beautissed with round Columnes standing in the wall. Without the Temple there is a Portall of 10, soot broad, and 52, soot long. The high Pilasters shalks 6, soot broad, as counterforts; and the other shalks three foot broad. Within the thickenesse of the wall there shall sand two payes of winding slayes: and although this Church hathy no Towers, yet you may make them on it, as the other were.



The foureteenth Chapter, Fol. 16

Dis Figure within is good to understand, and from the Panement to the sirst Comice, it is 21. foot high, where of the Comicement is a sixt part: the other is so; the Jonica Columnes. The Pedestall of the Puthes shalle the sift part, whereon there sand Columnes of Corinthia. The Frontispicies are three foot about the Comice: the blind windows about may also be opened. The walkes, with the place brest-high about the Portall, must bee made leaning sorward so; the water. The Chappels of the high Altar, marked A. have small Piches of 7. soot and an halfe high. The four square about the Altar, is so; a table, broad 10. soot, and high 12. soot. The Temple without bath a Doricall Comice, as high as the innermost. The part of the second order hath Pillars, and Cornices by on them of two soot, which Comices shall be made according to the Impost of the Theater of Marcellus, in the fourth Boke: and so that above on the side, in the roofe or cover, there is 3, sot of roome to spare, there may be a leaning place made, both so an among also for ease; the cover may be covered over with Lead.



Here endeth the fift Boke: And this also is the end of the two le worke of Sebastian Serlius; Translated aut of Italian into Dutch, and out of Dutch into English, at the charges of Robert Peaks.

Printed at LONDON, by Simon Stafford. 1611.

and the second commence of the consequence of the c

Simelas LONDON, System seegel, t

1 3.1

**

**

